



# WEST COAST CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY VOLUME I

2010–2020



Department of Conservation  
*Te Papa Atawhai*

Published by:  
Department of Conservation *Te Papa Atawhai*  
West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy  
Private Bag 701  
Hokitika  
New Zealand  
© Crown Copyright

Cover: Whitebaiting, Okuru Estuary. Photo by Philippe Gerbeaux.

ISBN 978-0-478-14718-6 (Hardcopy)  
ISBN 978-0-478-14720-9 (Web PDF)  
ISBN 978-0-478-14719-3 (CD)  
ISSN 1178-184X (Print)  
ISSN 1178-1856 (Online)

West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy Management Planning Series No. 10

*Printed on recycled paper.*

# Quick Guide

**Part 1** 1  
Introduction

**Part 2** 9  
Context

**Part 3** 25  
Management Objectives and Policies

**Part 4** 171  
Desired Outcomes

**Part 5** 271  
Monitoring

**Part 6** 287  
Supporting Information



# Contents

Foreword xiii

---

## Ngāi Tahu Whakapapa – Genealogical Origins and Creation

xv

---

1.0	Introduction	3
1.1	What is a CMS?	3
1.2	CMS Structure	3
1.2.1	Guide to Volume I	3
1.2.2	Guide to Volume II	4
1.3	How to Find Information	4
1.3.1	Information about Activities	5
1.3.2	Information about Land Tenure	5
1.4	Interpretation	5
1.5	Notes for Readers	7
2.0	CONTEXT	11
2.1	Administrative Overview	11
2.1.1	The West Coast <i>Tai Poutini</i> Conservancy	11
2.1.2	Public participation in conservation management	11
2.1.2.1	Treaty Partners	12
2.1.2.2	New Zealand Conservation Authority	12
2.1.2.3	Conservation Boards	12
2.1.2.4	Local Authorities	14
2.1.2.5	Fish and Game New Zealand	14
2.1.2.6	Ministry of Fisheries	14
2.1.2.7	Ministry for Culture and Heritage	14
2.1.2.8	New Zealand Historic Places Trust	15
2.1.2.9	Other statutory bodies with administrative responsibilities	15
2.1.3	Supporting a sustainable future	15
2.1.4	Other Policies and Plans	15
2.1.4.1	Statutory documents	15
2.1.4.2	Non-statutory documents	16
2.2	Overview of Conservation Values	16
2.2.1	The character and conservation significance of the West Coast <i>Te Tai o Poutini</i>	16
2.2.1.1	A land apart	16
2.2.1.2	People and the land	17
2.2.1.3	International conservation significance	18
2.2.1.4	National conservation significance	21
3.0	MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND POLICIES	27
3.1	Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua	29
3.1.1	Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi	30
3.1.2	Treaty Partnership in Action	31
3.1.2.1	Treaty of Waitangi relationships	32
3.1.2.2	Recognition of kaitiakitanga	33
3.1.2.3	Mahinga kai	33
3.1.2.4	Ritenga tāonga tuku iho - Customary use	34
3.1.2.5	Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga	36
3.1.2.6	Management of historical and cultural heritage	37
3.1.2.7	Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation	38

3.1.3	Responsibilities under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998	39
3.1.3.1	Tōpuni	40
3.1.3.2	Statutory Advisor sites	40
3.1.3.3	Deed of Recognition	42
3.1.3.4	Nohoanga	42
3.1.3.5	Place name changes	43
3.1.3.6	Taonga Species	44
3.1.3.7	Department of Conservation Protocols	44
3.1.4	Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997	45
3.2	Relationships with People and Organisations	46
3.2.1	Public Awareness and Education	47
3.2.2	Sharing Conservation Work	49
3.2.3	Key People and Organisations the Department works with	50
3.2.3.1	Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu	50
3.2.3.2	Conservation Boards	50
3.2.3.3	Central government agencies	50
3.2.3.4	Local authorities	51
3.2.3.5	Fish and Game New Zealand	51
3.2.3.6	Concessionaires, Access Arrangement Holders and Other Authorisation Holders	52
3.2.3.7	Tourism Associates	52
3.2.3.8	Landowners and Neighbours	52
3.2.3.9	Conservation, Environment and Recreation Groups	53
3.2.3.10	Business Communities	53
3.2.3.11	Development West Coast	53
3.2.3.12	Utility Providers	53
3.2.3.13	Scientific and Educational Providers	54
3.2.3.14	Media	54
3.2.3.15	The public	54
3.3	Natural Heritage Conservation	55
3.3.1	Biodiversity Values and Threats	56
3.3.1.1	Climate change	56
3.3.1.2	Terrestrial biodiversity values	56
3.3.1.3	Threats to terrestrial biodiversity values	60
3.3.1.4	Freshwater biodiversity values	61
3.3.1.5	Threats to freshwater biodiversity values	66
3.3.1.6	Marine biodiversity values	66
3.3.1.7	Threats to marine biodiversity values	71
3.3.1.8	Other marine environment management issues	71
3.3.2	Knowledge, Information Needs and Priority Setting Tools for Natural Heritage Work	72
3.3.2.1	Knowledge and information needs	72
3.3.2.2	Information management	74
3.3.2.3	Prioritising natural heritage work	74
3.3.3	Ecosystem Management	75
3.3.3.1	Legal protection of ecosystems	76
3.3.3.2	Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems	78
3.3.3.3	Management of freshwater fisheries	82
3.3.3.4	Management of marine protected species	84
3.3.3.5	Threatened species management	86
3.3.3.6	Biosecurity and pest management	87
3.3.3.7	Ecosystem services and economic benefits	90
3.3.4	Geodiversity and Landscapes	91
3.3.4.1	Geodiversity and landscape values	91
3.3.4.2	Threats to geodiversity and landscapes	94
3.3.4.3	Management of geodiversity and landscapes	94

3.4	Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation	96
3.4.1	Historical and Cultural Heritage Values and Threats	96
3.4.1.1	Overview of historical and cultural heritage values	97
3.4.1.2	Māori archaeological sites	97
3.4.1.3	Historic Themes	97
3.4.1.4	Identifying threats to historical and cultural heritage values	99
3.4.1.5	Understanding historical and cultural heritage values	101
3.4.1.6	Assessment of historical and cultural heritage values	102
3.4.2	Protection Within Public Conservation Lands	103
3.4.2.1	Protection requirements and mechanisms	103
3.4.2.2	Conservancy Protection Plan	104
3.4.2.3	Active management	105
3.4.2.4	Protection on reserves administered by other bodies	110
3.4.3	Protection Beyond Public Conservation Lands	110
3.5	Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands	111
3.6	People's Benefit and Enjoyment	113
3.6.1	Recreational Opportunities	114
3.6.1.1	Provision and management of recreational opportunities	114
3.6.1.2	Gazetted wilderness areas	117
3.6.1.3	Remote zone	120
3.6.1.4	Backcountry-remote zone	122
3.6.1.5	Frontcountry sites	125
3.6.1.6	Intense interest sites	126
3.6.2	Recreation Facilities and Services	127
3.6.2.1	Provision of recreation facilities	127
3.6.3	Recreation and Tourism Concessions	128
3.6.4	Recreation and Tourism Activities	129
3.6.4.1	Overview	129
3.6.4.2	Aircraft	129
3.6.4.3	Animals	132
3.6.4.4	Camping	133
3.6.4.5	Geothermal sites	133
3.6.4.6	Guiding	134
3.6.4.7	Highways, roads and rail corridors	134
3.6.4.8	Karst based activities	135
3.6.4.9	Non-powered vehicles (mountain biking)	137
3.6.4.10	Non-powered water craft use on rivers, lakes and lagoons	139
3.6.4.11	Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes	139
3.6.4.12	Powered water craft	140
3.6.4.13	Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)	141
3.6.4.14	Recreational gold fossicking	142
3.6.4.15	Recreational hunting of game birds	142
3.6.4.16	Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests	143
3.6.4.17	Vehicle use	144
3.6.4.18	Wildlife and marine mammal encounters	146
3.7	Other Use of Public Conservation Lands	147
3.7.1	Accommodation and Related Facilities	147
3.7.2	Activities on or in Beds of Rivers or Lakes	149
3.7.3	Commercial Eeling	150
3.7.4	Commercial Filming and Photography	151
3.7.5	Crown Minerals	152
3.7.6	Grazing and Farming	154
3.7.7	Military Use	155
3.7.8	On-site and Roaming Vendors	156
3.7.9	Research, Collection and Wildlife Act Permits	156
3.7.10	Sphagnum Moss Harvesting	158
3.7.11	Utilities	158
3.7.12	Commercial Recovery of Wild Animals	159
3.7.13	Heli-hunting	161

3.8	Other Management Responsibilities	161
3.8.1	International Obligations	161
3.8.1.1	Te Wāhipounamu <b>South West New Zealand</b> World Heritage Area	161
3.8.2	Statutory Land Management	163
3.8.2.1	Land transfer, exchange and disposal	164
3.8.2.2	Potential changes to land classification	166
3.8.3	Statutory Advocacy	166
3.8.4	Public Access	167
3.8.5	National Park Management Plans	169
3.8.6	Conservation Management Plans	169
3.8.7	Compliance and Law Enforcement	171
3.8.8	Fire Risk Management	172
3.8.9	Resource Management Act Exemptions	173
4.0	DESIRED OUTCOMES	177
4.1	Desired Outcome for the Conservancy	177
4.1.1	The West Coast <b>Tai Poutini</b> Conservancy in 2020	177
4.1.1.1	Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020	179
4.1.1.2	Relationships with people and organisations in 2020	180
4.1.1.3	Identification and assessment of conservation values in 2020	180
4.1.1.4	Proactive management of conservation values in 2020	181
4.1.1.5	Protection of conservation values from adverse effects of authorised uses in 2020	182
4.1.1.6	Recreational use and enjoyment of public conservation lands in 2020	182
4.2	Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy	183
4.2.1	Desired Outcome for Karamea Place	184
4.2.1.1	Place description	184
4.2.1.2	Kahurangi National Park in 2020	184
4.2.1.3	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	185
4.2.1.4	Indigenous biodiversity	185
4.2.1.5	Human history	190
4.2.1.6	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	191
4.2.1.7	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	192
4.2.2	Desired Outcome for Kawatiri Place	195
4.2.2.1	Place description	195
4.2.2.2	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	196
4.2.2.3	Indigenous biodiversity	196
4.2.2.4	Human history	201
4.2.2.5	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	203
4.2.2.6	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	203
4.2.3	Desired Outcome for Paparoa Place	206
4.2.3.1	Place description	206
4.2.3.2	Paparoa National Park in 2020	206
4.2.3.3	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	209
4.2.3.4	Indigenous biodiversity	209
4.2.3.5	Human history	212
4.2.3.6	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	213
4.2.3.7	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	214
4.2.4	Desired Outcome for Inangahua Place	219
4.2.4.1	Place description	219
4.2.4.2	Paparoa National Park in 2020	219
4.2.4.3	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	219
4.2.4.4	Indigenous biodiversity	220
4.2.4.5	Human history	223
4.2.4.6	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	225
4.2.4.7	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	225



4.2.5	Desired Outcome for Mawhera Place	229
4.2.5.1	Place description	229
4.2.5.2	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	229
4.2.5.3	Indigenous biodiversity	230
4.2.5.4	Human history	232
4.2.5.5	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	234
4.2.5.6	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	234
4.2.6	Desired Outcome for Hokitika Place	238
4.2.6.1	Place description	238
4.2.6.2	Arthur's Pass National Park in 2020	238
4.2.6.3	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	241
4.2.6.4	Indigenous biodiversity	241
4.2.6.5	Human history	244
4.2.6.6	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	245
4.2.6.7	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	246
4.2.7	Desired Outcome for Te Wahi Pounamu Place	249
4.2.7.1	Place description	249
4.2.7.2	Te Wāhipounamu <b>South West New Zealand</b> World Heritage Area in 2020	250
4.2.7.3	Westland <i>Tai Poutini</i> National Park in 2020	250
4.2.7.4	Mt Aspiring National Park in 2020	250
4.2.7.5	Waitangiroto Nature Reserve in 2020	255
4.2.7.6	Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020	256
4.2.7.7	Indigenous biodiversity	257
4.2.7.8	Human history	263
4.2.7.9	Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020	266
4.2.7.10	People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020	267
4.2.8	Desired Outcome for the Marine Place	274
5.0	MONITORING	279
5.1	CMS Implementation, Review and Amendment	279
5.2	CMS Evaluation and Monitoring	280
5.2.1	Evaluation	280
5.2.2	Monitoring	282
5.2.2.1	Partnership with Tangata Whenua	282
5.2.2.2	Relationships with People and Organisations	284
5.2.2.3	Identification and Assessment of Conservation Values	285
5.2.2.4	Proactive Management of Conservation Values	286
5.2.2.5	Protection of Conservation Values from Adverse Effects of Authorised Uses	288
5.2.2.6	Recreational Use and Enjoyment of Public Conservation Lands	288
5.3	CMS Milestones	289
5.3.1	Completed by the End of Year Two After CMS Approval	289
5.3.2	Completed by the End of Year Five After CMS Approval	290
5.3.3	Completed by the End of Year Seven After CMS Approval	291
	GLOSSARY	295
	BIBLIOGRAPHY	325
	<i>Publications</i>	325
	<i>Acts</i> 327	
	Appendix 1	329
1.1	Papatipu Rūnanga	329
1.3	Poutini Ngāi Tahu settlement of the West Coast <i>Te Tai o Poutini</i>	330
1.4	Mātauranga Ngāi Tahu	330
1.5	Rangatiratanga	331

1.6	Kaitiaki	331
1.7	Wairua and mauri	332
1.8	Mahinga kai and customary use	333
1.9	Ngā wai - the waters	335
1.10	Freshwater fauna	336
1.11	Ngā mea hira o te rohe o Takaroa - The values of the domain of Takaroa	337
1.12	Pounamu	338
1.13	Wāhi tapu/wāhi taonga	338
1.14	Wāhi ingoa	340
1.15	Cultural interpretation	340
Appendix 2		341
Protocols on the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues		341
Appendix 3		351
Ngāi Tahu Settlement Legislation: Cultural Redress Sites and Ancillary Claims on the West Coast <i>Te Tai o Poutini</i>		351
	Principles and actions relating to tōpuni	359
	Actions relating to Deed of Recognition Areas	361
Appendix 4		363
Taonga Species		363
Appendix 5		367
Inventory of high-, medium- and low-priority invasive weed species known to occur in the West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy, as at 2010.		367
Appendix 6		371
Geological Features and Landforms of International, National or Regional Significance in the West Coast <i>Tai Poutini Conservancy</i>		371
Appendix 7		377
Concessionaire guided group size limits for tracks in the backcountry-remote zone		377
Appendix 8		378
Maps Showing Roads Identified For Four Wheel Drive Vehicle Use		378
Appendix 9		399
RMA exemptions (see CMS Part 3, Section 3.8.9)		399
Index		409

# Maps

Map 1 - West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy Public Conservation land	xiv
Map 2 - Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio rōhe	13
Map 3 -Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area	20
Map 4 - Location of sites of cultural redress identified in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998	41
Map 5 - CMS Places	178
Map 6 - Karamea Place conservation outcomes	187
Map 7 - Karamea Place recreation outcomes	188
Map 8 - Kawatiri Place conservation outcomes	197
Map 9 - Kawatiri Place recreation outcomes	198
Map 10 - Paparoa Place conservation outcomes	207
Map 11 - Paparoa Place recreation outcomes	208
Map 12 - Inangahua Place conservation outcomes	217
Map 13 - Inangahua Place recreation outcomes	218
Map 14 - Māwhera Place conservation outcomes	227
Map 15 - Māwhera Place recreation outcomes	228
Map 16 - Hokitika Place conservation outcomes	239
Map 17 - Hokitika Place recreation outcomes	240
Map 18 - Te Wāhi Pounamu Place conservation outcomes	251
Maps 19a-c - Te Wāhi Pounamu Place recreation outcomes	252
Map 20 - Marine Place	276

# Tables

TABLE 1: Distinguishing Features of the Marine environment	67
Table 2: Actively Managed Historic Places, As at 2010	106
Table 3. Gazetted wilderness areas	118
Table 4. Management of Public Access in Caves	137
Table 5. Roads and tracks available for Non-Powered Vehicle use	138
Table 6. Designated recreational gold fossicking areas in the West Coast <i>Tai Poutini</i> Conservancy As At 2010	142



# Foreword

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) has been reviewed in accordance with the procedures set out in section 11 of the Forests (West Coast Accord) Act 2000 and Part 3A of the Conservation Act 1987. This CMS sets out the Department of Conservation's proposed intentions for the integrated management of natural and physical resources located within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (see Map 1) over the next 10 years.

As CMS's are long-term in nature they do not include information on operational detail, financial management or short-term priority setting of the Department's resources. However, the CMS is linked to the Department's annual business planning process. Other strategic documents, such as the Department of Conservation's Strategic Direction, the Statement of Intent and various other internal national policy documents, assist in the allocation of resources and priority setting exercises nationally. These strategic documents have also been considered in the development of this CMS. It is important to note that it is not just the CMS that determines priority actions for integrated management of natural and physical resources, but also these other nationally focused processes. So while the CMS may indicate a priority action, its implementation will still need to be considered within this national context.

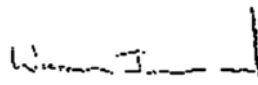
Public consultation enables alignment of the CMS objectives and outcomes with the public's values and wishes within the constraints of the legislation. This process in turn enables realisation of the Department's goal to increase the value of conservation to New Zealanders. Public submissions on the draft CMS closed in October 2007 and hearings were held during February 2008. The Department amended the draft CMS in response to these submissions and hearings, and forwarded it to the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board for its consideration. The Conservation Board undertook an independent analysis of the Department's revisions, and requested further changes be made. The CMS was forwarded to the New Zealand Conservation Authority (Authority) for its approval in April 2009. This CMS was approved by the Authority on 15 April 2010.

The CMS is required to establish objectives for the management of the Kahurangi, Paparoa, Arthur's Pass, Westland *Tai Poutini* and Mt Aspiring National Parks. While each national park has its own management plan, nothing in the management plan shall derogate from any provisions of the CMS. Acknowledging that the national park management plans have been prepared prior to this CMS, it is possible there will be differing approaches between the national park management plan and the CMS. Where there is conflict between the provisions of the national park management plan and this CMS, the CMS outlines how this conflict will be managed.

This CMS acknowledges the kaitiakitanga and tangata whenua status of Poutini Ngāi Tahu over their ancestral lands and waters within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.



Mike Slater  
Conservator  
West Coast Conservancy



Warren Inwood  
Chairperson  
West Coast *Tai Poutini*  
Conservation Board



Don Ross  
Chairperson  
New Zealand  
Conservation Authority

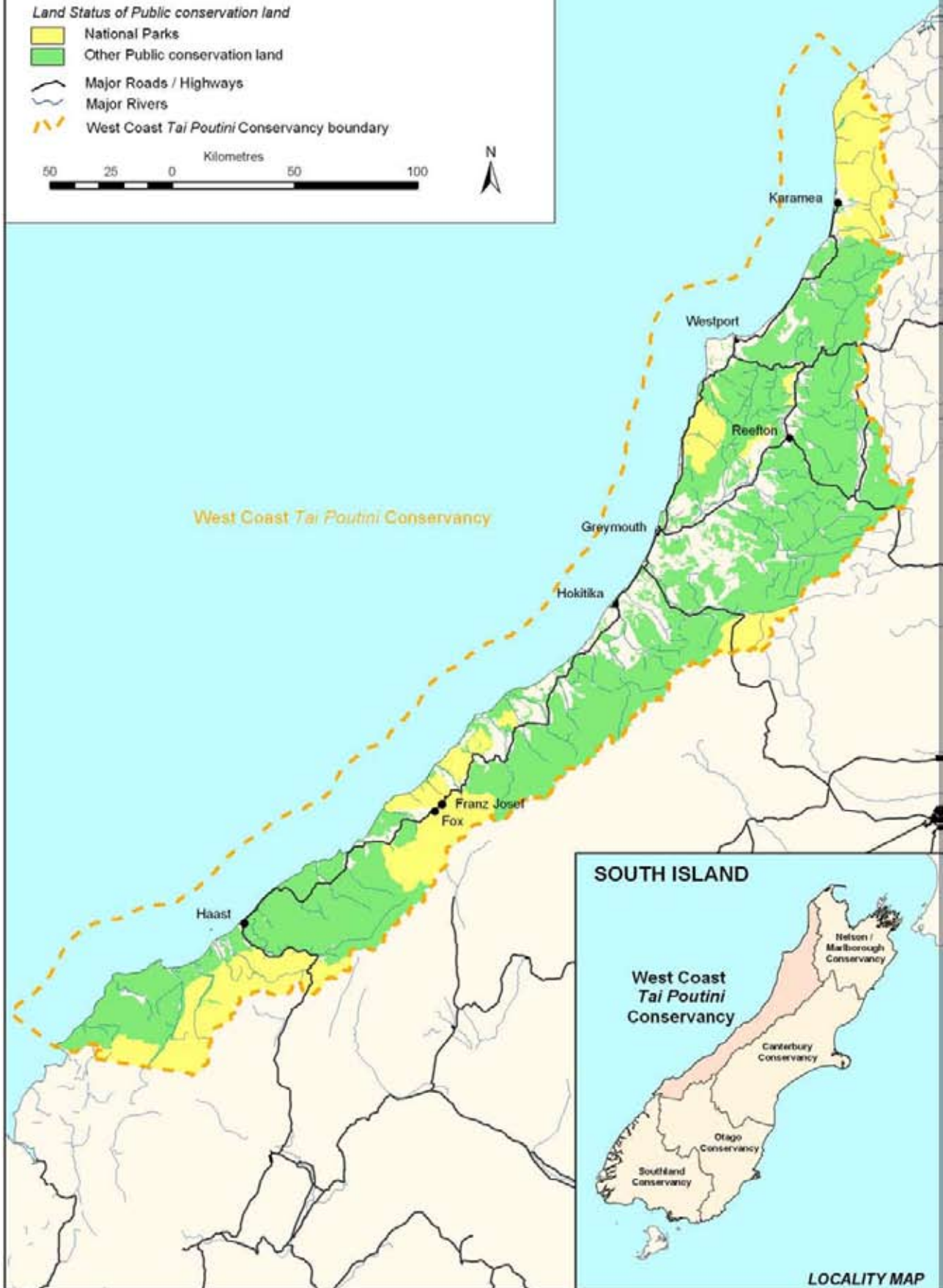
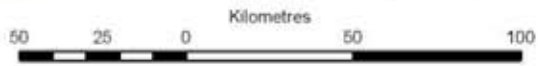
15 April 2010

# MAP 1 West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy Public conservation land

## Legend

### Land Status of Public conservation land

-  National Parks
-  Other Public conservation land
-  Major Roads / Highways
-  Major Rivers
-  West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy boundary



## SOUTH ISLAND

### West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy



LOCALITY MAP

# Ngāi Tahu Whakapapa – Genealogical Origins and Creation

*Kei a Te Pō te tīmatanga mai o te waiatatanga mai o te Atua.*

*Nā Te Pō, ko Te Ao.*

*Nā Te Ao, ko Te Aomārama.*

*Nā Te Aomārama, ko Te Aotūroa.*

*Nā Te Aotūroa, ko Te Koretēwhiwhia.*

*Nā Te Koretēwhiwhia, ko Te Koretēraewa.*

*Nā Te Koretēraewa, ko Te Koretētāmaua.*

*Nā Te Koretētāmaua, ko Te Koretēmātua.*

*Nā Te Koretēmātua, ko Te Mākū.*

*Nā Te Mākū, ka nobo i a Maboranuiatea,*

*Ka puta ki wabo ko Raki.*

Ngāi Tahu values and beliefs explain all things from the time of nothingness – *Te Kore*, through the vast ages of darkness – *Te Pō*, to the first ever glimmer of light – *Te Ao*, to the longstanding light – *Te Aotūroa*, through to the emergence of moisture – *Te Mākū*.

A void, a parentless void with the potential for life, encompassed all. In due course *Te Mākū* emerged and coupled with *Maboranui-a-Tea*, from which came *Rakinui*, who coupled with *Pokoharua-Te-Pō*. Their first child was *Aoraki*, who stands as the supreme mountain of Ngāi Tahu.

From the union of *Rakinui* and *Pokoharua-Te-Pō* also came the source of the great winds – *Tāwhirimātea*, *Tiu* and *Rakamaomao*. The elder brother of *Pokoharua-Te-Pō* was *Te Moretu*. From *Te Moretu* came *Takaroa* – the great progenitor of the oceans.

The first wife of *Takaroa* was the flat earth – *Papatūānuku*. While *Takaroa* was occupied with his work far out in the oceans, *Papatūānuku* went to be with *Rakinui*. It was from this union between *Rakinui* and *Papatūānuku* that into being came *Rehua*, *Tāne* and many children including the great voyager, *Paikea*, the father of *Tabupōtiki*, the ancestor of Ngāi Tahu.

Upon his return from the oceans, *Takaroa* discovered the union between his wife and nephew and proceeded to exact revenge on *Raki*, which led to a great battle that left *Rakinui* wounded in both thighs and his further descendents crippled.

From the great *Takaroa* came many more important creations including *Te Kāhui Anu*. From *Te Kāhui Anu* came *Te Anumātao* and later *Te Anuwai*. It was from the union of *Te Anuwai* and *Takaroa* that *Te Pounamu* first came into being.

This particular whakapapa states that pounamu is a direct descendant of the great Ngāi Tahu deity, *Takaroa*. This is important, because *Takaroa*, being an uncle of *Rakinui* and the first husband of *Papatūānuku*, has a senior bloodline, in turn

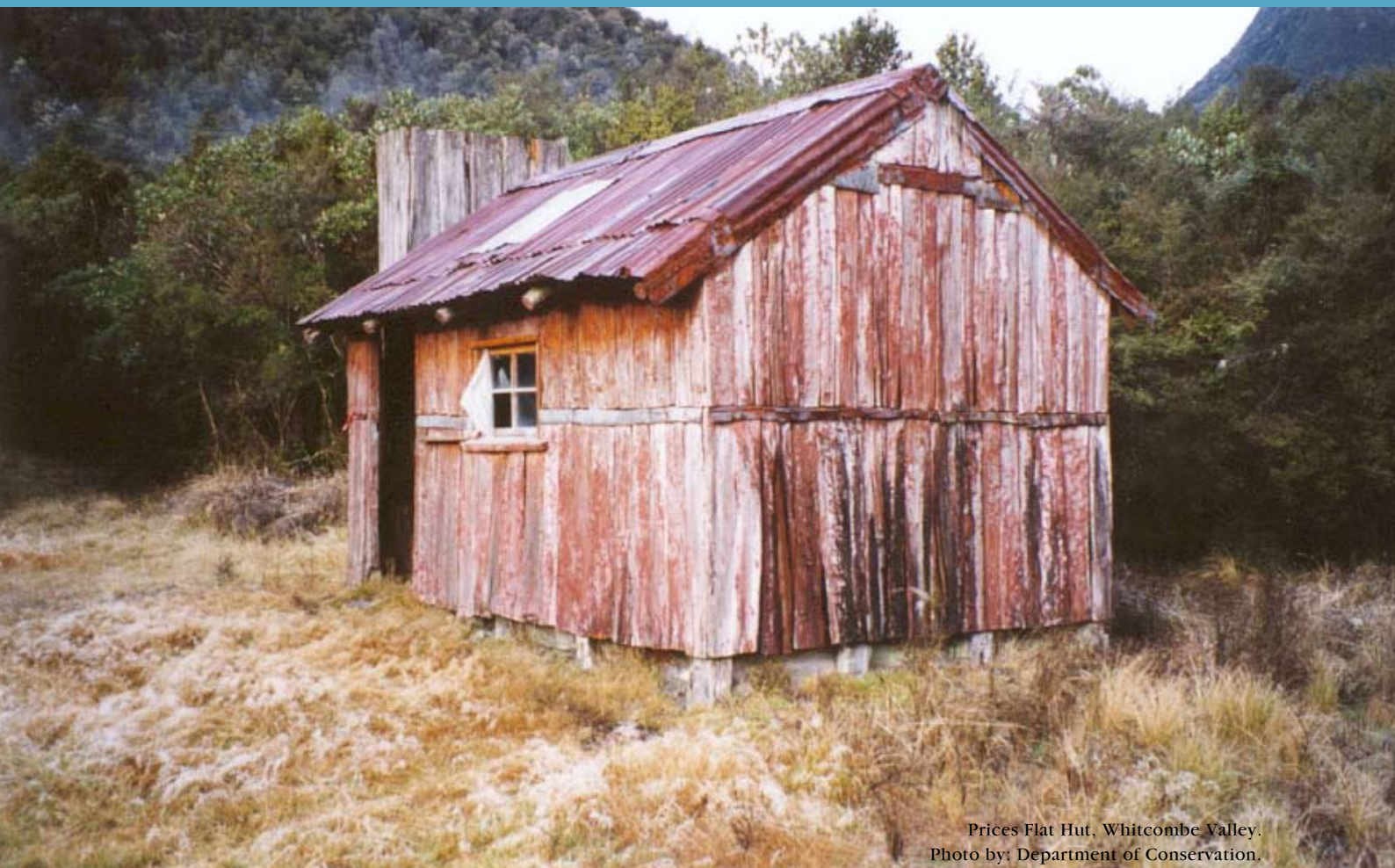
passing this to pounamu. It is this whakapapa that gives pounamu a higher bloodline than the uri of *Rakinui* and *Papatūānuku*, including people.

Whakapapa explains the very origins of every thing, past and present, within the Māori world. It is the foundation upon which all things are built, the web that connects all things together, the anchor which holds all things in place and the vehicle by which all things link back to the beginning of time. Whakapapa accounts for the way in which the earth, sky, oceans, rivers, elements, minerals, plants, animals and all people have been created. It is through whakapapa that all things are intricately linked, as well as having their individual place in the world. Ultimately, it is whakapapa that connects people to each other, to their ancestors, to the land and natural resources. For Ngāi Tahu, it is whakapapa that elucidates their descent from the gods of creation.



# Part 1

# Introduction



Prices Flat Hut, Whitcombe Valley.  
Photo by: Department of Conservation.



# 1.0 Introduction

## 1.1 WHAT IS A CMS?

Section 17D of the Conservation Act 1987 provides that the purpose of a conservation management strategy is to implement general policies, including the operative Conservation General Policy 2005, and to establish objectives for integrated conservation management. Conservation General Policy 2005 applies to all lands, waters and resources administered by the Department of Conservation (excluding national parks) and should be read in conjunction with this CMS. The General Policy for National Parks 2005 applies to all national parks.

This conservation management strategy establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including species managed under a number of different Acts, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. It is the key conservation management tool which the Department uses to implement legal, policy and strategic direction. Each conservation management strategy is prepared with public participation.

The West Coast *Tai o Poutini* Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) explains how the Department proposes to manage the natural, historical and cultural heritage values and recreational opportunities within the Conservancy over a 10 year period. Having a single strategic document for the Conservancy will help to co-ordinate and integrate the Department's functional activities and provide a framework for resolving conflicts and making management decisions. It will also guide the allocation of the Department's resources, in association with strategic and business planning. The CMS will have effect from 2010–2020 or until formally amended or reviewed.

All public conservation lands and waters and natural resources must be managed in accordance with the legislation under which they are held. All operative provisions of this CMS must be interpreted and applied in line with that legislation: the strategy cannot be considered in isolation from that legislation. Under the Resource Management Act 1991, local authorities are required to have regard to any CMS and other conservation or national park management plans when developing policy statements and preparing and reviewing district and regional plans.

## 1.2 CMS STRUCTURE

This CMS has been produced in two volumes. Volume I contains background context about conservation values and threats and describes the desired conservation outcomes, management objectives, policies, key performance indicators and milestones. Volume II identifies and describes each individual unit of conservation land located within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy as at 2009.

### 1.2.1 Guide to Volume I

Volume I is organised into five parts, as outlined below.

## ***PART 1: INTRODUCTION***

Part 1 explains what a CMS is and how to use this CMS.

## ***PART 2: CONTEXT - Where we are now***

Part 2 provides the context for Parts 3 and 4.

## ***PART 3: MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND POLICIES***

Part 3 is organised by management themes that cover the entire West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* Conservancy. It focuses on conservation management objectives and policies, which are designed to achieve the desired outcomes described in Part 4.

## ***PART 4: DESIRED OUTCOMES - Where we want to be***

Part 4 presents the desired outcome pictures for (a) the entire Conservancy, and (b) specific Places<sup>1</sup> within the Conservancy. Each outcome picture steps forward in time to the year 2020 and describes the condition of the Conservancy or a specific Place if the intent of this CMS is followed (i.e. what it will be like 10 years from now). It describes the conservation outcomes that the Department aims to achieve by implementing the objectives and policies identified in Part 3 of this CMS. The outcome pictures will be used to provide context and guidance for managers to make decisions about conservation management and other activities in the Conservancy.

## ***PART 5: MONITORING - How we'll know if we're on track***

Part 5 describes how the implementation of this CMS will be monitored over the next ten years.

### **1.2.2 Guide to Volume II**

Volume II contains the Conservancy land register and other data about public conservation lands as at 2009. Chapter 1 is an introduction to Volume II. Chapter 2 contains statistical data. Chapter 3 contains two schedules: Schedule 1 describes each parcel of land by its conservation unit number, while Schedule 2 is a full listing of sites in alphabetical order by land status. Volume II also contains a set of 1:250,000 maps of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (see Volume II maps 1-10). Up to date versions of these maps are available from the Conservancy and Area Offices and on the Department's website: [www.doc.govt.nz](http://www.doc.govt.nz).

## **1.3 HOW TO FIND INFORMATION**

This CMS has two main uses. Firstly, as a guide for Departmental managers, commercial operators and the public when considering future uses of the Conservancy's public conservation lands, and secondly as an information resource.

---

1 For the purposes of this CMS, the entire West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy has been divided into seven land-based Places (Karamea, Kawatiri, Paparoa, Inangahua, Māwhera, Hokitika and Te Wāhi Pounamu) and one marine Place. The land based division of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (including both public and private land) into adjacent geographic areas (Places) has been chosen for practical management reasons. There are many conservation management issues that are common to the whole Conservancy, although these issues may have different emphases in the successive Places.

### 1.3.1 Information about Activities

To find information about the management of a particular activity, refer to the contents page and check for references in the CMS in each of the following ways:

- Refer to Map 5 (Part 4) to find out in which CMS Place/s the proposed activity will be undertaken.
- Read Part 4, Chapter 4.1 to check that the proposed activity is consistent with the Conservancy-wide vision.
- Read the information on the relevant Place/s in Part 4, Chapter 4.2 to check that the proposed activity is consistent with the desired outcomes for that location.
- Refer to the type of activity in Part 3. Check any cross-references provided in those sections.
- If the activity is a recreation or tourism activity, refer to the relevant recreation outcome maps in Part 4 to determine the appropriate recreational zone where the proposed activity will take place and then refer back to Chapter 3.5 and any other relevant provisions in Part 3.

It is important to remember that this CMS provides for the integrated management of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, so for any particular location or activity several different sections of the CMS will be relevant. Outcomes, objectives and policies in any particular section may be influenced by outcomes, objectives and policies in other sections. In some cases it may be necessary to read and consider the strategy and its provisions as a whole.

### 1.3.2 Information about Land Tenure

If you want to check the land tenure of a particular location:

- Refer to Volume II, Maps 1-10 to determine whether the location falls within public conservation land. If it does, refer to Volume II text for further information about that public conservation land: use Schedule 1 to find the public conservation land's conservation unit number, or use Schedule 2 to find the public conservation land's name.
- Contact the Conservancy Office or the nearest Area Office and check whether the tenure of that public conservation land has changed since 2009.

## 1.4 INTERPRETATION

The following policies apply to all parts of this CMS:

### **POLICIES**

- 1. Only the operative parts of this CMS will have statutory effect. The operative parts are limited to objectives and policies (see Volume I, Parts 1, 3 and 5), Conservancy-wide outcomes (see Volume I, Part 4, Chapter 4.1), Place outcomes (see Volume I, Part 4, Chapter 4.2), key performance indicators and milestones (see Volume I, Part 5, Chapters 5.2 and 5.3), and the glossary. The operative parts of this CMS recognise the need to ensure that decisions are not predetermined by restricting the possibilities**

**provided for in the legislation, and recognise the constitutional role of the Minister of Conservation and other decision-makers.**

- 2. Each operative part of this CMS will be considered in conjunction with all other relevant sections of this CMS.**
- 3. All public conservation lands and waters will be managed in accordance with the legislation under which they are held and the relevant general policy. All operative parts of this CMS will be interpreted and applied in line with that legislation: the CMS cannot be considered in isolation from that legislation.**
- 4. In the event of doubt, the operative parts of the CMS will be interpreted in favour of the intrinsic values identified at specific Places (see Volume I, Part 4, Chapter 4.2).**
- 5. The words ‘will’, ‘should’ and ‘may’ have the following meanings:**
  - a) Policies where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions ‘will’ be undertaken.
  - b) Policies that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome, without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions ‘should’ be undertaken.
  - c) Policies intended to allow flexibility in decision-making, state that a particular action or actions ‘may’ be undertaken.
- 6. The use of the ‘and/or’ conventions will be applied as follows. Many policies in Part 3 of this CMS contain lists of criteria for decision-making. In such lists, where criteria are:**
  - a) cumulative and all must be met, the word ‘and’ is used before the last criterion.
  - b) alternative and only one criterion (at least) must be met, the word ‘or’ is used between all criteria.

**The level of detail included under different management themes in Part 3 of this CMS varies, depending on factors such as:**

- how much direction is already provided in the legislation or general policy;
  - whether the matter is best addressed at a national or another level;
  - whether the matter involves a statutory or management decision; and
  - the degree to which providing guidance is necessary to ensure that the objectives and outcomes identified in Part 3 and 4 of this CMS are achieved.
- 7. Once approved, this CMS will have effect until such time as it is formally amended or reviewed.**

## 1.5 NOTES FOR READERS

This CMS does not provide a comprehensive account of all of the legislation or the general policies mentioned in the document. Readers must refer directly to the relevant statute or regulation to obtain a complete understanding of its purpose and provisions. Information on how to obtain copies of relevant legislation is available from the Parliamentary Counsel Office and on their website [www.pco.parliament.govt.nz](http://www.pco.parliament.govt.nz). Legislation is able to be viewed at many public libraries and online at [www.legislation.govt.nz](http://www.legislation.govt.nz). Conservation General Policy 2005 and the General Policy for National Parks 2005 can be found on the Department's website [www.doc.govt.nz](http://www.doc.govt.nz).

Unless otherwise indicated, topics and lists in this CMS are not presented in any priority order. For consistency within the text, locations are referred to in a north to south order. Similarly, ecosystems are referred to in order of terrestrial, freshwater then marine, reflecting the 'mountains to sea' concept.

Throughout this CMS, the term 'conservation values' means natural, historical and cultural heritage values. The term 'public conservation lands' means all land and water areas (including freshwater and marine areas) administered by the Department under conservation legislation.

In the dialect of Ngāi Tahu, 'k' sometimes replaces 'ng'. For example, Takaroa may be pronounced and written elsewhere as Tangaroa. Throughout this CMS, Poutini Ngāi Tahu dialectal preference is used, except where text is quoted from other sources.





# Part 2

# Context



Arbor Day Planting.  
Photo by: Caitlin Reid.



## 2.0 CONTEXT

### 2.1 ADMINISTRATIVE OVERVIEW

#### 2.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy

The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy covers 2.277 million hectares of land west of the Main Divide, from Kahurangi Point in the north to Big Bay *Tihei Mauri Ora* in the south (see Map 1). Public conservation lands make up almost 1.912 million hectares of land within the Conservancy (84% of the total land area). The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is therefore one of the largest and most comprehensively protected of New Zealand's 13 conservancies, containing approximately one quarter of the country's protected lands. The Department's responsibilities under the Conservation Act extend to the outer limit of New Zealand's territorial sea. Its responsibilities under the Wildlife Act 1953, Marine Reserves Act 1971 and Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 extend to the outer limit of the exclusive economic zone (EEZ).

On the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* the Department manages part of the Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area, two national parks and parts of three others, one conservation park, numerous other reserves and conservation areas, a total of almost 1.912 million hectares of public conservation land (excluding covenants), and 605 kilometres of coastline. Neighbouring conservancies lead management planning processes associated with Kahurangi National Park (Nelson/Marlborough), Arthur's Pass National Park (Canterbury) and Mt Aspiring National Park (Otago). However, day-to-day management of the western parts of these Parks is undertaken by the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

The Conservancy manages a range of threatened plants and animals, including several species that are found only on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, and actively manages a number of historic places. The Department also has an important role as an advocate for conservation of natural and historic resources on lands and waters within the Conservancy boundaries that are not administered by the Department. The Conservancy provides many facilities and services to enable the public to use and enjoy the lands it manages. Many of the tourists who visit the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* do so because of the region's conservation values.

The Conservancy Office is in Hokitika. The five Area Offices are Buller *Kawatiri* at Westport, Greymouth *Māwheranui*, Hokitika, Franz Josef *Waiarau*, and South Westland *Webeke* at Fox Glacier. Field Centre Offices are located at Karamea, Punakaiki, Reefton and Haast.

#### 2.1.2 Public participation in conservation management

Conservation management and the work of the Department are characterised by a high level of public input. Conservation is based on societal support, and on the concept that public conservation lands are the common heritage of all New Zealanders. These principles are inherent in all conservation legislation. This legislation also establishes

a hierarchy of conservation boards and the New Zealand Conservation Authority, an independent body appointed by the Minister. The Authority and conservation boards have an oversight and advisory role on the Department's operations. They provide a statutory link between the Department and the public, and help to ensure that, as far as practicable, the Department's management is in tune with the wishes of the community. An overview of key statutory relationships is provided below.

#### **2.1.2.1 Treaty Partners**

Most of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy lies within the takiwā (tribal area) of the iwi Ngāi Tahu, and specifically the rohe (area) of the hapū Ngāti Waewae and Kāti Māhaki ki Makaawhio (see Map 2 and Appendix 1, Section 1.3). Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae is the administrative body for Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio is the administrative body for Kāti Māhaki ki Makaawhio. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is the administrative body representing the interests of Ngāi Tahu Whānui as a whole. To carry out its Treaty-related responsibilities, the Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio (who act as kaitiaki (guardians) over public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*) and with the iwi authority, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

Within the Conservancy, there is a very small piece of land in Kahurangi National Park which crosses into Te Atiawa, Ngāti Apa, Ngāti Rarua, Ngāti Tama and Ngāti Toa (Te Tai Ihu Iwi) rohe.

#### **2.1.2.2 New Zealand Conservation Authority**

The New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA) has thirteen members appointed by the Minister of Conservation. Its functions include approving conservation management strategies, national park management plans and some conservation management plans, approving national park general policy, advising the Minister on statements of general policy, investigating and advising the Minister or Director-General on conservation matters of national importance, reviewing and reporting on the Department's management and budget priorities, and liaising with Fish and Game New Zealand. In approving a CMS, the Authority must have regard to any recommendations of the Minister of Conservation. The Minister approves all policy (except national park policy) and the Director-General of Conservation then implements the policy.

#### **2.1.2.3 Conservation Boards**

There are 13 conservation boards, each with a regional focus and specific responsibilities for their area. Board members are mostly appointed from public nominations. Boards whose areas of jurisdiction lie wholly within the Ngāi Tahu takiwā have at least two members appointed on the nomination of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. Conservation board functions include involvement in the preparation, review and amendment of conservation management strategies and national park management plans, approving conservation management plans (also reviews and amendments), advising the NZCA and Director-General of Conservation on conservation matters within conservancies, advising on new walkways in conservancies, and liaising with regional councils of Fish and Game New Zealand. Boards may pursue these interests at public forums and statutory hearings. The conservation board in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board.

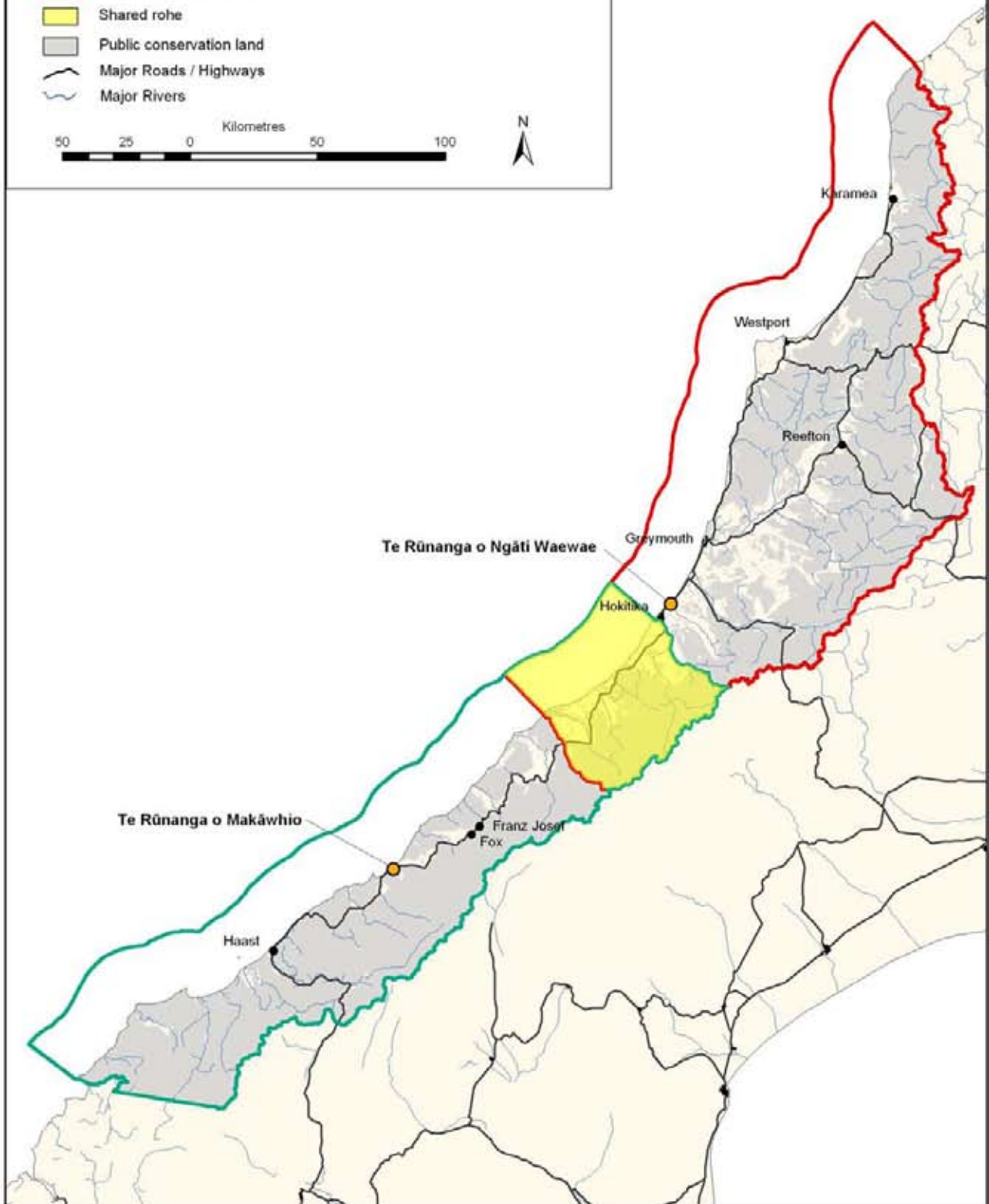
# MAP 2

## Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makāwhio rohe within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy

### Legend

-  Marae location of Papatipu Rūnanga
-  Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae rohe
-  Te Rūnanga o Makāwhio rohe
-  Shared rohe
-  Public conservation land
-  Major Roads / Highways
-  Major Rivers

50 25 0 50 100  
Kilometres



#### **2.1.2.4 *Local Authorities***

Local authorities are responsible for district and regional planning through district and regional plans, and for civil defence, water and soil conservation, and air pollution control. Under the Resource Management Act 1991, they are required to have regard to any CMS and other conservation or national park management plans when developing policy statements and preparing and reviewing district and regional plans. Five local authorities have responsibilities within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy: the Tasman, Buller, Grey and Westland District Councils, and the West Coast Regional Council. Local authority boundaries are displayed on the maps contained within Volume II of this CMS.

#### **2.1.2.5 *Fish and Game New Zealand***

Regional fish and game councils and the New Zealand Fish and Game Council are established under Part VA of the Conservation Act 1987. They are charged with the management, enhancement and maintenance of sports fish and game birds, and with representing the regional and national interests of anglers and game bird hunters. These responsibilities extend to public conservation lands, subject to legislation and general policy. The Department recognises the value to New Zealanders of the interests that Fish and Game New Zealand represents and has a Memorandum of Understanding with them. This memorandum acknowledges the close working relationship that the two organisations have, as provided for in the Conservation Act.

Regional fish and game councils have responsibility for the day-to-day management of the freshwater sports fishery and game bird resource in their area, and are required to prepare 10-year sports fishery and game bird management plans. They are responsible for the issue of sports fishing and game bird hunting licences and for the setting of regulations for the sustainable management of sports fish and game birds. Their statutory role includes undertaking research, monitoring species and habitats, and undertaking advocacy and promotion in the interests of recreational anglers and game bird hunters. The fish and game council that falls within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is West Coast Fish and Game Council.

#### **2.1.2.6 *Ministry of Fisheries***

The Ministry of Fisheries manages the sustainable use of fisheries to avoid or mitigate adverse effects of fishing on the aquatic environment. With the exception of the whitebait fishery, which is managed by the Department, freshwater fisheries with a significant commercial component are managed by the Ministry of Fisheries. Fisheries regulations identify the customary use of fisheries by tangata whenua. These responsibilities apply within public conservation lands.

#### **2.1.2.7 *Ministry for Culture and Heritage***

The management of historical and cultural heritage under conservation legislation should take into account advice provided by the Ministry for Culture and Heritage as the Crown's principal adviser for cultural heritage policy.

#### **2.1.2.8 *New Zealand Historic Places Trust***

The management of historical and cultural heritage under conservation legislation is subject to the statutory roles of the New Zealand Historic Places Trust under the Historic Places Act 1993. The Trust (a Crown entity) has a leading national role in promoting the identification, protection, preservation and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand. Its principal functions include the registration of historic places, protection of archaeological sites, advocacy for the conservation of historic resources, education and management of historic properties.

#### **2.1.2.9 *Other statutory bodies with administrative responsibilities***

Several other bodies have administrative responsibilities within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy and have links to the Department's work. The New Zealand Police are responsible for law and order, some conservation-related compliance and law enforcement measures (in conjunction with the Department's officers), and search and rescue. The Director of Public Health is responsible for public health. The New Zealand Fire Service is responsible for determining standards of fire prevention, safety and control. The Ministry of Transport (Civil Aviation Authority) is responsible for aviation safety and regulation.

*See also* Section 3.2 Relationships with People and Organisations  
Part 4, Section 4.1.1.2 Relationships with people and organisations in 2020

### **2.1.3 Supporting a sustainable future**

The Department supports New Zealand's commitment to a future that is sustainable in the long term. Sustainable development is a term widely-used internationally, and an idea which has formal government endorsement. Economic development, social development, cultural matters and environmental protection all play a role in the creation of a sustainable future on this earth. Conservation (the Department's responsibility) is but one component of sustainable development. Other agencies address social and economic development issues.

### **2.1.4 Other Policies and Plans**

The Department is involved in many planning activities apart from the preparation of this CMS. These include both statutory and non-statutory documents, examples of which are presented below.

#### **2.1.4.1 *Statutory documents***

**General policies** are prepared under the Conservation Act 1987 and National Parks Act 1980. Conservation management strategies must implement, and not derogate from, general policies. Existing general policies include the General Policy for National Parks 2005 and Conservation General Policy 2005.

**The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement** is prepared under the Resource Management Act 1991. Its purpose is to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in relation to New Zealand's coastal environment. The Department contributes to its preparation and to any changes. The Minister of Conservation recommends approval of the final policy statement.

**Conservation management plans** and **national park management plans** may be produced for specific areas within the Conservancy. In accordance with the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980, specific management plans will continue to be produced for all five national parks that are located wholly or partly within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. All other management plans will be replaced by this CMS (see Part 3, Section 3.8.6). New conservation management plans will only be produced where specified in this CMS or any amendments to it.

#### **2.1.4.2 Non-statutory documents**

**Non-statutory** plans, strategies and reviews of particular issues, are prepared by the Department on both a local and national basis. On a national level these guide the activities of all conservancies in a number of different functional areas and include documents such as the Strategic Direction, Statement of Intent (updated annually), Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy, Visitor Strategy, Conservation with Communities Strategy, Biosecurity Strategy, wild animal control plans, New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy and recovery plans for a range of threatened native species.

**Local strategies and plans** are functional plans produced by the Conservancy, either to implement national plans or to deal with issues of particular relevance to the Conservancy. Examples include Biodiversity Action Plans, wild animal control strategies for goats and possums, a Plant Pest Control Strategy, a Marine Mammal Stranding Contingency Plan, a Visitor Interpretation Strategy, and a Vision for Visitor Assets and Opportunities. These documents provide detailed guidance for management and are available to the public. They are reviewed from time to time, as required. Further plans covering additional functional areas are likely to be prepared in the future.

## **2.2 OVERVIEW OF CONSERVATION VALUES**

### **2.2.1 The character and conservation significance of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini***

#### **2.2.1.1 A land apart**

In Te Waipounamu (the South Island of New Zealand) when people speak of 'the Coast' they almost invariably mean the West Coast - Te Tai o Poutini. Geographically, scenically, climatically and ecologically, the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is a land apart from other regions of New Zealand.

**Geographically** The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is isolated from the east by the barrier of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* across which there are only three roads and few routes for foot travellers that do not require mountaineering skills. To the west it is bounded by a coast of bold bluffs and wild driftwood-strewn beaches, along which the only harbours are treacherous river mouths and occasional semi-sheltered bays. To the north and south are vast tracts of mountain wilderness protected within the country's two largest national parks - the 452,000 hectare Kahurangi National Park and 1.2 million hectare Fiordland National Park. This 'land apart' is itself in two parts geologically, being severed longitudinally by the Alpine Fault which is the boundary between the Australian and Pacific tectonic plates.



The Alpine Fault is the only place in New Zealand where a major plate boundary occurs on land. The collision of the two plates has been responsible for the creation of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*, the different character of the ranges in the northern parts of the Conservancy, and ultimately all the other geographic and climatic factors that give the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* its highly distinctive natural character.

**Scenically** The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is unique in both an international and national context. It is unique for its rugged coastline and mountain ranges, hill country and glacial outwash surfaces which largely retain natural vegetation cover. It has large rivers and unspoilt mountains-to-sea panoramas. Within these landscapes lie scenic gems: glaciers abutting lowland temperate rainforest, forest-encircled lakes, coastal lagoons, and lowland karst (see Glossary definition) areas.

**Climatically** The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* experiences a high rainfall by comparison to other regions of New Zealand. Annual precipitation ranges from less than 2000 mm per year in the Maruia Valley to somewhere between 10 and 15 m of rain a year near the main divide of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* (NIWA, 2007). Much of the scenery for which the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is renowned depends ultimately on a generous supply of rain to nourish forests and swamps, and feed rivers, streams and glaciers.

**Ecologically** The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contains a significant amount of intact natural diversity by comparison with many other regions. Continuous tracts of lowland and coastal forests and freshwater and coastal wetlands cover large areas. In many places indigenous ecosystems and habitats extend unbroken from the mountains to the sea. There are few other places in New Zealand where this occurs to the same extent and few places in the world where Gondwanaland ecosystems remain intact.

#### 2.2.1.2 *People and the land*

Archaeological research has uncovered evidence of human settlements dating back at least 700 years (Anderson 1982). Settlements existed along the coastline from the Heaphy River in the north to Barn Bay and Big Bay *Tīhei Mauri Ora* in the south. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* was, and still is, one of the most important sources of pounamu in the country. Trade in this most precious taonga (treasure) was the key factor that influenced Māori settlement of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

The first written accounts of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* by Europeans resulted from the explorations of Charles Heaphy and Thomas Brunner in 1846, from Brunner's subsequent epic journey of 1846-8, and from the journeys of exploring geologist Julius von Haast in 1860 and 1865. The alluvial gold rushes of 1864-8 brought upwards of 30,000 people to the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, many of whom remained as permanent settlers turning their hands from gold mining to farming, sawmilling and coal mining. Much new country was explored by gold prospectors and later by surveyors like Charles Douglas and Gerhard Mueller. However, much of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* remains wild and inaccessible.

The character of the people of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has been shaped by the landscape they inhabit. Poutini Ngāi Tahu depended on the natural resources found here and later arrivals founded industries based on these resources, most of which are still important today. Many people live on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* because they value the lifestyle, the distinctive natural and cultural landscapes and

the opportunities these provide for tourism, recreation and adventure. It is, above all else, the distinctive features of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* that make it such a significant region for conservation in both an international and national context.

### **2.2.1.3 International conservation significance**

A number of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* landscapes and plant and animal communities have been identified as being of international conservation importance. In 1986 Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park was recognised as being worthy of World Heritage status and in 1990 this recognition was extended to all other protected areas on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* located south of the Whataroa River (see Map 3 *Te Wāhipounamu South-West New Zealand World Heritage Area*). World Heritage is a global concept that identifies natural and cultural sites of world significance, places so special that protecting them is of concern for all people. Some of the best examples of animals and plants, once found on the ancient supercontinent Gondwana, live in *Te Wāhipounamu South-West New Zealand World Heritage Area*. Aspects of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* that are regarded as being of international significance (i.e. meet the qualifying criteria for World Heritage status) are briefly identified below<sup>2</sup>.

#### ***Outstanding examples of major stages in the Earth's evolutionary history***

Virtually all landforms in the World Heritage Area, along with those elsewhere in the Conservancy, are a direct or indirect legacy of tectonic and Ice Age events that occurred during the past two million years. The most recent phases of advance and retreat of glaciers have left a sequence of landforms (e.g. straightened U-shaped valleys, moraine hills, large outwash plains, glacial lakes and dramatic coastal bluffs) that are among the very best examples of glacial processes in temperate regions of the world.

In this same category is what is described as New Zealand's 'Gondwana heritage'. About 80 million years ago New Zealand began breaking away from what was then left of the ancient southern super-continent of Gondwana to begin its long era of separate evolution. It was in a very real sense a 'Southern Ark' loaded with Gondwana plants and animals that continued to evolve free from the diluting influences that affected other pieces of this ancient continental jigsaw. Among New Zealand's foremost remaining links with its Gondwana past are its beech and podocarp families of trees. Both of these are found in other countries that were formerly part of ancient Gondwana but in the case of podocarp forests they are better represented and protected on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* of New Zealand than anywhere else.

#### ***Outstanding examples of ongoing geological processes***

Prominent West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* examples are the continued displacement occurring along the Alpine Fault which has separated the ultramafic rocks of South Westland's Red Hills Range from those in the Nelson area, and the fluctuations and landscape modifications of the larger glaciers today. The Alpine Fault is one of only four places in the world where segments of boundaries between the earth's great crustal plates occur on land<sup>3</sup>. The continued movement along this boundary attracts

---

2 Further information about *Te Wāhipounamu South-West New Zealand World Heritage Area* is available online at: <http://whc.unesco.org/en/list/551>

3 The others are the San Andreas Fault in California, the Andes in South America and the Himalaya foothills region.

widespread international attention. So too does the movement of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* valley glaciers, which are outstanding internationally for the extent to which they descend into the realms of temperate rainforest, for having very high rates of descent for alpine glaciers, and for being very sensitive to short-term climate change as well as changes occurring over longer periods.

### ***Outstanding examples of biological evolution***

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contains outstanding records of the development of soils and the processes of plant succession that have occurred in glacial landforms, including such features as the evidence of refuges for plants and animals during the Ice Ages. There is also evidence of the absence of refuges like that so graphically illustrated by the Central Westland 'beech gap'. The same is true of the system of parallel dunes that has built up along the outer edge of the Haast coastal plain over the past 6000 years, as a result of climatic fluctuations and/or tectonic activity, combined with massive sediment transport of local rivers on to the coast. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* remains a stronghold for many endemic New Zealand plants and animals including not only creatures like kiwi, kea and kākā but also large carnivorous land snails (*Powelliphanta* spp.), giant weta, geckos, skinks and freshwater fish. All are increasingly being recognised as just as uniquely 'New Zealand' as high-profile species like the kiwi. So too is the Conservancy's record of extinct species, especially its Paparoa and Ōpārara cave networks with their rich legacy of fossil and subfossil material.

### ***The most significant natural habitats where threatened species now live***

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* provides significant habitat for a range of threatened indigenous plants and animals. Habitat is considered to be internationally important if it contains a unique community of plants or animals, or an endangered species, or is habitat vital to the continued survival of a species in the wild, or has the potential to be practically restored to meet the above criteria (as is occurring at several priority sites for biodiversity management on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*).

### ***Superlative natural phenomena and areas of exceptional natural beauty***

Some of the features listed under other criteria, such as glaciers, unmodified karst areas and other aspects of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* landscapes, meet this criterion.

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation, Section 3.8.1 International Obligations, Part 4, Section 4.2.7.2 *Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area in 2020

### ***Wetlands of international importance***

The following wetlands and wetland complexes in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy are of international importance<sup>4</sup>: Karamea Estuary, Lake Christabel, North Westland Ecological Region Lakes Complex (Lakes Hochstetter, Ahaura, Haupiri, Brunner, Lady Lake and Kangaroo Lake), Groves Swamp and Harman Swamp, Shearer Swamp, Lake Ianthe, Whataroa Ecological Region Coastal Wetland Complex (Saltwater Lagoon, Waitangirotto Lagoon and Swamp, Ōkārīto Lagoon), Ohinetamatea Swamp, Tawharekiri Lakes, Burmeister Morass and Hermitage Swamp.

---

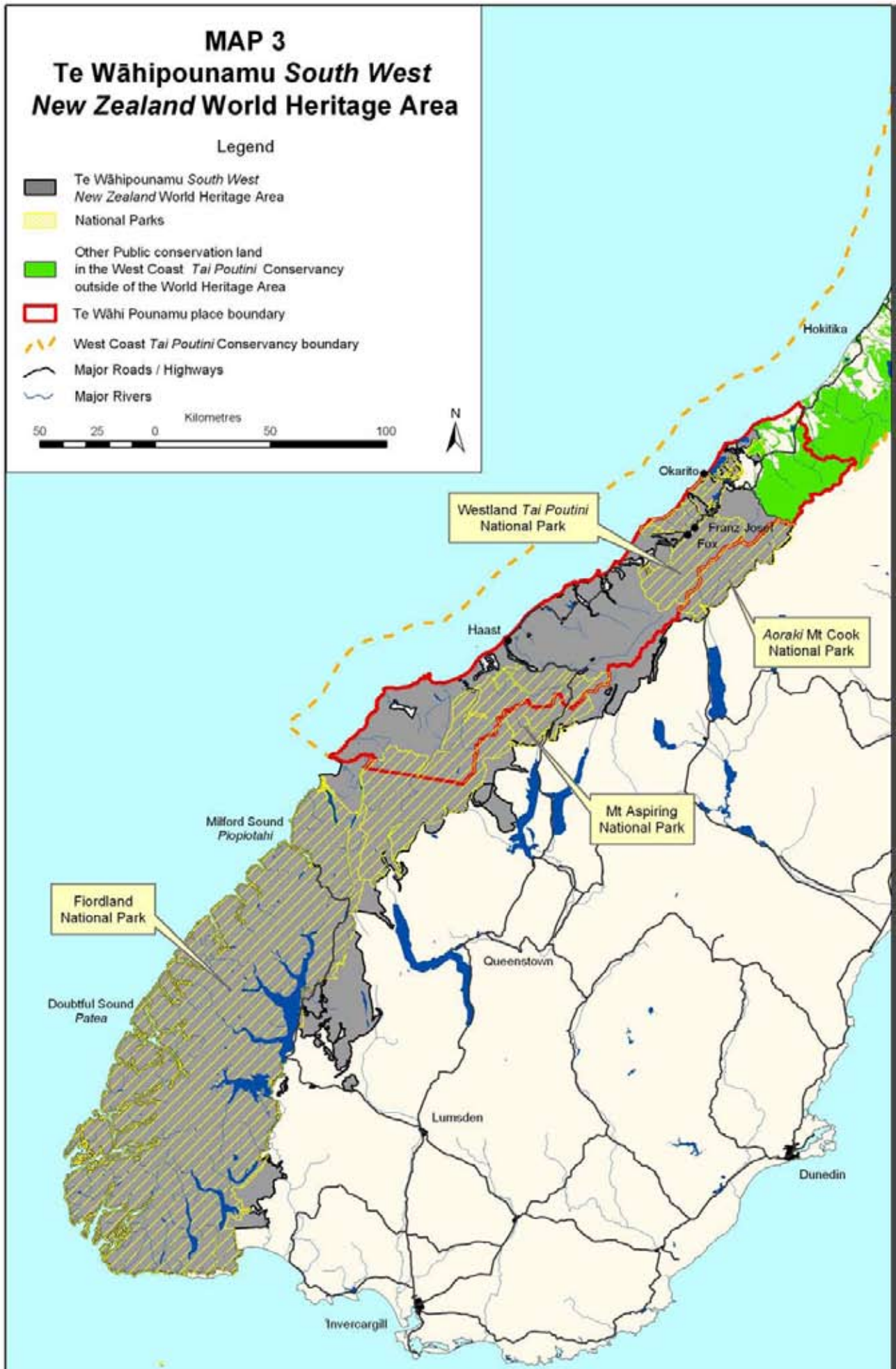
<sup>4</sup> Cromarty and Scott (1996) identified these wetlands and wetland complexes as meeting the criteria for international importance for designation under Article 2 of the Ramsar Convention.

# MAP 3 Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area

## Legend

-  Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area
-  National Parks
-  Other Public conservation land in the West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy outside of the World Heritage Area
-  Te Wāhi Pounamu place boundary
-  West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy boundary
-  Major Roads / Highways
-  Major Rivers

50 25 0 Kilometres 50 100



**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.1.4, 3.3.1.5 and 3.3.3.3)  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for freshwater ecosystems and specific wetlands)

#### **2.2.1.4 National conservation significance**

The national conservation significance of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is probably best illustrated by the fact that 5 of New Zealand's 14 national parks are wholly or partly located within the Conservancy. Lewis Pass National Reserve is also partially located within the Conservancy. The Conservancy's national significance is also reflected in the fact that it contains the highest proportion of protected land of any conservancy in the country. With 84% of the Conservancy's total land area gazetted under conservation legislation, it contains around one quarter of New Zealand's protected lands and freshwater areas.

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is distinctive for its wild landscapes, ecological communities and threatened species often once common in other parts of New Zealand but now either extinct or reduced to scattered remnants. Prominent among these are contiguous sequences of indigenous ecosystems stretching from mountains to sea, lowland forests, including dense podocarp forests, freshwater wetlands, coastal wetlands, forested lowland karst landscapes, and several high-profile threatened species. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is also outstanding nationally for a range of historical and cultural features. It is the principal source of pounamu (New Zealand greenstone or jade), and has a great historical legacy of gold and coal mining. It also has a large diversity of opportunities for backcountry recreation, particularly at the remote and wilderness end of the recreation opportunities spectrum.

The presence and extent of each of the above factors within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is today of major national significance for the following reasons:

##### **Marine ecosystems**

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine environment is of immense importance to commercial fisheries; an indication of its biological richness and significance. New Zealand's single largest fishery, the winter mid-water trawl fishery for spawning hoki, operates in an area where enormous numbers of fish and marine wildlife aggregate in the Hokitika Canyon and along the margins of the Challenger Plateau. The large numbers of predatory wildlife, including seals, dolphins, whales, and seabirds that live and breed on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are indicative of the rich ecosystem food web that is fed by the upwelling of temperate ocean currents from the Tasman Sea.

The marine environment also includes distinctive features such as rare and unusual species of fish and seaweeds, and has formed spectacular and geologically diverse coastal landscapes. It is one of the few regions of New Zealand that is effectively devoid of marine pests such as introduced *Undaria* spp., and is largely isolated from future invasions of such species.

More details about these and other marine features of the West Coast can be found in Neale *et al* (2007).

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.1.6 to 3.3.1.8 and 3.3.3.4)  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and Section 4.2.8 Desired outcome for the Marine Place.

### ***Coastal wetlands***

Estuaries and their margins are among New Zealand's most modified ecosystems and while the country has many large estuaries very few of these have managed to survive in a substantially natural condition. The large Ōkārīto Lagoon is one of the most naturally intact large estuaries on the main islands of New Zealand and this, along with many smaller coastal lagoons and estuarine areas at the mouths of rivers and streams, makes the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* an important region for natural coastal wetlands.

**See also** Section 2.2.1.3 Wetlands of international importance

### ***Freshwater wetlands***

Like lowland forests, swamps and other types of freshwater wetlands once occupied much larger areas of low-lying New Zealand than they do now. Since European settlement approximately 90% of former freshwater wetlands in New Zealand have been drained and cleared for land development (Ausseil *et al*, 2008). South Westland *Weheka* is the only area in the country where large unmodified areas of freshwater wetlands are still widespread today. Freshwater wetlands are one of the most productive of all natural ecosystems and as such the freshwater wetlands of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* generally, and of South Westland *Weheka* in particular, are of huge national significance (Cromarty & Scott, 1996).

**See also** Section 2.2.1.3 Wetlands of international importance

### ***Freshwater rivers***

A preliminary national assessment undertaken by Chadderton *et al* (2004) attempted to identify the most natural and representative river systems that contain a reasonably comprehensive range of New Zealand's freshwater ecosystems, communities and species, including threatened species, on the basis that these catchments contribute most to New Zealand's remaining freshwater biodiversity. Better information may become available over the life of the CMS and will be considered accordingly.

Rivers in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy whose entire catchments were classified as potentially nationally significant include: the Heaphy River, Karamea River, Mokihinui River, Buller *Kawatiri* River, Grey River headwaters, Maruia River, Ahaura River, Fox River, Hokitika River, Ōkārīto River and Cockabulla Creek, Cook River, Karangarua River, Paringa River, Haast River (includes Landsborough River), Okuru River, Turnbull River, Waitoto River, Arawhata River and Cascade River.

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.1.4, 3.3.1.5 and 3.3.3.3)

Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for freshwater ecosystems and specific rivers)

### ***Karst landscapes***

There are many karst areas in New Zealand but because the soils that develop in limestone areas tend to be very fertile, most lowland karst landscapes have been modified for productive purposes. The Paparoa and Ōpārara karst areas of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* have, in contrast, retained much of their natural character, including forest cover. Along with their highly distinctive landforms, including

numerous caves, these are now the best examples of unmodified lowland karst in New Zealand.

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.1.4, 3.3.1.5, 3.3.3.3 and 3.3.4)  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for freshwater ecosystems and specific cave and karst areas)

### ***Coal plateau landscapes***

In the coastal hills just north of the Buller *Kawatiri* River are the elevated coal measure plateaux - windswept areas that are often under snow in winter and frequently fog bound. The Buller coal plateaux (i.e. Denniston and Stockton plateaux) comprise a nationally outstanding natural landscape<sup>5</sup>. The plateaux contain by far the largest occurrence of Brunner coal measures in New Zealand and have the greatest diversity of vegetation types on coal measures. Its ecosystems are defined by the presence of extensive coal measure rocks and associated landforms and vegetation (McEwen 1987). While some of the animal and plant communities of the plateaux are found elsewhere, some *Powelliphanta* snail populations and the communities containing the endemic coal measure tussock *Chionochloa juncea* are confined to these plateaux and are internationally unique (Walker 2003). The particular combination of plant communities and associated landscapes present on these plateaux occurs nowhere else in New Zealand (Overmars *et al* 1998).

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.1.2, 3.3.1.3, 3.3.3.2 and 3.3.4)  
Part 4, Section 4.2.2 (see desired outcomes for the coal plateaux)

### ***Lowland forests***

A large proportion of the total amount of lowland forest remaining in New Zealand today is protected within West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands. In many other parts of the country there is virtually no lowland forest left to protect, especially on fertile coastal and alluvial sites. The years of human settlement and land-clearance have resulted in the loss of about 70% of New Zealand's forest (Fleet 1986; Leathwick *et al* 2003). Some specific forest types, particularly those in the lowlands, have suffered a much greater loss. In the case of kahikatea forest it is estimated that less than 2% now remains of what once existed nationally (Wardle 1991).

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* retains most of New Zealand's unmodified and regenerating kahikatea forest and some of the best examples of dense rimu terrace forest. These forests are also significant food sources for a number of indigenous forest bird species. However, even on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* some once common forest types, such as matai-tōtara forest, are now reduced to small and scattered remnants of their former range.

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.1.2, 3.3.1.3 and 3.3.3.2)  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for lowland forests)

---

5 A detailed assessment of Brunner and Paparoa coal measures outside the Buller coal plateaux was undertaken by the Department of Conservation (Appendix IX in Overmars *et al* 1998). Seventeen sites containing Brunner coal measures were identified. The assessment concluded that the Buller coal plateaux contain by far the largest occurrence of Brunner coal measures in New Zealand, with the greatest diversity of vegetation types on coal measures, and could thus be recognised as a nationally outstanding landscape in its entirety.

### ***Threatened, uncommon and endemic species***

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is home to a number of species that are threatened, uncommon or endemic to the Conservancy. Among those with a higher national profile are three of the six species of kiwi (i.e. great spotted kiwi *roroa*, rowi (Ōkārito brown kiwi) and Haast tokoeka, which are either confined to, or strongly centred on, the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*), as well as South Island kākā, kea, blue duck *whio*, yellowhead *mobua*, Westland petrel *taiko*, Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki*, scarlet mistletoe, shortjaw kōkopu and giant kōkopu *tatubarū*, a number of locally endemic *Powelliphanta* land snails and Hector's dolphin *aibe* – all of which have important populations within the Conservancy.

**See also** Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation (particularly Sections 3.3.2 and 3.3.3.5)  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for threatened species)

### ***Historical and cultural heritage***

The presence of pounamu is a culturally significant feature of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Pounamu is responsible for the cultural histories, endeavours, conquests, wars and events that have shaped tangata whenua, Poutini Ngāi Tahu, from their earliest history on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* to the present day. It is a source of mana, prestige, wealth and industry to Poutini Ngāi Tahu. Other cultural features in the landscape remind Poutini Ngāi Tahu of their tūpuna (ancestors) and their deeds and resulting responsibilities. Today Poutini Ngāi Tahu have an inherited responsibility to adhere to the tikanga, kawa, ritenga and karakia (cultural protocols) of their tūpuna.

In colonial history, the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* experienced some of the country's biggest gold rushes and several ambitious industrial ventures (e.g. coal mining, timber milling), leaving an extensive legacy of historic mining sites, settlements, structures and trails. Most of these industries are still operative today. Air transport and whitebaiting are also of historical importance.

**See also** Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for historical and cultural heritage)

### ***Recreational opportunities***

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contains several of the highest and most rugged mountain ranges in the country, and many 'wild' valleys, including the Cascade, Arawhata, Waiatoto, Landsborough, Douglas, Cook and Karamea. These mountains are of cultural and spiritual significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu. The network of huts, tracks and transalpine traverses maintained by the Department, plus the extent of wild and remote places, provide a wide scope for backcountry, remote experience and wilderness recreation, including coastal wilderness travel.

**See also** Chapter 3.6 Recreation and Tourism (particularly Section 3.6.1)  
Part 4, Chapters 4.1 and 4.2 (see desired outcomes for recreation and tourism)



# Part 3

## Management Objectives and Policies



Rowi chick  
Photo by: Mark Jones and Tui De Roy



## 3.0 MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND POLICIES

Public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are valued for the intrinsic qualities of their natural heritage (such as natural landscapes, landforms, geology, waterbodies and indigenous biodiversity) and historical and cultural heritage and the wide range of recreational opportunities they provide. Under the Conservation Act 1987 and other legislation administered by the Department, management of all public conservation lands should protect and preserve these values. The desired future condition of these conservation values is described in Part 4 of this CMS. Part 3 outlines how the Department intends to achieve the outcomes presented within Part 4. The objectives and policies presented within Part 3 apply across the whole Conservancy (see Part 1, Chapter 1.4).

Part 3 is divided into eight management themes that apply across the entire Conservancy, as summarised below:

### **Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua**

The Crown's Treaty responsibilities require the Department to work in partnership with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu as the tangata whenua of all of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, aside from a small piece of land in Kahurangi National Park which is within the rohe of Te Tau Ihu Iwi. The Department aims to continue working towards building and enhancing practical on-the-ground relationships with both Papatipu Rūnanga (Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio) and with the iwi authority, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi in its work.

### **Relationships with People and Organisations**

The Department must work closely with people and organisations. The goals of this CMS cannot be achieved without public support. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy therefore seeks to maintain close liaison and working relationships with local communities, local authorities, landowners, local and national conservation, environmental and recreation groups, the tourism industry, statutory agencies, industry, resource users, utility providers, associates and interest groups, and the New Zealand public in general.

### **Natural Heritage Conservation**

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has retained most of its natural character, in contrast to many other regions of New Zealand. It is a place dominated by mountains, glaciers, forests, lakes, flowing waters and large stretches of wild coastline.

Although the character of the pre-human past is still widely evident in much of the natural landscape, there have been significant changes. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contains the largest areas of lowland forest and wetland left in the country. However, forests and wetlands are now virtually absent on the fertile alluvial flats of the main river valleys and the low-lying coastal districts north of the Cook River *Weheka*. Matai-tōtara forest is rare. Kōwhai-ribbonwood forest is rare. Mistletoes are declining. Significant stands of kahikatea forest are generally confined to the south. Native birds and invertebrates have been decimated by introduced predators like

stoats, ship rats, kiore, feral cats and roaming dogs, and native forests and alpine vegetation are under sustained attack by possums, deer, tahr, chamois, goats and hares. Many indigenous species have become extinct (either locally or nationally), and many others are threatened with the same fate.

It is important for the Department, the people of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and New Zealanders in general to be fully aware that, despite many notable achievements in the past, the task of conservation on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is a work in progress. There are still many plant and animal species in this Conservancy whose future is uncertain. The fact that some of the more significant threats defy measures taken to control them prevents the Department from feeling any sense of complacency about its future mission on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, in respect of threatened species. There is also work to be done to achieve adequate protection of a representative sample of natural ecosystems outside existing protected areas, especially in the more modified parts of the Conservancy, and to promote practices that conserve natural heritage on all lands and waters on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. There is the increasingly urgent question of protection of the marine environment. The marine environment is an important and integral component of the natural heritage of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* but, as at 2010, no part of the open coast or sea has been legally protected for conservation purposes.

### **Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation**

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has a history of Māori occupation dating back at least 700 years, and European and other non-Māori occupation dating back 150 years.

Protection of historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation lands is the main focus for the Department's work on historic resources. The exact number of historic places within public conservation lands in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is unknown but is in the order of 900. The Conservancy actively manages many historic places. Although some do not require active management, all are vulnerable to natural deterioration and many are vulnerable to human-induced threats. Research and inventory work needs to be undertaken to identify, assess and document all historic places remaining in the Conservancy, and consequently to determine whether the suite of actively managed sites provides the best representative sample of the different types of historic resources present in the Conservancy's public conservation lands.

Working with the Historic Places Trust and interest groups and advocating for the protection of significant historical and cultural heritage on land beyond public conservation lands, are other important areas of ongoing work.

### **Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Land**

Conservation legislation provides for people to use public conservation lands in a manner compatible with the protection of conservation values and enjoyment by other people. The Department, via delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation, is able to authorise appropriate private and commercial use of public conservation lands through a concession<sup>5</sup> or some other form of authorisation (e.g. an access arrangement under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 for mining). Chapter 3.5 provides general guidance for all authorised uses, while specific guidance is provided

---

<sup>5</sup> A concession means a lease, licence, permit or easement issued under Part 3B of the Conservation Act, and includes any activity authorised by a concession document.

in Chapter 3.6 about recreation and tourism concessions and in Chapter 3.7 about other types of authorised uses.

### **People's Benefit and Enjoyment**

The full spectrum of recreational opportunities is available on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands, ranging from short-stop opportunities suitable for passing travellers or inexperienced recreationists through to multi-day opportunities suitable for experienced adventurers who prefer backcountry, remote or wilderness destinations. A wide range of facilities is provided throughout the Conservancy to cater for differing user needs.

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is a key destination for tourists. In 2004, international and domestic travellers made a total of 2.26 million visits to West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (Tourism Research Council New Zealand 2006). International overnight travellers accounted for 787,900 (34.8%) of these visits, domestic overnight travellers 722,500 (31.9%), international day travellers 291,800 (12.9%) and domestic day travellers 460,500 (20.4%). International visitor numbers are expected to increase during the term of this CMS. This will put pressure on existing facilities and may create new demands. For example, the Conservancy has few 'backcountry comfort seeker' facilities (such as the Heaphy Track) but backcountry comfort seeker facilities are becoming more popular with international visitors. Increases in user numbers may have negative impacts on other people and natural, historical and cultural values if not managed carefully. Managing the increasing requirements of commercial tourist operations in public conservation lands is a significant issue that must be addressed.

### **Other Use of Public Conservation Lands**

A number of other activities take place on public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, many of which are important for the regional infrastructure and economy including the harvesting of sphagnum moss, gravel take, grazing, provision of utilities and large-scale mining. All applications for other uses are considered in accordance with the relevant legislation and this CMS. Authorised uses are monitored to ensure that the adverse effects of these activities are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

### **Other Management Responsibilities**

The Department has several other management responsibilities in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, including obligations relating to international agreements, statutory land management (acquisition, non-regulatory protection mechanisms, exchange, disposal, and classification of land), statutory advocacy, public access to conservation land, national park and conservation management plans, compliance and law enforcement, and fire prevention and control.

## **3.1 WORKING IN PARTNERSHIP WITH TANGATA WHENUA**

The New Zealand courts have indicated that the Treaty of Waitangi has created a relationship akin to a partnership between the Crown and Māori. Each party is obliged to act towards the other honourably and co-operatively. The Crown must make informed decisions to avoid actions that create further grievances and prevent redress. The Treaty principles include notions of reasonableness, awareness of the

other Treaty partner's views, willingness to consider those views, fairness and good faith and are set out in Chapter 2 of the Conservation General Policy 2005 and in more detail in Section 3.1.1. Treaty partnership involves the Department and Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu working together to ensure that the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are given effect to in all relevant aspects of conservation management within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, to the extent consistent with the Department's functions and the over-riding conservation purpose of the conservation legislation. Section 3.1.2 outlines objectives and policies relating to the Department's responsibilities under the Treaty of Waitangi. An overview of Poutini Ngāi Tahu association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (written by Ngāi Tahu) is presented in Appendix 1, providing background context to Section 3.1.2. Section 3.1.3 includes objectives and policies relating to the Department's responsibilities under Ngāi Tahu Settlement legislation. The chapter ends with Section 3.1.4, which contains objectives and policies relating to the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997.

### 3.1.1 Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi

The Conservation Act 1987 and all the Acts listed in its First Schedule "*shall so be interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi*" (section 4, Conservation Act 1987). Where, however, there is clearly an inconsistency between the provisions of any of these Acts and the principles of the Treaty, the provisions of the relevant Act will apply. Specific provisions in the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 are also relevant. The consequence of the implementation of Treaty-related legislation by the Department and other agencies with statutory powers under the Conservation Act 1987 and related legislation is that Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, as a Treaty partner, have an acknowledged range of roles in statutory and administrative processes reflecting their interests, and an evolving range of relationships with the Department and others.

The New Zealand Courts have determined that the Crown's obligations to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi include notions of reasonableness, awareness of other Treaty parties' views, willingness to accommodate those views, fairness and good faith. These principles are still evolving but the following represent a summary:

**Kāwanatanga (Article I of the Treaty):** The authority to make laws for the good order and security of the country.

**Tino Rangatiratanga (Article II of the Treaty, Māori version):** The right of Māori to exercise traditional authority and control over their land, resources and taonga.

**Exclusive and Undisturbed Possession (Article II of the Treaty – English version):** The right of Māori to exclusive and undisturbed possession of their land, forests, estates and fisheries.

**Ōritetanga (Article III of the Treaty, both versions):** The right of Māori and non-Māori alike to equality of treatment and the privileges and responsibilities of citizenship.

**Kaitiakitanga (Duty of guardianship/custodianship/stewardship):** The right of Māori to undertake their duty of kaitiakitanga over their land and resources and taonga of significance to them.

**Whakawhanaungatanga (Partnership and relationships):** The Treaty provides for a partnership between Māori and the Crown, which requires the parties to afford each other reasonable co-operation and utmost good faith, in accordance with their Treaty obligations.

**Tautiaki ngangahau (Duty of active protection):** The duty of the Crown to ensure the active protection of taonga for as long as Māori so wish it.

**He here kia mōhio (Duty to be informed):** The duty of the Crown to make informed decisions.

**Whakatika i te mea hē (Duty of redress):** The duty of the Crown to remedy past breaches of the Treaty and to prevent further breaches.

### 3.1.2 Treaty Partnership in Action

The Department's West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is responsible for the management of approximately 1.912 million hectares of land, which contains wāhi tapu (sacred sites), urupā (burial sites), awa (rivers), maunga (mountains), ngahere (forests), indigenous species, moana (sea or large lakes), toka (rocks) and papa kāinga (village). In the management and care of these taonga, the Department wants to work closely and actively with its Treaty partner, Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, to facilitate the active participation of tangata whenua in conservation management at both the local and national level.

The Department and Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu have similar objectives in conservation management - protecting and enhancing what is special about New Zealand for future generations and fostering people's benefit and enjoyment of public conservation lands. The Ngāi Tahu settlement legislation provides a foundation for the Crown and Ngāi Tahu to work together to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. The objectives and policies presented herein give further direction to the Department for building and strengthening an effective partnership with its Treaty partner.

Ongoing and regular communication is fundamental to the maintenance of a good partnership relationship. In maintaining this communication, kanohi ki te kanohi (face to face) communication is especially valued by Poutini Ngāi Tahu. Both Papatipu Rūnanga currently meet regularly with West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy and Area staff. These meetings serve as good forums for information exchange, raising issues of concern, getting advice and monitoring the progress of business plan projects. Formal meetings are also held with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae, Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu at least once a year to discuss the Conservancy's business plan. This meeting includes reviewing progress on projects that Ngāi Tahu have advocated in the previous year for a range of outcomes that they would like to see the Department deliver, and enabling Ngāi Tahu to have input into the coming year's business plan.

Section 3.1.2 outlines how the Department intends to work with tangata whenua in order to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (see Section 3.1.1), when interpreting and administering legislation. Some of the policies in this section involve implementation of the protocols presented in Appendix 2. In order to have regard to kaitiakitanga, and to ensure that Poutini Ngāi Tahu views and values are considered, consultation will be undertaken with the appropriate Papatipu Rūnanga: Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and/or Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio, and with Te Rūnanga

o Ngāi Tahu. For consultation purposes arising from this CMS, initial contact should be through the Papatipu Rūnanga who act as kaitiaki over the area concerned. The rohe of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio are described in Appendix 1, Section 1.1 and illustrated on Map 2.

### **3.1.2.1 Treaty of Waitangi relationships**

The following objective and policies apply to all parts of this CMS.

#### **OBJECTIVE**

- 1. To give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi when interpreting and administering conservation legislation.**

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. Relationships with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be maintained and strengthened, to enhance conservation. These relationships should be based on mutual good faith, co-operation and respect.**
- 2. Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be consulted when statutory planning documents (such as conservation management plans and national park management plans) are being developed. Information will be made available to facilitate their contributions.**
- 3. Papatipu Rūnanga and, where required, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be consulted on specific proposals that involve places or resources of spiritual or historical and cultural significance to them.**
- 4. Consultation with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu will be early, ongoing, informed and effective<sup>6</sup>.**
- 5. The Department will continue to work with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to develop and implement appropriate consultation processes<sup>6</sup>, including methods for determining and consulting on conservation issues of importance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu.**
- 6. Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu involvement and participation in conservation on public conservation lands and waters will be encouraged and may be supported with information and technical advice.**

**See also** Section 2.1.2.1 Treaty partners  
Section 3.1.1 Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 2(a)-(j)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 2(a)-(j)

---

<sup>6</sup> The current “Guideline for Department of Conservation liaison with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga O Ngāi Tahu” will be used as a template for this process. The effectiveness of consultation can be monitored in meetings with Papatipu Runanaga and Te Rūnanga O Ngāi Tahu and in the review of these guidelines.



### 3.1.2.2 *Recognition of kaitiakitanga*

#### OBJECTIVES

1. To give recognition and effect to Poutini Ngāi Tahu values in conservation management, where consistent with legislation.
2. To continue to acknowledge and support Poutini Ngāi Tahu as the kaitiaki of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.
3. To support Papatipu Rūnanga in work undertaken with the Department.

#### POLICIES

1. Regular kanohi ki te kanohi (face to face) meetings will be held between Conservancy and Area staff, Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to work through strategic issues, such as development or review of the Conservancy's operational documents and annual business plans, and development or review of national strategy or policy; and between Area and Conservancy staff and Papatipu Rūnanga to work through day-to-day management issues at the Area level.
2. Traditional environmental management systems and techniques (mātauranga Ngāi Tahu) will be recognised and may be incorporated, where practicable and appropriate, in conservation management (e.g. rāhui).
3. Opportunities for Departmental staff to increase their understanding of Poutini Ngāi Tahu values and mātauranga Ngāi Tahu relating to conservation management will be identified and promoted.
4. Opportunities for Poutini Ngāi Tahu to increase their understanding of the conservation legislation and Departmental conservation management systems and techniques will be identified and promoted.
5. The Department will support Papatipu Rūnanga conservation projects, with information and technical advice.

*See also* Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020  
Appendix 1: Section 1.4 Mātauranga Ngāi Tahu, Section 1.5 Rangatiratanga and Section 1.6 Kaitiaki

### 3.1.2.3 *Mahinga kai*

#### OBJECTIVES

1. To recognise the cultural importance of mahinga kai places and resources to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu where practicable and consistent with legislation.
2. To give effect to the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols, including those relating to Resource Management Act 1991 advocacy.

## POLICIES

1. The Department should work with Papatipu Rūnanga to protect mahinga kai and other cultural resources located within public conservation lands.
2. The Department should work with Papatipu Rūnanga to advocate for the protection of mahinga kai and other cultural resources located outside of public conservation lands, in circumstances where advocacy issues and priorities are of mutual concern.
3. The Department may assist Papatipu Rūnanga, through the provision of information and technical advice, to increase their effectiveness in advocacy for the protection of mahinga kai and other cultural resources located outside of public conservation lands, e.g. in their role as participants in local authority planning processes (see Section 3.8.3).
4. The Department will consult with Papatipu Rūnanga and notify Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on proposed land disposals, exchanges, land status changes and administering body changes within the Conservancy (see Section 3.8.2).

*See also* Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation

Section 3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems

Section 3.7.7 Military use

Section 3.7.9 Research, collection and Wildlife Act permits

Section 3.8.2 Statutory land management

Section 3.8.3 Statutory advocacy

Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

Appendix 1, Section 1.8 Mahinga kai and customary use

Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols

### 3.1.2.4 *Ritenga tāonga tuku ibo - Customary use*

Applications can be made for the customary use of animals and plants under the Conservation Act 1987, the National Parks Act 1980, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Reserves Act 1977. Through the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, Ngāi Tahu Whānui do not require a permit to hold specimens (dead bodies or parts of them) that are protected by the Wildlife Act 1953. Permits are required to hold whale bone and take plant materials and clays from public conservation lands. Permits are required to take native fish from reserves and national parks. The Department works with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to develop and implement guidelines for the allocation of cultural materials. Policies relating to mining of pounamu, which is owned by Ngāi Tahu, are outlined in Section 3.1.4 Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997.

## OBJECTIVES

1. To give effect to the customary use of natural resources by Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, consistent with kaitiakitanga, the relevant legislation, regulations and general policies, and the purposes for which the land is held.
2. To give effect to the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to cultural materials, freshwater

fisheries, and culling of species of interest to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu (see Appendix 2).

## **POLICIES**

- 1. The cultural material application process developed by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Department will be implemented in order to give effect to the Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to cultural materials.**
- 2. Cultural materials which have come into the Department's possession will be held in a cultural materials bank, or elsewhere as agreed by the Department, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga, for allocation.**
- 3. The Department will:**
  - a) maintain a register of cultural materials (e.g. birds, timber) that become available for cultural use and make this information available to Papatipu Rūnanga on a regular basis;
  - b) work with Papatipu Rūnanga to establish which dead specimens are priorities for cultural use and inform the public on how to forward these dead specimens to the Department for storage in the cultural materials bank;
  - c) work with Papatipu Rūnanga to develop and implement guidelines that help define levels of customary use of cultural materials, and set conditions, after consideration of tikanga, to be met for gathering;
  - d) where reasonably practicable, agree to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu having access to cultural materials which become available as a result of earthworks, mining operations or track or road maintenance or clearance; and
  - e) support and encourage Papatipu Rūnanga in the identification of local sources of plants and provide advice to Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu with respect to the establishment of cultivation sites (e.g. harakeke may be used for weaving, rongoa (medicinal plants) for healing).
- 4. The Department should work with Papatipu Rūnanga on cultural material protection, taking and use (e.g. appropriate methods for cutting flax harakeke during track clearance work etc), and in the recovery of materials from dead marine mammals (see Section 3.3.3.4).**
- 5. A system should be developed with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu that allows Papatipu Rūnanga and named Ngāi Tahu Whānui to hold long-term/ongoing permits for culturally significant resources (e.g. kiekie) at particular sites, as appropriate.**
- 6. Permits for shooting birds (such as "nuisance" birds at airports etc) should include a condition stating that, where practicable, Papatipu Rūnanga will be notified prior to the event, to enable them to access the materials for cultural use.**
- 7. Papatipu Rūnanga initiatives to manage the customary take of whitebait and protect the indigenous freshwater fisheries in the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* should be supported. Papatipu Rūnanga involvement in the**

**Department's efforts to preserve indigenous freshwater fisheries and protect freshwater fish habitat should also be sought. (see Section 3.3.3.3)**

**8. Customary take of eels and other indigenous freshwater fish may be provided for within reserves where:**

- a) the effects of harvest are reasonably well understood and are unlikely to have a significant impact on indigenous species or ecosystems within those waters; and
- b) the activity is consistent with any conservation management plan for that area; and
- c) it is not contrary to section 50 of the Reserves Act 1977 (see Section 3.3.3.3).

**9. Non-commercial customary take of eels and other indigenous freshwater fish within national parks requires written consent from the Minister and may be authorised on a case-by-case basis in accordance with Policy 4.4(f), General Policy for National Parks 2005:**

*See also* Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
Section 3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.13 Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)  
Section 3.7.9 Research, collection and Wildlife Act permits  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020  
Appendix 1, Section 1.8 Mahinga kai and customary use  
Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 2(g), 4.1(e)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 2(g), 4.4(f)

**3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga**

**OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga located within public conservation lands, and/or the values associated with them, from natural threats and adverse effects of use or management, where practicable and appropriate.**
- 2. To give effect to the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to historic resources and Resource Management Act 1991 advocacy.**

**POLICIES**

- 1. Any work undertaken by the Department or others in respect to wāhi tapu and Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands will be undertaken in partnership with the relevant Papatipu Rūnanga.**
- 2. The Department will work with Papatipu Rūnanga to ensure that methods and processes are put in place to proactively protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga sites located within public conservation lands from human disturbance. Procedures for the management of wāhi tapu will acknowledge the customary and Treaty rights of Poutini Ngāi Tahu.**
- 3. The Department recognises that non-disclosure of locations of important places or information relating to those places is a practice sometimes used**

by Poutini Ngāi Tahu to preserve the sanctity of a place. The Department will work with Papatipu Rūnanga to ensure that processes are in place to protect areas of special spiritual significance and information relating to Māori archaeological sites, wāhi tapu and other wāhi taonga.

4. When there are issues of mutual concern, the Department may support Papatipu Rūnanga advocacy under the Resource Management Act 1991 in respect to protection of wāhi tapu sites located outside of public conservation lands, in accordance with the Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to Resource Management Act advocacy.

*See also* Section 3.1.2.6 Management of historical and cultural heritage  
Section 3.1.2.7 Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020  
Appendix 1, Section 1.13 Wāhi tapu / wāhi taonga  
Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols

### **3.1.2.6 Management of historical and cultural heritage**

Much of the historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation lands is of cultural and spiritual significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu. Effective relationships with Papatipu Rūnanga and Poutini Ngāi Tahu hapū or whanau are essential in all aspects of management of these historic places.

#### **POLICIES**

1. The Department should consult with Poutini Ngāi Tahu regarding historic work generally, to ensure that their interests are recognised.
2. The Department will work with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to ensure that the Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to historic resources are being given effect to in the day-to-day management of historical and cultural heritage of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu (see also the relevant Papatipu Rūnanga natural resources management plan).
3. Papatipu Rūnanga should be made aware of all information held by the Department about Māori archaeological sites on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and have access to this information.
4. The Department should work with Poutini Ngāi Tahu in the management of sites of historical or cultural significance to them, where they are located within public conservation lands, including archaeological investigation, protection, conservation and interpretation.
5. The Department should work with Papatipu Rūnanga to identify priority sites of historical and/or cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu within public conservation lands, and work together to address management needs, such as further survey, research, active management or recovery work.
6. The Department should work with Poutini Ngāi Tahu to develop co-operative projects covering a range of options for the management of historic places of significance to them.

7. The Department may support and cooperate with Poutini Ngāi Tahu in Māori history projects that they have initiated which relate to public conservation lands.
8. The Department may support, with information and technical advice, Papatipu Rūnanga, where appropriate, in the active management or recovery of information and/or artifacts at sites located within and adjacent to public conservation lands (e.g. coastal sites at risk from erosion).
9. The Department should support, with information and technical advice, Poutini Ngāi Tahu in advocacy for protection of historic places located beyond public conservation lands, where this is of mutual interest to both parties.

*See also* Section 3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga  
 Section 3.1.2.7 Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation  
 Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
 Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020  
 Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 5(c)

### **3.1.2.7 Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation**

#### **OBJECTIVES**

1. To ensure that all cultural interpretation provided by the Department in relation to West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands is culturally appropriate and accurate.
2. To ensure that appropriate Departmental processes support Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in providing cultural interpretation.
3. To encourage concessionaires who intend to provide cultural interpretation as part of their concession activity to use information that is culturally appropriate and accurate.
4. To give effect to the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to historic resources and visitor and public information.

#### **POLICIES**

1. Public information and cultural interpretation, where it refers to places or resources of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, should be developed with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. It should include Māori place and species names, make appropriate use of te reo Māori, and draw attention to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values. The Department will consult with, and where appropriate enter into agreements with, Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu about the provision of Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation relating to West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands.

2. **The Department will consult Papatipu Rūnanga in a timely manner when undertaking interpretation projects requiring their input. Where necessary, the Department may enter into a contract with Papatipu Rūnanga, to supply Poutini Ngāi Tahu interpretation.**
3. **When the Minister grants concessions that seek to use or promote Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural information, the Minister will encourage the concessionaire to consult the relevant Papatipu Rūnanga before using that information. The standard conditions for cultural interpretation will be attached to every relevant concession (see Chapter 3.5).**
4. **Concession applicants will be made aware of cultural interpretation resources that the Department has developed with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu.**
5. **The Department will work with other relevant conservancies and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to develop and implement guidelines relating to the use of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu knowledge of places of historic significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu, including the use of this information by the Department, in accordance with the Deed of Settlement's Department of Conservation Protocols in relation to visitor and public information.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga  
 Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
 Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.3.2 Provision of recreation services  
 Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020  
 Appendix 1, Section 1.15 Cultural interpretation  
 Appendix 2 - Department of Conservation Protocols

### **3.1.3 Responsibilities under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998**

Section 3.1.3 presents background information on some of the mechanisms in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. These mechanisms directly affect how the Department manages parts of particular public conservation lands within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy<sup>7</sup>. They are all directed at providing Ngāi Tahu with meaningful input into Departmental decision-making and relate to specified aspects of management and administration of certain areas of land and species which affect Ngāi Tahu's interests. These 'cultural redress' elements of the Settlement are aimed at helping re-establish Ngāi Tahu's strong connection to the land and its taonga, as described in Appendix 1. Approximate locations of tōpuni, statutory adviser sites, deed of recognition areas and nohoanga entitlement sites are presented on Map 4. References to, and extracts from, the relevant parts of the Ngāi Tahu settlement legislation are provided in Appendix 3. The following objective relates to each of the policies presented in this section:

---

<sup>7</sup> This is not a comprehensive account of all the provisions of the the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. For more complete information, the Act itself should be consulted.

## OBJECTIVE

- 1. To give effect to the Department's obligations under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.**

### 3.1.3.1 Tōpuni

The concept of tōpuni derives from the traditional Ngāi Tahu tikanga (custom) of persons of rangatira (chiefly) status extending their mana and protection over a person or area by placing their cloak over them or it. In its new application a tōpuni confirms and places an overlay of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values on specific pieces of land managed by the Department. A tōpuni does not over-ride or alter the existing land status (e.g. national park), but ensures that Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values are also recognised, acknowledged and provided for. In the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, tōpuni have been placed over Kahurangi [Point] in Kahurangi National Park, Ōtūkoro Iti near Kahurangi Point and Tititea (Mt Aspiring) in Mt Aspiring National Park. A tōpuni involves three levels of information:

- A statement of the Ngāi Tahu values in relation to the area.
- A set of principles aimed at ensuring that the Department avoids harming or diminishing those values.
- Specific actions which the Director General of Conservation has agreed to undertake to give effect to those principles.

The extracts relating to each of these are included in Appendix 3. The Department, the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board and the New Zealand Conservation Authority must have particular regard for these values and principles when developing any policy, strategy or plan affecting a tōpuni area, and must consult with Poutini Ngāi Tahu and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views as to the effect of that policy, strategy or plan on the Ngāi Tahu values.

## POLICIES

- 1. Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu may erect and maintain a pou whenua within the Kahurangi Tōpuni.**
- 2. The Department will consult and work with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga regarding implementation of the specific principles and actions relating to the Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea (Mount Aspiring) Tōpuni areas (see Appendix 3).**

### 3.1.3.2 *Statutory Advisor sites*

The appointment of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu as Statutory Adviser for a site enables Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to have greater input to the management of that site. The Minister of Conservation must have particular regard to any advice received directly from Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in relation to a Statutory Adviser site when considering any draft CMS, conservation management plan or national park management plan affecting that site, or when making written recommendations to the New Zealand Conservation Authority in respect of that site. Sites for which Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu has a Statutory Adviser role in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy are Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti, Lake Mahināpua and Tititea (Mt Aspiring).



## MAP 4

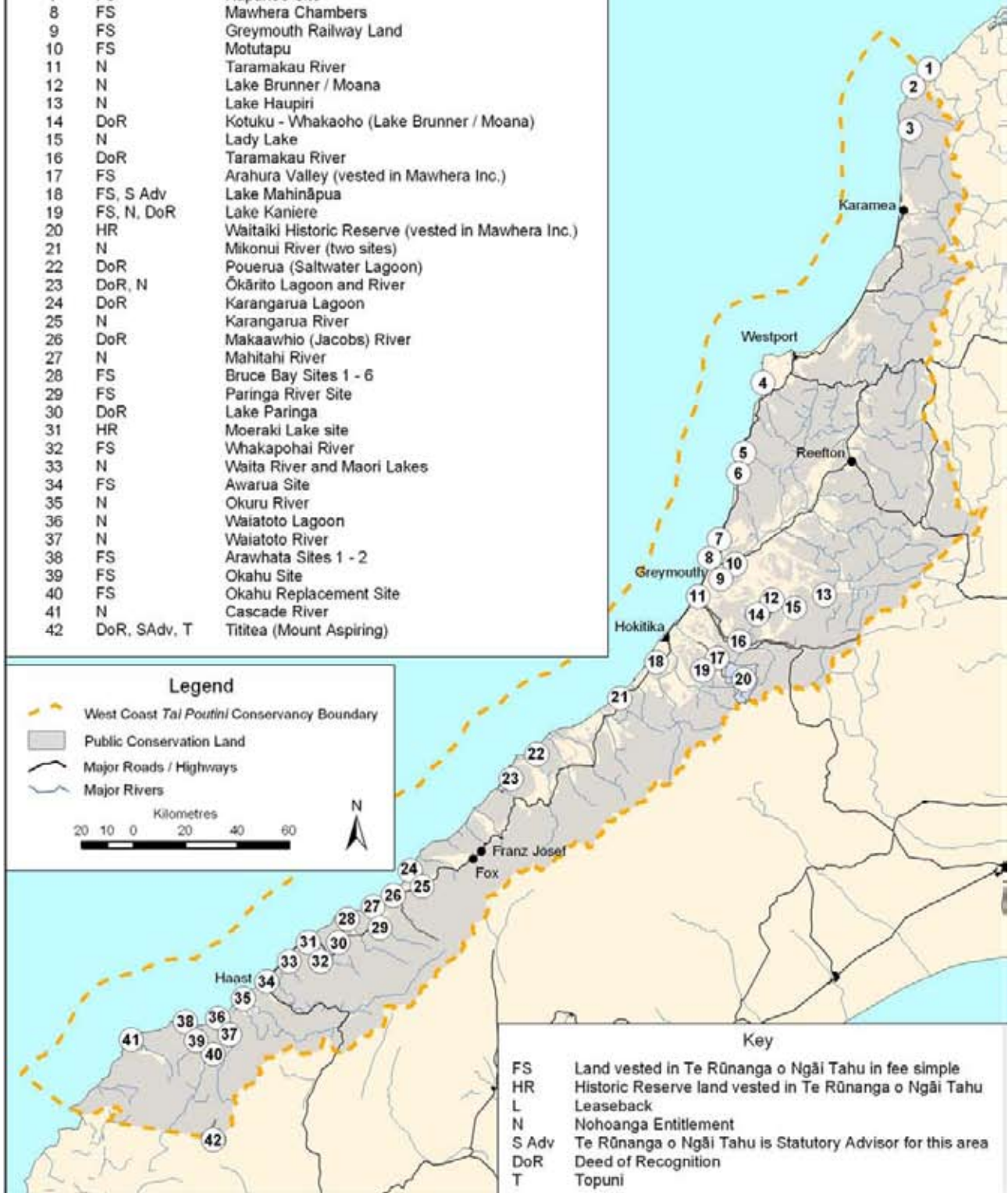
### Location of sites of cultural redress identified in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

Number	Key	Site Name
1	T, S Adv	Kahurangi
2	HR, T, S Adv	Ōtūkoro Ihi
3	FS, L	Whakapoai land
4	DoR	Ōkari Lagoon
5	N	Pororari River
6	N	Punakaiki River
7	FS	Rapahoe Site
8	FS	Mawhera Chambers
9	FS	Greymouth Railway Land
10	FS	Motutapu
11	N	Taramakau River
12	N	Lake Brunner / Moana
13	N	Lake Haupiri
14	DoR	Kotuku - Whakaoho (Lake Brunner / Moana)
15	N	Lady Lake
16	DoR	Taramakau River
17	FS	Arahura Valley (vested in Mawhera Inc.)
18	FS, S Adv	Lake Mahināpua
19	FS, N, DoR	Lake Kaniere
20	HR	Waitaiki Historic Reserve (vested in Mawhera Inc.)
21	N	Mikonui River (two sites)
22	DoR	Pouerua (Saltwater Lagoon)
23	DoR, N	Ōkārito Lagoon and River
24	DoR	Karangarua Lagoon
25	N	Karangarua River
26	DoR	Makaawhio (Jacobs) River
27	N	Mahitahi River
28	FS	Bruce Bay Sites 1 - 6
29	FS	Paringa River Site
30	DoR	Lake Paringa
31	HR	Moeraki Lake site
32	FS	Whakapohai River
33	N	Waita River and Maori Lakes
34	FS	Awarua Site
35	N	Okuru River
36	N	Waiatoto Lagoon
37	N	Waiatoto River
38	FS	Arawhata Sites 1 - 2
39	FS	Okahu Site
40	FS	Okahu Replacement Site
41	N	Cascade River
42	DoR, SAdv, T	Tititea (Mount Aspiring)

#### Legend

- West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy Boundary
- Public Conservation Land
- Major Roads / Highways
- Major Rivers

Kilometres  
20 10 0 20 40 60



#### Key

- FS Land vested in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in fee simple
- HR Historic Reserve land vested in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu
- L Leaseback
- N Nohoanga Entitlement
- S Adv Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is Statutory Advisor for this area
- DoR Deed of Recognition
- T Topuni

## POLICY

- 1. The Department will consult and work with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga over conservation management matters relating to the Kahurangi, Ōtūkoru Iti, Lake Mahināpua and Tititea (Mount Aspiring) Statutory Adviser sites, in accordance with sections 230-233 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.**

### **3.1.3.3 Deed of Recognition**

A Deed of Recognition provides for Ngāi Tahu input into the decision-making processes of the Crown body responsible for administration of each named area, which in the main is the Department<sup>8</sup>. A Deed of Recognition recognises Ngāi Tahu's historic, spiritual, cultural and traditional relationship with each area and the mana and tangata whenua status which results from that relationship. A Deed of Recognition creates an obligation on the Department to consult with Poutini Ngāi Tahu and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and to have particular regard to their views in relation to the management of each area.

There are 11 areas in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy that have a Deed of Recognition. They are: Ōkari Lagoon, Kotuku-Whakaoho (Lake Brunner/Moana), Taramakau River, Lake Mahināpua, Lake Kaniere, Pouera (Saltwater Lagoon), Ōkārīto Lagoon, Karangarua Lagoon, Makaawhio (Jacobs) River, Lake Paringa and Tititea (Mt Aspiring). The statements of Ngāi Tahu values and actions relating to these Deed of Recognition areas are included in Appendix 3.

## POLICY

- 1. The Department will consult and work with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga over implementation of the provisions in clauses 3.1–3.3 of the attachments to section 12 of the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 in relation to Deed of Recognition areas (see Appendix 3).**

### **3.1.3.4 Nohoanga**

The term nohoanga literally means 'a place to sit' and traditionally referred to the seasonal occupation sites which were an integral part of the mobile lifestyle of Ngāi Tahu tūpuna (ancestors) as they moved around Te Waipounamu in pursuit of various foods and other natural resources, such as pounamu. This traditional concept has been given contemporary effect in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 through the provision to Ngāi Tahu of 72 temporary campsites adjacent to lakes and rivers to facilitate customary fishing and gathering of other natural resources. Seventeen of these campsites are located within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy: Pororari River (no domestic animals), Punakaiki River (no domestic animals), Taramakau River, Lake Brunner *Kōtuku Whakaoho*, Lake Haupiri, Lady Lake (no domestic animals), Lake Kaniere (no domestic animals), Mikonui River (two sites: one site on north bank and one site on south bank), Ōkārīto Lagoon/River (single site; no domestic animals), Karangarua River and estuary (single site; no domestic animals), Mahitahi River (no domestic animals), Waita River and Māori [Tawhārekiri] Lakes (single site), Okuru River, Waiatoto Lagoon (two sites: one site on north bank and one site on south bank), and Cascade River (no domestic animals).

---

<sup>8</sup> In some cases the Deed of Recognition is with Land Information New Zealand (LINZ).

The nohoanga are entitlements to occupy, temporarily and exclusively, an area of lakeshore or riverbank for the purposes of lawful fishing and the gathering of other natural resources. The nohoanga may be used for up to 210 days each year between mid-August and the end of April. The nohoanga are approximately one hectare in size, are set back from marginal strips and are sited so as not to interfere with existing public access or use. They are subject to all legislation, bylaws, regulations and land and water management practices, such as weed, pest and river control. Since the settlement, some sites have been found to be unsuitable for their purpose (e.g. there is no practical access to the Ōkuru site). For this reason, replacement nohoanga entitlement sites are likely to be sought at some places.

Nohoanga provide Ngāi Tahu Whānui (individuals) with an opportunity to experience the landscape as their tūpuna did, and to rekindle the traditional practices of gathering food and other natural resources, so long an essential part of Ngāi Tahu culture.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department will seek to ensure that Ngāi Tahu access to the 17 nohoanga entitlement sites in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is unimpeded, and that these sites are managed in accordance with sections 255-268 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.**
- 2. The Department will work with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in the event that nohoanga entitlement exchanges are considered desirable due to the unsuitable nature of the current site.**

*See also* Schedule 95 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

### **3.1.3.5 Place name changes**

Place names are a significant symbol of Ngāi Tahu's relationship with the landscape. The following 26 place names in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy have been officially changed to dual English and Māori names in recognition of this: Cave Creek *Kotibotibo*, Ten Mile Creek *Waiantiwaniwa*, Nine Mile Creek *Kotorepi*, Seven Mile Creek *Waimatuku*, Grey River *Māwheranui*, Refuge Island *Takataka*, New River *Kaimata*, Greenstone River *Hokonui*, Mahināpua Creek *Tūwharewhare*, Island Hill *Tumuaki*, Rocky Point *Tauotikirangi*, The Doughboy *Kokiraki*, Mount Upright *Te Taumata o Uekanuku*, Mount Harman *Kaniere*, Browning Pass *Noti Raureka*, Lake Browning *Wbakarewa*, Lake Ianthe *Matabi*, Westland National Park *Tai Poutini National Park*, Alpine Lake *Ata Puai*, Franz Josef *Waiiau* (township), Cook River *Weheka*, Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* (glacier only), Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* (glacier only), Gillespies Point *Kōhahai*, Jackson Bay *Ōkahu* (Bay only), and Mount Aspiring *Tititea*.

## POLICY

- 1. The 26 dual English and Māori place names listed above will be used in any future maps, signage, interpretation or other publications provided by the Department about those sites.**

*See also* Schedule 96 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.  
Appendix 1, Section 1.14 Wāhi ingoa

### 3.1.3.6 *Taonga Species*

Through the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the Crown acknowledges the cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with some of their taonga (treasured) species. A number of plant, bird, fish, shellfish and marine mammal taonga species are listed in the Act (see Appendix 4), although this is not a comprehensive list of all of the species that are taonga to Poutini Ngāi Tahu. Many of the listed taonga species are threatened species which the Department is currently actively managing. The Act provides for greater Ngāi Tahu participation in the management of these taonga species, including involvement in some species recovery groups and consultation over species management. For example, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu has a representative on the national kiwi, Westland petrel *taiko* and weka recovery groups.

#### POLICIES

- 1. The Department will consult with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views when making decisions concerning the protection, management or conservation of the taonga species listed in Appendix 4, including the transfer of these taonga species to or from the Ngāi Tahu rohe.**
- 2. Opportunities that provide for the active involvement of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in taonga species management projects should be identified.**

*See also* Sections 293 and 294 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

### 3.1.3.7 *Department of Conservation Protocols*

Through the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the Minister of Conservation has issued protocols in relation to how the Department and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will work together on specified matters of cultural importance to Ngāi Tahu. The Act defines a protocol (in section 281) as “...a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which sets out: (a) how the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngāi Tahu claim area; and (b) how the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and provide for Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu input into its decision-making process”. The protocols issued to date cover cultural materials, historic resources, freshwater fisheries, culling of species, visitor and public information, and Resource Management Act 1991 advocacy. The protocols make general statements about how the Department should conduct work with Ngāi Tahu in these areas. The protocols also provide for Ngāi Tahu to have input into the Department’s annual business planning process. These protocols have been referred to in Part 3 where relevant and are presented in full in Appendix 2.

#### POLICY

- 1. The Department will consult and work with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga over implementation of all Department of Conservation protocols (see Appendix 2).**

### 3.1.4 Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997

The overall Ngāi Tahu claims settlement includes the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997 (“the Act”). The Act vested in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu all pounamu (otherwise known as greenstone, including all nephrite, semi nephrite, bowenite and specific serpentine resources) in its natural condition within the takiwā (tribal area) of Ngāi Tahu Whānui. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu subsequently executed a deed vesting in the Māwhera Incorporation all pounamu within the catchment area of the Arahura River. Pounamu is managed in accordance with the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan and the local Papatipu Rūnanga pounamu management plans, which are currently in development.

The Department is working with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on an access arrangement between the Minister of Conservation and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu under the Crown Minerals Act section 61A and 61B. The intention is that this Tribal Access Arrangement would allow for Ngāi Tahu Whānui to remove pounamu from public conservation lands, subject to certain conditions to ensure the protection of conservation values.

No member of the public can knowingly disturb, remove or recover pounamu from public conservation land without the consent of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the relevant Papatipu Rūnanga. An access arrangement from the Minister of Conservation would also be required. Where any pounamu is discovered, the occurrence should be notified to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu should also be contacted, in the first instance, about all other enquiries and matters relating to pounamu.

#### OBJECTIVE

1. **To recognise the ownership of pounamu by:**
  - a) Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu; and
  - b) Māwhera Incorporation within the catchment area of the Arahura river.
2. **To ensure that the relevant parts of the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act and the Crown Minerals Act 1991 are given effect to when activities associated with pounamu occur within West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy public conservation lands.**

#### POLICIES

1. **Any removal of pounamu by Ngāi Tahu Whānui will be undertaken with the consent of the pounamu owner in accordance with an access arrangement granted by the Minister of Conservation under section 61B of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.**
2. **The Department will advise Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu of any application received for accessing pounamu in or on public conservation lands.**

3. **The Department will ensure relevant staff are aware of the provisions of the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan and subsequent Papatipu Rūnanga pounamu management plans and the Tribal Access Arrangement.**
4. **The Department will help to ensure the protection of pounamu by alerting concessionaires and the public that pounamu belongs to Ngāi Tahu and is managed by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga in accordance with their pounamu management plans.**
5. **All concession and mining-related activities undertaken within public conservation lands with the potential to affect pounamu owned by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu should carry the standard conditions for pounamu protection (see Chapter 3.5).**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.7.5 Crown minerals  
 Appendix 1, Section 1.12 Pounamu

### 3.2 RELATIONSHIPS WITH PEOPLE AND ORGANISATIONS<sup>9</sup>

The Department manages places and species on behalf of the people of New Zealand. Effective conservation is dependent on the support and understanding of all New Zealanders. They are engaged as individuals, in their communities, as neighbours, in iwi and hapū, in conservation and recreation groups, as well as farmers, foresters, fishers, scientists, tourism, mining and other industries, utility providers and people working in local government and other public agencies. The conservation task is large. Effective partnerships between the Department, people and organisations can enhance the achievement of conservation outcomes by all parties.

A range of opportunities to engage in conservation is provided by the legislation and policies. People are nominated and appointed to bodies such as the conservation boards and the New Zealand Conservation Authority. People are invited to comment on draft policies, management strategies and plans and proposed actions such as the establishment of national parks and marine reserves. People volunteer their time, skills and resources to support conservation. All of this engagement needs to be underpinned with general conservation awareness and educational activities.

Much of the Department's work with communities is based on developing conservation commitment and understanding by raising public awareness and providing education resources (see Section 3.2.1). Sharing conservation work by facilitating and supporting conservation projects and providing opportunities for people to be involved in various aspects of conservation management is another key focus (see Section 3.2.2). The Department works with many people and organisations when undertaking conservation management in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (see Section 3.2.3). The following objective applies to these three sections:

---

<sup>9</sup> The term 'people and organisations' is defined as "*an inclusive phrase used to refer to all individuals, clubs, companies, councils and other organisations and groups, both public and private, with an interest in the policies of and actions undertaken by the Department of Conservation in relation to public conservation land and waters and species management*" (see CMS Glossary).

1. To encourage and assist people and organisations in understanding, appreciating, enjoying and protecting public conservation lands and conservation values.

### 3.2.1 Public Awareness and Education

Information, interpretation and education are the means by which people are informed about conservation values within the Conservancy, with the aim of increasing people's awareness, understanding and appreciation of public conservation lands.

The Department:

- advocates the conservation of natural, historical and cultural heritage;
- promotes the benefits of conservation to present and future generations; and
- prepares, provides, disseminates and publicises educational and promotional material relating to conservation.

Information on the Conservancy's public conservation lands, their conservation values and their significance, the Department's work in protecting those conservation values, relevant regulations and the range of opportunities available for recreation and enjoyment is presented and promoted to local, national and international audiences via various forms of media. The Conservancy also organises activities for annual conservation events such as World Wetlands Day, Sea Week, Arbor Day and Conservation Week in order to raise awareness about conservation issues.

Interpretation enables people to learn about conservation values and the effects of human activities on those values. Interpretation is intended to enhance visits to public conservation lands by making people's experiences more meaningful and satisfying and thus increasing support for conservation objectives. A variety of on-site and off-site interpretive techniques may be used to achieve these ends, including the Department's website, provision of fact sheets, pamphlets and displays in visitor centres, interpretation panels and guided walks.

Formal educational materials, programmes and campaigns, such as 'Supersites for Education' promote targeted management messages where conservation-related issues are integrated into school curricula.

Information and interpretation on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* often involves local features of particular interest but is also often concerned with a number of key West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* conservation themes. These themes have been developed in a co-ordinated way across the Conservancy so that people are told an unfolding story as they travel from destination to destination. Visitor centres tend to convey an overview of these themes whereas interpretation panels at selected key sites focus on specific local manifestations of them.

The Department manages visitor centres at Punakaiki, Franz Josef *Waiatu*, and Haast. It is also involved in the Reefton Visitor Information Centre as a joint-venture with the local community. The Department provides information about recreational opportunities and services to community-based information centres operating in Karamea, Westport, Greymouth and Hokitika and Ross.

This section sets out the objectives and policies for the provision of information, interpretation and education in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

## OBJECTIVE

- 1. To enhance people's enjoyment of public conservation lands through the provision of appropriate information.**

## POLICIES

- 1. A range of on-site and off-site information and/or interpretation should be provided about:**
  - conservation values in the Conservancy (these values should be emphasised in all interpretive and educational materials and programmes);
  - the people and events that have played an important part in the history of the Conservancy;
  - recreational opportunities available in public conservation lands;
  - environmentally appropriate behaviour (to avoid adverse effects on conservation values and to avoid compromising other people's recreational opportunities and experiences);
  - public safety (e.g. the risks from hazards that may occur on public conservation lands and waters and the level of skill and competence required to cope with these risks); and
  - the social and economic value of conservation (e.g. health benefits, economic benefits provided by ecosystem services).
- 2. Signs should be provided throughout the Conservancy in accordance with the standards set out in the Department's national signs system and with all necessary approvals from other agencies. Signage should be kept to the minimum required for basic information and safety purposes.**
- 3. The Department should liaise with NZ Transport Agency, district councils and other agencies that provide signs to ensure that all appropriate natural and historic features, recreational opportunities and roadside facilities are adequately signposted.**
- 4. Various media may be used to foster local, national and international understanding and appreciation of conservation management issues.**
- 5. A West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy Interpretation Plan, which identifies priority sites and themes for interpretation work and resource provision, should be maintained and implemented.**
- 6. Appropriate use of public conservation lands as an educational resource should be encouraged and facilitated.**
- 7. The Department should continue to develop educational resources with strong links to the curriculum via special education programmes and events.**
- 8. Strategies to raise people's understanding of local conservation management issues, projects and their outcomes, scientific research projects and their outcomes, Poutini Ngāi Tahu's kaitiaki role and the Department's relationship with its Treaty partner may be developed, implemented and their effectiveness monitored.**



**9. Areas where people and organisations may be able to contribute towards conservation objectives and outcomes (e.g. by raising public awareness of conservation or undertaking restoration work) should be identified.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.7 Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation  
Section 3.3.2.2 Information management  
Objective 1, Chapter 3.2 Relationships with people and organisations  
Section 3.4.2 Protection within public conservation lands  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.11 Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes  
Section 3.8.7 Compliance and law enforcement  
Section 4.1.1.6 Recreational use and enjoyment of public conservation lands in 2020  
Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 3(g)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.2(a)-(b), 9.3(a)-(b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 8.2(a)-(c), 8.3(a)-(b)

### **3.2.2 Sharing Conservation Work**

The Department provides a range of opportunities for people and organisations to actively participate in conservation management. There are two main categories of volunteers who work for the Conservancy:

- A wide range of people, including international visitors, participate in organised conservation volunteer activities (e.g. revegetation projects or invasive weed control).
- Longer-term volunteers work on particular projects over a long time period (e.g. hut wardens). These are often members of the local community.

Facilitation and support of conservation projects is another key aspect of sharing conservation work. The Department often assists local groups with conservation projects, helping them to obtain funding and providing advice, expertise and other in-kind resources. It may take the lead and organise a project, or may participate in projects organised by others. The Department wants to find out what people value about conservation, and what conservation projects are important to local communities.

The Department acknowledges and respects the conservation skills and knowledge held by people and organisations in the community. Such knowledge and skills, along with sponsorship, contributions from adjoining landowners and hands-on community conservation initiatives, make an ongoing contribution to the achievement of conservation outcomes.

## **POLICIES**

- 1. The Department may provide and promote a variety of opportunities for public participation in conservation initiatives.**
- 2. The Department may provide technical guidance and support to people and organisations for conservation projects that aim to achieve the desired outcomes presented in Part 4 of this CMS.**
- 3. The Department should facilitate opportunities for people and organisations to share information, plan co-operatively, share resources**

**and work together to achieve increased synergy and collaboration in conservation work.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2 Treaty partnership in action  
Objective 1, Chapter 3.2 Relationships with people and organisations  
Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation  
Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 3(a)-(g)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 3(a)-(g)

### **3.2.3 Key People and Organisations the Department works with**

The Department works closely with a range of other agencies and individuals when undertaking conservation management in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. In some instances this relationship has a clear statutory basis - as in the case of the Department's work with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, conservation boards, Fish and Game New Zealand and the local authorities operating within the Conservancy. In other cases there may be some general statutory context that recognises co-operation but the relationship is based more on agreement between the parties that there is value in working together to attain shared objectives. In this category are parties like *Tai Poutini* Polytechnic, universities, research institutes, skilled individuals, non-governmental organisations (NGO's), the Department's neighbouring land owners, industry, resource use interest groups and the general public.

#### **3.2.3.1 *Poutini Ngāi Tabu/Ngāi Tabu***

As discussed in Chapter 3.1, Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio are the Papatipu Rūnanga with mana over most of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. For day-to-day matters, the working relationship of the Department on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is with these Papatipu Rūnanga and, for some matters, also with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu - the iwi authority based in Christchurch. The Conservancy recognises and facilitates the important role that Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, its Treaty partner, has in conservation on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

#### **3.2.3.2 *Conservation Boards***

Conservation boards have a statutory function to provide policy advice to the Director-General of the Department and have other functions relating to management plans and the development and monitoring of CMS's (see Section 2.1.2.3). The Department seeks to ensure that the West Coast *Tai Poutini*, Nelson/Marlborough, Canterbury/Aoraki, Otago and Southland Conservation Boards are involved in such a way that will enable them to fulfil their statutory functions.

#### **3.2.3.3 *Central government agencies***

The Department works with a number of central government agencies including: Ministry of Economic Development (Crown Minerals), Ministry of Tourism, Land Information New Zealand, Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry (Biosecurity New Zealand), Ministry of Fisheries, Ministry for the Environment, NZ Transport Agency and the Ministry of Defence. Coordinated planning and information sharing occurs for shared or related statutory, conservation management, biosecurity or regional planning responsibilities.

#### 3.2.3.4 *Local authorities*

As discussed in Part 2, Section 2.1.2.4, the Department works with district and regional councils on many issues. This working relationship can include the sharing of expertise and information, and the integration of planning provisions. The main areas of mutual interest are:

- **Statutory planning.** The Department's mandate includes advocacy in statutory planning processes, particularly in relation to the Resource Management Act 1991 (see Section 3.8.3).
- **Pest control and biosecurity.** The Department works closely with local authorities to facilitate efficient, appropriate and coordinated responses to pest and biosecurity incursions. This involves the Department undertaking responsibilities under the 'Regional Pest Plant Management Strategy for the West Coast' and other appropriate legislation such as the Biosecurity Act 1993 (see Section 3.3.3.6). Continued liaison with the Animal Health Board, which undertakes animal pest (primarily possum) control on or near public conservation lands, is also required to ensure appropriate coordination of control programmes and public safety. Coordination with local authorities to improve public awareness of pest and biosecurity issues is an ongoing priority.
- **Public access.** In many places where public access is desired the boundaries of public conservation lands do not extend to public roads. Some walking tracks traverse both public conservation lands and lands of other tenure (e.g. at Cape Foulwind and Lake Mahināpua). The Department needs to work with land owners and district councils at these locations to safeguard public access and ensure that walking tracks are both adequately maintained and freely accessible to the public.
- **Joint ventures.** There are many areas where the Department wishes to work closely with district councils, NZ Transport Agency and tourism associates in servicing public needs. Examples include the provision of visitor information, walking tracks, and roadside facilities (e.g. picnic areas, toilets and refuse collection facilities) for travellers who are not primarily or exclusively visitors to public conservation lands.
- **Creating opportunities for tourism activities that are not generally appropriate within public conservation lands.** There are many activities whose main objectives are not closely linked to the natural, historical or cultural heritage for which public conservation lands have been given protection. These include activities that are essentially thrill-seeking in nature and involve crowds, competition, noise or the use of machines not merely as a means of access but as recreational activities in their own right. Such activities may not be appropriate on public conservation lands and the Department thus has an interest in working with local councils to ensure adequate provision is made for them on lands of other tenure.

#### 3.2.3.5 *Fish and Game New Zealand*

Sports fish and game birds are present in most public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Many of these species have been introduced to habitats with high indigenous ecosystem values; hence the Department needs to work closely with the West Coast Fish and Game Council to ensure that any issues are resolved in a way that provides for Fish and Game New Zealand's statutory functions without

compromising conservation objectives. Given that the Department is required to ‘*preserve as far as is practicable all indigenous freshwater fisheries, and protect recreation freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats*’ (Section 6(ab) Conservation Act 1987), responsibilities are closely related and successful management and protection can more effectively be achieved through a close working relationship with Fish and Game New Zealand. At times, co-ordination with other Fish and Game councils is also required. Particularly important common goals include habitat protection, maintenance of water quality and quantity, protection and restoration of riparian margins and wetlands, and public access to publicly owned resources.

*See also* Section 2.1.2.5 Fish and Game New Zealand

### **3.2.3.6 *Concessionaires, Access Arrangement Holders and Other Authorisation Holders***

The Department has a contractual relationship with concessionaires, access arrangement holders and other authorisation holders in the form of a concession contract (lease, licence, permit or easement), access arrangement or other authority agreed to by the authorisation holder and the Minister of Conservation. In addition to this formal agreement, the Department also liaises with authorisation holders on a more informal basis in order to build and maintain effective working relationships aimed at achieving conservation outcomes of mutual benefit. Where practical, workshops may be held with groups of authorisation holders and Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu, in order to encourage and facilitate discussion about matters of common interest, including Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu values and issues.

### **3.2.3.7 *Tourism Associates***

The Conservation Act 1987 allows tourism in public conservation lands to the extent that this is not inconsistent with the conservation of the natural, historical and cultural heritage of these areas. Much of the tourist activity that is provided for on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* takes place by virtue of tourism concessions issued by the Department to commercial tourist operators. The relationship between the Department and tourist operators is in part a commercial one, since concessionaires pay a fee for the privilege of operating in public conservation lands.

Beyond its dealings with individual tourism concessionaires the Department also needs to maintain a close working relationship with the Tourism Industry Association New Zealand, regional tourism organisations and the tourism industry in general, in order to protect and enhance the environment of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* as a whole.

### **3.2.3.8 *Landowners and Neighbours***

Public conservation lands comprise a large proportion of all lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, therefore many West Coasters have the Department as an immediate neighbour. It is important for these people to have some understanding of the Department’s role, concerns and management objectives. Likewise, it can help the neighbourly relationship if Departmental staff have a similar level of understanding of the interests and concerns of these private land owners (examples of relevant conservation issues include land access, invasive weeds and animal pests,

fire control). The Department liaises directly with landowners about issues affecting their properties and also indirectly via groups such as Federated Farmers.

### **3.2.3.9 Conservation, Environment and Recreation Groups**

The Department regularly works closely with a variety of local and national conservation, environmental and recreation groups. Two prominent organisations that the Department works closely with at both the local and national levels are the Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society of New Zealand and Federated Mountain Clubs of New Zealand. These two organisations often have similar interests as the Department in relation to local authority planning processes, and also regularly contribute to the Department's own management strategies and plans.

The Department also has ongoing involvement with a number of local conservation groups (including the Little Blue Penguin Working Group, the Ōpārara Valley Project Trust and the Buller Conservation Group), groups with a focus on recreational facilities and services (including the New Zealand Deerstalkers' Association, the New Zealand Alpine Club, the New Zealand Mountain Guides Association, Public Access New Zealand, the New Zealand Speleological Society and caving groups, the New Zealand Motor Caravan Association, mountainbike and four wheel drive clubs), and groups with an interest in both conservation and recreational opportunities (such as Heritage West Coast).

The Department maintains contact with West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* groups and many members of the general public through its offices and the public forums on various conservation management issues (e.g. West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board meetings, Marine Protection Forum).

### **3.2.3.10 Business Communities**

Tourism, mining and other industry groups and businesses participate in conservation management within the Conservancy, often by contributing funding and other resources to specific projects.

### **3.2.3.11 Development West Coast**

The Department proactively engages with the Development West Coast on issues of mutual concern (e.g. the Major Regional Initiative for tourism growth, launched in 2006).

### **3.2.3.12 Utility Providers**

Several agencies and companies provide and maintain utilities (e.g. telecommunications, energy generation and transmission, sewerage, water supply, flood control, roads and airstrips, hydrological and weather stations) which are important for the wellbeing of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. In many cases utilities are located within or directly adjacent to public conservation lands. The Department has national Memoranda of Understanding with a number of utility providers, including Telecom New Zealand Ltd, the New Zealand Police, Maritime New Zealand and NZ Transport Agency, which provide specific guidance about the Department's relationship with each organisation.

### **3.2.3.13 *Scientific and Educational Providers***

The Department relies on external research providers for a large portion of its scientific information and advice and works closely with a number of environmental education organisations. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy seeks to maintain the good relationship it has with these agencies and develop research and environmental education programmes in partnership with them.

### **3.2.3.14 *Media***

The Department seeks to maintain positive and effective working relationships with media organisations, to increase public understanding of local conservation issues.

### **3.2.3.15 *The public***

'The public' encompasses all New Zealand citizens, including local communities, other organisations, users, neighbours, volunteers and individuals with whom the Department has non-statutory associations when undertaking its duties and tasks. The conservation of New Zealand's natural, historical and cultural heritage is a collective opportunity and is a responsibility that must be shared with the community at large.

Public involvement in conservation projects builds interest, co-operation and support and can lead to better conservation outcomes. The Department aims to increase the value that New Zealanders attribute to conservation and seeks to build effective working relationships with the wider public to guide and facilitate conservation gains throughout the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, wherever conservation is most needed.

The following policies apply to all subsections within Section 3.2.3:

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. The Department should seek to understand the conservation interests and priorities of people and organisations in the wider community, and may hold hui and community forums to help gather this information.**
- 2. The Department may develop collaborative partnerships with people and organisations, including Poutini Ngai Tahu, to deliver conservation projects on and off public conservation lands.**
- 3. The Department should act as a good neighbour and openly share information about plans and proposals, and work co-operatively to resolve shared boundary issues.**
- 4. The Department should endeavour to work cooperatively with other agencies when multiple authorisations are required for a single activity.**
- 5. The Department should endeavour to respond to requests for information from members of the public as promptly as possible.**
- 6. The Department should participate in forums that encourage the integrated provision of recreational opportunities across all relevant land tenures.**

7. **The Department may work with tourism associates and other organisations in the implementation and periodic review of tourism plans for the region.**
8. **The Department should continue to work closely with tourism associates, local authorities, the New Zealand Transport Agency and others to manage roadside facilities (such as picnic areas, toilets and refuse collection facilities) that are available for use by all travellers.**
9. **The Department should liaise with the Tourism Industry Association New Zealand, regional tourism organisations, and other tourism associates and operators to ensure that relevant promotional material provides accurate information on public conservation lands.**
10. **The Department should also advocate for Long Term Council Community Plans to recognise and, where possible, provide for desired outcomes identified within this CMS.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2 Treaty partnership in action  
 Objective 1, Chapter 3.2 Relationships with people and organisations  
 Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation  
 Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
 Chapter 3.6 Recreation and Tourism  
 Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 3(a)–(c)

### 3.3 NATURAL HERITAGE CONSERVATION

This chapter describes the Department's approach to conserving West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* natural heritage. Natural heritage includes all indigenous species, the places they live, the physical and biological systems with which they interact (e.g. air, water, soil, habitats and ecosystems), and geological features, landforms and landscapes.

In contrast to the rest of New Zealand, a large proportion of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is protected in continuous sequences of ecosystems, from mountains through lowland forests and wetlands to the sea. Furthermore, the Conservancy contains a substantial proportion of the country's protected lowland forests; one of New Zealand's most depleted ecosystem types (Ministry for the Environment, 1997). The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* thus offers the best opportunity in New Zealand to achieve a sustainable and representative network of protected areas with consistently high natural character. There is a realistic long-term prospect for the Conservancy to be a region where human presence is sustained within a matrix of protected natural areas, rather than remnant natural areas being isolated within a matrix of human land uses (as is largely the norm elsewhere in New Zealand).

Legal protection alone is not enough to preserve and protect New Zealand's natural heritage. All natural heritage on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is affected by pressures or threats to some extent, therefore active management is required to maintain and restore the Conservancy's natural character. Although management of public conservation lands can never achieve the pristine natural character of pre-human New Zealand, the overall aim is to prevent further loss of indigenous

biodiversity by removing as many human-induced disturbances as possible and using various methods to greatly reduce the impact of threats that cannot be completely removed. Restoration of natural character generally involves pest control, but may also involve activities such as revegetation (using indigenous species), restoration of hydrological regimes or reintroduction of species to an area. The Department also needs to work cooperatively with land-owners and occupiers and the wider community, including local government, to protect and advocate for natural heritage located beyond public conservation lands. Much of this activity is carried out under the Resource Management Act 1991.

### **3.3.1 Biodiversity Values and Threats**

#### **3.3.1.1 *Climate change***

Climate change is one of the most significant contemporary threats to natural, historical and cultural heritage, with potential effects on biodiversity and ecosystem functioning in particular. Some generalised effects include:

- range changes for species and ecosystems, including invasive weeds and animal pests;
- increased frequency of more invasive and damaging pest plants, animals and diseases;
- changes in timing or frequency of seasonal and annual climatic events;
- changes in species abundance;
- altered habitat preferences;
- increased frequency of random events.

As the manager of a considerable area of New Zealand's land mass, the Department must manage for the impacts of climate change where necessary.

#### **3.3.1.2 *Terrestrial biodiversity values***

West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* indigenous terrestrial ecosystems are diverse and still extensive, running from the mountains to the sea in a sometimes uninterrupted sequence, and include a range of bioclimatic sequences from north to south, west to east. They are also extremely wet, with up to 12 m annual rainfall measured just west of the Main Divide, in striking contrast to the dry lands to the east where rainfall is measured in millimetres. Native vegetation still covers a very significant proportion of the land area. Because of this, some native fauna and flora survive in greater numbers on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* than in most other parts of New Zealand, and some natural distributional limits are still intact. The terrestrial ecosystems on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* can be divided into five broad groups based on their altitudinal distribution: warm temperate, cool temperate, sub-alpine, alpine and nival.

**Warm temperate zone.** This zone is most common in the North Island, but runs down the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* in a narrow band at lower altitudes along the coastal ranges in the Kahurangi, Buller *Kawatiri* and Paparoa areas and reaching its southern limit near Greymouth. Warm temperate forests are characterised by the presence of species such as northern rātā and nikau, as well as an abundance of lianes, epiphytes and tree ferns, and are the most species-rich in terms of vascular plants of all West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* forests. These forests have strong similarities



to forests in western Nelson and the western North Island. They provide rich habitat for a diversity of birds. Good examples of these forests remain in Paparoa and Kahurangi National Parks as well as in other public conservation lands (e.g. near Seddonville and Charleston).

**Cool temperate zone.** The remaining lowland forests of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are best described as cool temperate and are often dense and wet, dominated by emergent podocarps, broadleaved canopy species and masses of epiphytes and lianes. Beech *tawai* species are a major component in the north and south of the Conservancy. Lichens, mosses, liverworts, ferns, fungi and orchids cover the ground, rocks and bark of many trees. Forest species composition and diversity varies widely with soil type, drainage, latitude and altitude, resulting in a great variety of forest types, many of which are very localised in their distribution.

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* now has over half of New Zealand's remaining lowland podocarp forest, protected mainly in South Westland. The dense rimu terrace forests of Ōkārito and Waikūkupa are some of the few significant tracts left in New Zealand. Kahikatea forest once covered the fertile river valleys and swampy plains throughout New Zealand but is now as uncommon as kauri forest, with the largest remaining area at Hunts Beach in South Westland *Webeka*. Matai-tōtara forest once covered perhaps 50,000 hectares on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (43,000 hectares in southern Westland) but has been reduced to perhaps 600 hectares in Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park and small isolated remnants elsewhere.

In other areas of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, land clearance has virtually eliminated indigenous forests from areas of fertile coastal and alluvial flat land. For example, in the Hokitika Ecological District less than 1% of lowland forest on alluvial or coastal soils remains (Wardle, 1991).

At the turn of the new millennium 130,000 hectares of predominantly lowland forest on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* was transferred to the Department of Conservation for management as public conservation lands. These lowland forests are scattered along the Conservancy, often in areas that have been extensively modified through farming, forestry and mining (e.g. Grey *Māwheranui* valley).

All four beech *tawai* species (hard, mountain, red and silver) occur on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. In the north, all four species can be found either growing individually or in different combinations. Silver beech is most common at upland sites, especially along the Paparoa Range. Red and hard beech are most common at lower altitudes, with hard beech particularly common through the Grey, Inangahua and Buller valleys and red beech in the Maruia valley. In the south, silver beech, often hosting mistletoe, is dominant from sea level to the timberline. Red beech is confined to valleys from the Arawhata south, while mountain and especially hard beech are very uncommon. In fact, hard beech is known only from one site. The one striking exception to the dominance of beech is the 'beech gap' in the central part of the Conservancy (see Section 4.2.7.7), although beech species can also be absent locally (e.g. around Seddonville). In the beech gap, cool temperate forests are dominated by podocarps at lower altitudes and by southern rātā, kāmahi, Hall's tōtara and kaikawaka at high altitudes.

**Sub-alpine zone.** The sub-alpine zone marks the transition from tall forest to alpine grasslands. Where beech *tawai* is present, this zone can be quite narrow and abrupt but where beech is absent, the sub-alpine zone is much wider and is dominated by a diversity of species including leatherwood, other tree daisies, stunted conifers

(particularly kaikawaka, Hall's tōtara, and pink pine) and *Dracophyllum* species. These species form low forests of small trees and shrubs with thick, gnarled trunks, interwoven branches, and tight-knit canopies. Where the undergrowth has not been browsed by deer, chamois and tahr, *Astelia* aff. *nervosa*, *Cyathea colensoi* and various shrubs are abundant.

**Alpine and nival zones.** Alpine ecosystems occupy areas above the upper limit of trees and tall shrubs, which occurs from as low as 800 m above sea level (a.s.l.) in some areas. Alpine communities include the tall tussock grasslands and low shrublands bordering the sub-alpine zone, herbfields, fellfields and scree, as well as the lichen-dominated communities found on snow-free rocks in the nival zone above 1700 m a.s.l.

The alpine environment is dominated by highly changeable weather conditions, extremes of temperature, unstable substrates and often skeletal soils. Remarkably, more than 30% of New Zealand's vascular plants live in this zone, and 93% of these species are endemic.

Bogs predominate in areas where the ground is permanently waterlogged, most formed in hollows scraped out by glaciers. The plants and animals that live in these cold acidic places must cope with very low oxygen and nutrient levels, and as dead organic matter does not decompose well in these conditions, layers of peat are characteristic.

The nival zone is the zone of permanent snow and ice and only a few plants are able to persist in the rocky areas that are not snow covered. Both vascular and non-vascular plants are present and include small herbs such as *Parakebe birleyi* and a diversity of lichens.

**Soils.** Soils are the interface between the biotic and abiotic components of terrestrial ecosystems. The fertility of soils is strongly related to parent rock type, age, and rainfall. Soils on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* tend to be relatively young and infertile, where most nutrients are trapped in the overlying vegetation and the organic humus layer above the soil. Inhabited by a diversity of micro-organisms, fungi and invertebrates, soils are essentially indigenous communities, even when original surface ecosystems have been removed.

Taking an ecosystem approach to conservation management requires that all components of ecosystems be considered. In the case of soils, little in the way of active management can realistically be undertaken. However, the resilience of soil ecosystems in the face of gradual change means that maintaining the existing or regenerating surface ecosystem will generally allow these ecosystems to persist. Small habitats can maintain an important diversity (e.g. Mananui Bush, see Section 4.2.6.4).

**Terrestrial invertebrates.** There are an estimated 20,000 invertebrate species present in New Zealand. The invertebrate fauna is notable for its high rate of endemism (at least 90%, including several endemic families). Invertebrates are an important part of New Zealand's contribution to global biological diversity. Its fauna of small land snails, worms, beetles, moths and aquatic insects is especially rich and there is a large number of heavy-bodied and flightless species, even in normally flighted animal groups. Although the full significance of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* invertebrate fauna is not well known, many areas provide important indigenous

habitat for invertebrates (e.g. localised snail distributions). Improved understanding of invertebrate distribution will require systematic invertebrate surveys.

Invertebrates comprise the bulk of all animal species in all terrestrial and freshwater habitats. They fulfil a variety of ecological roles:

- Insect larvae, in particular, help to determine the structure and composition of plant communities by differential feeding;
- Adult insects are important pollinating agents for flowering plants and provide food for birds;
- Scavengers, leaf litter and soil invertebrates are major contributors to decomposition, recycling of nutrients and mixing and aeration of soil; and
- Invertebrates are both important predators and a major source of food for other organisms.

Because many invertebrate species have low dispersal rates, invertebrate distribution and speciation may reflect geomorphological history. The distribution of *Powelliphanta* land snail subspecies is often regarded as an artifact of glaciation, and may be typical of other invertebrate groups. Some invertebrate species may also thrive in small areas of habitat and are able to adapt to introduced species and ecosystems; for example, most familiar insects are native species.

Invertebrate diversity is conspicuously high in the alpine zone (approximately 60% of known species); nearly half of New Zealand's 1500 moth species may be found here, as well as 11 endemic butterfly species, including the rare black mountain ringlet. Two species of giant weta have been found in the alpine zone of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, one of which (the giant mole weta) appears to be locally endemic. Many alpine spiders are active hunters, with a large number of these as yet unnamed.

The forest invertebrates of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are apparently diverse and mostly comprised of common species found elsewhere. However, several exceptions are known, including the large endemic land snails of the genus *Powelliphanta*. The extensive areas of unmodified karst in Kahurangi and the Paparoa Range are known to support a very diverse surface fauna including species dependent on high calcium carbonate levels. Cave-dwelling species include beetles, harvestmen, freshwater snails, crustaceans and millipedes. The rare Nelson cave spider is found in some West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* caves and there are at least 12 undescribed weta species present. Some species that are unique to the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy have yet to be formally described and named, including New Zealand's only known species of flightless and terrestrial dytiscid beetle that is so far only known from south Ōkārito forest.

A key consideration in relation to invertebrate conservation is the importance of small forest and wetland remnants on the developed coastal and alluvial plains. In other parts of New Zealand, invertebrate diversity has been found to be high in such areas.

**Terrestrial vertebrates.** The terrestrial vertebrate fauna of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is best known for the relative abundance of species that are threatened elsewhere in New Zealand. Examples include forest birds such as New Zealand pigeon *kūkupa/kererū*, South Island robin *kakaruai*, weka and in some areas New Zealand parakeets *kākāriki*. Some elements of the fauna are particularly notable,

including South Island kākā, yellowhead *mobua*, blue duck *whio*, bats *pekapeka* and three species of kiwi.

Both long- and southern short-tailed bats *pekapeka* are found in West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* forests, although their abundance and distribution have only been partly described. The discovery of southern short-tailed bats *pekapeka* in the Karamea area brings the known populations of this species on the South Island's mainland to two.

Research to date indicates there are several locally endemic skinks and geckos on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, although formal descriptions have not been completed.

### **3.3.1.3 Threats to terrestrial biodiversity values**

Terrestrial ecosystems and their component species face many threats. These include currently present and newly colonising pest species (invasive weeds and animal pests), climate change, habitat fragmentation, vegetation clearance, earth disturbance, drainage, fire and recreational impacts. Active management of ecosystems is required to maintain indigenous biodiversity values in the face of these threats.

'Invasive weed' is used as a generic term for any introduced plant that threatens indigenous biodiversity on lands managed by the Department. They range from trees, shrubs, climbers and ground covers to herbs, ferns and grasses. Invasive weeds compete with native plants for nutrients and light and can suppress natural succession and regeneration. The most serious pests can totally displace indigenous species and alter ecosystem functioning. Certain native species can also be invasive weeds when outside their natural range.

Weeds are categorised based on how invasive they are and what their effect on native ecosystems is likely to be. High priority species are typically readily dispersed and rapidly establish new populations and/or have a significant impact on indigenous vegetation. Low priority species are often poorly dispersed and/or are less likely to outcompete indigenous plant species. The high-, medium- and low-priority invasive weed species known to occur in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy as at 2010 are listed in Appendix 5. Weeds may have different effects in different ecosystems. For example, gorse can dominate coastal dune systems but is little threat in areas where the natural cover is forest. Protection of areas with few invasive weed impacts is often a higher conservation priority than protection of sites which have already been heavily degraded by weed invasion. The Department's 'Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds' (1998) provides a thorough explanation of the Department's site-led and weed-led priority ranking systems.

'Animal pest' is used in this CMS as a generic term for any introduced animal species that threatens indigenous biodiversity within public conservation land, and includes wild animals (as defined by the Wild Animal Control Act 1977). The major animal pests that affect terrestrial ecosystems in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy are possums, deer, tahr, chamois, goats and mustelids:

- Possums are present throughout the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, although there are some areas south of the Cascade where they have only recently colonised and are still at very low densities. The Department undertakes possum control throughout much of south Westland to keep possum numbers at very low levels.
- Red deer are widespread on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, and may be found in forests at sea level through to, and including, the alpine zone. If deer control

is not undertaken, the population may double every three years. Deer selectively browse palatable species, leading to more open forest understories and altering the species composition of forest and tussock grassland. At high densities, deer inhibit the regeneration of canopy species, to the extent that the canopy can collapse due to a lack of recruitment. Fallow deer also occur in a few localities.

- On the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, the feral range of tahr is the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* between the Hokitika catchment in the north and the Haast catchment in the south. Non-breeding bulls occasionally move beyond these limits but return to the feral range during the breeding season.
- Chamois are more widespread than tahr, and occur from the Buller *Kawatri* to northern Fiordland. They tend to live in the alpine zone, but individuals can occasionally be found in forest at sea level, particularly in central Westland.
- Goats are patchily distributed on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. They tend to be restricted to specific habitats, such as the Paparoa karst, and are rarely found in areas with a rainfall above 4000 mm per annum.
- Stoats are widespread on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, especially within the lowland forests. Ferrets and weasels are less common. Stoats reach plague proportions following periodic heavy seeding of beech tawai or podocarps and the subsequent increase in rodent prey.

Other animal pests present include pigs, dogs, cats, domestic stock, rats, mice, hares, rabbits, magpies, thrushes, blackbirds and introduced wasps. Other invertebrate species also have the potential to become pests if introduced to areas where they do not currently exist. Some of these animal pests are more widespread than others and their impact on indigenous biodiversity varies.

Indigenous terrestrial ecosystems have been fragmented by human activities, especially on lowland plains and terraces. The isolated forest remnants are important refuges for indigenous plants and animals, but their often small size limits the number of species that they can sustain. Fire also acts as a vegetation clearance agent. Particularly vulnerable habitats to fire are pakihi wetlands, alpine and lowland scrub, and regenerating forest. Fire prevention and control is a key part of the Department's work to prevent biota removal (see Section 3.8.8). Earthquakes and activities that alter landforms, such as the development of roads, tracks, subdivision and mining, have the potential to alter natural ecosystems and ecosystem processes and create dispersal corridors and habitat for invasive weeds and animal pests, as well as having obvious impacts on original geological features.

#### **3.3.1.4 Freshwater biodiversity values**

The definition of 'freshwater' under Section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987 includes river mouths, estuaries and seawater to a distance of 500 metres from the outlet to the sea of any stream or river. Thus, the term 'freshwater ecosystems' groups together a wide range of inland and coastal habitats which share a number of common features that can be assimilated into the definition of 'wetlands'.

High annual rainfall makes water a dominant part of the Conservancy's natural character. Climate and terrain combine to create a large and diverse range of freshwater ecosystems affecting, and being affected by, the landscapes they flow through. Tarns and lakes, mountain torrents and braided rivers, bogs, fens, pakihi, swamps, lagoons and estuaries are all elements of a continually changing interplay between climate, landform and life. For simplicity's sake, the large array of wetland

types has been grouped into: riverine and lacustrine ecosystems, palustrine wetlands and estuarine wetlands. Karst wetland (or plutonic) ecosystems are internationally recognised as a distinct type of wetland. Riparian zones, which are at the interface between aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems, are also discussed below.

Geothermal wetlands, although limited in their distribution, are present on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* along the alpine fault. They can be defined as either palustrine or lacustrine systems that have heated water greater than 30°C and of underground origin.

The functions and values of freshwater ecosystems include:

- Hydrological functions (flood storage and mitigation, groundwater recharge/discharge, maintenance of summer base flows, lagoon/estuarine flow modification);
- Geomorphologic functions (maintaining soil stability, reducing bank erosion, reducing sediment, nutrient and pollutant run-off);
- Chemical functions (maintaining water quality and clarity, carbon sinks, nutrient assimilation, sediment trapping and toxicant removal, biogeochemical cycling, temperature buffering);
- Biological/ecological functions (productivity, biodiversity corridors, provision of wildlife habitat, fish nurseries, fish spawning habitat, and breeding and resting areas for waterfowl);
- Socio-economic functions (sources of drinking water, power generation, commercial and recreational fisheries, sphagnum moss harvesting, recreation, education, landscape attributes, cultural and spiritual values).

**Riverine and lacustrine ecosystems.** West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* riverine systems typically originate from the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* and are characterised by short steep runs from their headwaters to the Alpine Fault, then gentler runs to the sea. Major river systems include the Buller *Kawatiri* (a significant landform at the South Island scale and the sixth largest catchment in New Zealand), Grey *Māwheranui* (which is significant at the scale of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* as a whole), Hokitika, Haast, and many other rivers which frequently carry immense volumes of water by other regions' standards. Most large West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* rivers have their sources in alpine rock and tussock basins with large areas of seemingly unmodified forests downstream. Besides those large riverine systems, there are also numerous smaller hill-fed or lowland and spring-fed streams that despite their smaller size often have important biodiversity values, especially for indigenous fish.

Most lakes on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are glacial in origin and lie within the lowlands. Larger lakes include Christabel, Daniells, Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaoho*, Hochstetter, Ahaura, Haupiri, Poerua, Lady, Kangaroo, Kaniere, Mahināpua, Ianthe *Matabi*, Mapourika, Wahapo, Matheson, Pāringa, Moeraki and Ellery. There are numerous small lakes, ponds and tarns, and some significant waterbodies created by historic human activity. Many lakes also have high scenic values - notably Lake Matheson with its reflections of Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe*. Most West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* lakes retain an essentially wild and natural character, even when adjacent areas have been highly modified. However, natural character will only persist if appropriate riparian setbacks are retained.

Freshwater ecosystems are underpinned by tiny photosynthetic algae and detritus-eating micro-organisms, which despite being generally unnoticed are often present in enormous numbers. They form the primary food source for the rich invertebrate and fish faunas found in most streams and rivers, living on and under rocks and gravel, in sediments and shallows, and even in vigorously flowing waters. Most indigenous aquatic plants are also small, especially in contrast to introduced species, and are common to still waters, margins and wetlands. Productivity of many West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* waters is limited by natural factors such as frequent floods, low nutrient levels, and the natural tannin levels in many waters (which limits the photosynthetic zone to a small depth).

**Palustrine wetlands.** Palustrine wetlands include an extremely diverse range of areas where the water table is consistently or periodically above or near ground level. They occur at all altitudes and range from the rain-fed only, low nutrient and cold acidic peat bogs (found in alpine areas) and pakihī, to the more fertile and productive swamps usually associated with aquatic ecosystems such as lakes and rivers. Such groundwater and/or surface water inflow, often with a high nutrient content, enables many lowland wetlands to support a vast range of plant communities, invertebrates, fish and birds, especially where a diversity of habitats occur together. Vegetation of palustrine wetlands includes rushes, sedges, reeds, flax, coprosma shrubs, kahikatea and other wet forests and sphagnum moss. A number of threatened plants are only found in particular wetland types; *Myriophyllum robustum*, for example, is found only in fertile wetlands and slow waters, *Bulbinella modesta* is endemic to pakihī bogs and *Hebe paludosa* is endemic to West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* swamps.

Before the arrival of humans, large areas of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* lowlands were wetland ecosystems, but the quality and extent of these have been drastically reduced through human impacts. Palustrine wetlands of all types are poorly represented in protected areas. Local authorities acting under the Resource Management Act 1991 now have a statutory obligation to protect the natural character of remaining areas.

**Estuarine wetlands.** Estuarine wetlands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are primarily estuaries and lagoons. There are nine major tidal estuaries and over 50 narrow 'finger' or 'ribbon' lagoons along the Coast, where waterways run parallel to the beach instead of running directly into the sea. These finger lagoons are almost unique to the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Estuaries and lagoons contain tidally changing gradients between salt and fresh water and consequently a great abundance and diversity of species and habitats. The substantial energy levels and cycling in estuarine food webs make them the most productive areas on earth. They are an important component (both temporal and spatial) of the life-cycles of indigenous fish: approximately half of our freshwater fish species are known to spend part of their lives in the sea and estuaries. Many commercially-important marine fish species also use the Coast's nutrient-rich lagoons and estuaries for breeding and larval nurseries.

**Karst ecosystems.** The term 'karst' denotes a distinctive style of terrain. It is characterised by landform types and landscapes that are the result of certain types of rock (particularly limestone and marble) having been dissolved by running water to a greater degree than is usual in other landscapes. Karst landscapes may contain features such as dolines (sink holes), springs, caves, enclosed depressions and rock outcrops with distinctive weathering patterns. Caves, often decorated by

speleothems such as stalactites and stalagmites, are for most people the best-known elements of karst.

West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* karst landscapes are distinctive, diverse and relatively unmodified. Areas of karst are predominantly found north of the Taramakau River. In South Westland, a band of limestone lies along the coast from Jackson Bay to Awarua point, including some offshore islands. Karst areas on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are still only partly explored and new cave systems continue to be discovered (See 3.6.4.8). The generally low altitude of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* karst means that caves are formed in forested areas. In conjunction with high rainfall, this results in acidic percolating water and relatively rapid cave formation. Speleothems are formed as a result of percolation of water with high concentrations of dissolved carbonates through surface soils into cave systems and the deposition of minerals, usually calcium carbonate, where streams are not presently active within the cave. Caves found on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contain the full speleothem range, with some caves being highly decorated and others having lesser or no decorations.

Cave sediments in all but the most active stream passages are highly stable and often very old. In some caves, sediments may be stratified and layers can often contain special features such as mineral or sub-fossil deposits (including bones and pollen) which reflect the geological and biological history of the area. On the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, sediment deposits range from small ancient remnants clinging to cave walls to entirely filled passages. Fossilised remains found in caves on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* include bones of birds (including extant species such as wren, kiwi and weka and extinct species such as owl nightjar, moa and eagle), echinoids and molluscs, sharks teeth and the skeletal remains of whales. The Honeycomb Hill Cave Specially Protected Area in the Ōpārara Valley is one of the richest fossil sites in New Zealand and is considered to be of international scientific significance.

Little research has been carried out on the cave fauna of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, but it is thought that invertebrate species diversity is relatively rich, including a diversity of aquatic snails, beetles, glow-worms, harvestmen and millipedes. The Nelson cave spider is found in the Heaphy and Ōpārara area, as are a number of undescribed invertebrate species (including weta).

Karst landscapes present a unique combination of environmental factors and support a greater diversity of plant species than non-karst landscapes. Thin, free-draining soils, rich with calcium carbonate, and higher than normal alkalinity levels make plant nutrients more readily available and support species with high calcium requirements. The fern *Asplenium cimmeriorum* is found on limestone in higher rainfall areas, especially around cave entrances and other dark places. West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* limestone areas, particularly in the Paparoa and Karamea areas, are the stronghold of this species. Temperature inversion occurs in large dolines which also adds to the diversity of flora.

**Riparian zones.** Riparian zones are integral to the functioning of both aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems, although in many ways they can be regarded as distinct ecosystems in their own right. Many of the plant and animal species present in these areas are specifically adapted to live in these fluctuating wet and dry conditions and are not found elsewhere. The diversity of plants found at the land-water interface is the greatest of any habitat. Riparian zones also contribute directly and significantly to food webs as leaves and insects fall from terrestrial plants into waterways. Spawning habitats for whitebait species and other fish species are found in the riparian zone



of tidal rivers. Many insects that have aquatic larvae also spend their adult lives close to water, and support a rich fauna of web-building spiders as well as insectivorous birds.

Riparian zones start from the area under water where aquatic plants are often found. They vary in width from narrow margins along streams to extensive wetland and floodplains along major rivers and estuaries. The enormous number of waterways on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* means that extensive areas lie within the definition of riparian zones.

The Conservancy administers thousands of kilometres of riparian zones, covering the entire range of wetland ecosystems found on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Local authorities are also responsible for riparian areas along unformed legal road and esplanade reserves created under the Local Government Act 2002 and the Resource Management Act 1991, and have a statutory obligation to protect the natural character of the margins of waterbodies.

**Freshwater invertebrates.** New Zealand's freshwater invertebrate fauna includes numerous small snails, freshwater mussels, crustaceans, worms and insects, particularly larvae. As in terrestrial habitats, they are a major contributor to freshwater communities, especially in capturing nutrients from decaying matter entering waterways and as food for other invertebrates, fish and birds.

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contribution to freshwater invertebrate biodiversity is significant due to the extent and relative intactness of the Conservancy's freshwater systems. The diversity and abundance of the fish fauna in the Conservancy also suggest that aquatic habitats and invertebrate communities remain relatively abundant.

There has been limited research into the conservation status of freshwater invertebrates in New Zealand despite the widespread degradation of catchments, riparian zones and water quality, especially in lowland areas. In the absence of good information on New Zealand's freshwater invertebrates and their importance to fisheries and ecosystems, the Department must work with other agencies, particularly regional councils, to maintain and enhance water quality, the natural character of waterways, wetlands and their margins among other measures of ecosystem health.

**Freshwater vertebrates.** Two-thirds of New Zealand's indigenous freshwater fish species are present on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. The fish fauna shows a very high level of endemism and a high level of diadromy (i.e. species that migrate between freshwater habitats and the sea as a regular, often obligatory, phase of their life-cycles). The whitebait fishery relies on diadromous species successfully returning to freshwater during the juvenile stage of their lifecycle as 'whitebait'. Several threatened fish species are present in the Conservancy: shortjaw kōkopu, giant kōkopu *taiwharu*, brown mudfish, long-finned eel *tuna* and lamprey *kanakana/ute*. Most of these species have strongholds on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, are of high priority for active management, and are of cultural importance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu. Four introduced sports fish species that are valued for recreational fishing are also present within many aquatic ecosystems on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*: brown trout, rainbow trout, quinnat/Chinook salmon and perch.

Several species of native fish spawn in wetlands and riparian areas. Inanga (the major whitebait species) live in slow-moving lowland waterways and wetlands and spawn in rank vegetation near the upper tidal influence limit of waterways that are open to the sea.

Aquatic habitats support the greatest number of bird species of any ecosystem type in New Zealand, with over 50 species using these areas as their major habitat. These birds often use different ecosystem types depending on season, tides and rainfall. Several threatened species, including the Australasian bittern *matuku* and South Island fernbird *mātā*, rely on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* wetlands for their survival. Wetlands are also a significant habitat for kiwi in a number of areas. The royal spoonbill *kōtuku-ngutupapa* and white heron *kōtuku* breeding colonies at Waitangiroto are situated in kahikatea forest and both species depend on extensive estuarine wetlands in the area as a food resource when breeding. The threatened blue duck *whio* depends on freshwater rivers and streams whose riparian zones are covered in indigenous forest. Aquatic ecosystems located within many areas of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands also provide habitat for game bird species (including black swan, Canada goose, grey duck, mallard duck, paradise shelduck, Australasian shoveler *kuruwhengi* and pukeko). Game birds are valued for recreational hunting.

#### **3.3.1.5 Threats to freshwater biodiversity values**

Maintenance of the natural character and quality of waterways and wetlands is crucial for the survival of freshwater invertebrates, fish and bird species as well as the continuation of freshwater ecosystem services. Many human activities or human-induced factors have the potential to adversely affect freshwater species and ecosystems, including life-supporting capacity, natural character, water quality and water quantity. Examples of such activities include: drainage, dredging, filling; gravel extraction; mining; water diversion; hydrological modifications; creation of dams and other barriers to fish passage; discharge of pollutants to waterways; vegetation clearance; introduction or spread of invasive weeds, animal pests and unwanted organisms (e.g. Didymo); introduction of sports fish (McDowall 2003); grazing of domestic stock in or near waterways; and harvesting activities.

Some types of freshwater ecosystems on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are particularly vulnerable to such threats. For instance, although many ‘finger’ lagoons are still intact, they are acutely sensitive to disturbance within their catchments. Productivity of freshwater ecosystems is often limited by factors such as point and non-point discharges. The values of many lowland rivers, streams and wetlands are threatened by land development and associated disturbance (land clearance, channel work etc). Even in remote areas few rivers are completely unmodified after a century of use as travel routes, grazing and seasonal habitation of river beds and riparian areas. Vegetation clearance, damage or weed invasion in riparian zones reduces or negates the benefits that riparian zones provide for people, as well as affecting the overall quality of freshwater ecosystems for wildlife, fish and other organisms.

Cave features are vulnerable to damage from a variety of surface land uses, which can occur at a considerable distance from the cave itself. For example, where deforestation has occurred, groundwater may lose carbonates and dissolution of speleothems may occur. Merely visiting caves can cause a change in the environment. It can also cause irreversible impacts on or damage to caves and their formations.

#### **3.3.1.6 Marine biodiversity values**

Wild and inhospitable by comparison to the coast of many other parts of New Zealand, the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy’s 605 km coastline includes a

diversity of landforms as it cuts across 10 major geological boundaries running off the spine of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* and adjoining ranges. This repeating pattern of sweeping sand or gravel beaches and rocky headlands is evident along the entire length of the Conservancy.

The character and biodiversity of the marine environment changes as one moves out from the coast into deeper and deeper water. As a result, the marine environment includes a diverse range of habitats such as stacks and islands, beaches, rocky shores and reefs, the open sea beyond the surf and the bed of the continental shelf and its margins. All of these are dominated by water as currents, swells and tides interact with the prevailing westerly weather and the huge flood flows and sediment loads carried by most West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* rivers, constantly shifting shorelines yet tending to retain a dynamic balance over time if not disturbed by human activities. The beaches and rocky coasts are scoured by a predominantly northward drift of sediment (Probert and Swanson 1985).

Scientific understanding of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine and coastal environments is only just beginning to develop. Most marine research on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has focused on the very significant commercial fisheries and productivity of the continental shelf; only in the last decade or so has scientific interest turned to the inshore coastal waters and the study of the Conservancy's estuaries, seashores and marine mammals.

The combined effects of a number of features of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine environments distinguish them from other New Zealand coastal areas. The latitudinal location, the marine landforms, the high degree of exposure to waves, the effects of sedimentation and sand scour, the shelf and river hydrology, the dynamic and spectacular landscape, and the rich offshore fisheries all combine to give the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* its own natural character. The first three of these are particularly diagnostic features.

The marine environment is primarily influenced by the glacial geomorphology of the region (Grange 1990). The distinguishing features of the northern, central and southern sections are summarised in Table 1.

TABLE 1: DISTINGUISHING FEATURES OF THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT

SECTION OF COASTLINE	NORTHERN	CENTRAL	SOUTHERN
Approximate boundaries	Cape Farewell to Greymouth	Greymouth to Heretaniwha Point (just south of Bruce Bay)	Heritaniwha Point to <i>Martins Bay Whakatipu</i> Waitai
General description	Mixed bedrock/beach coast with low water clarity and a broad flat continental shelf.  Biota dominated by filter feeding animals and stunted turfing species, heavily scoured by mobile sediments.	Long beaches with moraine bluffs and tidal estuaries, low water clarity and moderately broad shelf dissected by submarine canyons.  Biota dominated by filter feeding animals and stunted turfing species, heavily scoured by mobile sediments.	Mixed bedrock/moraine/beach coast with moderate water clarity and a narrow and dissected continental shelf.  Biota dominated by turfing algae.

Each of these sections of coastline can be further divided into about five main ecosystem types which can be broadly grouped as tidal estuaries, inshore rocky reefs, beaches and inner shelf, outer continental shelf, and continental slope.

SECTION OF COASTLINE	NORTHERN	CENTRAL	SOUTHERN
<b>FEATURES THAT, IN COMBINATION, MAKE THE WEST COAST <i>TAI POUTINI</i> MARINE ENVIRONMENT DIFFERENT TO OTHER PARTS OF NEW ZEALAND<sup>1</sup></b>			
Exposed windward coastline	P	P	P
Temperate latitudes and currents	P	P	P
Westerly (windward) coast	P	P	P
Open coast with few embayments	P	P	P
High freshwater inputs	P	P	P
High sedimentation and sand scour	P	P	P
South Island fish and algal assemblages	P	P	P
New Zealand fur seal <i>kekeno</i> haulout sites	P	P	P
Adjoins terrestrial ecological region	Northwest Nelson/ northern Westland	Whataroa	Aspiring / Olivine
Glacial history	A	P	P
Tidal flat estuaries	P	P	A
Numerous 'ribbon' lagoons	P	P	A
Coastal rock types	Bedrock	Moraine	Bedrock and moraine
Stacks and islands	P	A	P
Continental shelf	Very broad and flat	Quite broad but dissected	Narrow and dissected
Prevailing coastal direction	North	North/South	South
Inshore water clarity	Low	Low	Moderate
Sand scour influence	High	Very High	Moderate
<b>Biological communities</b>			
Intertidal rocky shore communities	Algal turf and mussel beds	Mussel beds and algal turf	Bare rock and small invertebrates
Subtidal rocky shore communities	Filter feeders and bare rock	?	Algal turfs and 'meadows'
Inshore shelf communities	Sand bivalve	Sand bivalve	Mud bivalve
Offshore shelf communities	Mud polychaete	Mud polychaete	(No offshore shelf)
Upper continental slope communities	Mud polychaete	Mud polychaete	?
<b>BIOLOGICAL COMMUNITIES</b>			
Southern New Zealand/ Fiordland influences	Low	Low	Moderate
Species diversity of reefs	Low, adapted to exposed sites	Very low, adapted to exposed sites	Moderate
<b>Fauna breeding sites<sup>1</sup></b>			
New Zealand fur seal <i>kekeno</i>	P	A	P
Large Hector's dolphin <i>aihe</i> population	P	P	A
Fiordland crested penguin <i>tawaki</i>	A	A	P
Spotted shag <i>parekareka</i>	P	A	P
'Hoki fishery' winter fish spawning	P	P	A

<sup>1</sup> P = generally present, A = generally absent

**Coastal riparian zones.** Like freshwater riparian areas, the coastal riparian zone is the link between land and water ecosystems, and the zone through which plants, animals, sediments and nutrients are transferred. The coastal riparian zone includes sand dunes, coastal bluffs, saltmarshes and coastal forest. The strong influence of

water is joined by the effect of salt-laden winds that form sand dunes and shear the forest canopy. The endemic pingao thrives on the few dunes where the introduced marram and gorse have not yet dominated, and remnants of low forest dominated by tōtara and kōwhai, or mahoe and other small trees and shrubs, persist along the shores of many estuaries and lagoons. Most rocky coastlines retain their indigenous vegetative cover, but the areas adjoining beaches have been greatly modified by a century of use for transport routes, grazing, black-sand gold mining and intermittent habitation. There are now only a handful of dune systems on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* with predominantly natural vegetation, and none that are unmodified.

**Open coastal waters.** On the beach foreshore, an often sparse soft shore and benthic fauna and flora persists, despite often violent seas. The relatively abundant marine wildlife, which includes New Zealand fur seals *kekeno*, penguins and other seabirds, and Hector's dolphin *aibe*, depends more on richer offshore and rocky shore communities for food. A number of seaweeds, shellfish and other marine species reach their southern or northern limits off the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, indicators of latitudinal variations and the broad sub-tropical convergence zone where subtropical waters meet cooler sub-Antarctic currents. The massive scouring of rocks by sand and waves is a prominent feature that differentiates West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* shores from other shores around New Zealand.

There are 70 or more islands and offshore rock stacks off the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, most of which are very small. The privately owned Open Bay Islands *Taumaka me Popotai* (located off the Haast-Jackson Bay coastline) are of very high conservation significance because they harbour several threatened species (including some that are endemic to the islands) and are relatively pest-free.

Further offshore, the bed of the continental shelf reaches depths of about 200 m and slopes down beyond that into the deep water of the open ocean. These offshore areas support communities of invertebrates and other marine animals, including New Zealand's largest fishery - the winter middle-depth trawl fishery for hoki and other spawning fish.

The northern coastline has a diverse geology, but no glacial history. The shores are of either bedrock (often scoured by gravels) or of prograded coastal sediments that enclose tidal flat estuaries on some of the coastal plains. Vegetated rock stacks that occur here are seldom scoured by sand so often support dense beds of algae.

Mobile sediments dominate the central section of coastline, and the heavily scoured moraine boulder ramps are the only rocky shore habitats, with no offshore islands or stacks. The shore has been, and still is, dominated by glacial activity (moraines, outwash gravels and glacial flour) and high river discharges. Scouring by wave-tossed gravels and cobbles lowers the biomass and species diversity of the beaches and rocky shores. Biologically rich and relatively unmodified coastal wetlands and tidal flat estuaries are a feature of the low-lying backshore. Offshore, the continental shelf is dissected by two major canyons - the Cook and the Hokitika.

The shores of the southern coastline have a history of glaciation but the sediments now reaching the shore are predominantly from non-glacial origins. Glacial flour is thus mostly absent from the coastal waters and the sea is often quite clear close inshore. The shores are formed of either bedrock (sometimes scoured by sand) or prograded coastal sediments dominated by medium to coarse sands. Offshore islands, rock stacks and reefs provide important habitats for algae. Some biological

features suggest that the southern parts of this coast might be similar to Fiordland's outer coast.

The Challenger Plateau is a broad extension of New Zealand's continental shelf into the Tasman Sea. Within the EEZ, the plateau extends to depths of around 1000 metres. The seabed of the Challenger Plateau includes mud, sand, gravel and other substrates, which form habitats for sediment-dwelling animals such as shellfish, worms and urchins, which in turn provide an important basis of a food web that culminates in a diverse range of fish, seabirds, marine mammals and people. A 'continental slope' bounds the Challenger Plateau and the ocean depths beyond. The Challenger Plateau extends north and west beyond the boundaries considered by this CMS, to the Lord Howe Rise in the northern Tasman Sea.

Beyond the southern limits of the Challenger Plateau the continental shelf becomes very narrow and is dissected by steep submarine canyons that reach toward the coast near Hokitika, Cook River *Webeke* and southern South Westland. The seabed drops sharply to depths of 2000 metres or more within 20 kilometres of the coastline, a steepness that is comparable in relief to southern Westland's mountain ranges. Important areas such as the Hokitika Canyon and other sites where migratory fish such as hoki, hake, ling and orange roughy gather to spawn each year occur here. These fish aggregations are among the largest found in New Zealand and sustain some of the country's most important commercial fisheries. Little else is known of the natural character of these deep oceanic areas, but they undoubtedly contain habitats and species that do not occur in the shallower regions of the marine environment. The ocean depths extend south and west beyond the boundaries considered by this CMS, to the mud-covered abyssal plains of the Tasman Basin.

**Marine species.** Marine species are estimated to comprise up to 80% of New Zealand's total biodiversity. Commercial inshore fisheries on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* include red rock lobster, flatfish and sharks. Oceanographically, the area is one of New Zealand's most productive areas, supporting lucrative squid, hoki and tuna fisheries.

New Zealand's rich seabird fauna is well represented on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and includes the endemic Westland petrel *taiko*, the threatened Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki*, little blue penguin *kororā*, and shag, tern *tara* and other petrel species.

New Zealand fur seals *kekeno* rest and breed at some 16 colonies along the Coast's rocky shores and feed across the broad continental shelf, diving to depths of 200 m or more.

The threatened endemic Hector's dolphin *aibe* has a stronghold on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, remaining close inshore throughout the year. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and Tasman Sea is a migratory route for some whales, including the southern right whale *toborā*, and dead whales are periodically cast up on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* beaches.

Westland petrel *taiko* and Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki* are currently managed under recovery plans to prevent population decline and enable recovery of their populations.

Further information about the values of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine environment is available in "The West Coast marine and coastal environment: an initial report for the West Coast Marine Protection Forum" (Neale *et al* 2007).

### **3.3.1.7 Threats to marine biodiversity values**

Degradation of marine ecosystems is often caused not by single agents or events, but by a combination of events, or cumulative and incremental effects from numerous threats, that together act to place pressure on the native species and ecosystems. For example, adverse effects on seabed habitats and coastal dynamics may be caused by a range of human activities. These activities may disturb, smother or destroy the native marine plant and animal communities living on the seabed, and disrupt the food chains that such communities are a part of. They may also alter the movement of sediments and cause unwanted erosion or accretion of the shoreline.

In very general terms, the zone of coastal wetlands, dunes and inshore waters close to the coastline are impacted on by a wider range of threats than the open sea areas further offshore, and are a prime focus of conservation management. Most coastal areas adjoining beaches have been greatly modified by a century of use for transport routes, grazing, blacksand gold mining and intermittent habitation. Coastal riparian areas are important for biodiversity maintenance, yet have received little formal protection.

Adverse effects on the marine environment (and examples of the types of activities that potentially may cause such effects) include, but are not limited to:

- pollution (e.g. dumping of waste and contaminants in coastal wetlands, discharge of sewage into the ocean);
- catchment alteration, channel modification and mouth realignment (e.g. from flood or erosion protection works);
- alteration of coastal dynamics, natural shoreline changes and/or dune, wetland or beach environments (e.g. from coastal protection works, mining, aggregate and driftwood extraction);
- changes to landscape, seascape, natural character, amenity values and marine biodiversity (via occupation of coastal space, e.g. development of port facilities, aquaculture sites and whitebait stands);
- damage to fish spawning sites, introduction and spread of invasive weeds and browsing animals and degradation of coastal wetlands and natural coastal dune sequences, including grasslands and sedgeland (e.g. via agricultural development involving drainage, grassing, grazing and stocking of such areas);
- disturbance to wildlife (e.g. via use of boats and vehicles);
- seabed habitat disturbance (e.g. from bottom trawling, dredging, dumping, drilling, minerals exploration, extraction and mining);
- bycatch issues associated with harvesting of indigenous marine plants and animals, such as the capture of Hector's dolphins *albe* (e.g. in inshore fisheries) and of New Zealand fur seals *kekeno* (e.g. in the offshore hoki fishery);
- introduction and spread of marine pests (e.g. via ship hulls or ballast water and use of fishing or marine farming equipment); and
- climate change.

### **3.3.1.8 Other marine environment management issues**

The marine environment is governed by a large and complex legal framework, involving a number of government and non-governmental agencies. The Department and Minister of Conservation have a range of statutory responsibilities under various

Acts. The coastal environment (including land, foreshore, seabed and coastal waters from the high tide mark to the 12 nautical mile limit) is managed under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) by regional councils in conjunction with the Minister. The Minister is responsible for promoting the sustainable management of the natural and physical resources of the coastal environment and has statutory functions under the RMA (e.g. the preparation and recommendation of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement, approval of Regional Coastal Plans, and is consent authority on Restricted Coastal Activity coastal permit applications). The Department advises and assists the Minister in carrying out his/her sustainable coastal management functions under the RMA. Inside the 12 nautical mile limit, the Department's management responsibilities also include marine mammals, seabirds, and marine reserves. Between the 12 nautical mile limit and the 200 mile exclusive economic zone (EEZ), the Department's activities focus on marine mammals and seabirds. The Ministry of Fisheries and Biosecurity New Zealand have important roles in protecting the marine environment from pest species, but the Department also has an important surveillance and advocacy role. Controlling the adverse effects of fishing is the responsibility of the Ministry of Fisheries.

Unlike the terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, no parts of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine environment are presently set aside primarily for conservation management. Marine protection seeks to manage distinctive and representative sites from a conservation perspective, and such areas elsewhere in New Zealand and around the world are demonstrating benefits for marine biodiversity as well as for tourism and recreation, fisheries management, science, public education and other social outcomes. The West Coast Marine Protection Forum has been tasked with identifying representative marine areas for protection on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

There is currently a lack of knowledge and information about species, habitats and threats to marine ecosystems. This needs to be addressed through information collection, consulting people and organisations and undertaking scientific studies to answer key questions.

### **3.3.2 Knowledge, Information Needs and Priority Setting Tools for Natural Heritage Work**

#### **3.3.2.1 Knowledge and information needs**

Adequate knowledge of the natural heritage values of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and threats to these values is required to provide a sound basis for management. Scientific research underpins natural heritage management by providing answers to specific problems, developing improved management tools and increasing our understanding of natural processes. Management decisions often cannot be postponed to allow time for traditional research programmes to be completed. Integration of research and management therefore provides an opportunity to meet both objectives. Management programmes can be designed to function as controlled experiments. Provided scientific methods are used, it can usually be determined whether or not ecological management programmes are effective. This is often referred to as research by management, or adaptive management.

Monitoring is an essential management tool to determine whether management objectives have been met, to track progress towards the achievement of desired



conservation outcomes and to indicate where further work is needed. In the absence of systematic monitoring, changes to ecosystems often remain undetected and poorly understood. A balance needs to be achieved between allocating resources for monitoring work aimed at detecting changes, and allocating resources to management actions aimed at achieving desired outcomes. Monitoring programmes undertaken by authorisation holders provide extra information that may assist with the management of conservation values.

## OBJECTIVES

- 1. To improve knowledge of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* natural heritage.**
- 2. To increase understanding about how to best manage West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* natural heritage.**
- 3. To demonstrate the difference that natural heritage management is making.**
- 4. To ensure that all natural heritage data collected or used by the Department are robust and appropriate for the issue being addressed.**

## POLICIES

- 1. Research relationships should be formed within and between agencies, institutions, Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and individuals.**
- 2. Mātauranga Ngāi Tahu and Poutini Ngāi Tahu interests in research and monitoring on public conservation lands and waters, species and resources should be recognised and may be supported by cooperative arrangements.**
- 3. Critical gaps in knowledge about the Conservancy's natural heritage values and how best to manage them should be identified. Research that fills these gaps should be conducted and facilitated.**
- 4. Research that increases understanding of the dynamics of ecological systems and their component parts should be encouraged and facilitated, especially where relevant to management of natural heritage values.**
- 5. Monitoring programmes that provide data relevant to answering national, regional and local questions over relevant time scales, thus demonstrating the differences that natural heritage management actions have made, should continue to be developed and maintained.**
- 6. Research that may have adverse effects on conservation values should only be authorised where it makes a significant contribution to addressing timely and specific research questions and where it cannot be undertaken outside of public conservation lands.**

**See also** Section 3.2.2 Sharing conservation work  
Section 3.7.9 Research, collection and Wildlife Act permits  
Chapter 5.2 CMS Evaluation and Monitoring  
Appendix 1, Section 1.4 Mātauranga Ngāi Tahu  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 12(a) & (b), 12(d)-(i)  
General Policy for National Parks, Policies 11(a)-(g)

### 3.3.2.2 *Information management*

Natural heritage management decisions should be underpinned by sound scientific knowledge and understanding of natural systems, therefore access to accurate information is an integral requirement of natural heritage management.

#### OBJECTIVE

1. **To make accurate and up-to-date natural heritage information easily accessible to decision-makers and the public.**

#### POLICIES

1. **Natural heritage information should be stored in retrievable (preferably nationally available) electronic databases.**
2. **Support (e.g. information and technical advice) may be provided to people and organisations who participate in natural heritage conservation where this increases their relevant skills and their understanding of conservation.**

*See also* Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Section 3.2.2 Sharing conservation work

### 3.3.2.3 *Prioritising natural heritage work*

Assessment of the relative importance of different natural heritage values within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is necessary in order to prioritise management of these values and their threats, and thus to maximise conservation benefits. This applies both to management of threats to natural heritage values and to determining what level of human activity is appropriate at a given place.

In addition to this CMS, there are a number of strategies and plans that guide natural heritage management and help to determine priorities in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. At a national level, there is ongoing development of tools to assist in optimising natural heritage conservation and measuring the difference made by management. These tools require consistent and systematic collection, management and analysis of information on the status and location of different components of natural heritage. They provide information to help set or refine natural heritage management priorities, with the aim of ensuring that effort is directed at work that adds the most value. The objective and policies in this section apply broadly to all of the Conservancy's natural heritage work. Further guidance on ecosystem management priorities is provided in Section 3.3.3.

#### OBJECTIVE

1. **To prioritise effort and resources when protecting and enhancing natural heritage.**

#### POLICIES

1. **Natural heritage should be identified and its relative value assessed using standard criteria such as representativeness, viability, diversity, presence**

**of threatened and/or taonga species and their habitat, intactness and natural landscape character.**

- 2. The different types of existing and potential threats to natural heritage values should be identified.**
- 3. The level of management and specific actions required to achieve the objectives and desired outcomes for natural heritage conservation (see Chapters 3.3, 4.1 and 4.2) should be determined and prioritised.**
- 4. The best available tools should be used to set or refine natural heritage management priorities, to ensure that effort is directed at work that adds the most value.**

### **3.3.3 Ecosystem Management**

Strategies for natural heritage conservation have changed over time in response to new information, changing pressures on natural heritage and society's changing values. Most recently has been the shift from a focus on recovery of a few critically threatened species and control of the 'worst' invasive weeds and animal pests to an ecosystem management approach with a focus on priority sites. The ecosystem approach recognises the need to protect all indigenous biodiversity, not just critically threatened species. It focuses on the values being protected and identifies which threats need to be managed to protect these values.

The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy aims to move towards ecosystem management by integrating active natural heritage management at a selection of high priority sites which represent the full range of ecosystems found on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (see 'priority sites for biodiversity management' on Maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18). This approach aims to achieve the greatest conservation benefits from the available resources and current technology, and acknowledges the fact that the Department does not have the resources or technology to remove or prevent all threats from damaging conservation values at all places. Hence natural heritage management must be prioritised across the Conservancy. The approach also aims to integrate freshwater, terrestrial and, to a lesser extent, marine ecosystem management. Although management boundaries will have to be drawn around these priority sites, it must be recognised that ecological and physical processes act across management and tenure boundaries.

Because the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has some of the most intact natural heritage on the main islands of New Zealand, most management actions aim to maintain this high level of natural character. Many of the Conservancy's priority sites for natural heritage management include intact sequences of natural vegetation cover that extend from mountain ranges to the coast. The most intensive management will generally occur at sites where threatened species management is also occurring. Management will also be required at some partially modified sites (which typically occur in lowland areas) in order to ensure that a full range of ecosystems is protected. Here the management focus will be on improving linkages between intact protected areas and on local restoration programmes.

### **3.3.3.1 Legal protection of ecosystems**

A large amount of land is already legally protected within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy and some terrestrial ecosystems are well-represented, although a few are under-represented.

Few freshwater ecosystems are legally protected in their entirety. Wetlands located on private land have little formal protection from the adverse effects of drainage, adjacent vegetation clearance and livestock. In addition, protected freshwater ecosystems with high natural values may warrant a higher protection status than they were originally given. Thus, review of the status of some freshwater areas is a priority (see Section 3.8.2.2).

The conservation of marine biodiversity occurs in two ways: through protection of marine areas (as discussed in this section) and through protection of selected marine species (see Section 3.3.3.4), either totally or from particular activities or threats.

As at 2010, there are no legally protected marine areas on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. However, the Department is committed to a future where nationally-significant geographically-defined marine areas are fully protected. The Department has a joint role with the Ministry of Fisheries in administering and implementing the Marine Protected Area Policy and Implementation Plan 2005. This Policy gives effect to goals and objectives of the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2000: to establish a comprehensive and representative marine protected area network within New Zealand's marine environment. Marine reserves may play a significant role in achieving the necessary degree of marine biodiversity protection.

Public support is essential for the establishment and management of marine protected areas. The Department plays a leading role in fostering public awareness of marine environmental protection needs and gathering and distributing information about marine habitats and ecosystems. It works cooperatively with other public agencies, tangata whenua, interest groups and marine users to facilitate regional planning via community-based marine protection forums. Consultation with these people and organisations aims to ensure that proposals for marine protection are well-based, thoroughly investigated and, where possible, have the support of communities.

The planning process includes identification of sites where marine physical or biodiversity values are considered representative, unique, rare, or otherwise special or significant. Some of these sites may be legally protected as marine reserves under the Marine Reserves Act 1971 (or any statutes which supersede that Act during the term of this CMS). Other tools, such as taiapure and mataitai, may also be implemented. Taiapure and mataitai play a valuable role in buffering and complementing the marine protected area network.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To legally protect a comprehensive, representative range of terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.**
- 2. To legally protect a comprehensive, representative range of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine habitats and ecosystems.**

1. **An inventory and assessment of freshwater ecosystems in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy should be completed and maintained. The relative significance of their values, their functions, and threats affecting their values should be identified.**
2. **Highest priority for legal protection effort to conserve terrestrial or freshwater species, habitats or ecosystems should be given to:**
  - a) those ecosystem types which are under-represented or not represented within the network of public conservation lands (e.g. forests on well-drained alluvium and coastal vegetation, particularly coastal forests in the northern part of the Conservancy); and
  - b) habitats of threatened species where:
    - i) active management of the habitat is a high priority; or
    - ii) recovery action is necessary to achieve long-term security for the species; or
    - iii) management of sites or processes is essential in order to achieve the ecological management objectives for such habitats; or
    - iv) those sites where there are imminent threats which could result in long term or irreversible loss of natural heritage values.
  - c) The best representative examples of ecosystem types should be protected, where possible.
3. **The Department should raise public awareness about the need for marine protection by gathering and distributing information about marine habitats and ecosystems.**
4. **The Department should consult and work with Papatipu Rūnanga, communities and other people and organisations (such as recreational and commercial fishers, other recreational users or commercial interests, environmental interests and science and research interests) to identify distinctive examples of marine habitats and ecosystems that are representative of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine natural heritage (including biodiversity, geodiversity and landscapes<sup>10</sup>) and integrated marine protection measures required to protect them.**
5. **The Department should work cooperatively with the Ministry of Fisheries, tangata whenua, local authorities, local communities, marine users and other interested parties, in association with the West Coast Marine Protection Forum, to establish a comprehensive and representative marine protected area network on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. The selected marine protection mechanisms should complement protective mechanisms sought by others (e.g. regulations administered by the Ministry of Fisheries or taiapure or mataitai administered by tangata whenua).**

---

<sup>10</sup> The definition of landscapes used in this CMS includes seascapes (see Glossary).

**6. The Department will involve the Ministry of Fisheries, Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and other interested people and organisations in the management of marine protected areas.**

*See also* Section 3.8.2.1 Land transfer, exchange and disposal  
Section 3.8.2.2 Potential changes to land classification  
Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
Chapter 4.2 Desired outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 7(a)–(e)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.4(a)–(h)

**3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems**

The Department often works in conjunction with other people and organisations when undertaking conservation management activities. For instance, pest control is undertaken by community and industry groups, commercial and recreational hunters, the Animal Health Board and the Department. Rural fire control is a legislative responsibility for the Department in terms of the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977 (see Section 3.8.8). Effective fire management is a key part of the Department's integrated approach to ecosystem protection.

As it is not possible with current techniques and resourcing to undertake active management of all threats at every site, prioritisation of work is needed (see Section 3.3.2.3). In general, the highest priority sites for work will be those with high natural values which are currently threatened (see priority sites for biodiversity management on Maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18).

The Department's approach to the management of freshwater ecosystems recognises that connections are the key for maintaining the life-supporting capacity of entire systems and the species that inhabit them. Just as streams and rivers connect and sustain freshwater ecosystems within catchments, so too do unmodified upland catchments protect and sustain the waterways that flow through them (by preventing erosion, maintaining water quality and mitigating flooding in downstream areas). Other wetlands and riparian areas play similar roles in all terrains. This interconnectedness of freshwater ecosystems across the landscape, including into the coastal zone and across legal boundaries, and the Department's responsibilities for freshwater components that occur both within and outside of public conservation lands (indigenous freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats), means the Department needs to continue to undertake statutory advocacy (see Section 3.8.3) and work with other agencies, Poutini Ngāi Tahu and local communities (see Section 3.2.2) in order to maintain and restore the indigenous natural character and life-supporting capacity of freshwater ecosystems across the entire West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

**OBJECTIVE**

- 1. To maintain, and restore where practicable, the indigenous natural character of the full range of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* terrestrial, freshwater and marine ecosystems.**

**1. Management of threats to terrestrial and freshwater species, habitats and ecosystems across all public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* should be prioritised, taking into account the need to:**

- a) prevent the loss of indigenous species and the full range of their habitats and ecosystems;
- b) maintain contiguous sequences of indigenous ecosystems (e.g. from mountains to sea);
- c) maintain representative examples of the full range of indigenous ecosystems;
- d) maintain populations of indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems with unique or distinctive values;
- e) achieve recovery of threatened indigenous species (including their genetic integrity and diversity) and restore their habitats where necessary;
- f) restore threatened indigenous ecosystems and connections between ecosystems where necessary;
- g) maintain the ecological integrity of indigenous ecosystems consistent with the purposes for which the land is held;
- h) protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats; and
- i) achieve integrated management at priority sites.

**2. Integrated management should be undertaken for the following priority sites for biodiversity management:**

- a) Heaphy (see Map 6);
- b) Ōparara Basin (see Map 6);
- c) Karamea Bluffs (see Maps 6 and 8);
- d) Mokihinui (see Map 8);
- e) Granity Wetland Complex (see Map 8);
- f) Buller Coal Plateaux (see Map 8);
- g) Cape Foulwind (see Map 8);
- h) Western Paparoa (see Map 10);
- i) Maruia (see Map 12);
- j) North Westland Ecological Region Lakes Complex (see Map 14);
- k) Card Creek (see Map 14);
- l) Otira (see Map 16);
- m) Kaniere (see Map 16);
- n) Styx/Arahura (see Map 16);
- o) Mahināpua (see Map 16);
- p) Mikonui (see Map 16);
- q) Ōkārito/Saltwater (see Map 18);
- r) Upper Whataroa (see Map 18);
- s) Upper Waiho (see Map 18);
- t) Copland (see Map 18);
- u) Landsborough (see Map 18);

- v) Moeraki/Windbag (see Map 18);
  - w) Haast Plains (see Map 18);
  - x) Haast Valley (see Map 18);
  - y) Okuru/Turnbull (see Map 18);
  - z) Arawhata (see Map 18); and
  - aa) Cascade (see Map 18).
3. **Highly significant terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems should be restored where necessary to improve their functioning.**
  4. **Marine protected areas should be actively managed in order to maintain them in, or restore them to, a naturally functioning state.**
  5. **Public involvement in conservation projects may be encouraged through provision of volunteer opportunities and direct participation in the management of natural heritage.**
  6. **Ecological restoration initiatives, driven by communities, industry or other people or organisations, may be supported - particularly at priority sites for biodiversity management (see Maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18).**
  7. **The condition of natural heritage values, their threats, and ecological trends should be monitored at priority sites for biodiversity management or within marine protected areas. Monitoring results should be used to evaluate and adapt future management.**
  8. **Research undertaken by individuals or organisations interested in participating in restoration projects for terrestrial, freshwater or marine ecosystems should be encouraged and facilitated.**
  9. **At selected localities with sensitive natural heritage values (e.g. areas adjacent to the Westland petrel *taiko* colony and other wildlife breeding colonies) acceptable standards for factors such as noise and lighting should be established, promoted and advocated.**
  10. **The historical extent and composition of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* freshwater ecosystems should be evaluated and compared with the current extent and composition, in order to assess and quantify human-induced changes. Indicators to monitor future changes should be developed and applied.**
  11. **Protected freshwater ecosystems may be managed to allow natural processes such as flooding to continue to occur.**
  12. **Total catchment management that will maintain or improve existing ecosystem services (including soil, water and indigenous vegetation values) and regimes in catchments that drain into caves in public conservation lands may be promoted and advocated for.**
  13. **Research aimed at advancing knowledge and understanding of karst and cave ecosystems and natural processes, which will improve the effectiveness of their conservation management, should be encouraged and facilitated.**



14. **Public understanding and appreciation of the international significance and scientific, scenic, cultural and recreational significance of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* cave and karst resources should be fostered.**
15. **The Department should seek provisions in regional and district plans and advocate generally for the protection of cave and karst features located outside of public conservation lands.**
16. **The Department should work cooperatively to develop and strengthen effective working relationships with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, land owners, communities, local authorities, non-governmental agencies and other people and organisations to protect natural heritage located beyond public conservation lands. Attention should focus on national priorities for protecting rare and threatened biodiversity on private land<sup>11</sup>, significant natural marine ecosystems and habitats of indigenous marine species.**
17. **The Department should advocate to ensure that approvals granted by local authorities through statutory processes include conditions that provide effective protection for significant remnant habitats, including altitudinal ecosystem sequences and the habitat of rare or threatened species.**
18. **The Department should advocate for appropriate action to be taken to protect, maintain and/or restore the integrity of freshwater ecosystems and habitats, including the protection of entire wetlands and river catchments, and their riparian margins.**
19. **The Department should encourage restoration of the natural character of waterbody margins, through fencing to exclude livestock, removal of invasive weeds and revegetation using indigenous species.**
20. **The Department should advocate for the development of an ethic that acknowledges wetland conservation is an integral part of sustainable land management on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.**
21. **In relation to freshwater ecosystems, advocacy may focus on sites which have linkages to wetlands located within public conservation lands.**
22. **The integrated protection of marine biodiversity, important geodiversity and landscapes<sup>12</sup> located outside marine protected areas should be advocated for using mechanisms such as the Marine Reserves Act 1971, Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, Wildlife Act 1953, Fisheries Act 1996, Resource Management Act 1991 and Biosecurity Act 1993.**

---

11 On 26 April 2007, the Minister of Conservation and Minister for the Environment issued a Statement of National Priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land. This statement provides local authorities, communities and private landowners with information about the types of ecosystems and habitats on private land that from a national perspective are most threatened and in need of protection. The information about the national priorities can be used by local and central government agencies and landowners to coordinate their decisions and on-the-ground actions in relation to biodiversity. See the following brochures for more information: "Protecting our Places - Introducing the national priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land" and "Protecting our Places - Information about the national priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land" (Ministry for the Environment, 2007).

12 The definition of landscapes used in this CMS includes seascapes (see Glossary).

23. **Appropriate actions to protect the habitat of threatened marine species should be advocated.**
24. **The Department should advocate to ensure that the natural heritage values of marine protected areas, including water quality, are not diminished by the adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of activities in areas adjoining or connected to those marine protected areas.**
25. **The provisions of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement relating to the coastal marine area should be upheld, either through direct conservation management, advocacy or statutory processes.**
26. **The Department should work with local, district and regional councils on any changes to coastal plans developed under the Resource Management Act 1991, in order to ensure that adverse effects on the coastal environment are appropriately managed.**
27. **The Department should continue to work with Papatipu Rūnanga to protect priority freshwater and marine sites of cultural significance.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai – environmental protection  
 Chapter 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
 Section 3.3.3.5 Threatened species management  
 Section 3.3.3.6 Biosecurity and pest management  
 Section 3.3.3.7 Ecosystem services  
 Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
 Section 3.6.4.13 Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)  
 Section 3.8.8 Fire risk management  
 Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
 Chapter 4.2 – Indigenous biodiversity sections (all places)  
 Chapter 4.2 – Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020 (all places)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.1(a)-(i)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 7(b) & 7(e)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 4.1(a)-(e), 4.2(a)-(d)

### **3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries**

Within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, the Department's roles and responsibilities for freshwater management include:

- preservation, so far as is practicable, of all indigenous freshwater fisheries (s 6(ab) Conservation Act 1987) in waters of all tenure;
- protection of recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats (s 6(ab) Conservation Act 1987);
- protection of the whitebait fishery and administration of the Whitebait Fishing (West Coast) Regulations 1994;
- management of freshwater wildlife protected under the Wildlife Act 1953;
- transfer or release of live aquatic life (section 26ZM of the Conservation Act);
- active management of freshwater systems and sites located within public conservation lands;
- management of freshwater ecosystems located outside of public conservation lands via its regulatory powers (see: Part 5B and sections 48, 48A and 48B of the Conservation Act 1987; Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983; and Whitebait Fishing (West Coast) Regulations 1994);

- minimisation of the effects of freshwater invasive weeds, animal pests and unwanted organisms through internal biosecurity measures and by pest or weed control at sites where there are potential impacts on indigenous species or ecosystems; and
- advocacy for the conservation of aquatic life and freshwater fisheries generally (section 53(3)(d) Conservation Act 1987) and for conservation outcomes for significant freshwater ecosystems located outside of public conservation lands.

The objectives and policies in this section relate specifically to the management of indigenous freshwater fisheries. Other aspects of freshwater ecosystem management are covered elsewhere in Section 3.3.3.

Although commercial harvest of freshwater fish is managed by the Ministry of Fisheries, a concession is required to undertake commercial activities such as eeling within public conservation lands and waters (see Section 3.7.3). Customary harvesting of indigenous species is covered in Section 3.1.2.4 and recreational fishing is covered in Section 3.6.4.13.

#### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To prevent further extinctions of indigenous freshwater fish species and declines in species abundance and range.**

#### POLICIES

- 1. Existing and potential threats affecting indigenous fish populations, including barriers to migration (see Policies 2-4), habitat degradation and loss (see Section 3.3.1.5), introduction of pest species (see Policy 9 and Section 3.3.1.5), and interactions between exotic fish, including sports fish, and indigenous fish (see Policy 9) should be addressed.**
- 2. The Department should safeguard fish migration through application of the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983 fish passage provisions, advocacy through local authority planning processes, and monitoring.**
- 3. The Department should work with other agencies (e.g. local authorities, roading authorities) and land owners to compile an inventory of existing significant artificial barriers to the migration of indigenous freshwater species to and from the ocean.**
- 4. Where of benefit to native fish species, the Department should advocate for the removal of barriers or the installation of fish passes that allow native fish to travel both upstream and downstream, and monitor the effectiveness of such fish passes.**
- 5. The Department should consult with and have particular regard to the advice of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga in the management of the whitebait fishery.**
- 6. A range of options to sustain whitebait populations on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* should be identified and implemented. These may include (but not be limited to):**
  - a) working with land owners, Poutini Ngāi Tahu and the West Coast Whitebaiter's Association to identify and protect whitebait spawning habitat;

- b) other habitat enhancement; and
  - c) enforcing compliance with the Whitebait Fishing (West Coast) Regulations 1994 and Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983 fish passage provisions.
- 7. Research into population dynamics and recruitment of the five whitebait species may be encouraged and supported.**
- 8. Fishing for whitebait and eels in reserves may be authorised only where:**
- a) it is consistent with all relevant Acts and regulations (including fisheries legislation);
  - b) it is consistent with the purposes for which the land is held;
  - c) it is consistent with all relevant objectives, policies and outcomes of this CMS;
  - d) the preservation of the indigenous freshwater fisheries and the maintenance of the range and stocks are not affected; and, in relation to whitebaiting,
  - e) the reserve is not located within an area where whitebaiting is prohibited (see Schedule 1 of the Whitebait Fishing (West Coast) Regulations 1994).
- 9. Where feasible, the eradication or containment of non-indigenous species in freshwater habitats with high indigenous freshwater fishery values should be encouraged.**
- 10. The Department should develop and/or contribute to research programmes that aim at better understanding the habitat requirements of threatened indigenous fish species.**
- 11. Surveys to improve understanding of the range of indigenous fish species present on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and to help predict where they are likely to be found may be undertaken.**
- 12. Where possible, the natural range of indigenous freshwater fish should be re-established.**
- 13. Public and resource user awareness about the importance of freshwater ecosystems, threats to fish habitats and vulnerability of species should be enhanced.**

**See also** Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga tāonga tuku iho - Customary use  
 Chapter 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
 Section 3.3.3.5 Threatened species management  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.13 Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)  
 Section 3.7.2 Activities on or in beds of rivers or lakes  
 Section 3.7.3 Commercial eeling  
 Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
 Chapter 4.2 - Indigenous biodiversity sections (all places)  
 Appendix 1, Section 1.10 Freshwater fauna  
 Appendix 2 - Department of Conservation Protocols  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.1(f)-(i)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 4.4(a)-(g)

### **3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species**

A number of pieces of legislation confer protection on marine species throughout New Zealand fisheries waters. The Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 protects seals and sea lions (*Pinnipedia*) and whales and dolphins (*Cetacea*). A national

Population Management Plan is used to guide the management of fisheries interactions with Hector's dolphin *aibe*. The Wildlife Act 1953 fully protects all marine reptiles appearing in New Zealand fisheries waters, two fish species, two types of coral and all New Zealand seabirds except black-backed gulls *karoro* (which are not protected). The Fisheries Act 1996 enables bycatch of protected species to occur, but within limits. It requires that the adverse effects of fishing on protected species be avoided, remedied or mitigated, and that research into those effects and the development of techniques to reduce them be funded through a fishing industry levy (the Conservation Services Levy) where impacts are demonstrated. This work is prioritised at the national level and aimed at:

- developing and implementing measures to reduce the impacts of incidental capture or other fisheries interactions on these species;
- assessing or quantifying the impact of incidental capture or adverse effects on protected species; and
- detecting incidental capture and other interactions of protected species in commercial fisheries.

Marine mammals are of special significance to Ngāi Tahu. Conservation General Policy 4.4(h) provides guidance for the Department's relationship with Poutini Ngāi Tahu regarding management of protected marine species, including marine mammal strandings and the recovery of cultural materials from dead marine protected species. General policy implementation will include development of protocols (e.g. under section 281 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998).

#### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To prevent further extinctions or range contractions of marine protected species and protect their long-term viability and recovery throughout their natural range.**

#### POLICIES

- 1. Marine mammal populations that are regarded as threatened or are affected by human interactions, including Hector's dolphins *aibe*, New Zealand fur seals *kekeno* and southern right whales *toborā*, should be assessed and protected. Protection mechanisms may include establishment of marine mammal sanctuaries in potentially significant sites and habitats (see Section 3.3.3.1).**
- 2. Marine mammal tourism should only be authorised where mechanisms are in place to ensure adequate protection of the species.**
- 3. Marine mammal advocacy work should focus on industry, recreational fishers and involvement in local authority planning processes.**
- 4. The Department should intervene to save absolutely protected individual wildlife and marine mammals under immediate threat (see Policy 5).**
- 5. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Marine Mammal Stranding Contingency Plan should be maintained and used to guide operational response to marine mammal incidents, including strandings, rescues and recoveries.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga tāonga tuku iho - Customary use

Chapter 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Section 3.3.3.5 Threatened species management  
Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
Section 4.2.8 Desired outcome for the Marine Place  
Appendix 1, Section 1.11 Ngā mea hira o te rohe o Takaroa – The values of the domain of Takora  
Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.4(f)-(l)

### **3.3.3.5 Threatened species management**

On the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, 86 taxa<sup>13</sup> are acutely threatened with extinction. A further 55 taxa are declining and 122 taxa are at risk of future declines due to being sparsely distributed or restricted to small areas. Another 48 taxa are little known and potentially also threatened (Hitchmough *et al* 2007). Without management intervention, local extinctions of threatened species will occur, resulting in a decline of indigenous biodiversity.

As at 2010, national species recovery plans guide the management of several species on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, including rowi, Haast tokoeka, yellowhead *mohua*, blue duck *whio*, Westland petrel *taiko*, weka, bats *pekapeka*, brown mudfish, large galaxiids (freshwater fish), coastal cresses *nau*, prostrate native broom and mistletoe. Due to the large number of threatened species, effective conservation will increasingly require an ecosystem approach which protects multiple species at any given site.

The Crown's settlement with Ngāi Tahu includes recognition of Ngāi Tahu's special traditional relationship with taonga species (see Section 3.1.3.6). Taonga species are listed in Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, and are native birds, plants and animals of special cultural significance and importance to Ngāi Tahu that are found within the Ngāi Tahu takiwā. There are 49 bird, 58 plant, 6 marine mammal, 7 fish and 5 shellfish taonga species (see Appendix 4). Many taonga species are classified as threatened species.

The following objectives and policies apply to threatened terrestrial, freshwater and marine species. The objectives and policies in Section 3.1.3.6 also apply to threatened species that are taonga species.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To prevent further extinctions or range contractions of indigenous species found on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.**
- 2. To ensure, where practicable, that representative populations of all indigenous species have long-term security in predominantly natural habitats within their natural range.**

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. Gaps in knowledge of the distribution and abundance of threatened species may be identified, and surveys undertaken to fill these gaps.**
- 2. Causal agents of decline for each threatened species should be identified.**

---

<sup>13</sup> Taxa include both species and subspecies.

3. **Work on threatened species should focus on preventing extinction and maintaining genetic diversity. Subsequent priorities should include progressively increasing the security, range and population size of species.**
4. **Where possible, threatened species management should be implemented at sites where other biodiversity work is already happening (i.e. priority sites for biodiversity management, see Section 3.3.3.2) in order to maximise biodiversity gains.**
5. **Ex-situ conservation management may be undertaken where and when required.**
6. **The Department should continue to advocate through statutory processes for the habitat of indigenous species, in particular rare or threatened species, to be safeguarded on lands and in waters of all tenure<sup>14</sup>.**
7. **Public awareness of the threats to threatened species and their habitats, and the value of indigenous species and their protection should be raised.**

*See also* Section 3.1.3.6 Taonga species  
 Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
 Section 3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems  
 Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
 Section 3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species  
 Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020  
 Chapter 4.2 - Indigenous biodiversity sections (all places)  
 Appendix 4 - Taonga species  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.1(d)

### **3.3.3.6 *Biosecurity and pest management***

Several introduced species are a major threat to New Zealand's indigenous flora and fauna. Many new species, particularly insects and invasive weeds, could add to this effect if they became established as a result of increased international trade and tourism. For a complete list of potential new pest species, refer to the national register of unwanted organisms (available online at [www.biosecurity.govt.nz](http://www.biosecurity.govt.nz)), which is maintained by Biosecurity New Zealand.

The defence of our borders and the containment and eradication of new invaders is a major challenge which is currently being met through the New Zealand Biosecurity Strategy. The Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and the Ministry of Fisheries are the key agencies implementing the Biosecurity Strategy. The Department also has an important surveillance and advocacy role, with a particular focus on the risks to our indigenous biodiversity.

---

<sup>14</sup> On 26 April 2007, the Minister of Conservation and Minister for the Environment issued a Statement of National Priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land. This statement provides local authorities, communities and private landowners with information about the types of ecosystems and habitats on private land that from a national perspective are most threatened and in need of protection. The information about the national priorities can be used by local and central government agencies and landowners to co-ordinate their decisions and on-the-ground actions in relation to biodiversity. See the following brochures for more information: "Protecting our Places - Introducing the national priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land" and "Protecting our Places - Information about the national priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land" (Ministry for the Environment, 2007).

The risk of new unwanted organisms turning up on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is less than in other parts of New Zealand as there are no major air or sea ports on the Coast. However, *Didymosphenia geminata* (Didymo) is now established in a number of rivers and there is still potential for new species (e.g. *Undaria*) to turn up. A strong biosecurity focus is required to minimise risks to indigenous biodiversity. Objective 1 and Policies 1-3 below apply to unwanted marine, freshwater and terrestrial organisms. Policies 4-15 relate specifically to pest management within freshwater and terrestrial ecosystems.

#### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To protect natural heritage values from the adverse effects of unwanted organisms, invasive weeds and animal pests.**

#### POLICIES

- 1. The Department should work with other agencies, including the West Coast Regional Council, Tasman District Council, Animal Health Board, Biosecurity New Zealand and the Ministry of Fisheries, to develop and implement biosecurity and pest management programmes in accordance with Policies 2-3 below:**
- 2. Biosecurity and pest management programmes should give priority to:**
  - undertaking surveillance at high-risk sites to allow early detection of new unwanted organisms; then
  - preventing pests becoming established, including illegal and inadvertent transfers; then
  - eradicating newly naturalised pests, where practicable; then
  - eradicating, containing or reducing the range of unwanted organisms or pests that are established but not widespread, where practicable; and then
  - controlling widespread pests where this is required to protect indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems, where eradication or containment of them is not practicable.
- 3. Public and resource user awareness of the adverse impacts of unwanted organisms on indigenous species and ecosystems, and of ways to avoid their introduction and spread, should be enhanced.**
- 4. The Department should work with other management agencies to prevent illegal introductions and transfers of invasive weed or animal pest species and prevent introduction of sports fish into waters where they are not already present. A range of measures should be used, including public awareness, deterrents, compliance promotion and enforcement.**
- 5. Populations of newly identified invasive weed and animal pest species should be eradicated, excluded or contained where there is likely to be a significant benefit to indigenous species, habitats or ecosystems.**
- 6. Priority should be given to the control of newly identified incursions of invasive weeds and animal pests.**



7. **The spread of the most damaging invasive weeds and animal pests into ecologically important areas should be prevented by undertaking pest-led control programmes.**
8. **The health of priority ecosystems should be maintained by undertaking integrated invasive weed and animal pest control at priority sites for biodiversity management (see Maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18).**
9. **Existing populations of invasive weeds or animal pests should be controlled where practicable (see also Part 4, which identifies desired outcomes relating to priority weed and pest control at Places).**
10. **With the exception of red and fallow deer, which already occur in the wild on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, no other species of deer should be allowed to establish a feral range anywhere on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.**
11. **Himalayan tahr will be managed as follows:**
  - a) Tahr will be controlled to meet the management goals and conservation objectives of the Himalayan Tahr Control Plan 1993 (and any revisions), so long as applicable.
  - b) Priority will be given to meeting the requirements of the General Policies, preventing the expansion of their feral range and protection of national park values.
  - c) Biosecurity is a high priority and all new populations of tahr outside their existing feral range should be eradicated.
  - d) Tahr should be controlled to zero density in the Southern and Northern exclusion zones, to prevent tahr dispersing south or north of the current feral range, and within national parks.
12. **Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests within public conservation lands should be encouraged and promoted, where consistent with General Policy.**
13. **Invasive weed and animal pest control methods should be cost-effective, efficient and not pose undue risk to the environment and public health or be in breach of the Animal Welfare Act 1999. Other individuals and agencies undertaking pest control in public conservation lands should be required to use pest control methods that meet the same standards.**
14. **The Department should meet agreed obligations to control invasive weeds, animal pests and unwanted organisms (e.g. Didymo) arising out of national and regional pest management strategies (e.g. the Regional Pest Plant Management Strategy for the West Coast) established under the Biosecurity Act 1993.**
15. **Research into methods for large-scale control of animal pests that have historically proven difficult to effectively control (e.g. stoats, ship rats, hares and wasps) should be encouraged and facilitated.**

*See also* Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
 Section 3.6.4.16 Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests  
 Section 3.7.12 Commercial recovery of wild animals  
 Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020

### 3.3.3.7 ***Ecosystem services and economic benefits***

The Conservation General Policy 2005 defines ecosystem services as “*a wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help sustain and fulfil life*”. Such services need to be preserved in order to ensure the sustainability and resilience of the natural environment, human’s use of that environment and ultimately the survival of humans and other species.

Ecosystem services, including the products resulting from the delivery of ecosystem services, which are directly or indirectly provided by conservation, include a broad range of things, from flood protection to nutrient recycling. Nationally the Department focuses on maintaining life sustaining ecosystem services, which include:

- Regulating services such as flood risk mitigation, water quality and quantity, fire, erosion control and sediment reduction, and an ability to meet New Zealand’s international climate change commitments through enhanced carbon storage.
- Supporting services such as soil formation, nutrient recycling, extraction of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere, replenishment of oxygen and decomposition of wastes.

Public conservation lands cover approximately 30% of New Zealand’s land area and contain the vast majority of remaining natural ecosystems, including the headwater catchments of most rivers; more than 60% of the terrestrial carbon storage; most of the iconic scenery; and many culturally important sites.

Ecosystem services were the traditional rationale for the setting aside of most of the lands currently held as public conservation lands, although different terms were used (e.g. water and soil conservation, scenery preservation, growth and preservation of timber). While conservation has tended to become synonymous with biodiversity in recent years, ecosystem service values remain critical to the value of conservation and the public’s perception of that value. In recent times the potential role of public conservation land management in contributing to national strategies to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and hence meet international obligations under the “Kyoto protocol” has been the subject of developing interest.

Little is known yet of the economic values that conservation management offers in enhanced delivery of ecosystem services. There have also been few attempts to specifically quantify the economic value of ecosystem services delivered by public conservation lands though it seems certain the value will be very high. A 2005 report by the Department of Conservation on the ‘Regional Economic Impacts of West Coast Conservation Land’ discusses the economic values that conservation offers. The report calculates that economic activity dependent on the Department and public conservation land on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* totals \$221 million a year in gross output, and supports about 1814 full time equivalent jobs in the region. The bulk of the economic activity identified in the report - 1450 jobs - is derived from tourism and outdoor recreation using conservation land, or is dependent on the appeal of it to pull in visitors. Income being earned for households from activity dependent on public conservation land was about \$62 million a year.

It is therefore important that the Department and others using public conservation lands and waters recognise these values and ensure their actions do not adversely affect the quality of ecosystem services delivery.

## OBJECTIVES

1. **To protect the quality of life sustaining ecosystem services.**
2. **To raise New Zealanders' awareness and understanding of ecosystem services and the value of conservation.**

## POLICIES

1. **Public and resource user awareness of the value of intact ecosystems, including the ecosystem services that they provide, and about threats to natural heritage values should be enhanced.**
2. **Research into ecosystem services provided by public conservation lands and waters will be supported, to better understand and quantify these services and their benefits.**

*See also* Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Part 4 Desired Outcomes  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 4.6(a)

### 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### 3.3.4.1 *Geodiversity and landscape values*

##### **Geodiversity values**

Geodiversity encompasses minerals, rocks, soils<sup>15</sup>, geothermal resources and landforms and all of the processes which have formed these geological features. Geodiversity is thus an inherent component of natural landscapes, which are the visual expression of the cultural, physical and biological processes operating in the environment.

New Zealand is an old land with a young landscape. This seeming paradox is particularly apparent on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. The oldest New Zealand rocks are found on the Coast, near Charleston. Known as Charleston Gneiss, they date back to the Precambrium (more than 600 million years ago) and are thought to have been part of the landmass of the ancient southern continent Gondwana. Compared to this, the landforms that are so characteristic of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* today are young. They have only been formed during the past five million years, in processes that are still active.

The most remarkable geological feature of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is the Alpine Fault, running along the western side of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* and marking the boundary between the Australian and Pacific continental plates. The Alpine Fault is one of only four sites in the world where the collision zone between two continental plates is visible on land. During the past 5 million years this collision has led to the uplift of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*. The thrust

---

<sup>15</sup> Soil is also a fundamental component of terrestrial ecosystems and is discussed in Section 3.3.2.1

is sideways as well as upwards, which has led to the separation of formerly adjacent areas such as the ultramafic rocks of the Red Hills Range in southern Westland and the related Dun Mountain ultramafic belt in the Nelson area. The movement of the continental plates is still occurring; occasional earthquakes and a number of geothermal springs are reminders of this geological activity.

Glaciers have formed the land on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* in more recent times, in a series of alternating cold glacial and warmer interglacial periods during the Pleistocene (2 million - 10,000 years ago). During this period the Coast was more extensively glaciated than any other part of New Zealand. During the cold periods glaciers advanced from the mountains into lowland areas, deepening valleys and transporting enormous quantities of gravel and boulders to lower altitudes. During the warmer periods when glaciers retreated, rocks and gravel were left behind forming the moraine hills which are still a prominent feature of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* landscapes today. Other relics of the 'Ice Ages' are the numerous lakes formed by moraine dams or in holes carved by the glaciers.

West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* rocks comprise a wide variety of types, from granite and greywacke to schist and sedimentary rocks, such as sandstone, siltstone, limestone and conglomerate. Some of these rocks are of high scientific and educational value because they represent unique occurrences (e.g. Waiho Valley alpine schist). Furthermore, they are scientifically important because they tell the tale of New Zealand's origins and geological development. Structural rock formations, such as distinct layering or warping, are also of scientific and educational importance, providing further clues on the geological history of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and New Zealand.

Some minerals are also unique to the Coast, or occur in particularly well developed crystals. Their occurrence also provides insight into the geological processes that have formed our land. Some minerals, such as pounamu, gold and coal, are also of cultural and economic significance.

Fossils, in contrast, are significant because they tell the history of life. The oldest fossils on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, found near Reefton, are of international scientific importance. They date back to the Devonian (400 - 350 million years ago), when New Zealand was still part of the southern continent Gondwana.

Underlying geology and landforms are among the main abiotic factors determining the characteristics of an ecosystem, hence geological sites can also have biological values. The best examples of this on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are karst areas, where the interaction of water with limestone creates a unique landscape with characteristic habitats for a distinct fauna and flora (see Section 3.3.3.2).

Further information about the geology and palaeontology of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* can be found in the book 'In Search of Ancient New Zealand' (Campbell and Hutchings, 2007) and on the 1:250,000 QMaps of Nelson, Greymouth, Aoraki and Haast areas.

The Department currently does not have a system for ranking the significance of geological features. Until such time as a system is in place, the Conservancy will use sources such as the New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory (NZGI; maintained by the Geological Society of New Zealand) to identify, protect and advocate for internationally, nationally and regionally significant sites. The inventory is based on the combined knowledge and advice of a large sector of New Zealand's geological,

geomorphological, speleological and soil science community. It aims at listing sites that are unique, important, and the best representative examples of New Zealand's diverse earth science heritage. The NZGI identifies 194 significant sites in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (Appendix 6). They include a range of minerals, rock types, structural rock formations, fossils and landforms that are of particular scientific, educational, aesthetic or recreational value. Twenty-four of the sites have been rated as internationally important, 60 as nationally important, and 110 as regionally important. The listing in Appendix 6 excludes sites that are significant for their historic values; historic places are covered in Chapter 3.4.

### **Landform and Landscape Values**

Landforms are the product of geological and physical forces, such as continental uplift, water movement and erosion. Landscapes are the visual expression of the cultural, physical and biological processes operating in the environment. Many places have historical, cultural or aesthetic values that may be difficult to quantify. There is therefore a need to recognise that some landforms or landscapes may be special for particular groups of people, but not for others.

Many landforms on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are of high scientific and educational value because they are young and the processes and effects involved in their creation can be clearly identified and studied. For example, the fault scarps along the Alpine Fault allow insight into the frequency and origin of earthquakes, and elevated marine terraces and beaches show how parts of our land were uplifted over time. Specific landforms that are outstanding representatives of a particular type of geomorphological process also include those associated with the advance and retreat of glaciers and the evolution of lowland karst areas. For instance, the karst landscapes and cave systems of Paparoa and Kahurangi National Parks and adjoining limestone areas represent some of the best examples of largely unmodified lowland karst in New Zealand; some are also of international significance. Many landforms also have cultural, aesthetic and recreational significance. Deeply incised river gorges, lakes, caves and glacier valleys are just some examples of typical West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* landforms valued highly by New Zealanders and international tourists for their scenic value and recreational opportunities.

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contains landscapes which are recognised for their distinctive character and underlying processes, their intrinsic values, and their contribution to the overall character of the Conservancy. Many areas of public conservation land have been protected for their scenic landscape values. Landscapes of international, national and regional significance include many of the alpine regions (especially the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*); numerous glaciers and associated landforms; lowland forests; lowland wetlands; large lakes surrounded by intact lowland forest; karst landscapes; coastal bluffs; bush clad ranges and foothills hugging the coast; driftwood-strewn beaches; lagoons and estuaries; ancient forested dune ridges; and large, contiguous areas of unmodified natural landscape, from the mountains to the sea.

An inventory of geological features and landforms of international, national and regional significance in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is presented in Appendix 6. Statutory instruments such as tōpuni have been put in place in recognition of the significant association Ngāi Tahu has with particular landforms (see Section 3.1.3.1). Excluding these, landscapes of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu have not been included within this CMS - at the request of Papatipu Rūnanga.

Some of these landscapes may be identified in iwi or hapū management plans in future.

Individual conservation values, which the Conservancy is required to preserve and protect, are interwoven in the landscape. Hence their protection inevitably involves protecting patterns and rates of change in land and waters, i.e. the landscapes which make up the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

**See also** Section 3.1.3.1 Tōpuni  
Section 3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems  
Chapter 4.2 Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020 (all places)  
Appendix 6, Geological features and landforms of international, national or regional significance in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.5(a)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 4.5(a)

### **3.3.4.2 *Threats to geodiversity and landscapes***

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is one of the few places in New Zealand where a range of relatively unmodified natural landscapes still exists. Landforms, landscapes and geologically significant sites are vulnerable to the effects of change from a variety of human activities. Examples of activities that potentially may adversely affect these values include, but are not limited to: excavation and mining; earthworks and roading; development of utilities, infrastructure or other buildings in natural settings/on skylines; subdivision; wetland drainage; native vegetation clearance; trampling by livestock or humans; permanent moorings/anchorages on natural lakes; and excavation, diversion or other modification of geothermal resources (e.g. springs or hot pools). Natural processes, such as erosion, flooding, slumping may also threaten landforms, landscapes and geologically significant sites.

The NZGI includes information on the vulnerability of sites to damage. Most geologically significant features on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are not immediately threatened by direct or indirect human impacts (see NZGI or Appendix 6). However, some features have been identified as highly vulnerable, in particular the cave and karst systems of the Karamea and Paparoa area. Fossil sites are another group of highly vulnerable geological features.

The destruction or degradation of geological features, landforms, and their underlying processes impacts on the character and function of the natural landscape and its ecosystems.

**See also** Appendix 6, Geological features and landforms of international, national or regional significance in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

### **3.3.4.3 *Management of geodiversity and landscapes***

Geopreservation is the conservation of geodiversity (landform, geological and soil features) and the protection of processes which give rise to these features. Landscape conservation aims to maintain or enhance an area's specific indigenous characteristic, ecological, historical and cultural values. Where change is proposed, landscape conservation seeks to ensure that the proposed change is integrated with appropriate regard to the effects the change will have on the landscape's broader character.

Management of a natural landscape should ensure that the effects of change are accounted for beyond the immediate site and across time. The effects of change on the landscape are directly related to the effects of change on resources generally. They also exist within a broader set of values and concerns. Such values and concerns seek to ensure that the resources we sustain not only satisfy our physical needs, but also sustain the quality of our relationship within the landscape.

In order to provide the appropriate level of landscape protection, or input into planning processes for external advocacy purposes, a consistent approach to landscape management is necessary. This requires a number of steps and actions to be undertaken, either independently by the Department or in conjunction with other agencies.

The objective and policies below apply to all geodiversity and natural landscapes, whether or not they are associated with terrestrial, freshwater or marine ecosystems. They refer principally to the protection and interpretation of landscape values and landform, geological and soil features. Additional policies relating specifically to karst ecosystems are presented in Section 3.3.3.2.

#### **OBJECTIVE**

- 1. To protect geodiversity and landscapes from adverse effects of human use or management.**

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. The Department should seek to protect and preserve the natural character, integrity and values of landscapes, landforms, geological and soil features and processes in all aspects of conservation management.**
- 2. Landscape assessments should be conducted on an as-needed basis, e.g. when considering proposals to develop utilities on public conservation land.**
- 3. In co-operation with local authorities, land owners and communities, the Department may participate in an assessment of landscape character types in the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. The assessment should determine:**
  - landscapes, landforms and geological features of international, national or regional significance or of significance to tangata whenua;
  - the threats that significant landscapes, landform, geological and soil features are under; and
  - methods of landscape character protection.
- 4. The development of landscape assessment methodologies to take account of viewfields and the mountainous backdrop of the Conservancy may be promoted, and this information made available for assessment of new proposals, particularly proposals for the construction of utilities, infrastructure or other buildings.**
- 5. The Department should advocate, through a combination of general advocacy and local authority planning processes, to ensure:**
  - significant geological features and soils are protected; and

- b) activities adjacent to public conservation lands will not compromise nor be incompatible with the natural landscape values of public conservation lands.

**6. The Department may undertake monitoring of, and encourage and/or participate in research aimed at an increased understanding of, landscape values and human impacts on vulnerable geologically significant sites.**

*See also* Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
Section 3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems  
Section 3.8.3 Statutory advocacy  
Chapter 4.2 Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020 (all places)  
Appendix 6 – Geological features and landforms of international, national or regional significance in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.5(a) and (b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 4.5(a) and (b)

### 3.4 HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL HERITAGE CONSERVATION

Chapter 3.4 describes the Department’s approach to conserving historical and cultural heritage of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Objectives and policies are provided under three main headings:

- Historical and Cultural Heritage Values and Threats
- Protection Within Public Conservation Lands
- Protection Beyond Public Conservation Lands

This chapter provides general guidance on the Department’s historic heritage role and on how its heritage programme should be implemented. In terms of day-to-day management, specific historic projects are identified and work requirements prioritised.

A central concern of historical and cultural heritage conservation is to preserve places, buildings, chattels, artifacts, archives and oral histories and recognise associations that represent the full spectrum of historical and cultural diversity, in the same way that ecological diversity is maintained by conservation of indigenous species and ecosystems. The Department takes the presence of historical and cultural heritage into account when considering its own management activities (e.g. planning track construction). It also needs to work cooperatively with Poutini Ngāi Tahu, the Historic Places Trust, local government, land-owners and occupiers, local communities and other people and organisations, to protect and advocate for historical and cultural heritage located beyond public conservation lands.

#### 3.4.1 Historical and Cultural Heritage Values and Threats

The following objective applies to all subsections within 3.4.1:

##### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To gain a better understanding of historical and cultural heritage values and threats and establish priorities for protection and active management, and to enhance people’s appreciation.**



### **3.4.1.1 Overview of historical and cultural heritage values**

Historic buildings or structures, archaeological sites, traditional or sacred places, and historic or cultural landscapes can all be seen as taonga or national treasures. Preservation, protection and interpretation of such historic treasures maintain an important link with the past, which in turn contributes to community identity and well-being. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has a long history of Māori occupation and a colourful and distinctive colonial past; consequently, its historical and cultural heritage is substantial.

The information resources associated with historic places can enhance understanding and enjoyment of these sites. Information resources such as oral histories, photographs or drawings, and written records are essential for preserving stories of time and place.

Within West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands, approximately 900 archaeological sites and historic places had been recorded by 2010 (this excludes unlisted sites of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu). About one quarter of these sites (225) are Māori archaeological sites, 80 of which had been recorded by 2010. A large proportion of Māori archaeological sites is found near the coast.

### **3.4.1.2 Māori archaeological sites**

It is generally acknowledged that the state of knowledge with regards to Māori archaeology on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is slight, with few sites having been systematically excavated and reported on (Anderson 1982).

From what is known archaeologically of early Polynesian settlement of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, it seems that people were here some time in the late C13th to early C14th. The majority of current knowledge about the life and ways of early Māori comes from coastal sites north of the Grey *Mauberanui* River and south of the Waitaha River. Many of the sites between Greymouth and Hokitika have been destroyed by coastal erosion, so whether the gap in the archaeological record is real or apparent is not clear.

While the paucity of archaeological information prevents any accurate conclusions being made with regards to the early subsistence patterns, reports from early 19th century European explorers indicate how Māori lived in later times. Main food gathering activities were seasonal and focused on freshwater fishing and hunting weka (winter activities) and other forest birds (summer activities), which were preserved for later consumption. The area north of Hokitika lies within the climatic zone that enables kumara to grow, so the potential was there for horticulture. Inland areas were also explored and used by Māori. No inland sites have been excavated or systematically studied and what is known tends to be from second hand information gathered from land owners and the finders of artifacts. Recorded locations of artifacts tend to be situated close to rivers and streams.

### **3.4.1.3 Historic Themes**

A series of key historic themes has been developed to describe West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* human history and associated values: exploration, transport and travel, settlement, resource use, early tourism and recreation, and conservation debates. Some of the themes are inter-related (e.g. there are important links between historic

resource use, settlement and transport). These themes are expanded on below and in Chapter 4.2:

**Exploration.** The region was widely explored, first by Māori and later by European explorers.

**Transport and travel.** Early Māori travel was primarily by foot. A number of coastal, inland and transalpine trails were used, particularly for seasonal excursions to obtain food and other resources. Small canoes or craft (mokihi) made from flax leaves and flower stalks (korari) were used for river and lake crossings, and double-hulled canoes (waka) were used for sea travel. The occurrence of obsidian (originating from Mayor Island and Great Barrier Island) in artifact assemblages suggests that early Māori groups had contact with groups in other parts of New Zealand. Early European travel was also by foot, with ferries used at established river crossings and ships or small boats for sea travel. River travel via canoe and barge was an important method of transport from the start of the gold rushes. Pack tracks (for foot travel and horses), horse-drawn tramways, dray and coach roads were developed during this period – many of which provided links to early settlements. The road formed over Arthur’s Pass via Otira Gorge in 1865, regarded by some as the greatest road building feat of New Zealand’s colonial period, enabled drays to travel from Christchurch to Taramakau or Arahura. Later, railways and sealed roads were constructed.

**Settlement.** Many of the known archaeological sites and areas of significance relating to Māori settlement and mahinga kai occur in coastal locations, especially near river mouths and lagoons. Early sites are distributed all along the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* coastline, many around river mouths. Inland sites were also used but no inland sites have been excavated. Prior to the discovery of gold near the Taramakau River in 1864 by two Māori, Ihaia Tainui and Haimona Taukau, the region was only occasionally visited by early Europeans. By the end of the year there were an estimated 1800 prospectors on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, many of them around the Hokitika area, which, in 1866, became briefly the most populous settlement in New Zealand. Between 1864 and 1867 numerous gold rush towns such as Ōkārito were created, many of which almost vanished as miners moved on. Most of the historic European settlement sites that are now in public conservation lands were associated with prominent resource uses such as gold mining and coal mining.

**Pounamu.** Pounamu was highly prized by early Māori, who used it to create weapons (e.g. mere), tools (e.g. adzes and chisels) and jewellery (e.g. pendants). Relics of early pounamu use include weapon, tool and jewellery artifacts, as well as stone tools and stone flakes at pounamu-working sites.

**Gold mining.** Gold mining was, and continues to be, widespread in the region. Hard-rock mining (quartz mining) occurred in central inland areas, extensive black sand mining on many southern, central and Buller *Kawatiri* beaches, and other alluvial mining in many other areas, including extensive dredging on rivers, terraces, creeks and beaches.

**Coal mining.** Coal mining was, and still is, an important resource use in the northern part of the Conservancy, at both high altitude sites (e.g. the Buller coal plateaux) and lower altitude sites (e.g. the Grey valley).

**Timber industry.** Timber milling was widespread on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Important sites remain in many public conservation lands, ranging from

relatively large company sawmills to small portable mills and silver pine *kopara* milling operations.

**Farming.** Significant farming sites located within public conservation lands include Bullock Creek near Punakaiki, the Jackson Bay Special Settlement and subsequent valley grazing runs in the Haast area. Historically significant farming sites on lands of other tenure are Waipuna Station (in the Grey valley - the first permanent European settlement in the region prior to the gold rushes) and the Karamea Special Settlement.

**Other activities.** Other historic resource use activities in public conservation lands included flax milling (at Canoe Point on the Ōkārito River, Ōkārito Spit and in the Cascade valley), serpentine mining (on Mount Griffin), granite quarrying (at Cape Foulwind) and lithographic stone quarrying (at Abbey Rocks). After red deer proliferated on the Coast, deer culling was carried out in many areas. Aerial venison recovery, and later live recovery of deer, developed as a new commercial enterprise. Many backcountry huts were erected during this era. The great distances and isolation allowed aviation to become a useful commercial venture from the mid 1930s. The earliest commercial airline service in New Zealand was to South Westland. Resource uses in areas under other tenure included sealing (at The Steeples, off Cape Foulwind, and Open Bay Islands *Taumaka me Popotai*) and the first public electricity supply in New Zealand (at Reefton).

**Recreation and tourism.** The whole region has a rich recreational history including early climbing, tramping, fishing, whitebaiting and hunting. Early recreation and tourism centred around the two accessible glaciers (Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe*), where local alpine guides and others made early crossings of alpine passes (e.g. Graham Saddle) and early ascents of some of New Zealand's highest peaks (e.g. Aoraki Mt Cook, Mt Tasman *Horokoau* and La Perouse). Other tourism destinations included the large lowland lakes surrounded by podocarp/hardwood forest (e.g. Lakes Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo*, Kanieri, Mahināpua Ianthe *Matahi*, and Moeraki), spectacular seascapes and rock formations (e.g. Punakaiki) and river gorges (e.g. the Buller *Kawatiri*).

**Conservation debates.** Many areas in the Conservancy have been the focus of national conservation debates at some stage, leaving a legacy of public conservation lands. Prominent issues have included the Maruia Declaration (1975), West Coast Accord (1986), 'South Westland, south of the Cook River - A Resource Management Study' (Blakeley Report) (1988), Ngakawau hydro proposal (1990), the inscription of Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area (1990), and the gazettal as public conservation lands of indigenous forests that were previously managed by Timberlands West Coast Limited (2001). Significant protection initiatives included the establishment of the Paparoa (1987) and Kahurangi (1996) National Parks and the Buller *Kawatiri* River Water Conservation Order (2001).

**See also** Section 4.1.1.3 Identification and assessment of conservation values in 2020  
Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 5(a)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 5(a)

#### **3.4.1.4 Identifying threats to historical and cultural heritage values**

Historical and cultural heritage resources are by their nature non-renewable; many are fragile and vulnerable to development pressures and natural processes. Despite

being legally protected by virtue of their location, all historic places in public conservation lands have their existence threatened in some way. Four main threats to historical and cultural heritage have been identified:

- Natural processes, such as erosion, corrosion, decay, weathering and site revegetation, continually degrade the integrity of all historic places.
- Information loss is an ongoing problem. Historical information contributes to planning authentic historical and cultural heritage conservation work and advancing public understanding of that heritage.
- Human-induced processes also threaten historical and cultural heritage. Many mining licence or permit areas located within public conservation lands contain archaeological, cultural or historic places.
- As at 2010, inventory and assessment of the Conservancy's historical and cultural heritage is incomplete. This knowledge gap means that the suite of actively managed sites (see Section 3.4.2.3) may not be fully representative of the range of historical and cultural heritage located in West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands.

The remaining sections of Chapter 3.4 include objectives and policies for avoiding or otherwise minimising threats to historical or cultural heritage values. Certain historic places may have a particular significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu which precludes their active management, or limits the kinds of facilities that should be provided. Poutini Ngāi Tahu should therefore be consulted in the planning of recreational services or facilities to ensure that they are not culturally inappropriate and Māori cultural values are not compromised.

## POLICIES

- 1. Where recreational services and/or facilities are provided at an actively managed historic place, they should be designed to avoid or otherwise minimise impact on the historical and cultural values.**
- 2. Recreational impacts and public safety should be monitored at actively managed historic places.**
- 3. The integrity of actively managed historic places should be protected and, where this is in danger of becoming compromised, appropriate action should be taken. This may involve restricting or regulating public access, reducing impacts and/or remedial work.**
- 4. Recreational users should be encouraged to minimise their impacts on historical and cultural heritage, through the provision of signage and other information media.**
- 5. Poutini Ngāi Tahu should be consulted in the planning of recreational services and facilities to ensure that Māori cultural values are not compromised.**

*See also* Section 3.4.2.2 Conservancy Protection Plan  
Section 4.1.1.5 Protection of conservation values from adverse effects in 2020  
Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)  
Appendix 1, Section 1.13 Wāhi tapu / wāhi taonga  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 5(d)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 5(d)

### **3.4.1.5 Understanding historical and cultural heritage values**

The Department focuses on protecting and conserving historical and cultural heritage values and increasing public appreciation of them. A clear understanding of these values, and an awareness of the threats they face, are fundamental to any consistent protection or active management programme, and also to interpretation for public appreciation.

Adequate understanding of historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation lands requires a detailed knowledge of their extent and nature, based on survey and research. Their values, however, can only be appreciated in a Conservancy-wide, and sometimes a national context.

A number of approaches to increasing knowledge and understanding of the Conservancy's historical and cultural heritage may be utilised, including thematic studies, histories of individual historic places, reconnaissance survey, databases and other records, the land inventories within the Conservancy Protection Plan (see Section 3.4.2.2), and the New Zealand Archaeological Association (NZAA) site recording scheme.

The Conservancy also holds three other categories of information in addition to the principal databases:

- Register of conservation plans for Actively Managed Historic Places.
- Records of research and conservation work that have been undertaken.
- Resource material (including documents, maps and plans, and collections of historic photographs), some of which is of an archival nature. Access to information concerning the history and significance of historic places is an essential prerequisite to the formation of conservation policy, and for the preparation of educational or interpretative material.

## **POLICIES**

- 1. Thematic studies should be prepared as required for the historic themes or sub-themes relevant to the Conservancy.**
- 2. Histories of individual historic places may be prepared either as part of a conservation plan or as a separate project for actively managed historic places.**
- 3. The support and involvement of Poutini Ngāi Tahu should be sought in the preparation of thematic studies and histories of individual historic places relevant to Māori.**
- 4. A reconnaissance survey of historical and cultural heritage values located within the Conservancy's public conservation lands should be completed.**
- 5. Poutini Ngāi Tahu should be encouraged to take part in surveys of public conservation lands and be provided with opportunities to contribute knowledge of wāhi tapu and other values relevant to management.**
- 6. Poutini Ngāi Tahu initiatives relating to research, assessment, and identification of threats to historic or archaeological sites or wāhi tapu may be supported.**

7. **The New Zealand Archaeological Association database should be maintained and the Conservancy Protection Plan (including land inventories) updated on a regular basis. Information on historical and cultural heritage values should also be incorporated into other databases as applicable.**
8. **The Department should work with Poutini Ngāi Tahu to ensure that databases and inventories include information on wāhi tapu sufficient for management purposes, and that the information and access to it are managed in a manner considered appropriate by Poutini Ngāi Tahu.**
9. **Information relating to historic places of significance to Māori should be made available to tangata whenua.**
10. **Where access arrangements authorise an activity in an area with historical and cultural heritage values, a requirement for archaeological surveys and collection of heritage information may be made.**

*See also* Section 3.4.2.2 Conservancy Protection Plan  
 Section 4.1.1.4 Proactive management of conservation values in 2020  
 Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)  
 Appendix 1, Section 1.13 Wāhi tapu / wāhi taonga  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 5(d)

#### **3.4.1.6 *Assessment of historical and cultural heritage values***

Assessment of the values of individual historic places is essential to priority setting for protection or active management. While the aim is to protect and conserve all historic places within public conservation lands, and while many historic places may be protected simply by avoiding harmful actions, it is recognised that others require active management, and priorities must be set based on historic value, and degree of threat (see Sections 3.4.1 and 3.4.2.3).

Assessing the significance and value of historic places of interest to Poutini Ngāi Tahu, including wahi tapu, is primarily a matter for their judgement, though archaeological value may also be relevant. Departmental staff require sufficient knowledge of these values to ensure that these places are known and appropriately managed, but it is recognised that there may be situations where Poutini Ngāi Tahu wish to restrict access to knowledge of places of particular spiritual significance.

The Department aims to identify and conserve rare/unique/outstanding historic places and representative examples of all periods of the region's history, as well as rare and representative examples of all classes of human activity. This is facilitated by the thematic approach outlined in Section 3.1.4.3.

In New Zealand the Historic Places Trust determines historic significance as part of its statutory functions, culminating in the registration of historic places and areas. Criteria for assessment of historic significance for the purpose of registration are set out in the Historic Places Act 1993. The statutory assessment process under the Historic Places Act has been adopted by the Department. The process ensures that all assessments are made on a nationally consistent basis and provides for community participation. The criteria are more difficult to apply to the assessment of archaeological sites than structures, since it may not be possible to establish the extent, nature and associations of the site without invasive investigation, which should in most circumstances be avoided within public conservation lands.

**1. The significance of individual historic places should be assessed using the following process:**

a)

Protection: an inventory of historic places located within public conservation lands should be undertaken when developing the Conservancy Protection Plan (see Section 3.4.2.2). The record created of each historic place should include a brief appraisal of significance. The appraisal should briefly address all Historic Places Act criteria where relevant, but the result may be reported in a simpler form.

b) Active Management: a formal assessment of significance is a prerequisite to any historic conservation work at an individual historic place (Section 3.4.2.3). The format of this assessment should follow that used for Historic Places Trust registration proposals.

c) Historic Places Act Registration: should be sought when a significance assessment indicates that a historic place or area has high significance. Registration will provide an authoritative assessment within a national context.

*See also* Section 3.4.1.5 Understanding historical and cultural heritage values  
Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)

### **3.4.2 Protection Within Public Conservation Lands**

Protection is the process of preventing damage to or destruction of historical and cultural heritage both by legal means and through appropriate management systems. Intensive management undertaken by the Department to protect and preserve historic places is defined as ‘active management’: intervention to arrest or minimise destructive processes through remedial action or maintenance work (see Section 3.4.2.3).

#### **3.4.2.1 Protection requirements and mechanisms**

The scope for protection of historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation lands is very wide and potentially might include any place associated with the past. The Department recognises that despite the broad protection mandate of the Conservation Act 1987, effective management requires the establishment of priorities. However, management is based on the principle that historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation lands should be protected from unauthorised uses. This is achievable through appropriate management systems, except in situations where active intervention is required.

Protection of the Conservancy’s historical and cultural heritage must be considered in all relevant situations including any Departmental projects which involve ground disturbance (e.g. recreational facilities, tree planting), the conditions governing concessions (including easements) and other authorisations, consideration of land disposals, exchanges, vestings or appointing of other bodies as administrators, and invasive weed and animal pest control, where historic flora may be affected.

The Conservancy should also adopt as required, or abide by, the following legal protection mechanisms, which apply to specific historic places or, in some cases, objects and trees:

- Mechanisms applying to public conservation lands which may be used at the Department's discretion: Historic Reserve status (Reserves Act 1977), specially protected area (Conservation Act 1987, National Parks Act 1980), special status in statutory management plans (Conservation Act 1987).
- Mechanisms applying to public conservation lands which may be generated externally and may affect the Department's management discretion: registration of a historic place (Historic Places Act 1993), archaeological site authority requirements (Historic Places Act 1993), protection in district plan policies or schedule (Resource Management Act 1991), Heritage Order (Resource Management Act 1991, Historic Places Act 1993), Designation (Resource Management Act 1991), Protection of New Zealand objects and taonga tuturu (Protected Objects Act 1975). Poutini Ngāi Tahu should be advised whenever "nga taonga tuturu" (Māori artifacts) are found within public conservation lands, as they are subject to the provisions of the latter Act.

*See also* Section 3.4.2.2 Conservancy Protection Plan  
 Section 4.1.1.4 Proactive management of conservation values in 2020  
 Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)

### **3.4.2.2 Conservancy Protection Plan**

A Conservancy Protection Plan for West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands will define the values of and potential threats to historical and cultural heritage, along with their protection requirements. To ensure the protection of historic places of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu, it is essential that adequate consultation takes place with Papatipu Rūnanga before any management decisions are made which may affect such places.

#### **OBJECTIVE**

- 1. To protect historical and cultural heritage located within the Conservancy's public conservation lands from adverse effects and unauthorised uses.**

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. A West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy Protection Plan should be prepared and implemented. Values of, and threats to, historic places and priorities for protection should be identified and addressed through this Protection Plan.**
- 2. The Department will work with Papatipu Rūnanga on any management proposals which have the potential to affect wāhi tapu or other historic places of significance to Māori, including proposals for Historic Reserve classification based on Māori historic values, or for the registration of Māori historic places.**
- 3. The provisions of the Protected Objects Act 1975 should be complied with regarding any protected New Zealand objects found within public conservation lands. Papatipu Rūnanga will be advised whenever nga taonga tuturu (Māori artifacts) are found.**



#### **4. Invasive investigation of archaeological sites located within public conservation lands should, in most circumstances, be avoided.**

*See also* Section 3.4.1.4 Identifying threats to historical and cultural heritage values  
Section 3.4.1.5 Understanding historical and cultural heritage values  
Section 4.1.1.4 Proactive management of conservation values in 2020  
Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)  
Appendix 1, Section 1.13 Wāhi tapu / wāhi taonga  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 5(e)-(g)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 5(e)-(h)

#### **3.4.2.3 Active management**

Active management is defined as “*the process of arresting or minimising deterioration/destructive processes through remedial action and maintenance work*”. The focus of the Conservancy’s active management programme is on historic places that are of high significance (see Table 2). Prioritisation processes are required to select which historic places will be actively managed within the Conservancy. Conservation work carried out at these ‘actively managed historic places’ should be consistent with the 1993 New Zealand ICOMOS Charter and should maintain their intrinsic values as far as is practicable, and safeguard the options of present and future generations. This charter is used as a policy guideline by the Historic Places Trust, the Department, all professional conservation architects, and many other agencies involved with heritage conservation. Active participation by Poutini Ngāi Tahu is essential in the conservation of Māori historical and cultural heritage.

#### **Changes to the Conservancy’s suite of actively managed historic places**

Changes to the overall suite of actively managed historic places within the Conservancy may be triggered in several ways, including historical analysis revealing new information on significance or balance in overall representation, a change in circumstances which affects the integrity of a historic place, or field survey work revealing new significant historic places that would require active management.

#### **Conservation of archives and protected New Zealand objects**

The primary role in conserving archives and protected New Zealand objects generally lies with archives and museums, while the focus of the Department’s conservation is historic places. However, the Department has a role in ensuring that archives and protected New Zealand objects related to public conservation lands are adequately identified and conserved. These are subject to the provisions of the Archives and Protected Objects Acts, and where nga taonga tuturu (Māori artifacts) are concerned Poutini Ngāi Tahu will be informed and consulted. The Conservancy should also actively seek material that is under threat, including photographs and oral history.

TABLE 2: ACTIVELY MANAGED HISTORIC PLACES, AS AT 2010

NAME OF HISTORIC PLACE	ACTIVITY / THEME & CMS PLACE* LOCATION	PERIOD
<b>KARAMEA PLACE</b>		
Heaphy Track	Settlement, exploration, travel, early recreation	Pre-European Late 19th, early 20th century
Fenian Goldfield Historic Area Ōpārara Pack Track and Features mining relics	Alluvial gold mining, transport and communication	1860-1930s
<b>KAWATIRI PLACE</b>		
Charming Creek Historic Area	Coal mining, timber milling	1903-1950s
Millerton Bath House	Coal mining	1918-1970
Britannia Battery, mining relics	Quartz gold mining	1882-1937
Denniston Mining sites and transport systems	Coal mining, settlement	1879-1980s
Coalbrookdale Mining sites and transport systems, Denniston	Coal mining, settlement	1886-1956
Lyell Township	Settlement, gold mining	1862-1963
Lyell Cemetery (Graves and perimeter fence)	Settlement, gold mining	1869-early 20th century
Lyell Valley Tracks	Transport and communication, gold mining	1870s-early 20th century
<b>PAPAROA PLACE</b>		
Cape Foulwind Railway, Quarry and tunnel	Transport, Limestone Quarry	1886-1940
Constant Bay, Charleston	Transport, gold mining	1866-1879
Argyle Water System, Charleston	Gold mining, coal mining	1873-1960s
Brighton Cemetery	Settlement, gold mining	1866-1901
Inland Pack Track Cobblestones, Punakaiki	Transport and communication, gold mining	1867-1886
<b>INANGAHUA PLACE</b>		
Kirwans Hill Pack Track	Transport and communication, gold mining	1870s-early 20th century
Kirwans Reward Open Cast Mine Remnants	Quartz gold mining	1896-early 20th century
Kirwans Tramway Remnants	Quartz gold mining	1896-early 20th century
Kirwans Aerial Ropeways	Quartz gold mining	1896-early 20th century
Lord Brassey Gold Battery	Quartz gold mining	1896-early 20th century
Caledonian Steam Engine/Mine Shaft	Quartz gold mining	1872-early 20th century
Larry's No. 2 South Battery	Quartz gold mining	1874-early 20th century
Reefton School of Mines	Education, gold mining	1886-1971
Blacks Point Historic Reserve	Gold mining, settlement	1870-early 20th century
Murray Creek Track	Transport and communication, gold mining	1870s-early 20th century
Inglewood Mine Remnants.	Quartz gold mining	1871-1940s
Ajax/Golden Fleece Boiler, Battery, Remnants	Quartz gold mining	1870-1911
Energetic Mine Foundations and Cages	Quartz gold mining	1870s-1927
Lankey Creek Coal Mine Tramway/Remnants	Quartz gold mining	1877-early 20th century
Lankey Creek Cement Battery	Gold mining	1883-1935
Alborns Leyland Lorry and Boiler	Coal mining	Early 20th century
Golden Lead Battery and Pipeline	Quartz gold mining	1891-1908
Big River Town Site and assets	Settlement, gold mining	1880s-1942

NAME OF HISTORIC PLACE	ACTIVITY / THEME & CMS PLACE* LOCATION	PERIOD
Big River Poppet Head (at Mullock Heap)	Quartz gold mining	1890-1942
Big River Winder and Boiler	Quartz gold mining	1913-1942
Big River Coal Tramway	Coal mining, quartz gold mining	1914-1926
Big River Sawmill	Timber milling, quartz gold mining	1914-1926
Waiuta Town Site Chimneys @ Remnants	Settlement, quartz gold mining	1906-1951
Blackwater Winder - Chimney/Engine Building	Quartz gold mining	1906-1936
Joker Level Incline Winch	Quartz gold mining, transport	1908-1911
Snowy River Battery Remnants	Quartz gold mining	1908-1938
Snowy River Water Race and Power House	Power generation, quartz gold mining	1920s-1938(?)
Prohibition Mine Site	Quartz gold mining	1936-1951
Prohibition Ball Mill	Quartz gold mining	1938-1951
Waiuta-Big River Pack Track	Transport, gold mining	1912
Slaty Creek Hut	Recreation, wild animal control	1952
<b>MÁWHERA PLACE</b>		
Davidson Steam Locomotive	Timber milling, transport	1907-1940
Brownlees Steam Shovel	Timber milling	1952(?)-60s
Nelson Creek Swingbridge	Transport and communication	1870s
Hatters Terrace	Settlement	1869-early 20th century
Hochstetter Dam Control Gate	Alluvial gold mining	1875-1920s
Jacks Mill School and Minature Bungalow	Education	1909-1955
Croesus and Garden Gully Tracks	Transport and communication, gold mining	1864-1930s
Garden Gully Battery	Quartz gold mining	1901-1905
Croesus Gold Battery	Quartz gold mining	1883-early 20th century
Croesus Top Hut	Depression era gold mining	1930s
Garden Gully Hut	Depression era gold mining	1930s
Blackball Chimneys	Coal mining	1894-1964
Return Air Vent and Fan Chamber Blackball	Coal mining	1894-1964
Moonlight Valley Track	Transport and communication, gold mining	1860s-1930s
Brunner Mine Site	Coal mining, settlement	1864-1920s
Boatmans Water Powered Sawmill	Timber milling, alluvial gold mining	1932-1951
<b>HOKITIKA PLACE</b>		
Locke Stream Hut	Recreation	1930s
Goldsborough Tracks/Remnants	Settlement, alluvial gold mining	1864-1953
Kaniere Water Race Track	Alluvial gold mining, power generation	1875
Browning Pass Noti Raureka Track	Exploration, transport and communication, gold mining	Pre-European-early 19th century
Cedar Flat Hut	Wild animal control	1957
Price Flat Hut	Wild animal management, recreation, exploration	1949/1950
Mananui Tramway Route and features	Timber milling	1885-1958
Lake Mahināpua Paddle Steamer	Tourism, transport and communication	1883-1906
Mahināpua Rail Bridge	Transport and communication	1905-1980
Ross Historic Bell and Tower	Settlement	Late 19th century
Ross United Water Races/Track	Alluvial gold mining	1868-1898
Ross Goldfields Historic Cottage	Settlement, alluvial gold mining	1885
Ross Goldfields Historic Gaol	Settlement, alluvial gold mining	1913

NAME OF HISTORIC PLACE	ACTIVITY / THEME & CMS PLACE* LOCATION	PERIOD
Ross Goldfields Cemetery	Settlement, alluvial gold mining	1869-1920
<b>TE WĀHI POUNAMU PLACE</b>		
Wanganui Pack Track	Transport and communication	1870, 1935
Ōkārīto School	Education, settlement	1901-1946
Donovan's Store, Ōkārīto	Settlement	1865-1980
Blacks rail tractor	Timber milling	1950s
Cape Defiance Hut	Tourism, recreation	1913
Hende's Hut	Tourism, recreation	1907
Hende's Gallery	Transport and communication, tourism, recreation	1907
Douglas Bridge	Transport and communication, tourism	Early 20th century
Callery Bridge	Transport and communication, tourism	Early 20th century
Almer Hut, Franz Josef Glacier	Recreation, tourism	1950
Tatare Tunnel	Power generation, gold mining	1937
Ōkārīto Pack Track	Transport and communication	19th century
Chancellor Hut	Recreation, tourism	1930
Gillespies Beach Cemetery	Settlement, gold mining	1867-1896
Gillespies Suction Dredge	Gold mining	1891-1901
Gillespies Pack Track	Transport and communication	1870s
Fox River Footbridge	Transport and communication	1929
Copland Track	Transport, communication, recreation, tourism	Early 20th century
Welcome Flat Bridge	Transport, communication, recreation, tourism	1918
Pāringa-Haast Pack Track	Transport and communication	1875-1962
Blowfly Hut, Haast to Pāringa Cattle Track	Transport and communication	1908
Smoothwater Track	Transport and communication	1875
Knights Point Memorial	Transport and communication	1965
Landsborough Rangers Hut	Wild animal control	1941

\* For the purposes of this CMS, the entire West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy has been divided into seven land-based Places (Karamea, Kawatiri, Paparoa, Inangahua, Māwhera, Hokitika and Te Wāhi Pounamu) and one marine Place. The land based division of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (including both public and private land) into adjacent geographic areas (Places) has been chosen for practical management reasons. There are many conservation management issues that are common to the whole Conservancy, although these issues may have different emphases in the successive Places.

#### OBJECTIVE

- To identify and actively manage historic places which are of high significance and which best represent the range of cultural periods and human activities associated with occupation of public conservation lands.**

#### POLICIES

- Research and inventory work needs to be undertaken to identify, assess and document all historic places remaining in the Conservancy, and**

consequently to determine whether the suite of actively managed sites provides the best representative sample of the different types of historic resources present in the Conservancy's public conservation lands.

2. A register of the Conservancy's actively managed historic places should be maintained. This register may be revised over time (e.g. in light of new information, changes in circumstances and/or the discovery of historic places of high significance), in order to ensure that the best representative examples of historic places are actively managed.
3. Prioritisation of active management projects should be based on the following factors, in order of importance:
  - a) Public safety: projects should relate to places at which significant public safety hazards have been identified.
  - b) Significance and urgency: projects should relate to places of high historical and cultural significance which are under immediate threat and face significant loss of integrity if delayed for another year, or the cost of further delay is substantial.
  - c) Significance: projects should relate to historic places or areas which are, or may be, of high historical or cultural significance.
  - d) Public appreciation: projects should have the potential to develop community understanding, support and participation, meet community expectations, or provide a satisfying recreational experience.
4. A conservation plan should be prepared for each actively managed historic place requiring remedial work and long-term maintenance. The conservation plan should be guided by ICOMOS principles and meet ICOMOS standards.
5. Urgent remedial work in response to dire threats may be carried out without the normal process of conservation planning if a historic structure of apparent high significance is under threat of collapse, or presents a significant and immediate danger to the public. In these cases the approval procedure set out in the Conservancy Protection Plan should be followed.
5. The Department will work with Papatipu Rūnanga when planning and implementing active management projects for historic places of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu.
6. Full consideration should be given to any future proposals by Papatipu Rūnanga for the inclusion of additional historic places of significance to Māori within the suite of actively managed sites.

*See also* Section 3.4.1.4 Identifying threats to historical and cultural heritage values  
Section 3.4.1.5 Understanding historical and cultural heritage values  
Section 3.4.2.2 Conservancy Protection Plan  
Section 4.1.1.4 Proactive management of conservation values in 2020  
Chapter 4.2, Human history sections (all Places)  
Appendix 1, Section 1.13 Wāhi tapu / wāhi taonga  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 5(b), 9.3(a)-(b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 5(b), 8.3(a)-(b)

#### **3.4.2.4 Protection on reserves administered by other bodies**

A number of reserves vested in and/or administered by regional and district councils or other bodies have significant historical and cultural heritage values. Some are classified as Historic Reserve, others are not, and many have underlying Crown ownership. The Department has a statutory role to play in their protection under the Reserves Act 1977.

##### **OBJECTIVE**

- 1. To encourage the appropriate management of historic places and landscapes on reserve land administered by other bodies.**

##### **POLICIES**

- 1. The Department may produce a template to guide the development of management plans for historic reserves administered by other bodies and encourage use of this template by the administering body.**

#### **3.4.3 Protection Beyond Public Conservation Lands**

While the Historic Places Trust and territorial local authorities have the major roles to play in protection of historic resources on private land, effective protection is a major task which cannot be achieved by them alone. It requires the assistance and support of a range of heritage protection authorities, groups and individuals. These include the Department, Poutini Ngāi Tahu, Historic Places Trust, community groups and landowners.

Statutory advocacy under the Resource Management Act 1991 is one of the most effective means of achieving long-term protection for historic places located outside of public conservation lands. The Historic Places Trust has the leading role in advocating for the protection of significant historical and cultural heritage, but the Department also supports the Trust in this role.

##### **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To contribute towards achieving protected status for significant historic places and landscapes located outside of public conservation lands.**

##### **POLICIES**

- 1. Advocate for the protection and conservation of significant historical and cultural heritage located outside of public conservation lands.**
- 2. Land with significant historical and cultural heritage values should be assessed for addition to public conservation lands, or for protection through covenant or heritage order.**
- 3. The Department may make submissions on plans or resource consent applications in co-operation with the Historic Places Trust and Poutini Ngāi Tahu (when this is of mutual interest to all parties), where historic places affected are of high significance and/or are associated with wider conservation values, and/or where historic places within public conservation lands might be affected (see Section 3.8.3 and Appendix 2).**

**See also** Section 3.2.2 Sharing conservation work  
Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
Section 3.8.2 Statutory land management, Section 3.8.3 Statutory advocacy  
Section 4.1.1.5 Protection of conservation values from adverse effects in 2020  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 7(a)-(e)

### 3.5 AUTHORISED USES OF PUBLIC CONSERVATION LANDS

Conservation legislation provides for people to use public conservation lands in a manner compatible with the protection of conservation values and enjoyment by other people. The appropriateness of different uses of public conservation lands is governed by legislation, general policies and relevant conservation management strategies and management plans. Most non-commercial use by the public, accessing public conservation lands on foot, does not require authorisation. Public access to public conservation lands is also free of charge; however charges may be made for the use of accommodation, facilities and services (Policy 9.1(g) Conservation General Policy 2005).

The Department, via delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation, is able to authorise appropriate private and commercial use of public conservation lands through a concession or some other form of authorisation (e.g. access arrangement under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 for mining). Consultation and discussions with conservation boards, Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, Fish and Game councils and the public may form part of the application assessment process.

Part 3B of the Conservation Act came into force in 1996, creating a single set of provisions that apply to concessions under the Conservation Act 1987, National Parks Act 1980, Reserves Act 1971 and Wildlife Act 1953. These provisions affect all types of uses of public conservation lands except mineral exploration, prospecting and mining, which are authorised under the Crown Minerals Act 1991. The effects of different uses can vary widely, as can their commercial nature. This means that each application must be assessed on its merits. Although the primary consideration when assessing a proposal is its effect on the natural, historical and cultural heritage values being protected in that area, its effect on other uses, including recreational opportunities, must also be considered.

The relative significance of all conservation values in West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands has not been fully assessed. Ongoing assessment is likely to result in the discovery that some sites and resources have highly significant values and, conversely, that other sites and resources are less significant (e.g. less rare or endangered) than previously thought. Assessing each individual application on its particular merits may risk overlooking the cumulative effects of a number of authorities for use issued in respect of a particular area or opportunity, therefore cumulative effects need to be taken into account when considering each application. Improved methods for assessing effects are likely to emerge over time.

To give effect to the Ngai Tahu Treaty Claims Settlement Act, the Department has developed, in conjunction with Ngai Tahu, 'standard cultural conditions'<sup>16</sup> for recreation and tourism concessions, filming concessions, marine mammal permits,

---

<sup>16</sup> This document is updated on a regular basis and is available from Departmental offices upon request.

mining access arrangements and research, collection and Wildlife Act permits. The purpose of these standard cultural conditions is to avoid, remedy and/or mitigate any impact that concession operations may have on the cultural, historical and spiritual values of Ngāi Tahu.

The objectives and policies in Chapter 3.5 apply to all applications for authorisations to carry out private or commercial activities within public conservation lands located in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. Additional policies that apply to specific recreation and tourism activities, facilities or services are presented in Chapter 3.6, while Chapter 3.7 outlines additional policies for other types of activities.

## **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To implement Conservation General Policy 2005 and General Policy for National Parks 2005 when considering applications for authorisations on public conservation lands and waters.**
- 2. To protect natural, historical and cultural heritage values from adverse effects of recreation, tourism or other uses.**
- 3. To protect recreational opportunities from adverse effects of authorised uses of public conservation lands.**
- 4. To protect places and other taonga of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu from adverse effects of authorised uses of public conservation lands.**
- 5. To consult, where necessary, with Papatipu Rūnanga, conservation boards, the West Coast Fish and Game Council, authorisation holders, communities and other people and organisations over the consideration and granting of concessions, access arrangements and other authorisations for use of public conservation lands.**

## **POLICIES**

- 1. The cumulative effects of other authorities for use, issued in respect of a particular area or opportunity, should be taken into account when considering new applications for those areas or opportunities.**
- 2. When approving concessions or other authorisations, specific conditions may be applied as deemed appropriate.**
- 3. The Department should periodically monitor compliance with authorisation conditions.**
- 4. The Department should apply the 'Concession allocation in limited supply situations guideline', developed in conjunction with the Ministry of Tourism and Tourism Industry Association New Zealand, in order to ensure the best outcome is achieved for natural, historical and cultural heritage values and recreational opportunities.**
- 5. Consultation with Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and conservation boards on concessions, access arrangements and other authorisations for the use of public conservation lands will be early, ongoing, informed and effective.**



6. **The Department will continue to work with Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and conservation boards to develop and implement processes and protocols to ensure that their views are considered when assessing authorisation applications.**
7. **The Department should liaise with the West Coast Fish and Game Council about all concession applications that have implications for freshwater sports fishery and game bird management and the efficacy and outcomes of monitoring such concessions.**
8. **The Department should liaise with authorisation holders about appropriate methods for monitoring the effects of their operations and conservation management activities that have implications for their operations.**
9. **The Department should liaise with NZ Transport Agency about all concession applications that may affect the state highway network or its safe operation or maintenance.**

*See also* Part 3 (all relevant Management Objectives and Policies)  
 Part 4 Desired Outcomes  
 Appendix 2, Protocols on the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 3(e) and 11.1(a)-(e)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f)  
 Conservation Act 1987, Section 17U.

### 3.6 PEOPLE'S BENEFIT AND ENJOYMENT

People of all ages, cultures and backgrounds enjoy public conservation lands. Recreation on public conservation land increases peoples' appreciation of the conservation values and contributes to mental, spiritual and physical wellbeing.

For the purpose of this CMS, the term 'recreation' encompasses the full range of activities undertaken by people for leisure purposes and the experiences they gain through these activities. 'Recreational uses' thus encompasses both passive enjoyment (such as the appreciation of natural scenery from roadways) and more active outdoor activities (such as walking, tramping, hunting and motorised recreation). By fostering recreation, the Department seeks to ensure that people receive in full measure the benefits of recreation and enjoyment from public conservation lands. Tourism uses are allowed via the granting of concessions for recreational activities, facilities and services (referred to as 'recreation and tourism concessions' in this CMS).

Chapter 3.6 outlines how the Department intends to work with Poutini Ngāi Tahu, concessionaires and other people and organisations to provide and manage recreational opportunities, facilities and services on public conservation lands. It recognises the different, and sometimes potentially conflicting, aspirations of people to enjoy these lands and seeks to find a balance which facilitates benefit, use and enjoyment while respecting the rights of others to do the same, maintains the integrity of recreational experiences within the spectrum of opportunities available, and preserves public conservation lands in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in their natural state for future generations.

### 3.6.1 Recreational Opportunities

#### 3.6.1.1 *Provision and management of recreational opportunities*

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* provides a diversity of recreational opportunities, ranging from those in accessible locations to those in remote areas. Although the majority of people using its public conservation lands are on day trips, undertaking activities such as sightseeing, picnicking and short walks, the Conservancy is also widely recognised as a focus for recreational activities in more remote areas.

Roads provide ready access to a variety of different environments and recreational opportunities. Walking tracks, which range from short, wheelchair-standard nature walks to demanding multi-day tramps, assist people to appreciate the wild beauty of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Public access to national parks and other public conservation lands is free of charge. Aircraft enable all paying clients, irrespective of age, health or physical ability, the opportunity to appreciate remote and rugged terrain.

The extensive tracts of remote lands, including gazetted wilderness areas, set the Conservancy apart from many other places in New Zealand. Walking, tramping, camping, wildlife viewing, hunting, fishing, caving, climbing, ski-touring, rafting, kayaking, boating, whitebaiting, mountain biking, horse riding, four-wheel driving and recreational gold fossicking may all be undertaken in a natural setting. The more remote localities provide people with the chance to experience solitude, challenge, independence, tranquillity and closeness to nature.

All public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, including national parks, have been zoned for different types and levels of recreational use (see Maps 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17 and 19a-c). The Department's recreational opportunities spectrum (ROS) framework was used as a basis for creating these 'recreation outcome' maps, where public conservation lands are divided into five different zones: (1) gazetted wilderness areas [pink]<sup>17</sup>; (2) remote [purple]; (3) backcountry-remote [yellow]; (4) frontcountry [green dots]; and (5) intense interest sites [red dots]. These zones cover the full spectrum of recreational settings and associated opportunities, as described in sections 3.6.1.2 to 3.6.1.6. During development of the 'recreation outcome' maps, the following factors have been taken into account: recreational character, tourism focal points and recreational opportunities, existing patterns of use, access and existing authorised uses. The zoning system identifies broad recreation outcomes at Places, by describing where the major recreational facilities and services are and thereby identifying the areas that will remain free of high levels of public use because of a lack of, or lower grade, facilities. Detailed descriptions of recreation outcomes for specific locations within each Place are provided in Part 4, Chapter 4.2, under the subheading 'Recreation and tourism in 2020'.

For the foreseeable future it is expected that the majority of people will continue to focus on recreational opportunities such as short walks and visitor centres, although it is likely that there will also be increasing interest in backcountry experiences. The major challenge the Department faces is maintaining the integrity of recreational experiences within the spectrum of opportunities available (e.g. by protecting natural quiet, natural light and remoteness values). In some cases, it may be appropriate to

---

<sup>17</sup> The text in square brackets describes the colour of each zone on the 'recreation outcome' maps.

permit an activity to take place at a low level and/or in a restricted area for an initial period, during which time the effects will be monitored closely, or even to prohibit a proposed activity. In other cases, it may be appropriate to expand the scale and/or level of activity to cater for increasing demand. Management of issues associated with recreation and tourism activities is discussed in Section 3.6.4.

The ongoing interest in outdoor recreation means that there may be demand for new facilities in previously undeveloped areas. If such demands are always met, the qualities of the range of opportunities available in West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands will diminish. In some cases, the provision of facilities (such as accommodation) may be more appropriately undertaken outside of public conservation lands. Provision of recreational facilities and management of recreation and tourism concessions are discussed further in Sections 3.6.2 and 3.6.3 respectively.

The objectives and policies presented below describe how the Department will provide and manage opportunities for people to experience public conservation lands in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy as a whole.

## OBJECTIVES

- 1. To provide a comprehensive range of recreational opportunities that enable people with different capabilities and interests to enjoy and appreciate West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands, whilst protecting natural, historical and cultural heritage from adverse impacts of recreational use.**
- 2. To avoid or minimise conflicts between different users, including people undertaking different types of activities in the same location.**
- 3. To raise awareness of the value (including physical, mental and cultural value) of outdoor recreation for the health of people and communities.**

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department's recreational zoning framework should be used to identify and manage an appropriate range of recreational opportunities within the Conservancy's public conservation lands and to minimise conflicts between different types of recreational uses.**
- 2. The Department's recreational zoning framework and appropriate restrictions on mechanised access and use should be implemented in order to safeguard natural, historical and cultural heritage and the ability of the public to experience solitude, peace and natural quiet in public conservation lands.**
- 3. Recreation opportunities that are based on the special character and features of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands should be provided, taking into account existing opportunities available elsewhere in the country, both within and outside of public conservation lands.**
- 4. When assessing proposals for new activities or facilities, the extent to which those proposals complement existing recreational opportunities**

within or adjacent to public conservation land, and maintain the integrity of the recreational zone, should be taken into consideration.

5. The reasonable requirements of different groups of people (such as the disabled, the elderly and young children) and the desired recreation outcomes for Places should be taken into account when maintaining or upgrading existing facilities or when considering proposals for new recreational facilities or modes of access.
6. The Department may investigate and, where appropriate, invite and consider, concession applications for the provision of new recreational facilities and/or services which may best be provided by concessionaires.
7. Where there is uncertainty about potential adverse effects associated with the provision of recreational facilities or services, a precautionary approach should be adopted in order to ensure that natural, historical and cultural heritage and other recreational opportunities are protected.
8. Sites should be identified for monitoring and assessment of:
  - a) the physical and social effects (including cumulative effects) of recreational activities, facilities and services in public conservation lands;
  - b) levels of public use and trends in visitation; and
  - c) levels of public satisfaction with the range of recreational opportunities provided.

The information gained from this monitoring should be used to identify measures that can be employed to avoid further effects and to minimise adverse effects that are already occurring.

9. The Department should foster realistic expectations by informing potential users and information providers about the recreational opportunities available and the types of experiences and conditions likely to be encountered in different locations.
10. All recreational facilities and services should contribute to the quality of people's experiences within the Conservancy. In particular, concessionaires and other operators should assist people to appreciate and care for the public conservation lands that they use.
11. The Department should proactively engage with local communities, conservation, recreation and tourism industry associates to identify their expectations for recreational facilities and services on or adjacent to public conservation land.
12. The Department should work with local communities to identify, promote and implement opportunities for encouraging more local people to be active more often in appropriate ways on public conservation land and surrounding areas.
13. The Department should work collaboratively with other people and organisations to conduct targeted qualitative and quantitative research on recreational users (e.g. monitoring of conflict between user groups) as required.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga  
Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Sections 3.6.1.2 – 3.6.1.6 (Recreational zones)  
Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
Section 3.6.4.9 Non-powered vehicles (mountain biking)  
Section 3.6.4.12 Powered water craft  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
Section 3.8.4 Public access  
Chapter 4.2, 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
Maps 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17 and 19a-c (recreation outcome maps)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.3(a)-(b)

### 3.6.1.2 **Gazetted wilderness areas**

The term 'wilderness' is commonly used to describe large unmodified areas. In this context, many public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* can justifiably be described as 'wilderness'. In the context of designated 'wilderness areas', however, the term has a more specific meaning, namely, areas that have been gazetted as a wilderness area because they meet the very strict criteria and management requirements stipulated for such areas in the national Wilderness Policy (1985), Conservation Act 1987 (section 20), National Parks Act 1980 (section 14) and Reserves Act 1977 (section 47). Legislation relating to gazetted wilderness areas focuses on the preservation of indigenous natural resources. The Minister must be satisfied that activities, within these areas are desirable or necessary for the preservation of the area's indigenous natural resources (wild animal control is an example of one such activity). The legislated management restrictions prohibit buildings, machinery or apparatus being constructed or used in gazetted wilderness areas; animals, vehicles or motorised vessels being taken into and used in them; and roads, tracks and trails being constructed through them (except where the establishment of facilities is desirable and necessary for the preservation of indigenous natural resources).

Gazetted wilderness areas provide the opportunity for recreation in extensive natural settings with diverse topography and very high levels of natural character. They are places in which people must be self-reliant and travel entirely on nature's terms and are unlikely to encounter other users or find evidence of others having been there. The legal protection of gazetted wilderness areas ensures that this end of the recreational opportunity spectrum is protected for future generations.

There are many values associated with wilderness:

- Reservoirs of biological diversity. Wilderness areas provide habitat for plants and animal species that is relatively undisturbed by human influences. This plays a significant role in sustaining gene pools, allowing adaptations to occur and maintaining populations.
- Scientific value. Wilderness areas act as a "living laboratory" where scientific research can be undertaken.
- Ecosystem services. The Conservation General Policy 2005 defines ecosystem services as "*a wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help sustain and fulfil life*". Wilderness areas help to preserve such ecosystem services, thereby ensuring the sustainability and resilience of the natural environment and ultimately the survival of humans and other species.

- Option values. This allows choices to be made by future generations about an area. A decision to maintain wilderness areas in their undeveloped state leaves all options open for the future.
- Aesthetic values. Wilderness areas provide a back-drop to the more intensively developed parts of the landscape. They also protect the aesthetic values within the wilderness area because they are free from modification by humans.
- Spiritual values. Wilderness areas offer opportunities for reflection, for observation and for exploration of ideas and experiences, all of which contribute significantly to human well being. There are also those who feel that experiences in true wilderness are so strong that the experience is lifted from mere recreation to an experience which is re-creation. Individuals who never visit a wilderness area may be satisfied in the knowledge that a part of their natural heritage has been retained, as far as possible, in its natural state.
- Recreational values. Gazetted wilderness areas provide the opportunity for recreation in extensive natural settings with diverse topography and very high levels of natural character. They are places in which people must be self-reliant and travel entirely on nature's terms and are unlikely to encounter other users or find evidence of others having been there. The legal protection of gazetted wilderness areas ensures that this end of the recreational opportunity spectrum is protected for current and future generations.

As at 2010, five of New Zealand's nine gazetted wilderness areas are in, or partially in, the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (see Table 3).

TABLE 3. GAZETTED WILDERNESS AREAS

NAME	SIZE (HA)	LAND STATUS	LOCATION	CHARACTER OF TERRAIN
Tasman	86,947	Wilderness area, s.14 National Parks Act 1980	Kahurangi National Park (partly in Nelson/Marlborough Conservancy) - see section 4.2.1 Karamea Place.	Complex geology of rugged Tasman Mountains; remote Heaphy/Karamea tributaries; rolling uplands of Gunner Downs; dense lowland and coastal forest.
Paparoa	30,785	Wilderness area, s.20 Conservation Act 1987	Central Paparoa Range (adjacent to Paparoa National Park) - see section s 4.2.3 Paparoa Place and 4.2.4 Inangahua Place.	Rugged ice-carved granitic gneiss ranges; Fiordland-like landforms; glaciated headwaters of Otututu and Ohikanui rivers.
Adams	46,587	Wilderness area, s.20 Conservation Act 1987	Central Southern Alps <i>Kā Tiritiri o te Moana</i> , north of Westland <i>Tai Poutini</i> National Park (partly in Canterbury Conservancy)- see section s 4.2.6 Hokitika Place and 4.2.7 Te Wāhipounamu Place.	Rugged high alpine terrain; many glaciers (including Garden of Eden and Garden of Allah ice plateau); headwaters of Wanganui and Whataroa rivers.
Hooker/Landsborough	41,000	Wilderness area, s.20 Conservation Act 1987	Southern south Westland (south of Westland <i>Tai Poutini</i> National Park) - see section 4.2.7 Te Wāhipounamu Place	Rugged high alpine terrain; numerous glaciers; headwaters of one of the largest and most remote rivers in the Southern Alps <i>Kā Tiritiri o te Moana</i> .
Olivine	83,000	Wilderness area, s.14 National Parks Act 1980	Mount Aspiring National Park (partly in Otago Conservancy) - see section 4.2.7 Te Wāhipounamu Place	Jagged schist mountains; large ice plateau; headwater valleys of four major rivers.

## OBJECTIVES

1. To retain a range of challenging unmodified natural settings that contribute to the world's wilderness resource.
2. To enable people to experience extensive natural settings with diverse topography and very high levels of natural character, including natural quiet, where:
  - a) people are unlikely to encounter other users or find evidence of others having been there;
  - b) mechanical access is prohibited;
  - c) no noise intrusion from aircraft is present; and
  - d) no tracks, bridges, huts or other facilities are provided,thus they are places in which people must be suitably equipped and experienced, self-reliant, and travel entirely on nature's terms.

## POLICIES

1. Gazetted wilderness areas will be managed according to the provisions of relevant legislation, general policy and any relevant management plans, and meet the desired outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS, and should also be managed according to the provisions of the Wilderness Policy 1985 where consistent with legislation and this CMS.
2. Concessions should not be authorised for gazetted wilderness areas except when:
  - a) the activity is necessary or desirable for the preservation of the area's indigenous natural resources; and
  - b) groups are subject to conditions that ensure the objectives for gazetted wilderness areas (see Objectives 1 and 2 above) are complied with; and
  - c) groups are no larger than 4 persons including guide(s), except in the case of guided rafting in the Tasman Wilderness Area where groups are no larger than 21 persons including guide(s) or such lesser maximum group size as may be specified in the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan.
3. With the exception of Policy 4 below, no motorised vehicle or motorised water craft access will be authorised within gazetted wilderness areas.
4. No motorised vehicle or motorised water craft access (including aircraft landings<sup>18, 19</sup>) will be authorised in gazetted wilderness areas, other than for:

---

18 Management of aircraft landings within public conservation lands aims to minimise any negative effects on wildlife or people on the ground (e.g. noise disturbance from low overflights or displacement of other recreational users). The Department cannot control overflights when the aircraft is not going to land in public conservation land (e.g. domestic or international airlines using the airspace above public conservation lands on their way to their destination).

19 Within national parks, the aircraft management provisions outlined within that park's management plan apply.

- a) activities desirable or necessary for the preservation of the area's indigenous natural resources, such as authorised wild animal control; or
  - b) emergencies; or
  - c) search and rescue purposes.
5. The Department may seek to restrict low level flights over gazetted wilderness areas, through liaison with aircraft operators and advocacy to other agencies, in order to protect the opportunity for recreationists to experience the natural quiet and natural character of these areas.
  6. Use may be monitored to ensure that it remains consistent with the statutory restrictions and provisions of the legislation and Objectives 1 and 2 above.

*See also* Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
 Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
 Section 3.6.4.11 Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes  
 Section 3.6.4.12 Powered water craft  
 Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (Karamea, Paparoa, Inangahua, Hokitika and Te Wāhi Pounamu Place).

### **3.6.1.3 Remote zone**

Like gazetted wilderness areas (see above), 'remote' zones provide extensive natural settings with diverse topography and high levels of natural character and are managed so as to maintain their characteristic remoteness, natural character and natural quiet. In some situations, remote zones provide a buffer to gazetted wilderness areas. Both in New Zealand and worldwide, remote opportunities are a rapidly shrinking resource.

The remote zone differs from the backcountry-remote zone in that the Department does not provide or maintain any recreational facilities within the remote zone. In a few cases, remote areas may contain old marked routes or parts of old track systems and huts that will be left in place until their natural attrition. Aircraft access for recreation and tourism purposes (see Section 3.6.4.2) is provided for in both remote and back-country remote zones. However, the general absence of facilities within remote zones presents considerable challenges on the ground and people using remote areas need to be self-reliant.

## OBJECTIVES

1. To retain a range of challenging remote natural settings with few, if any, facilities and very limited noise intrusion, so that suitably equipped people can enjoy these places on nature's terms.
2. To enable people to experience extensive natural settings with diverse topography and high levels of natural character, including remoteness and natural quiet.



1. The remote zone should be managed to meet the desired outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS and in any relevant management plans, providing principally for the needs, interests and abilities of most remoteness seekers.
2. Concessionaire operations should be consistent with the objectives for the remote zone (see O1 and O2 above). Visits should be infrequent and groups small, with an emphasis on self-reliance.
  - a) A maximum of 6 people per group, including guide/s, may be allowed, with the following exceptions:
    - i) Guidance on recommended group sizes for concessionaire-guided rafting/kayaking activities is provided in Section 3.6.4.10;
    - ii) Consideration of group sizes for outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes will be undertaken on a case-by-case basis (see Section 3.6.4.11), taking cumulative effects into account.
3. Consideration may be given to the development of a minimal number of new recreational facilities for public use within the remote zone. Applications to provide new facilities will be considered on a case-by-case basis and should be consistent with the objectives for remote zones and the desired outcome for Places (see Part 4).
4. With the exceptions of Policies 5 and 6 below<sup>20</sup>, and any specific provisions in a national park management plan, no motorised vehicle access (see Section 3.6.4.17) or regular aircraft landings (see Section 3.6.4.2) should be authorised within this zone.
5. Only irregular and occasional aircraft landings (definitions of these terms are provided in Section 3.6.4.2) may be authorised. Each operator may undertake no more than 2 landings per day, and no more than 20 per annum, at a given location<sup>21</sup> within the remote zone.
6. Where practicable, the aircraft landing sites available to each concessionaire will be specified in concession conditions.

*See also* Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
 Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
 Section 3.6.4.10 Non-powered water craft use on rivers and lakes  
 Section 3.6.4.11 Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes  
 Section 3.6.4.12 Powered water craft  
 Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places).

<sup>20</sup> Management of aircraft landings within public conservation lands aims to minimise any negative effects on wildlife or people on the ground (e.g. noise disturbance from low overflights or displacement of other recreational users). The Department cannot control overflights when the aircraft is not going to land in public conservation land (e.g. domestic or international airlines using the airspace above public conservation lands on their way to their destination).

<sup>21</sup> A given 'location' is defined as 'any landing position within a one kilometre radius of the initial landing position'.

#### 3.6.1.4 *Backcountry-remote zone*

The 'backcountry-remote' zone provides opportunities to access extensive natural settings where facilities are provided but a considerable degree of physical challenge, self-reliance and isolation is involved. Although users of these areas usually travel in groups for company and safety, the expectation is that groups will generally be small and that encounters with other groups will be infrequent, except on a limited number of high-use tracks (see Appendix 7) and rivers (see Section 3.6.4.10). Huts and tracks that see relatively little use provide the opportunity for solitude for those who seek a greater sense of isolation and challenge but still need the security of some facilities, especially with the topographical difficulties and climatic extremes regularly encountered on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Overnight use is more intensive at some sites and at certain times of the year.

Within the backcountry-remote zone an extensive network of backcountry facilities (such as roads, routes, tracks, huts, bridges, cableways and signs) and road-end facilities (car parks, shelters, track information) provide access to a wide range of backcountry experiences. Many of these facilities pre-date the establishment of the Department of Conservation (1987) and were originally provided by the New Zealand Forest Service for their wild animal control operations. As a result, many of the huts, tracks and bridges were not designed primarily as a recreational resource, although from the outset they were available for recreational use. Trampers, climbers, hunters and fishers have traditionally used these facilities and, in the past, access has been largely on foot. However, in some places these patterns are now undergoing change as new activities (e.g. kayaking, rafting, mountain biking) create demands for access to areas in the backcountry-remote zone. Increased use is also now being made of air access (see Section 3.6.4.2) for both new and traditional forms of backcountry recreation.

The backcountry-remote zone provides for backcountry 'comfort seekers' as well as backcountry 'adventurers'. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy has only one track classified as a 'Great Walk': the Heaphy Track (from Scotts Beach to the boundary with Nelson/Marlborough Conservancy). The Conservancy has four other backcountry comfort seeker tracks in addition to the Heaphy: the Lake Daniells Track, part of the Croesus Track, the St James Walkway from Lewis Pass to Ada Pass, and the Copland Track to Welcome Flat. Although several other tracks are of similar standard and have at least some large comfortable huts (e.g. the Wangapeka and Kirwans Hill tracks); these are all classified as backcountry adventurer opportunities.

In the past, concessionaires have made only limited use of facilities in the backcountry-remote zone, except for the alpine huts in Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park which have long been used as bases for commercially guided climbing and ski-touring parties. Over the past decade, however, there has been a steady growth in demand by commercial tramping, climbing, hunting and fishing guides to be able to make use of backcountry huts. Many of these operations are small but as the number of guiding concessions grows so does the potential for impacts on other users. Concessionaires regularly make use of air access and, as the number of concessions granted increases, so does the potential for several commercial parties to be present in the same area at the same time. The Department is aware of these issues and will include conditions in guiding concessions to ensure that traditional users are not disadvantaged by the cumulative impacts of increasing numbers of commercial parties expecting to use public facilities in the backcountry.

## OBJECTIVES

1. To provide access to a range of recreational opportunities via facilities that enable people to enjoy challenging natural settings in the backcountry.
2. To enable people to access extensive natural settings where:
  - a) facilities are provided but a considerable degree of physical challenge, self-reliance and isolation is involved;
  - b) groups of recreational users are generally small and encounters with other groups are infrequent (except on a limited number of high-use tracks and rivers);
  - c) huts and tracks provide the opportunity for solitude for those who seek a greater sense of isolation and challenge, but still need the security of some facilities; and
  - d) overnight use is more intensive at some sites and at certain times of the year.

## POLICIES

1. The backcountry-remote zone should be managed to meet the desired outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS and in any relevant management plans, providing facilities and services that cater principally for the needs, interests and abilities of most backcountry comfort seekers and backcountry adventurers.
2. Concessionaire operations should be consistent with the objectives for the backcountry-remote zone (see O1 and O2 above), which include small to moderate group sizes and a moderate degree of risk.
  - a) A maximum of 8 people per group, including guide/s, may be allowed with the following exceptions:
    - i) A maximum of 15 people per group, including guide/s, may be allowed for those tracks listed in section (a) of Appendix 7 and for guided walks and helihikes on the Franz Josef and Fox Glaciers;
    - ii) A maximum of 12 people per group, including guide/s, may be allowed for those tracks listed in section (b) of Appendix 7;
    - iii) Guidance on recommended group sizes for concessionaire-guided rafting/kayaking activities is provided in Section 3.6.4.10;
    - iv) Consideration of group sizes for outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes will be undertaken on a case-by-case basis (see Section 3.6.4.11), taking cumulative effects into account.
3. Conditions in guiding concessions should ensure that non-guided recreational users are not disadvantaged by the cumulative impacts of increasing numbers of commercial parties expecting to use public backcountry facilities. Where public huts or campsites are to be used, at least 50% of the beds or camping space must be available at all times for non-commercial users.
4. Concessionaires, communities or non-profit organisations may provide recreational facilities for public use within the backcountry-remote zone. Applications to provide facilities should be consistent with the desired

outcome for Places (see Part 4) and will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

5. The effects of camping, particularly along roadsides, popular tracks and waterbodies, may be monitored. Camping restrictions may be applied at sites where particular natural, historical and cultural heritage values are impacted by overuse.
6. Formed roads on public conservation lands located within the backcountry-remote zone may be available for motorised vehicle use (see Section 3.6.4.17), horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) and mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9).
7. Regular aircraft landings<sup>22, 23</sup> (a definition of this term is provided in Section 3.6.4.2) may be authorised. The number and frequency of landings should be considered on a case-by-case basis.
8. Irregular and occasional aircraft landings (definitions of these terms are provided in Section 3.6.4.2) may be authorised. Each operator may undertake no more than 2 landings per day, and no more than 20 per annum, at a given location<sup>24</sup> within the backcountry-remote zone.
9. Where cumulative effects of irregular landings can be identified (e.g. when use becomes more frequent and regular – see Section 3.6.4.2), concessionaires will be required to apply for a regular landing concession for those locations. This may result in the Department allocating use of particular landing sites. Applications for new or reissued concessions will be considered on a case-by-case basis and tested against the desired outcomes and character of the affected places.
10. Where practicable, the aircraft landing sites available to each concessionaire will be specified in concession conditions.

*See also* Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
Section 3.6.4.3 Animals  
Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
Section 3.6.4.9 Non-powered vehicles (mountain biking)  
Section 3.6.4.10 Non-powered water craft use on rivers and lakes  
Section 3.6.4.11 Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes  
Section 3.6.4.12 Powered water craft  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
Appendix 7 - Concessionaire guided group size limits for tracks in the backcountry-remote zone

---

22 Management of aircraft landings within public conservation lands aims to minimise any negative effects on wildlife or people on the ground (e.g. noise disturbance from low overflights or displacement of other recreational users). The Department cannot control overflights when the aircraft is not going to land in public conservation land (e.g. domestic or international airlines using the airspace above public conservation lands on their way to their destination).

23 Within national parks, the aircraft management provisions outlined within that park's management plan apply.

24 A given 'location' is defined as 'any landing position within a one kilometre radius of the initial landing position'.

### **3.6.1.5 Frontcountry sites**

Frontcountry sites are located adjacent to formed and maintained roads or highways and include facilities such as picnic and camping areas, toilets, water supplies, signs, interpretation panels, lookout points, wharves, boat ramps, shelters, bridges, car parks and easy walking tracks, including high-grade tracks of short duration that cater for all ages and most abilities. There are also many opportunities for more extensive exploration of public conservation lands, especially on tracks or walkways that traverse, or lead to, places that have particular scenic attractions or historic features. Indeed, for many people the chance to explore a wide diversity of truly wild landscapes without the burden of carrying overnight equipment and supplies is what particularly distinguishes the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* as a recreational environment and, as a consequence, use of such tracks is increasing steadily. Many opportunities are associated with actively managed historic places and many of the tracks themselves are historic.

Aircraft landings at frontcountry sites are generally discouraged as their roadside localities make them easily accessible by motorised vehicle. However, policies 8 and 9 provide for occasional aircraft landings to occur.

The green dots on the recreation outcome maps (see Maps 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17 and 19a-c) indicate the suite of frontcountry sites that existed in 2010. Additional frontcountry sites may be established during the life of this CMS.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To provide a range of day-use recreational opportunities located within easy reach of roads and highways, with facilities that meet high visitor asset management standards.**
- 2. To enable people to explore a wide diversity of natural landscapes and a range of historical and cultural heritage, located within relatively easy reach of vehicle access, without the burden of carrying overnight equipment or supplies.**

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. Frontcountry sites should be managed to meet the desired outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS and in any relevant management plans, providing facilities and services that cater principally for the needs, interests and abilities of most day visitors.**
- 2. Concessionaire operations should be consistent with the objectives for frontcountry sites (see O1 and O2 above). A maximum of 15 people per group, including guide/s, may be allowed, with the following exception:**
  - i) Consideration of group sizes for outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes will be undertaken on a case-by-case basis (see Section 3.6.4.11), taking cumulative effects into account.**
- 3. The effects of camping should be monitored, particularly along roadsides, popular tracks and waterbodies. Camping restrictions may be applied at sites where particular natural, historical and cultural heritage values are impacted by overuse or inappropriate use.**

4. **Additional frontcountry sites may be established adjacent to formed and maintained roads or highways.**
5. **Frontcountry sites may be provided and/or managed by the Department, concessionaires, communities or non-profit organisations.**
6. **Formed roads on public conservation lands located at frontcountry sites may be available for motorised vehicle use (see Section 3.6.4.17), horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) and mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9).**
7. **Regular aircraft landings at frontcountry sites (see Section 3.6.4.2) should not be authorised.**
8. **Only irregular and occasional aircraft landings<sup>25, 26</sup> (definitions of these terms are provided in Section 3.6.4.2) may be authorised. Each operator may undertake no more than 2 landings per day, and no more than 20 per annum, at any one frontcountry site.**
9. **The aircraft landing sites available to each concessionaire will be specified in concession conditions.**

**See also** Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
 Section 3.6.4.3 Animals  
 Section 3.6.4.4 Camping  
 Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
 Section 3.6.4.7 Highways, roads and rail corridors  
 Section 3.6.4.9 Non-powered vehicles (mountain biking)  
 Section 3.6.4.11 Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes  
 Section 3.6.4.12 Powered water craft  
 Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places).

### **3.6.1.6 Intense interest sites**

'Intense interest sites' are places where very high public use occurs within a relatively confined area. They are places with outstanding natural features that attract many New Zealanders and international visitors to the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Five locations currently attract sufficient numbers to place them within the intense interest category: the seal colony at Tauranga Bay, Dolomite Point at Punakaiki, Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hine Hukatere* valley floor, Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* valley floor and Lake Matheson.

Intense interest sites provide an important advocacy opportunity – both for creating increased empathy between the user and that particular natural environment, and for conveying conservation messages to people in a setting where they are likely to be receptive to them. However, high concentrations of people within a limited area invariably give rise to both physical and social management problems, including over-crowding, increased physical impacts, traffic management and safety issues,

---

25 Management of aircraft landings within public conservation lands aims to minimise any negative effects on wildlife or people on the ground (e.g. noise disturbance from low overflights or displacement of other recreational users). The Department cannot control overflights when the aircraft is not going to land in public conservation land (e.g. domestic or international airlines using the airspace above public conservation lands on their way to their destination).

26 Within national parks, the aircraft management provisions outlined within that park's management plan apply.

wildlife disturbance, waste management, intrusive structures, loss of natural quiet (including aircraft noise) and user conflicts.

## OBJECTIVES

1. To provide safe and easy access to select high-use, day-use-only sites with outstanding natural features and facilities that meet the highest visitor asset management standards.

## POLICIES

1. Intense interest sites should be managed to meet the desired outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS and in any relevant management plans, providing facilities and services that cater principally for the needs, interests and abilities of most people.
2. The key natural, historical and cultural heritage at each site and the key features that make the experience of visiting that site unique should be maintained and enhanced where appropriate.
3. Concessionaire operations should be consistent with the objectives for intense interest sites (see O1 above), which include easy access and high public use. Group sizes of 15 people, including guides, will be encouraged on walking tracks. However, larger group sizes will be considered on a case-by-case basis, where conflict with other visitors and/or crowding can be managed.
4. No aircraft landings should be authorised at intense interest sites, other than for:
  - a) conservation management purposes; or
  - b) emergencies; or
  - c) search and rescue purposes.

*See also* Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
Section 3.6.4.7 Highways, roads and rail corridors  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (Kawatiri, Paparoa and Te Wāhi Pounamu Place).

### 3.6.2 Recreation Facilities and Services

#### 3.6.2.1 Provision of recreation facilities

As at 2010, the Department managed some 140 backcountry huts, 1069 kilometres of walkways, tracks and routes, 159 amenity areas (roadside facilities such as carparks, toilets, picnic areas etc), 10 self-registration camping areas, 2 informal campsites and 4 visitor centres on public conservation lands in the Conservancy. This section outlines how the Department, in conjunction with concessionaires and others, intends to provide a range of appropriate recreation opportunities, facilities and services - in order to enable people to experience the distinctive natural, historical and cultural character of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. The provision of on-site and off-site information and interpretation is covered in Section 3.2.1.

## OBJECTIVE

1. To provide facilities and services consistent with the objectives and policies for each recreation outcome zone.

## POLICIES

1. Provision and management of new and existing recreation facilities should comply with the following criteria:
  - a) the facility complements the existing range of recreation opportunities (see Policy 4, Section 3.6.1.1);
  - b) the facility will not compromise the recreation outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS for that site;
  - c) the effects on natural, historical and cultural heritage values and recreation opportunities are acceptable; and
  - d) the ongoing ownership and maintenance commitments can be met or assigned, including any community management agreements.

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Sections 3.6.1 Recreational opportunities  
Section 3.7.1 Accommodation and related facilities  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places).

### 3.6.3 Recreation and Tourism Concessions

The Department does not regard itself as having the sole responsibility for providing appropriate recreational services and facilities in public conservation lands. Quality services and products provided by the private sector can contribute to positive recreation experiences for people who are unable to obtain those experiences independently, and can lead to good conservation outcomes by fostering an appreciation of the region's distinctive qualities.

Recreation and tourism concessions operating in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy cover a range of activities, such as sporting events, aircraft landings, and guided day-walks, tramping, hunting, fishing and rafting. The sites used by concessionaires range from intense interest sites (e.g. for guided glacier walks) to wilderness areas. Outside of intense interest sites, concessionaire use of areas comprises only a small percentage of overall recreational use. However in some cases concessionaires provide the only means of access to particular areas or ensure the protection of significant natural heritage. Examples of the latter are concessions for visiting the white heron *kōtuku* colony at Waitangiroto and visiting specific cave systems in Paparoa and Kahurangi National Parks.

Recreation and tourism concessionaire operations within West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands are generally characterised by small groups (see Sections 3.6.1.2-3.6.1.6) with flexible timetables. A significant proportion of recreation and tourism concessionaires on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* conduct operations over large areas of the Conservancy and elsewhere in New Zealand.

Objectives and policies presented elsewhere in Chapter 3.6 apply to the management of recreation and tourism concessions, where relevant.

*See also* Section 3.2.3.6 Concessionaires, access arrangement holders and other authorisation holders



## 3.6.4 Recreation and Tourism Activities

### 3.6.4.1 Overview

People are attracted to public conservation lands by the relatively unspoilt, unpolluted and uncrowded environment, impressive natural scenery and accessible outdoor recreation opportunities. Positive aspects of recreational use of public conservation lands include enjoyment, inspiration, increased understanding of conservation and other benefits people gain from their experiences. Various actual or potential physical and social effects may be associated with these visits.

The objective presented below applies to all recreation and tourism activities undertaken within the Conservancy's public conservation lands. Sections 3.6.4.2 to 3.6.4.18 set out policies for a number of common recreation and tourism activities, including activities for which a concession is required.

#### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To provide opportunities for people to undertake a wide range of recreation and tourism activities at places and in ways that optimise the quality of the experiences available, whilst avoiding or otherwise minimising adverse effects on conservation values and conflicts with other users.**

### 3.6.4.2 Aircraft

On the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, many public conservation lands are a focus for aircraft landings<sup>27</sup> and overflights. Aircraft are used for recreation and tourism purposes (e.g. access to the backcountry, scenic flights, private landings) and non-recreational purposes (e.g. conservation management, wild animal recovery operations, emergency or search and rescue, provision and servicing of utilities, mining, management of the pounamu resource, filming and other commercial activities).

Use of aircraft for recreation and tourism purposes varies within the Conservancy. The most intensive aircraft activity occurs in Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park (refer to the Park's management plan for further information). Some rivers have become popular destinations for heli-rafting or heli-kayaking, including the Hokitika, Wanganui, Perth, Whataroa and Landsborough rivers. Elsewhere in the Conservancy, aircraft are mainly used to position recreationists or for scenic overflights (e.g. over Kahurangi National Park and Mt Aspiring National Park). Aircraft landings for recreational purposes are not permitted in Paparoa National Park or the five gazetted wilderness areas (see Table 3), while aircraft use within Arthur's Pass National Park should not be approved for scenic flights, heli-skiing, heli-hiking or positioning recreationists (Policy 6.4.8(d), Arthur's Pass NPMP). Aircraft overflights are not

---

<sup>27</sup> Aircraft landings include the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down of or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft.

subject to the direct control of the Department. However, the Department has an interest in the effects of aircraft activity on conservation values and recreational users of public conservation lands (Booth *et al*, 1997) and therefore seeks co-operation with all parties involved (including aircraft operators, local authorities, Civil Aviation Authority, Ministry of Tourism, Tourism Industry Association of NZ and other groups involved in the tourism industry). A concession is required to land all aircraft, including private aircraft, on public conservation land.

Section 3.6.4.2 should be read in conjunction with Section 3.6.4.10 and Sections 3.6.1.2 to 3.6.1.6, which include policies relating to the management of aircraft landings associated with rafting/kayaking, and aircraft landings within recreational zones respectively.

## **POLICIES**

- 1. Aircraft may be authorised to land within public conservation lands where this:**
  - a) is necessary for the Department to perform its functions; or**
  - b) facilitates access for emergency or search and rescue purposes; or**
  - c) is compatible with the statutory purposes for which the place is held and consistent with any relevant national park management plan; and**
  - d) is consistent with the objectives and policies for the relevant recreational zone/s (see Sections 3.6.1.2 to 3.6.1.6); and**
  - e) does not compromise the desired outcomes for Places (see Part 4, Chapter 4.2).**

**Clauses (c)-(e) apply to applications for aircraft landings associated with recreation and tourism purposes (e.g. scenic flights, recreational access to the backcountry, private landings) and non-recreational purposes (e.g. wild animal recovery operations, provision and servicing of utilities, mining, management of the pounamu resource, filming and other commercial activities).**

- 2. Aircraft landing sites on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands will be assigned to one of the following four categories, depending on which recreational zone<sup>28</sup> the site is located in and the legal status of the site:**

**Excluded:** Aircraft landings should be excluded except for conservation management purposes, emergencies or search and rescue purposes.

**Regular:** Regular landings are defined as occurring when a concessionaire undertakes 3 or more landings per day and/or 21 or more landings per annum, at specific sites. Regular landings may only be authorised within the backcountry-remote zone and may occur all-year-round or on a seasonal basis. Numbers and frequencies of landings should be considered on a case-by-case basis.

---

<sup>28</sup> The locations of recreational zones are shown on Maps 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17 and 19a-c (see Part 4).

**Irregular:** Irregular landings are defined as no more than 2 landings per day, and no more than 20 per annum, at a given location<sup>29</sup>. Landings may be authorised for the purposes of transportation of personnel and/or equipment to or from a variety of possible locations within the remote or backcountry-remote zones, or at frontcountry sites. This provides for landings for air charter purposes, but does not include regular landings at specific sites or scenic snow landings.

**Occasional:** ‘One-off’ permits for landings may be granted for specific purposes (short-term, one-off events such as filming, management of utilities) at specific sites within the remote or backcountry-remote zones, or at frontcountry sites.

3. Aircraft landings within Kahurangi, Paparoa, Arthur’s Pass, Westland *Tai Poutini* and Mt Aspiring National Parks will be managed through the relevant National Park Management Plans.
4. Aircraft landings should be excluded from nature reserves<sup>30</sup>, wildlife refuges, wildlife sanctuaries, wildlife management areas, scenic reserves, wilderness areas and intense interest sites.
5. Within remote zones and the Lewis Pass National Reserve only irregular or occasional aircraft landings should be authorised.
6. Regular aircraft landings should be restricted to specified landing sites, where practicable.
7. Shared use of aircraft landing sites and facilities by operators should be required, subject to existing concessions.
8. The Conservancy will liaise with relevant authorities, interest groups and operators in order to minimise the adverse effects of aircraft overflights of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands.
9. The Conservancy should seek Civil Aviation Authority agreement to regulatory restrictions over airspace where implementation of Policy 8 has failed to adequately minimise the effects of aircraft overflights on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands.
10. The Conservancy will liaise with other South Island conservancies to ensure that aircraft access is managed in a consistent and coordinated manner.

**See also** Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Sections 3.6.1.2 - 3.6.1.6 (Recreational zones)  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.10 Non-powered water craft use on rivers, lakes and lagoons  
Section 3.7.12 Commercial recovery of wild animals  
Chapter 4.2 ‘Recreation and tourism in 2020’ (all Places)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.5(a)-(c)

---

29 A given ‘location’ is defined as ‘any landing position within a one kilometre radius of the initial landing position’.

30 Civil Aviation Authority airspace restrictions (NZR 700) are in place for the airspace above Waitangiroti Nature Reserve, to protect the white heron *kōtuku* breeding colony. Altitudinal restrictions on aircraft apply from 1 August to 31 March inclusive each year. The Department is able to consider applications for special operations within the restricted area.

### 3.6.4.3 *Animals*

Conservation General Policy 2005, policy 9.6(a), states that “Animals (including pets) will not be permitted to be taken into public conservation lands and waters unless this is consistent with legislation and specifically provided for in conservation management strategies or plans”. This CMS provides for grazing of some domestic animals on public conservation lands (see Section 3.7.6) and also allows dogs, horses and other pack animals to be taken onto some areas of public conservation land in accordance with the conditions outlined in Policies 1 and 2 below. Due to the extent and scale of public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, the Conservancy has not attempted to identify and list specific conservation areas where these animals may be permitted. Instead, a list of criteria has been developed which must be met before these animals will be permitted to be taken into public conservation lands. The criteria aim to ensure that any adverse effects animals may have on natural, historical or cultural heritage values or public use, appreciation and enjoyment are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Horse riding may be allowed in some areas, such as old roads or low use tracks. A pet dog, which has been permitted by the Department, may be taken into authorised areas of public conservation lands when under a person’s control. Hunting dogs must be authorised by hunting permit issued by the Department, be properly trained and under the control of their handler. The only dogs which do not require permits are those used for police, customs, management and search and rescue purposes, and guide or certified companion dogs.

General Policy for National Parks, policy 8.5(a), states that “Animals (including pets) will not be permitted to be taken into national parks unless they have been specifically authorised by the National Parks Act 1980, a national park bylaw or national park management plan”.

## POLICIES

1. **Dogs, horses and other pack animals should only be taken into West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands and waters where consistent with legislation and where adverse effects such as (but not limited to) damage to indigenous flora or fauna, spread of weeds, damage to recreational facilities and conflicts with other recreational users, are avoided, remedied or mitigated.**
2. **The Conservancy should proactively assess, identify and publicise areas suitable for horse riding (e.g. old roads and low use tracks) and where dogs may be taken in consultation with the community.**

**See also** Section 3.3.1.3 Threats to terrestrial biodiversity values  
 Section 3.3.3.5 Threatened species management  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
 Section 3.6.4.15 Recreational hunting of game birds  
 Section 3.6.4.16 Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests  
 Chapter 4.2 ‘Recreation and tourism in 2020’ (all Places)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 9.6(a)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 8.5(a)

#### 3.6.4.4 **Camping**

Camping opportunities available in West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands range from remote or wilderness area camping, where no facilities are provided, through to designated campsites with vehicle access, where facilities may include toilets and cooking areas. Management issues associated with camping include localised environmental degradation including human waste, the risk of fire, competition for facilities between campers and day users at shared sites, social conflicts between large groups and people seeking a degree of solitude and privacy, and camping for extended periods.

#### POLICIES

- 1. Camping may be permitted in all recreational zones, with the exception of intense interest sites.**
- 2. Vehicle-based camping on public conservation land should comply with local authority freedom camping policy, bylaws and signs and, in the case of vehicles without toilet facilities, should only take place in designated camping areas.**
- 3. Camping should be discouraged in areas of ecological or cultural sensitivity, or those regarded as unsafe.**
- 4. Maximum stay periods may be imposed at certain campsites during peak visitation periods.**
- 5. People camping in backcountry-remote zones, remote zones and gazetted wilderness areas should be encouraged to use fuel stoves rather than campfires.**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Sections 3.6.1.2 - 3.6.1.6 Recreational zones  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)

#### 3.6.4.5 **Geothermal sites**

Accessible geothermal sites, such as Welcome Flat on the Copland Track, are a highly valued recreational resource on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Geothermal sites have cultural significance for Poutini Ngāi Tahu.

#### POLICIES

- 1. Further development or modification of geothermal sites for either commercial or non-commercial purposes will only be authorised where:**
  - a) adverse effects on natural heritage values can be avoided or otherwise minimised; and**
  - b) a cultural impact assessment relating to effects on Māori cultural values of that particular site has been taken into account.**

*See also* Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)

### 3.6.4.6 **Guiding**

Guiding enables a wide range of people to explore places or undertake activities they may not otherwise experience. Examples of guided activities available within West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands at the time of writing included guided climbing, caving, hunting, fishing, tramping, mountaineering, short walks, glacier walks and helihikes, photography, bird watching, kayaking, rafting, canoeing, mountain-biking, horse riding, natural heritage tours, Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural tours, historical heritage tours, and four-wheel drive safaris. All commercial guiding activities on public conservation lands require a concession. Recommended group sizes for guided activities are presented in Sections 3.6.1.2 to 3.6.1.6.

#### POLICIES

- 1. The Department should liaise with the New Zealand Qualifications Authority, the Tourism Industry Association, the New Zealand Mountain Safety Council, the New Zealand Mountain Guides Association and other guiding organisations to encourage the development of appropriate standards and qualifications for various types of guiding activities.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.7 Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation  
Section 3.2.3.7 Tourism associates  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)

### 3.6.4.7 **Highways, roads and rail corridors**

This section is about highways, secondary roads and rail corridors in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, many of which run alongside or through public conservation lands. For guidance about roads that are managed by the Department see Section 3.6.4.17, or about roading associated with utilities see Section 3.7.11.

#### POLICIES

- 1. The Department will work jointly with local authorities, the NZ Transport Agency, Tranzrail and Papatipu Rūnanga to identify significant landscapes, key natural, historical and cultural features, and other significant values within highway and rail corridors.**
- 2. The Department may advocate to the NZ Transport Agency and local authorities to stop legal roads passing through public conservation lands where it is clear that the land is no longer required for roading purposes. Where appropriate, the Department should advocate that the land be gazetted as public conservation land and that management responsibility for the land be transferred to the Department.**

3. **The Department should work with local authorities, the NZ Transport Agency and other agencies to ensure that waste (including effluent waste from campervans and other vehicles) is disposed of appropriately.**
4. **The management and development of existing and new intense interest sites and frontcountry sites that are adjacent to State Highways should be undertaken in consultation with NZ Transport Agency.**

*See also* Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
 Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.1.5 Frontcountry sites  
 Section 3.6.1.6 Intense interest sites  
 Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
 Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
 Section 3.8.2 Statutory land management  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
 General Policy for National Parks, Policy 8.1(i)

#### **3.6.4.8 Karst based activities**

Karst sites and caves represent perhaps the most fragile and easily disturbed environments in the Conservancy's public conservation lands. All cave visits and some climbing activities result in some degree of impact. Surface and subsurface impacts associated with caving and climbing may include damage and destruction of vegetation resulting in the formation of foot tracks to cave entrances and/or climbing sites (and attendant soil erosion and siltation); damage to rock faces and cave walls by inappropriate hardware installation; physical alterations to caves or climbing sites (to create access); alterations to cave hydrology, including water chemistry, air movements and micro-climates; the compaction or liquefaction of cave floors, brushing on walls on ceilings; the erosion or disturbance of cave sediments and their contents; removal of fossils and other items of geological interest; the inadvertent or intentional destruction or damage of speleothems; the destruction of cave fauna; and the introduction of alien organisms, nutrients, pollutants or materials to surface and subsurface environments.

The effects of caving and climbing activities can be cumulative and damage caused by these activities may be permanent. Human activity can also have adverse effects on cultural and archaeological values. Fragile attributes of caves may have little or no capacity for recovery from damage because the formative processes involved occur over very long time frames.

Knowledge of the long-term impacts from access to individual caves is not thoroughly understood. A system to monitor impacts on caves will be established at sites with significant values. The Department is largely reliant on the activities of caving groups to further its knowledge of cave resources. Users will be encouraged to report on the condition of sites that they visit.

A concession is required to run guided activities in cave or karst areas within public conservation lands (see Section 3.6.4.6). The New Zealand Speleological Society and concessionaires promote safe caving practices and cave conservation to their members or clients to make them aware of the issues associated with karst based activities. However, people caving outside of these groups may be less aware of them. A number of methods have been used by the Department to protect cave features including restricting entry, defining specific routes, and imposing conditions

(such as group size limits) on concessionaires. The access regimes for particular caves within the Conservancy vary with their relative robustness (potential for damage), the significance of their values, and visitor safety considerations.

## **POLICIES**

- 1. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Cave Register, which records the extent and nature of known cave and karst areas located within public conservation lands and recommends appropriate levels of public access to these areas, should be updated whenever new information is received or significant research undertaken. It should be reviewed in accordance with IUCN guidelines and any national Departmental policy and management plans and refer to national and international scientific findings and current management practices.**
- 2. The principles and actions outlined in the Karst Management Guidelines (Department of Conservation, 1999) should be applied in relation to management of cave and karst areas located within the Conservancy's public conservation lands.**
- 3. Concessionaires, outdoor education groups and members of the public seeking a caving experience will be directed to appropriate robust caves. At a limited number of high use sites, recreational facilities may be provided and/or site hardening undertaken to allow for visitation.**
- 4. Only one concessionaire should be granted the right to operate guided caving trips in each restricted access cave/cave system (see Table 4) to protect the fragile conservation values of these cave systems.**
- 5. A guided caving concession may be granted where:**
  - a) conservation values can be effectively protected by concession conditions and cave management techniques; and**
  - b) a cultural impact assessment relating to effects on Māori cultural values of that particular site has been taken into account.**
- 6. Where necessary, constraints may be placed on public access to protect cave values:**
  - a) Public access to Honeycomb Hill, Metro, Babylon, Te Ana Titi and Hollywood caves should be managed in accordance with Table 4.**
  - b) Caves with high significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu or with high scientific value (e.g. those containing fossils) should only be available for Māori cultural purposes or non-commercial research and may be closed to the general public.**
  - c) When new caves are discovered within public conservation lands, the Department will evaluate their natural and cultural values, assess their suitability for public access and impose restrictions on access where necessary.**



TABLE 4. MANAGEMENT OF PUBLIC ACCESS IN CAVES

CAVE NAME	MANAGEMENT OF PUBLIC ACCESS
Honeycomb Hill Cave and other caves in the Specially Protected Area	Entry by permit or concessionaire guided trip, in accordance with the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan. Gates are in place to protect important natural and cultural values.
Metro Cave	Entry by permit or concessionaire guided trip. Gates are in place to protect important natural and cultural values.
Babylon Cave	Front section of the cave up to Ishtar Gate is open to the public. Entry by permit or concessionaire- guided trip beyond Ishtar Gate. Entry by permit to Passage of Toth for approved scientific research only. Gates in place to protect important natural and cultural values.
Te Ana Titi Cave	Entry by permit, for approved scientific research or Māori cultural purposes only. Gates in place to protect important natural and cultural values.
Hollywood Cave	Entry by permit only. Gates in place to protect important natural and cultural values.

7. **The Department should liaise with the New Zealand Speleological Society (NZSS), Australasian Cave and Karst Management Association (ACKMA) and associated groups concerning cave and karst management issues to ensure that cave users are made aware of the need to protect conservation values. People, including guided groups, recreating at any cave or karst sites should adhere to relevant behavioural guidelines e.g. NZSS's ethical guidelines and/or rock climbing best practice standards.**
8. **The co-operation of cavers and rock climbers will be sought to restrict the use of artificial aids in cave and karst areas and ultimately to seek the removal of as many unnecessary devices as possible. Permanent anchors, including bolts, should only be used in caves where no other reasonable alternative exists and should be of long-lasting, inert types placed in the safest, least impacting positions.**
9. **Areas that are frequently used for caving may be regularly monitored and any effects of recreational use on sites assessed. Concessionaires will also be required to monitor the effects of their operation on conservation values. Caves may be closed if effects are unacceptable.**

*See also* Section 3.3.1.4 Freshwater biodiversity values  
 Section 3.3.1.5 Threats to freshwater biodiversity values  
 Section 3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems  
 Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
 Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
 Section 3.8.4 Public access  
 Chapter 4.2 'Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020' (all Places)  
 Chapter 4.2 'Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020' (all Places)  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)

### **3.6.4.9 Non-powered vehicles (mountain biking)**

Mountain biking is an increasingly popular recreational activity on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands. Many roads and tracks are available for use by non-powered vehicles (including, but not limited to, all non-motorised cycles and mountain bikes), as outlined below.

## POLICIES

1. **The use of non-powered vehicles will be allowed on all roads and tracks listed in Table 5 below. Permission may be required from land owners to access roads/tracks that cross private land/land managed by other agencies.**

TABLE 5. ROADS AND TRACKS AVAILABLE FOR NON-POWERED VEHICLE USE

TRACKS LOCATED WITHIN PUBLIC CONSERVATION LANDS	ROADS/TRACKS WHICH CROSS BOTH PUBLIC CONSERVATION LAND AND EITHER PRIVATE LAND OR LAND MANAGED BY OTHER AGENCIES
K-Road Mountain Biking Track, Ōpārara	Denniston shortcut road/track
Charming Creek Walkway	Sewell peak TV transmitter and four wheel drive road
Britannia Track	Waitahu Valley Road, four wheel drive track to Montgomery Hut
Mokihinui River Track to Forks Hut	Palmers Road, Snowy River Road
Tracks in the Denniston area	Haupiri forestry roads
Tiporahi Track, Four Mile	Powerline Road, Kaniere
Kirwans Track - round loop	Lake Mahināpua Walkway
Big River - Waiuta Track	Mt Greenland
Murray Creek - Waitahu River Track	Taipo Valley Road to 7 Mile Creek
Moonlight Track	Goldsborough forestry roads
Croesus Track (Smoke Ho car park to Ces Clarke Hut only). Seasonal restriction: no cycling allowed between 25 December and 25 January inclusive and the Easter period.	Arahura to Milltown
Lake Kaniere Walkway	Milltown to Wainihinihi, Kerrs Creek
Kaniere Water Race Walkway	Totara Valley Road to old Mikonui Valley Homestead
Glacier access walking/cycling tracks	Former forestry roads northwest of Lake Ianthe
Haast-Paringa Cattle Track	Cook River Weheka Flats four wheel drive track
	Haast Kwitchatown
	Cascade River to Barn Bay
	Roads identified in Appendix 8
	Roads maintained to two-wheel drive standard

2. **The list of tracks where non-powered vehicle use is allowed (see Policy 1 above) may be updated during the term of the CMS, in accordance with the following criteria:**
  - a) **consistency with the purpose for which the land is held;**
  - b) **consistency with the desired outcome for the Place where the track is located (see Chapter 4.2); and**
  - c) **potential adverse effects of non-powered vehicle use on natural, historical or cultural heritage values and other recreational users of the track can be avoided or otherwise minimised.**
3. **The Department should work with cycling clubs, adjoining landowners and other interested people and organisations to further identify, grade and map roads and tracks on public conservation land in the Conservancy where non-powered vehicle use is appropriate.**
4. **Opportunities for non-powered vehicle use within the Conservancy's public conservation lands should be widely promoted (e.g. via the Department's website; through liaison with tourism information providers and cycling advocates).**

**5. People using non-powered vehicles should be encouraged to remain on the formed track or road at all times, and cyclists encouraged to adhere to the 'Mountain bikers care code' (see [www.doc.govt.nz](http://www.doc.govt.nz)).**

*See also* Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Section 3.2.3.7 Tourism associates  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.5(a)-(c)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 8.6(a), (b), (g)-(k)

**3.6.4.10 *Non-powered water craft use on rivers, lakes and lagoons***

Rivers on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* provide for a wide range of rafting and kayaking opportunities. Canoeing and sailing activities are popular on some lakes and lagoons. Concessions are required to undertake guided trips using non-powered water craft and for aircraft landings to drop off people and gear on public conservation land.

**POLICIES**

**1. Group sizes for concessionaire-guided rafting/kayaking activities (including clients, guides and the required safety kayaker/s) should not exceed:**

- i.) 15 people per group for overnight trips (with the exception of overnight trips on the Landsborough River from Kea Flat and downstream, where group size should not exceed 20 people); or**
- ii) 20 people per group for day trips.**

**Where air access is required for these activities, a maximum of five aircraft landings per trip may be authorised to drop off people and gear. For rafting, a maximum of three rafts per trip may be authorised.**

**2. If demand for guided rafting/kayaking trips increases, a booking system may be implemented to manage levels of use on a river.**

**3. Commercial use of rivers should not exceed one trip per river per day.**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Sections 3.6.1.2 - 3.6.1.6 (Recreational zones)  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.5(a)-(c)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 8.6(a), (b) and (m)

**3.6.4.11 *Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes***

Outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes have historically been provided by high schools, polytechnics, mountain safety organisations and tramping and mountaineering clubs. Professional instructors and other organisations also offer these programmes. Undertaking such programmes on public conservation lands for commercial gain requires authorisation, in the form of a concession.

These programmes may involve party sizes that, on occasion, may exceed those recommended in the recreational zone framework (see Sections 3.6.1.3 to 3.6.1.6). Given the beneficial nature of these programmes in providing professional instruction on safe travel in the outdoors and environmental education, it is appropriate to consider larger groups sizes, providing they do not dominate the setting or recreational facilities and where the effects on conservation values and other users will be minimal.

## POLICIES

- 1. When assessing concession applications for outdoor education, leadership and instruction programmes, consideration should be given to (but not limited to):**
  - a) the potential for the programme to increase participants' knowledge, understanding and appreciation of the values of public conservation land;**
  - b) the objectives and policies for the relevant recreational zone/s (see Section 3.6.1.3–3.6.1.6);**
  - c) the desired outcomes for the relevant Place (see Part 4);**
  - d) the impact of the proposed party size on other recreational users;**
  - e) the experience and qualifications of guides; and**
  - f) the provision of an audited safety plan.**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.1.2–3.6.1.6 (Recreational zones)  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)

### **3.6.4.12 Powered water craft**

This section relates to all motorised modes of transport used on or in water, including ships, boats, hovercraft, jet skis or vessels of any other description that are powered by a propulsion system.

Many lake, lagoon and river beds on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are managed by the Department. Public conservation lands surround many other waterbodies. Surface water activities are managed by district councils. Effects powered water craft may have on conservation values include disturbance of wildlife, disruption of natural quiet, transfer of weeds, pests and unwanted organisms such as *Didymo* into waterbodies via water craft, water pollution, impacts on scenic values of natural landscapes (often associated with permanent moorings), and conflict with other recreational users.

Maritime New Zealand is responsible for administering legislation relating to navigation of water craft. Part 91 of the Maritime Rules is relevant to the speed and safety of water craft on lakes and rivers. Water craft should not exceed 5 knots within 50 m of another vessel, raft or person in the water or within 200m of the shore or any structure. Speed upliftings apply to a number of rivers which can be found listed in the Jet Boating New Zealand Safety Yearbook. Speed restrictions are an important consideration for many of the smaller lakes on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

Use of powered water craft would be permitted in some places but not others, to support the principle of a range of recreational opportunities.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department may seek provisions to prohibit powered water craft, or control their speed and/or noise on lakes and rivers where such restrictions would minimise significant adverse effects on indigenous species, the natural character of the place and/or public enjoyment of the place.**
- 2. Use of powered water craft should be consistent with the desired outcomes for Places (see Part 4).**

*See also* Section 3.3.1.5 Threats to freshwater biodiversity values  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.8.3 Statutory advocacy  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.5(a)-(c)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 8.6(a), (b), (d) and (e)

### **3.6.4.13 *Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)***

The Department's role is to preserve as far as is practicable all indigenous freshwater fisheries and to protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats. The waters of public conservation lands are recognised as a valuable recreational asset for anglers and fishing is encouraged by the Department.

Recreational fishing for sports fish is managed by the West Coast Fish and Game Council. Every recreational fisher or angler who intends to fish for sports fish must hold a valid licence issued by a Fish and Game Council. Every fishing guide wishing to access public conservation lands and waters must hold a guiding concession under the Conservation Act 1987 (see Section 3.6.4.6).

Recreational take of eels and koura from national parks or reserves requires authorisation from the Minister of Conservation (or administering body/commissioner in the case of some reserves). The whitebait fishery is managed by the Department and is controlled under the Whitebait Fishing (West Coast) Regulations 1994. Whitebaiting is prohibited within closed areas. Customary fishing for indigenous freshwater fish species is covered in Section 3.1.2.4.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department will work with the West Coast Fish and Game Council in its management of sports fish goals and seek solutions to points of difference.**
- 2. Licensed anglers will be allowed access to appropriate public conservation lands and waters.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga tāonga tuku iho - Customary use  
Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
Section 3.3.3.6 Biosecurity and pest management  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)

Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
 Section 3.6.4.12 Powered water craft  
 Section 3.7.3 Commercial eeling  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.1(f)-(i), 9.4(a)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 4.4(f), 8.4(a)

### 3.6.4.14 *Recreational gold fossicking*

Eight areas on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are designated as recreational gold fossicking areas under section 98 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 (Table 6). The purpose of these areas is to allow the public to enjoy recreational gold fossicking activities without each individual needing to apply for a mining permit. Recreational gold fossicking is defined as 'a non-commercial, casual activity using non-mechanical methods by people spending only a short period of time in the area'. All designated gold fossicking areas are located within historic gold mining areas. Some of these areas are equipped with picnic, barbecue and camping facilities and have good public access. All areas are suitable for gold panning and sluice boxing.

TABLE 6. DESIGNATED RECREATIONAL GOLD FOSSICKING AREAS IN THE WEST COAST *TAI POUTINI* CONSERVANCY AS AT 2010

GOLD FOSSICKING AREA	SIZE (HA)	LOCATION	FACILITIES
Stony and Britannia Streams	6.4	17 km northeast of Westport	Picnic, camping
Lyell Creek	2.2	35 km west of Murchison	Picnic, camping
Slab Hut Creek	2.0	7 km southwest of Reefton	Picnic, camping, fireplaces, walking tracks
Moonlight Creek	14.0	27 km northeast of Greymouth	Camping
Nelson Creek	5.25	26 km northeast of Greymouth	Picnic, camping
Shamrock Creek	8.0	14 km northeast of Hokitika	Picnic, camping, shelter, fireplaces
Jones Creek	3.47	Near Ross	Picnic, camping, walkway, visitor centre
Waiho River	17.5	Near Franz Josef <i>Waiau</i>	No facilities

## POLICIES

- 1. Recreational gold fossicking may only take place within areas that are designated as recreational gold fossicking areas (see Table 6 above).**
- 2. Mining methods in recreational gold fossicking areas will be restricted to hand-held non-motorised operations (i.e. searching for and collecting materials from the surface or digging by hand).**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
 Section 3.7.5 Crown minerals  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)

### 3.6.4.15 *Recreational hunting of game birds*

Game bird species are defined in Schedule 1 of the Wildlife Act 1953. Some of these game birds are native to New Zealand (such as the paradise shelduck and pukeko), while others are introduced species.

Fish and Game New Zealand has statutory responsibility for the sport of game bird hunting. A hunting permit from the Department and valid licence issued by a Fish and Game Council are both required in order to hunt game birds in public conservation

lands. Hunting guides wishing to operate in public conservation lands must hold a guiding concession under the Conservation Act 1987 (see Section 3.6.4.6).

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department will work with the West Coast Fish and Game Council to avoid or otherwise minimise any effects of game birds on absolutely protected species and populations of indigenous species.**
- 2. The Department should issue hunting permits to licenced game bird hunters to hunt on public conservation lands and waters where compatible with land status and protection of conservation values. Hunting dogs may only be used if they are properly trained, under the control of their handler and authorised by a hunting permit (however, dogs are not permitted within national parks).**
- 3. Game bird hunting for native birds should not be authorised in national parks located in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.3 Animals  
Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 9.4(b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 8.4(b)

### **3.6.4.16 *Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests***

Recreational hunting for wild animals<sup>31</sup> within public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is a popular activity that is encouraged by the Department (see Policy 4.2(f), Conservation General Policy 2005 and Policy 4.3(j), General Policy for National Parks 2005). In some places it is the principal form of backcountry recreation. This is a consequence of both the extensive opportunities available to hunters and the variety of wild animals present in the Conservancy. Red deer are present throughout most of the Conservancy. There are also opportunities to take thar, chamois, goats and pigs in some areas. Bull thar are prized by hunters for their trophy value. Dogs are often used for pig hunting and indicator dogs are sometimes used for deer hunting.

Recreational hunting of wild animals is controlled by the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and all hunters on public conservation land must possess a written hunting permit issued by the Department. Hunting guides wishing to operate in public conservation lands require a guiding concession (see Section 3.6.4.6). Wild animal recovery operators also require a concession (see Section 3.7.12).

## POLICIES

- 1. Recreational hunting of wild animals in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy should be encouraged and hunting opportunities widely promoted.**

---

<sup>31</sup> For the purposes of this CMS, wild animals are those introduced species listed as such in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977.

2. **Liaison with hunting organisations and individuals should take place on a regular basis (e.g. to direct hunting efforts to areas where control of wild animals is most needed).**
3. **All people who use public conservation lands to hunt wild animals should obtain the appropriate hunting permit from the Department. Hunting dogs may only be used if they are properly trained, under the control of their handler and authorised by a hunting permit.**
4. **Recreational hunting may be restricted in specific areas where high seasonal use by other recreational users creates safety concerns or user conflict, or in order to protect particular conservation values.**

*See also* Section 3.3.3.6 Biosecurity and pest management  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
 Section 3.6.4.3 Animals  
 Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
 Section 3.7.12 Commercial recovery of wild animals  
 Section 3.7.13 Heli-hunting  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
 Chapter 4.2 'Indigenous biodiversity in 2020 (all Places)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(f)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 4.3(j)

#### **3.6.4.17 Vehicle use**

The use of vehicles, particularly four wheel drive vehicles (including quad bikes, trail bikes and other all terrain vehicles), to access and enjoy public conservation land on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is a popular form of recreation. This activity is part of the range of recreation opportunities provided for on public conservation lands, consistent with protection of the values for which those lands are held and the management guidance outlined in this section.

Vehicle use on public conservation land is generally associated with roads (see Glossary for definition). The types of roads that may be used by motorised vehicles are:

- roads within public conservation lands (other than legal roads) managed for the purpose of providing public access to recreational facilities and other sites. These roads are generally maintained to two wheel drive standard and are open to all vehicles;
- roads within public conservation land which were formed for purposes other than conservation management (e.g. old forestry roads), are no longer required for these purposes and are not actively maintained. These may be available for four wheel drive vehicle use;
- roads within public conservation land which may be available to authorised parties under certain circumstances (e.g. enabling Westland District Council to maintain public water supplies in Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park). Restrictions for such roads may be made by way of by-laws, regulations, or by allocation of keys to gates; and
- highways and other formed legal roads passing alongside or through public conservation lands, which are administered by other agencies (e.g. district councils and the NZ Transport Agency, see Section 3.6.4.7).



Use of motorised vehicles may affect the conservation values of public conservation lands and/or detract from the natural quiet associated with these areas and the way that people enjoy them. Some motorised vehicle activities may require concessions (e.g. use of car parks and associated facilities by coach tours; guided tours involving use of four wheel drive vehicles).

## **POLICIES**

- 1. Vehicle use will be allowed on formed roads within public conservation land that are maintained to two-wheel drive standard.**
- 2. Use of four wheel drive vehicles may be allowed on the formed roads identified in Appendix 8. Permission may be required from land owners to access roads that cross private land/land managed by other agencies.**
- 3. The maps of formed roads where use of four wheel drive vehicles may be allowed (see Appendix 8) may be updated during the term of the CMS, in accordance with the following criteria:**
  - a) consistency with the purpose for which the land is held;**
  - b) consistency with the desired outcome for the Place where the road is located (see Chapter 4.2); and**
  - c) potential adverse effects on natural, historical or cultural heritage values or other recreational users can be avoided or otherwise minimised.**
- 4. The Department should work with four wheel drive clubs and other interested parties to identify, grade, map and promote roads on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands where recreational driving of four wheel drive vehicles, in addition to those identified in Appendix 8, is appropriate (see Policy 3).**
- 5. People using four wheel drive vehicles should be encouraged to follow the 'Tread Lightly' driving code (see [www.treadlightly.org](http://www.treadlightly.org)) and the Department's 'Four wheel drive care code' (see [www.doc.govt.nz](http://www.doc.govt.nz)).**
- 6. Group sizes for concessions involving use of four wheel drive vehicles on formed roads should be determined on a case-by-case basis, having regard to the effects of the proposed activity on conservation values and the other considerations set out in Part 3B of the Conservation Act.**
- 7. The Department may control or exclude motorised vehicles from some roads where:**
  - a) access by vehicles may adversely affect conservation values or other recreational users;**
  - b) vehicle access is contrary to the management objectives for the place;**  
**or**
  - c) there is a risk to public safety.**

**These roads may be available to authorised parties under certain circumstances (e.g. to allow local authorities to carry out their functions).**

8. **The Department should consult with four wheel drive clubs and other interested parties prior to controlling or excluding four wheel drive vehicles from formed roads.**
9. **Roads on public conservation land that are no longer required for access to recreational facilities or for other conservation management purposes will not be maintained by the Department.**
10. **The Department may work with groups and other organisations to undertake road maintenance so that formed roads remain available for recreational use. This may include the granting of concessions or development of memorandum of understanding or similar agreements for road maintenance.**
11. **In some circumstances, authorisation may be granted for the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands where roads have not previously been formed (e.g. research, search and rescue, emergency works). In the case of national parks, this may only occur if specifically provided for in the national park management plan. Assessment will be undertaken on a case-by-case basis and conditions on use may be imposed.**

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Sections 3.6.1.2 - 3.6.1.6 (Recreational zones)  
 Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
 Section 3.6.4.7 Highways, roads and rail corridors  
 Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 9.5(a)-(c)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 8.6(a), (b) and (f)

#### **3.6.4.18 *Wildlife and marine mammal encounters***

There is an increasing demand for opportunities to view and/or interact with indigenous wildlife (e.g. penguins, kiwi) and marine mammals (e.g. seals, dolphins). Human interaction with wildlife and marine mammals can provide an enriching experience, but if not managed properly it can also have adverse effects, including disturbing or even displacing the animals concerned, or altering their behaviour patterns.

A concession is required to operate guided wildlife viewing tours (see Section 3.6.4.6) or to construct a wildlife viewing facility on public conservation land (see Section 3.7.1).

### **POLICIES**

1. **Opportunities provided by the Department or commercial operators for human observation of, and interaction with, wildlife and marine mammals should not impact adversely on animals or their habitat or cause changes to their behaviour or distribution.**
2. **Where necessary, access to locations identified as being of high significance for uncommon or threatened species should be managed, which may include restrictions (e.g. by removing signage, discontinuing viewing facilities, increasing the level of legal protection, or restricting the number of people and/or visits or visitor-wildlife interactions).**

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Section 3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species  
Section 3.3.3.5 Threatened species management  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.1 Overview (Objective 1)  
Section 3.6.4.6 Guiding  
Chapter 4.2 'Recreation and tourism in 2020' (all Places)

## 3.7 OTHER USE OF PUBLIC CONSERVATION LANDS

People use public conservation lands for a wide variety of purposes not associated with the conservation of natural or historical heritage, including commercial use (concession activities); collection of driftwood, stones/gravel etc; infrastructure for utilities; prospecting, exploration and mining; and customary use of indigenous materials.

Chapter 3.7 describes specific management strategies for the main types of private or commercial use (other than recreation or tourism use) that currently occur within the Conservancy. It sets out additional policies that apply to applications for, and management of, authorisations to carry out these types of activities within public conservation lands. The objectives and policies in Chapter 3.5 apply to any activity requiring a concession, access arrangement or other form of authorisation and should be read in conjunction with this chapter. Furthermore, some other uses also involve activities, facilities or services that are covered in Chapter 3.6 (e.g. they may involve the use of aircraft, water craft or vehicles in public conservation lands); in which case the relevant provisions listed in Chapter 3.6 also apply.

### 3.7.1 Accommodation and Related Facilities

A range of public and private accommodation and related facilities are located within public conservation lands on the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. The Department provides and maintains many backcountry huts and other facilities for the benefit and enjoyment of the public. Other people and organisations, including educational institutions, clubs and concessionaires, also provide public facilities (e.g. Lake Kaniere Lodge, Pioneer Hut, Centennial Hut and the Ross Information Centre).

Public conservation lands are for the benefit of the people of New Zealand. It is not generally appropriate for individuals to have and maintain private accommodation and related facilities for exclusive private use. However, it is recognised that there are historical and cultural values associated with some private accommodation facilities located on public conservation lands.

Historically, whitebaiters, fishers, hunters and others have erected private accommodation and related facilities such as baches, huts, temporary shelters and maimais near rivers, estuaries and the coast. This has usually occurred in areas dominated by extensive tracts of public conservation lands, where no alternative opportunities exist to build on private land. Most of these facilities epitomise the 'traditional kiwi bach' once commonplace throughout New Zealand, have a long history of occupation and many have been passed down through several generations of the same family. Some of these facilities are permanent residences, while others are used seasonally - often during the whitebaiting season. Private accommodation

facilities in some instances (e.g. Waiuta) contribute to the integrity of a recognised historic area.

A concession or other authorisation is required for all accommodation and related facilities located within public conservation lands.

## **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To recognise the history and culture associated with existing private accommodation facilities located on public conservation lands in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, whilst ensuring any adverse effects are adequately avoided, remedied or mitigated.**
- 2. To recognise that it is not generally appropriate for private accommodation and related facilities to be maintained on public conservation lands and waters, which are for the benefit of the New Zealand public. Accordingly, the intention is to reduce inappropriate exclusive private use of accommodation facilities over time, and to encourage private owners to allow public use of these facilities.**

## **POLICIES**

- 1. Concessions may be granted for the occupation of private accommodation and related facilities on public conservation lands provided that the facility has been previously authorised, the style and character of buildings remain largely unmodified, all buildings remain within their current footprint and comply with all relevant local authority requirements, and any adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.**
- 2. No new private accommodation facilities should be authorised.**
- 3. When granting concessions for previously authorised private accommodation or related facilities, or consenting to a transfer/assignment to another party, the conditions should:**
  - a) make provision, where appropriate, for public use of the facility; and**
  - b) provide for a first right of refusal to any subsequent purchase or assignment of the facility to be offered to the Department to manage. Any such purchase/assignment would be at the buildings asset value only, not determined on the basis of location.**
- 4. Private accommodation which is substantially damaged or destroyed is unlikely to be allowed to be replaced, unless it can be demonstrated that there is significant public good in doing so.**
- 5. Temporary whitebait shelters and maimais may be allowed on public conservation lands provided:**
  - a) they do not exceed 6 m<sup>2</sup> in building footprint and do not exceed 2 m in height;**
  - b) they are not used for overnight accommodation;**
  - c) they do not interfere with the wider public enjoyment of the area;**

- d) **indigenous vegetation is not destroyed in the process of erecting the shelter/maimai; and**
- e) **temporary whitebait shelters may be constructed 14 days prior to the commencement of the whitebait season while maimais may be constructed one month prior to the game bird hunting season, these structures may remain for the duration of the season, then all evidence of these structures should be removed no later than 14 days after the conclusion of the season.**

*See also* Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.13 Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)  
 Section 3.6.4.15 Recreational hunting of game birds  
 Section 3.8.2.1 Land transfer, exchange and disposal  
 Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 10(a)-(j)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 8.1(h), 9(a)-(i)

### **3.7.2 Activities on or in Beds of Rivers or Lakes**

This section provides guidance for all types of activities that occur on or in beds of rivers or lakes that are managed as public conservation land. Examples of these activities include gravel extraction and the construction of structures, such as hydro-dams, weirs, jetties and mooring buoys. The potential for adverse effects to occur as a consequence of such activities needs to be managed in order to protect the natural character, ecology and recreational values of rivers and lakes. Sand, shingle/gravel, stones, rocks or other natural materials found in beds of rivers or lakes provide a supply of a valuable resource utilised in a multiplicity of ways by the community. The effects of extraction activities in beds of rivers or lakes on conservation values are wide-ranging and very much dependent on the mining method and the environment being mined (Kelly *et al* 2005). For example, over-extraction of river gravels can lower the riverbed, change the channel profile, and alter riverbed sediment composition. The resulting changes in river sediments and channel hydraulics could have significant effects on communities of benthic invertebrates, small creatures living within the gravel, and fish. Farther downstream, reduced gravel supplies to the coast can upset the stability of river mouth lagoons and can accelerate coastal erosion. Native and introduced freshwater fish, invertebrate production, aquatic plant and algal growth, and terrestrial flora and fauna (such as birds, reptiles and insects) living on adjacent lake shores or dry riverbed may be affected by activities such as gravel extraction. Other ecological effects can also relate to dispersal of unwanted organisms or to locally endemic species, and biosecurity issues arising from transfer of machinery and gravel between catchments.

Disturbance of a river or lake bed, including for the removal of sand, shingle/gravel, stones, rocks or other natural materials, is covered by section 13 of the Resource Management Act 1991 and may require a resource consent from the relevant local authority unless permitted under the relevant Resource Management Act plan. Where the river or lake bed is managed as public conservation land, authorisation in the form of a concession or access arrangement under the relevant Act is also required. A concession is required if the material is to be used for the purposes of reasonable domestic, road making or building purposes (see Section 8(2) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991). In most other situations where an applicant seeks to take minerals from,

or undertake quarrying within, public conservation land or the foreshore, they must first obtain an access arrangement from the Department (see Section 3.7.5).

## POLICIES

1. **When assessing applications for any activity on or in the bed of a river or lake, consideration should be given to (but not limited to) the following guidelines:**
  - a) **Adverse effects on freshwater and terrestrial species, habitats and ecosystems, historical and cultural heritage values, public access, recreation opportunities and amenity values should be avoided or otherwise minimised;**
  - b) **Riparian vegetation should be maintained or enhanced;**
  - c) **Activities should not damage riverbanks;**
  - d) **No pests, weeds or other unwanted organisms (e.g. *Didymo*) should be likely to be introduced to, or become established within, the area as a result of the activity; and**
  - e) **The natural character within the setting of the activity should be maintained.**
2. **Biological communities, physical habitat, channel profiles and substrate may be monitored, in order to evaluate and manage the long-term impacts of activities occurring on or in the beds of rivers or lakes.**

*See also* Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management  
Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.1 Recreational opportunities  
Section 3.6.4 Recreation and tourism activities  
Section 3.7.5 Crown minerals  
Section 3.7.11 Utilities  
Chapter 4.1 Desired Outcome for the Conservancy  
Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 11.1(a)-(e), 11.3(a)-(e), 11.4(c)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f), 10.3(a)-(i), 10.8(e)

### 3.7.3 Commercial Eeling

The Department has a responsibility to protect and preserve eels *tuna* within public conservation lands and waters as far as practicable. As eels are the top predator in freshwater ecosystems and as they make up a large part of the biomass of freshwater aquatic life, they have important roles to play in ecosystem functioning. Long-finned eels are a threatened species in 'gradual decline' (Hitchmough *et al* 2005). Commercial eel harvesting, along with loss of habitat and hydro development, are activities considered to have potential adverse effects on eels.

The Ministry of Fisheries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996 and the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001. Permits issued by the Ministry of Fisheries do not give commercial eel fishers a legal right of access to any land, including public conservation land. Commercial eel fishers require a concession to access public conservation lands and/or take eels from waters whose

beds are public conservation land. In addition, the commercial take of indigenous fauna such as eels from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is subject to the restrictions contained in section 50(1) of that Act. Section 50 applies where the donor, vendor or lessor reserves the right to take or kill eels for commercial purposes from that reserve. The s.50 provision does not apply to any reserves on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, hence commercial take of eel can not be authorised within reserves located on the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. Consideration of commercial fishing within national parks is subject to conditions within Policy 4.4(g) of the General Policy for National Parks (2005); for Kahurangi, Paparoa, Arthur's Pass, Westland and Mt Aspiring national parks these conditions require that commercial eeling is not permitted.

Within areas administered under the Conservation Act 1987, there are other legislative requirements that can limit the ability to lawfully grant concessions for commercial eel fishing. For example, activities within wilderness areas must be "desirable or necessary for the preservation of the areas indigenous natural resources". An ecological area must "be managed as to protect the [ecological] value for which it is held". Areas held under the Conservation Act in general are required to be managed so that their natural resources are protected, and eels are part of those natural resources where they are present.

#### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To preserve the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* eel fishery and the range, abundance and distribution of indigenous eel species and to protect their habitats from adverse effects of commercial eel fishing, where practicable.**

#### POLICIES

- 1. The Department will work cooperatively with the Ministry of Fisheries, Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu, local authorities and communities of interest to preserve the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* eel fishery and to protect the habitats of indigenous eel species.**
- 2. Concessions for commercial eel fishing on public conservation lands and waters will be processed by the Department in accordance with relevant legislation and general policy.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga tāonga tuku iho - Customary use  
 Section 3.3.1.5 Threats to freshwater biodiversity values  
 Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.13 Recreational fishing (including eeling and whitebaiting)  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.1(f)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 4.4(g)

### 3.7.4 Commercial Filming and Photography

Spectacular scenery and distinctive natural features have made public conservation lands popular locations for commercial filming and photography. Commercial filming and photography activities can play a valuable role in enhancing public appreciation of conservation values. They are appropriate where they do not have adverse effects

on natural, historical and cultural values, on the enjoyment of the public or on sites of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu.

## POLICIES

- 1. When assessing concession applications for commercial filming and photography within public conservation lands, consideration should be given to (but not limited to):**
  - a) opportunities for other users to access the area; and**
  - b) whether the end product gives the impression that inappropriate activities are allowable on public conservation lands or waters; and**
  - c) status of the land; and**
  - d) effects on natural, historical and cultural heritage values.**
- 2. If the filming or photography activity relates to interpretation of Poutini Ngāi Tahu values then the Department will consult with the relevant Papatipu Rūnanga to determine the extent of the cultural impact.**

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.8.4 Public access  
Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Appendix 1, Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 11.1(a)-(e), 11.5(a)-(b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f), 10.7(a)

### 3.7.5 Crown Minerals

The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has a long history of mining activities and substantial mineral deposits, a large proportion of which are located within public conservation lands. Gold, silver, coal, limestone, pounamu, tungsten, ilmenite, uranium, garnet, gemstones, quarry rock and other minerals can be found within the Conservancy's public conservation lands. Mining of pounamu is addressed within Section 3.1.4 Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997.

The Crown Minerals Act 1991 requires minerals permit holders to apply for and obtain an access arrangement from the Minister of Conservation prior to commencing any prospecting, exploration or mining activities on public conservation land. This also applies to situations where a minerals permit area covers land between mean high water springs and the 12 nautical mile limit (e.g. black sand mining on beaches and seabed mining). However, the Crown Minerals Act 1991 prevents access arrangements for Crown owned minerals from being entered into over some specific areas, except in defined circumstances. These areas are listed in Schedule 4 of the Act, and include most national parks, nature reserves, scientific reserves, gazetted wilderness areas, sanctuary areas, wildlife sanctuaries, marine reserves and Ramsar sites.

Mining sometimes involves large scale earthworks, which can have significant and long term effects on both the terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems. Underground mining, while generally not as intrusive as open-pit mining, may cause additional adverse effects such as subsidence and acid mine drainage if not managed appropriately. Many natural heritage and recreation values can eventually be



rehabilitated once mining has ended. It may however take years, decades or even centuries for rehabilitation to be successful (i.e. for a similar habitat to be returned to an area). Other conservation values may be irreversibly destroyed, damaged or degraded by mining. Historical and cultural heritage and localised endemic species are particularly vulnerable, as the effects are irreversible once values are destroyed. In considering whether to agree to an access arrangement in respect of public conservation land, the Minister of Conservation shall have regard to the safeguards against any potential adverse effects of carrying out the proposed programme of work on natural, historical and cultural heritage and recreation opportunities (see also s61(2) Crown Minerals Act 1991).

Section 76 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 provides for compensation for the loss of values as a result of the mining activity. Compensation is considered on a case-by-case basis and takes into account the temporary and permanent loss of conservation values in the permit area. This applies to both short- and long-term loss of conservation values, and also to any values that are permanently lost. For instance, it will be appropriate to seek compensation in addition to site rehabilitation in circumstances where it will take time for rehabilitation of a site to successfully occur following mining. In appropriate circumstances, consideration may also be given to the potential for restoration of other public conservation lands, to offset losses occurring in the permit area. In some situations, offers of work in kind or a contribution of services may be more appropriate forms of compensation than monetary payments.

If any part of a mining operation is likely to result in the disturbance, hunting or killing of any absolutely protected wildlife, a Wildlife Act permit will be required.

Resource consents may also be required under the Resource Management Act 1991. This is a separate process, administered by the respective local authorities. The Director General may choose to advocate for protection of conservation values through this process.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Minister will consider each application for an access arrangement on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the criteria set out in the relevant section (i.e. s61 or s61A and s61B) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.**
- 2. When assessing an application for an access arrangement for prospecting, exploration or mining, consideration should be given to (but not be limited to):**
  - a) the significance of the conservation values present and the effect the proposal will have on those values;
  - b) the adequacy and achievability of the proposed site rehabilitation work (see also Policy 3 below); and
  - c) the adequacy or appropriateness of any compensation offered for access to the area (see also Policy 4 below).
- 3. Appropriate site rehabilitation methods should be employed.**
- 4. Compensation should be required when damage to, or destruction of, conservation values can not be avoided, remedied or mitigated and will be determined on a case-by-case basis.**

5. Where ancillary activities such as roads and infrastructure can reasonably be located off public conservation land, this will be expected.
6. The term of any access arrangement should be limited to the period reasonably required to carry out the defined work, including site rehabilitation after mining has been completed.
7. Low-impact access options will be preferred (e.g. the use of existing formed roads, or helicopters in areas without existing roads).
8. Evidence that a valid minerals permit has been obtained from the mineral owner will be required before the Minister of Conservation will make a final decision on an application for an access arrangement or minimum impact activity.
9. The granting of an access arrangement for prospecting or exploration does not place any obligation on the Minister of Conservation to grant a subsequent access arrangement for mining, or to grant further variations to a pre-existing access arrangement.
10. If monitoring reveals that the effects of mining activities on conservation values and recreational opportunities, including the desired outcomes described in Part 4 of this CMS, are greater than expected, or new effects have been discovered, the Department should review the conditions of the access arrangement.
11. Approval of any work plan may be subject to the permit holder obtaining all other necessary authorisations, such as a concession permit for aircraft landings or a Wildlife Act permit.
12. Where the Crown Minerals Act 1991 makes provision for mining within national park land, any application for mining these areas will require consultation with the New Zealand Conservation Authority.

*See also* Section 3.1.4 Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997  
 Section 3.2.3.4 Local authorities  
 Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation  
 Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
 Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
 Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
 Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
 Section 3.7.1 Accommodation and related facilities  
 Section 3.7.2 Activities on or in beds of rivers and lakes  
 Section 3.7.9 Research, collection and Wildlife Act permits  
 Section 3.7.11 Utilities  
 Chapter 4.1 Desired Outcome for the Conservancy  
 Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 11.1(a)-(e), 11.4(a)-(c)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f), 10.8(a)-(e)  
 Crown Minerals Act 1991

### 3.7.6 Grazing and Farming

Any person or organisation who wishes to graze livestock on public conservation land requires a grazing concession, which grants the holder non-exclusive occupation rights in respect of the land and contains conditions relating to the use of the land. As at 2010, grazing concessions had been issued for approximately 20,000 hectares

of public conservation land in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. Grazing and farming in national parks will be confined to land that is already grazed or farmed and it is in the public interest that this continue.

## POLICIES

- 1. Grazing licences may be granted for a term of 15 years, unless the achievement of the outcomes and objectives of this CMS, any relevant management plan or any constraints require a lesser period.**
- 2. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu should be consulted when considering applications to graze areas containing nohoanga entitlement sites. Approval may include specific conditions to protect the site, e.g. fencing (see also Section 3.1.3.4).**
- 3. Concessionaires shall not unreasonably withhold consent to hunters who hold a current hunting permit issued by the Department of Conservation to hunt on the site, or access to hunters who wish to cross the site.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga  
Section 3.1.3.4 Nohoanga  
Section 3.2.3.8 Landowners and neighbours  
Section 3.3.1.3 Threats to terrestrial biodiversity values  
Section 3.3.1.5 Threats to freshwater biodiversity values  
Section 3.4.2 Protection of historical and cultural heritage within public conservation lands  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.16 Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests  
Section 3.8.2.1 Land transfer, exchange and disposal  
Section 3.8.4 Public access  
Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 11.1(a)-(e), 11.2 (a)-(b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f), 10.2(a)-(e)

### 3.7.7 Military Use

The scale and remoteness of some public conservation lands makes them attractive for defence training. Large-scale military exercises have been carried out in Arthur's Pass National Park, Victoria Forest Park and various other conservation areas for many years.

Under the Military Manoeuvres Act 1915, the Governor-General may proclaim land (including lands administered by the Department) to be available for military manoeuvres. Any other intended defence activity, however, requires the approval of the Department.

The Department and the New Zealand Defence Force are parties to a Defence Training Agreement signed in 1990. The agreement provides for military training on state areas, as defined by the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, and includes public conservation lands subject to conditions that protect conservation values and the experiences of recreational users.

In return the New Zealand Defence Force may make available fire-fighting assistance to the Department. Further assistance for various projects including track and bridge construction and maintenance, and transportation of Departmental personnel to remote conservation areas by road, air and sea, can also be provided.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department should liaise with the New Zealand Defence Headquarters to seek protection of conservation values where public conservation land is subject to a proclamation under the Military Manoeuvres Act 1915.**
- 2. The Department should work cooperatively with the New Zealand Defence Force to identify the most appropriate sites for military exercises and to ensure the New Zealand Defence Force manages any adverse effects of military exercises on West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai - environmental protection  
Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation  
Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.1 Recreational opportunities  
Section 3.8.4 Public access  
Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 11.1(a)-(e), 11.6(a)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f), 10.9(a)

### 3.7.8 On-site and Roaming Vendors

In general, services such as those provided by roaming photographers and other vendors (e.g. the sale of food, souvenirs, merchandise etc) are more appropriately provided for outside of public conservation lands.

## POLICIES

- 1. With the exception of sites where visitor centres are located, concessions should not be granted for activities or services provided by roaming or on-site vendors within public conservation lands or waters in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.**
- 2. Activities or services provided by roaming or on-site vendors should be consistent with the desired outcome for the relevant place/s (see Chapter 4.2).**

*See also* Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy

### 3.7.9 Research, Collection and Wildlife Act Permits

Permits are required in order to collect and/or undertake research on plants, animals or geological samples or other natural resources in public conservation lands, including customary use of certain resources (see Section 3.1.2.4). Permits are also required to collect, transfer and release live aquatic life and to capture, hold, take, translocate, keep in captivity, hunt or kill species protected pursuant to the Wildlife Act 1953, regardless of land or water tenure - although the remains of some species may be held for cultural reasons without a permit (see Section 3.1.2.4). Furthermore, a permit is also required to release any wildlife at large. The policies in this section do not apply to the allocation of cultural material to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu (see Section 3.1.2.4); research or collection activities relating to marine mammals (see Section 3.3.3.4); or hunting permits (see Sections 3.6.4.15 to 3.6.4.16).

Individuals and agencies are currently engaged in the development of industries based on research into genetic and biochemical material obtained from species of flora and fauna. Products can range from pharmaceutical drugs to pest control agents and crop varieties. The collection of plants and animals for the purposes of extracting genetic and biochemical material is known as bioprospecting. Such activities within public conservation lands require a concession or permit from the Department.

Bioprospecting has implications for Government policy on access to indigenous genetic resources. The indigenous flora and fauna claim to the Waitangi Tribunal (Wai 262) (1996) has been lodged over this matter. This involves claims by certain iwi for, among other things, control and ownership of indigenous flora and fauna, including intellectual property rights. There is a need to manage commercial use of indigenous flora and fauna (e.g. bioprospecting) carefully to ensure long-term viability of populations. The removal of samples overseas is of concern to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu.

Where activities carried out under one of the Acts listed in Schedule 9 of the Wildlife Act 1953 would result in the hunting, killing, taking or possession of wildlife (other than unprotected wildlife) approval of both the Minister of Conservation and Minister responsible for the particular 9th Schedule Act under which the activity is carried out is required, in accordance with Section 71 of the Wildlife Act 1953.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

- 1. To protect the indigenous flora and fauna on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* in accordance with Section 3 of the Wildlife Act 1953.**
- 2. To ensure that wildlife located on lands and waters of all tenures within the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is absolutely protected, in accordance with Section 3 of the Wildlife Act 1953.**
- 3. To protect and enhance the populations and habitats of wildlife located in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy's wildlife sanctuaries, wildlife refuges and wildlife management reserves.**

#### **POLICIES**

- 1. Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be consulted over proposed applications for taking of, and/or research relating to, culturally significant native species. Permit conditions should include restrictions on commercial use, including development of products, registration of intellectual property rights and transfer of information or material to third parties.**
- 2. Activities requiring authorisation in the form of a research, collection and Wildlife Act permit should not have adverse effects on conservation values or recreational opportunities, or introduce threats (e.g. pose a biosecurity risk or result in weed dispersal).**
- 3. Research in public conservation lands and on any indigenous species, regardless of land or water tenure, should seek to better support conservation management.**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai - environmental protection

Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga tāonga tuku iho - Customary use  
Section 3.3.2 Knowledge, information needs and priority setting tools for natural heritage work  
Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
Section 3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species  
Section 3.3.3.6 Biosecurity and pest management  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.15 Recreational hunting of game birds  
Section 3.6.4.16 Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 12(a)-(i)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 11(a)-(g)

### 3.7.10 Sphagnum Moss Harvesting

A concession is required to harvest sphagnum moss on public conservation land. The commercial harvest of indigenous species is inconsistent with the purposes for which some public conservation lands are held, consequently concessions for sphagnum moss harvesting will not be granted in those areas.

Scientific evidence suggests that moss has a growth rate enabling repeated harvesting every 7 to 10 years, with exceptional areas ready in less than this time. However, moss harvesting operations can have adverse effects on wetland ecology. Harvesting moss can disrupt the natural functioning of freshwater ecosystems, lead to the introduction of invasive weeds, cause tracking and introduction of rubbish, disturb wildlife and adversely affect other species present in sphagnum moss swamps. Harvesting activities can also give rise to increased risk of fire. Over 90% of freshwater wetlands in New Zealand have been lost to human modification; therefore freshwater wetlands are an ecosystem of high national priority for increased protection.

#### POLICIES

- 1. Concessions to harvest sphagnum moss from public conservation lands may only be granted for areas outside of national parks where natural heritage values have already been significantly modified (e.g. heavily cut-over forest, grazed areas, previously harvested areas, old mining sites).**
- 2. Further research about the effects of moss harvesting on sphagnum moss ecology and the functioning of wetland ecosystems that contain sphagnum moss should be encouraged.**

*See also* Section 3.3.1.5 Threats to freshwater biodiversity values  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands

### 3.7.11 Utilities

Utilities can be either commercial or non-commercial and include, but are not limited to, structures and infrastructure for telecommunications, energy generation and transmission, oil and gas production and distribution, sewerage provision, water supply and flood control, roads and airstrips, hydrological and weather stations.

Authorisation is required to site a utility on public conservation land. While utilities are valued for the public goods and services they provide, the provision and maintenance of utilities within public conservation lands may, in some cases, have adverse effects on conservation values. Such effects may include fragmentation of ecosystems; loss of habitat (e.g. permanent inundation of terrestrial ecosystems); degradation of freshwater ecosystems (e.g. barriers to fish passage, changes to

hydrological regimes and sediment loads); invasive weed and animal pest infestation; adverse effects on wāhi tapu and other cultural values; alterations to the natural character of the landscape or seascape; control of public access; and changes to recreational opportunities and the type of public use of the area (e.g. loss of remote experiences and enjoyment).

In addition to the policies below, detailed guidance on the management of utilities is provided in Conservation General Policy 2005 (policies 11.3a-e), and General Policy for National Parks 2005 (policies 10.3a-i). For guidance relating to highways and road and rail corridors managed by other agencies see Section 3.6.4.7.

## POLICIES

- 1. Allowance for the ‘public good’ nature of non-commercial utilities (e.g. flood warning systems and remote weather stations) may be made when considering concession applications and setting rentals.**
- 2. The Department should liaise with agencies responsible for network utility operation in regard to routine maintenance and upgrading proposals wherever they occur in or adjacent to public conservation lands.**
- 3. The development, installation, maintenance and management of utilities on public conservation lands should be consistent with the desired outcome for the relevant place/s (see Chapter 4.2).**

*See also* Section 3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga  
Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management  
Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use  
Section 3.6.1 Recreational opportunities  
Section 3.6.4 Recreation and tourism activities  
Section 3.7.2 Activities on or in beds of rivers or lakes  
Section 3.7.5 Crown minerals  
Chapter 4.1 Desired Outcome for the Conservancy  
Chapter 4.2 Desired Outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 11.1(a)-(e), 11.3(a)-(e)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 10.1(a)-(f), 10.3(a)-(i)

### 3.7.12 Commercial Recovery of Wild Animals

Wild Animal Control Act activity for the commercial recovery of wild animal carcasses and their parts for food processing and the live capture and conveying of these animals is recognised as an effective wild animal control method in areas most suitable for hunting by helicopter. Vast areas of public conservation lands in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy fit into this category, due to the rugged and remote nature of the terrain.

This activity requires a concession under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Conservation Act 1987. Such concessions may contain provisions restricting activity at particular times of the year (e.g. during Easter and other peak holiday periods) and/or in specific areas (e.g. between April and July in several high-use recreational hunting sites). These concession conditions aim to avoid adverse effects (including

cumulative effects) of the activity on natural quiet and remoteness values of public conservation lands and to minimise conflict with recreational hunters.

Any operator can apply at any time for a concession to carry out Wild Animal Control Act activity on West Coast *Tai Poutini* public conservation lands. Concession applications for the commercial recovery of wild animal carcasses and their parts for food processing and the live capture and conveying of these animals are processed at the national level, whereas concessions for other activities are processed by the Conservancy on an as-required basis and may require public notification. Separate concessions are required for the following types of Wild Animal Control Act activity:

- the commercial recovery of deer carcasses and their parts for food processing and the live capture and conveying of deer within public conservation lands;
- the commercial recovery of chamois, tahr, pigs, goats or other wild animal carcasses within public conservation lands; and
- the live capture and conveying of tahr and chamois, where live trophy animals are taken off public conservation lands to stock safari parks or similar.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department will encourage commercial recovery of deer carcasses and their parts for food processing and the live capture and conveying of deer on areas of public conservation land. Authorisation for the majority of this activity should include standard concession conditions that apply throughout New Zealand, in order to ensure national consistency in the management of this activity and efficiency in processing these types of concessions.**
- 2. Wild animals other than deer may be taken from areas of public conservation land for food processing under a concession, which would be non-notified in most cases.**
- 3. Live capture and conveying of trophy tahr and/or chamois animals will require a separate concession application and the intention to grant any concession for this activity will be publically advertised.**
- 4. When assessing concession applications for activities described in Policies 1-3 above, consideration should be given to (but not be limited to) protecting the experiences of recreational users, consistency with the desired outcomes for Places (see Chapter 4.2), and whether other means of wild animal control are more appropriate in particular areas.**
- 5. Unless otherwise stated in the concession document, aircraft authorised to undertake activities described in Policies 1-3 above should not be limited to approved landing sites that apply to recreationists, tourists or other users.**

**See also** Section 3.3.3.6 Biosecurity and Pest Management  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised uses of public conservation lands  
Sections 3.6.1.2 - 3.6.1.6 (Recreational zones)  
Section 3.6.4.2 Aircraft  
Section 3.6.4.16 Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests  
Section 3.7.13 Heli-hunting  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.2(e) and 11.1  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 4.3(i) and 10.1



### 3.7.13 Heli-hunting

Heli-hunting was not identified as an issue when the draft CMS was released for public submission in 2007. The intention of the New Zealand Conservation Authority, in approving the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* CMS, is to put the issue of heli-hunting to one side on the understanding that the Department will initiate a partial review of the CMS to address heli-hunting. In accordance with section 17H of the Conservation Act, this will enable public participation.

## 3.8 OTHER MANAGEMENT RESPONSIBILITIES

The Department has several other management responsibilities in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, including obligations relating to:

- international agreements;
- statutory land management (non-regulatory protection mechanisms, acquisition, transfer, exchange, disposal and classification of land);
- statutory advocacy;
- public access to conservation land;
- national park and conservation management plans;
- compliance and law enforcement; and
- fire prevention and control.

Chapter 3.8 identifies objectives and policies for each of these responsibilities.

### 3.8.1 International Obligations

#### 3.8.1.1 *Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area*

Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area comprises Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park, Aoraki/Mt Cook National Park, Mt Aspiring National Park, Fiordland National Park, and other surrounding conservation lands (see Map 3). With the exception of those lands located north of the Whataroa River, all other public conservation lands within Te Wāhi Pounamu Place have World Heritage Area status (see Map 3).

Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area is one of the world's 400 or so special natural and cultural sites, as recognised by UNESCO. The World Heritage area consists of 2.6 million hectares of protected lands in the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, Canterbury, Otago and Southland.

World heritage areas are designated under the World Heritage Convention because of their outstanding universal value. World heritage status does not affect the underlying protective status for which the land is held under New Zealand law; rather it places an obligation on the host nation to “*take appropriate legal, scientific, technical, administrative and financial measures necessary for the identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of this heritage*” (World Heritage Convention, 1972).

Its value can best be summarised from a quotation out of the nomination document which states:

*“Few areas of the world have such a concentration of natural scenic splendour as the South-West. It contains many of the natural features which contribute to New Zealand’s international reputation for superlative landscapes: its highest mountains, longest glaciers, tallest forests, wildest rivers and gorges, most rugged coastlines and deepest fiords and lakes. It even has an extinct volcano in Solander Island.*

*From the vast wilderness of Fiordland in the south to the spectacular up thrust of the Southern Alps in the North, the South-West landscapes are of world class for the sheer excellence of their scenic beauty. It is an area of magnificent primeval vistas: snow-capped mountains, glaciers, forests, tussock grasslands, lakes, rivers, wetlands and over 1000km of wilderness coastline.*

*Only traces of human influence are evident and then mainly in peripheral areas. Overall the South-West forms one of the great temperate wildernesses of the world and the entire area fulfils the criteria of exceptional and natural beauty”* (page 49-50, Department of Conservation, Nomination of South-West New Zealand (Te Wāhipounamu) for inclusion in the World Heritage List, 1989).

There is an obligation on the Department of Conservation to manage the World Heritage Area in such a way that its integrity is preserved.

Although Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area contains internationally popular tourist destinations like the glaciers of Westland, Aoraki/Mount Cook and Milford Sound *Piopiotahi*, its overwhelming landscape character is wild and unpopulated. The IUCN have recognised it as one of the world’s great areas of wilderness.

Because World Heritage Areas are international tourist icons, the challenge for the Department is to educate visitors about the area’s heritage values and carefully manage visitor growth to avoid unacceptable impacts. The prime obligation is to protect Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area’s biodiversity and ecological and landscape integrity.

Coordination by the Department is essential to achieving the level of visitor management and servicing that will be required. Visitor centres and existing heritage highways will be some of the most important locations for providing high quality visitor information, interpretation, signs and opportunities to experience the diverse recreational and educational attractions of the south west. On-going liaison with regional tourism organisations, NZ Transport Agency, and local authorities, concessionaires and other interested parties will be an important element of the Department’s coordination role.

## OBJECTIVES

- 1. To maintain the biodiversity and ecological and landscape integrity of the Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area.**
- 2. To develop a co-ordinated approach with other relevant conservancies and agencies to the management and servicing of visitors to the Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area.**

1. Consider the addition of areas of high ecological and/or landscape values to Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area, particularly those public conservation lands and waters within Te Wāhi Pounamu Place (see Map 3) which do not currently have World Heritage Area status.
2. Provide information on the state of Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area as required under the Convention:
  - a) Priority sites and themes for interpretation of the area have been identified as:
    - i) Franz Josef Visitor Centre - glaciation / tectonics / fauna / flora / weather.
    - ii) Haast Visitor Centre - Gondwana / cultural / fauna.
  - b) Secondary sites and themes for interpretation of the area have been identified as:
    - i) Franz Josef Glacier Valley (Sentinel Rock Walk, Glacier Valley Access Track) - glaciation / ice age imprints / superlative natural scenery.
    - ii) Fox Glacier Valley (Glacier Valley Access Track) - glaciation / ice age imprints / superlative natural scenery / tectonics.
    - iii) Lake Matheson - Ice Age imprints / plant succession / significant natural beauty.
    - iv) Knights Point - marine / wilderness edge.
  - c) Publish a brochure on the World Heritage Area and include information on it on the Department's website.
3. In managing for ecological values within Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area the international status of this designation will be taken into account.
4. Advocate to protect the values of the Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area. In particular, advocate to ensure integrated management of the marine areas adjoining this world heritage area.

*See also* Section 2.2.1.3 International conservation significance  
 Section 4.2.7 Te Wāhi Pounamu Place  
 Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 14(a)-(g)  
 General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 13(a)

### 3.8.2 Statutory Land Management

The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy comprises approximately one quarter of New Zealand's protected public lands. Around 85% of all land within the Conservancy boundaries has some form of protective status. This proportion is significantly higher than in any other conservancy. Despite this, not all land containing significant conservation values on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is legally protected. Conversely, some public conservation lands may lack values warranting protection and could either be disposed of or exchanged for land with higher natural, historical or cultural heritage values. The existing protective status does not always accurately reflect the conservation values present within a particular unit of public conservation

land. Some areas may warrant higher levels of legal protection, in which case reclassification of land status may be appropriate.

Section 3.8.2 covers further land acquisitions, transfers and exchanges, and potential land disposal or changes to land classification to adjust the level of legal protection.

### **3.8.2.1 *Land transfer, exchange and disposal***

There are four main mechanisms for protecting land with significant natural, historical or cultural heritage values but which is not presently legally protected: purchase or gift; covenant/protected private land agreement; transfer from another government agency; or heritage order/designation. The process varies depending on the mechanism used. Nearly all cases investigated to date have been initiated by private landowners.

The Department can apply for funds for acquisition and protection costs from the Nature Heritage Fund or Nga Whenua Rahui Fund. Depending on the protection level and the mechanism, other agencies may be involved in assisting with proposals including local authorities, the QE II National Trust and non-governmental organisations.

The options and procedures for exchange and disposal of public conservation land depend on the particular Act under which it is held. There generally must be equality of exchange or better, although equality may be met in part by the payment of money.

The reservation of a reserve may be revoked where a reserve no longer has the values for which it was reserved. Revocation is necessary before any disposal can occur. The Conservation Act 1987 requires that a specially protected area (e.g. ecological area) status must first be revoked before a disposal or exchange can be considered. The status cannot be revoked unless the particular values for which the land was originally specially protected are no longer present. The revocation is separate from any subsequent consideration of a possible disposal.

Under the Conservation Act 1987 stewardship land may be disposed of provided it is no longer required for conservation purposes. Stewardship land may be exchanged where the exchange enhances the conservation value of public conservation lands and promotes the purposes of the Conservation Act. Land can only be taken out of a national park by an Act of Parliament.

When exchanging or disposing of land, the Department must act strictly in accordance with the requirements of relevant legislation and general policy. In particular it must meet the requirements for public consultation, including liaison with conservation boards, Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, local authorities and other associates as appropriate, and observe the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi and Treaty settlement obligations. This procedure can take considerable time.

The Crown's settlement with Ngāi Tahu included a Right of First Refusal. This mechanism provides Ngāi Tahu with the first opportunity to purchase, at market valuation, Crown assets when the Crown declares them surplus and intends to dispose of them. The Right of First Refusal process provides that both parties negotiate in good faith to agree the price, terms and conditions for a sale of the asset to Ngāi Tahu. Hence, Ngāi Tahu cannot be forced to accept any unreasonable price, terms or conditions. Nor can the asset be sold to others on more favourable price, terms, or conditions, without Ngāi Tahu first being offered the asset on the same basis.

1. In some cases, if an area of public conservation land has existing access, and can be fenced off, and compliance with policies 6(c) and 6(d) of the Conservation General Policy 2005 can be demonstrated, then disposal of the land may be considered. If the area contains, or is adjacent to, any freshwater habitat, appropriately-sized riparian setbacks should be retained as public conservation land and fenced off by the purchaser before disposal occurs.
2. The Department should:
  - a) process applications for the protection of additional lands containing significant natural, historical or cultural heritage;
  - b) respond to applications for land exchange or disposal; and
  - c) initiate land exchange where presently unprotected lands are identified as a priority for protection in the desired outcomes, objectives or policies of this CMS and the landowner indicates that an exchange may be possible.
3. The Department should consult and co-operate with other organisations (e.g. local authorities, QE II National Trust, non-governmental organisations) to determine the most suitable means for protection of land that has significant conservation values but which is not presently legally protected (e.g. acquisition, covenant, exchange).
4. The Department may identify Crown land administered by Land Information New Zealand under the Land Act 1948 that has significant conservation values and seek to have it legally protected for reserve or conservation purposes.
5. When exchanging or disposing of land, particular regard will be given to:
  - a) Right of First Refusal (see Part 9, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998);
  - b) requirements of relevant legislation and general policy;
  - c) government instructions or directives;
  - d) requirements for public comment and consultation;
  - e) retention, protection and restoration of marginal strips;
  - f) protection of waterways and riparian margins; and
  - g) fencing covenants.
6. The Department should recover costs of disposing of land in all cases where an application to purchase is received. Cost recovery in exchange proposals will be negotiated on a case-by-case basis between the applicant and the Department.

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
 Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
 Section 3.3.3.1 Legal protection of ecosystems  
 Section 3.4.2 Protection of historical and cultural heritage within public conservation lands  
 Section 3.4.3 Protection of historical and cultural heritage beyond public conservation lands  
 Section 3.7.6 Grazing and farming

Section 3.11 Utilities  
Section 3.8.4 Public access  
Chapter 4.2 Desired outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 6(a)-(d)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 6(a)-(o), 8.1(i)

### **3.8.2.2 Potential changes to land classification**

Some areas within public conservation lands would be better protected by reclassifying them with another status. For example, a conservation area may warrant stricter legal protection (e.g. nature reserve status) due to threatened species requirements or to assist with integrated management. Conversely, other areas containing low conservation values may be reclassified with a status that better reflects the values present. Historically, the focus of land classification often centred on terrestrial values (such as forest ecosystems and geological features), landscapes and other scenic values. Conversely, classification of freshwater ecosystems has occurred in a rather haphazard way. Many wetlands, for example, warrant reclassification with a status more reflective of their significance.

## **POLICIES**

- 1. The legal classification of public conservation lands containing significant freshwater ecosystems should be reviewed. The review should focus on those areas where the change in classification will have a positive effect on the protection and management of its freshwater values.**
- 2. The Department should facilitate the nomination of internationally significant wetlands for Ramsar designation. The top two priorities for designation are the Ōkārīto Coastal Wetland Complex and the Bullock Creek polje.**

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
Section 3.3.3.1 Legal protection of ecosystems  
Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
Section 3.4.2 Protection of historical and cultural heritage within public conservation lands  
Section 3.4.3 Protection of historical and cultural heritage beyond public conservation lands  
Chapter 4.2 Desired outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 6(b)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 6(a)-(o), 8.1(i)

### **3.8.3 Statutory Advocacy**

The Department's mandate includes advocacy in statutory planning processes, particularly in relation to the Resource Management Act 1991. Conservation advocacy topics include, but are not limited to: public access; preservation of significant natural, historical and cultural heritage located outside public conservation lands; protection of values of public conservation land that may be adversely affected by any proposal; protection of recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats located within and outside public conservation lands; advocating the conservation of aquatic life and freshwater fisheries generally; identification and protection of significant natural areas; protection of the natural character of the coastal environment and the margins of lakes and rivers; and provision of recreation facilities (see policy

7(d), Conservation General Policy 2005). As explained in Chapter 3.5, the relative significance of all conservation values on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* has not been fully assessed. Detailed value assessments may not have been undertaken for specific areas where activities requiring resource consent are proposed. Further site-specific assessment may increase knowledge of conservation values at a particular site, and the potential impacts of a development proposal on those values, and should be used to inform the Department's statutory advocacy work.

## POLICIES

- 1. The Department will advocate for the conservation of natural, historical and cultural heritage and protection of recreational opportunities under the Resource Management Act 1991 and other relevant legislation.**
- 2. The Department should liaise with local authorities during preparation of policies and plans developed under the Resource Management Act 1991 or other relevant legislation, and seek that these reflect matters of conservation interest.**
- 3. The Department should advocate to local authorities, through regional and district planning and resource consent processes, that development adjacent to public conservation lands occurs in a manner appropriate to such a location and ensures that the conservation values and recreational opportunities are not compromised.**

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management  
Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
Section 3.4.2 Protection of historical and cultural heritage within public conservation lands  
Section 3.4.3 Protection of historical and cultural heritage beyond public conservation lands  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Land  
Section 3.6.4 Recreation and tourism activities  
Chapter 3.7 Other Use of Public Conservation Land  
Chapter 4.2 Desired outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Appendix 2, Department of Conservation Protocols  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 7(a)-(e)

### 3.8.4 Public Access

The public have free right of entry to public conservation lands, as long as access is not inconsistent with the fundamental purpose of protecting the conservation values of those lands. There may be special circumstances where public safety or the protection of natural, historical or cultural heritage requires that public access to particular public conservation lands be restricted or denied. For example, the Minister may close a conservation area for a period of time to protect a species that is breeding, or where there is a high fire risk. These circumstances are covered under section 13 of the Conservation Act 1987. In addition, permits are required under section 57 of the Reserves Act 1977 to enter nature reserves and under section 13 of the National Parks Act 1980 to enter specially protected areas.

## OBJECTIVE

1. To provide for public access to conservation areas in ways that meet people's reasonable aspirations but do not compromise public safety or the protection of conservation values.

## POLICIES

1. The adequacy of public access to public conservation lands, particularly over private land (in consultation with landowners), should be assessed and opportunities identified for improving access to public conservation lands where required.
2. Access to certain public conservation lands (e.g. nature reserves, gazetted wilderness areas and specially protected areas within national parks) may be controlled in accordance with section 13 of the Conservation Act, section 57 of the Reserves Act and section 13 of the National Parks Act 1980, to protect particularly important conservation values.
3. Activities and access to public conservation lands may be restricted in accordance with legislation:
  - a) where necessary to protect natural, historical or cultural heritage values; or
  - b) where a particular activity will adversely affect the enjoyment of the area by other people, including the qualities of solitude, remoteness, wilderness, peace and natural quiet, where these qualities are present; or
  - c) where a particular activity will prevent the desired outcome for a Place from being achieved (see Part 4); or
  - d) for public health and safety reasons.
4. In public conservation lands where restrictions on access or activities apply, exceptions may be authorised for special purposes, including:
  - a) search and rescue; or
  - b) fire fighting; or
  - c) control of invasive weeds and animal pests; or
  - d) scientific research that cannot be conducted outside the area; or
  - e) tangata whenua visiting wāhi tapu/wāhi taonga.

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management  
Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and landscapes  
Section 3.4.2 Protection of historical and cultural heritage within public conservation lands  
Section 3.4.3 Protection of historical and cultural heritage beyond public conservation lands  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Land  
Section 3.6.4 Recreation and tourism activities  
Chapter 3.7 Other Use of Public Conservation Land  
Section 3.8.8 Fire risk management  
Chapter 4.2 Desired outcomes for Places within the Conservancy  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 9.1(g)-(h)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policy 8.1(f)-(g)



### 3.8.5 National Park Management Plans

National park management plans are mandatory and must be prepared within two years of the gazettal of a national park and reviewed after 10 years, in consultation with the relevant conservation board/s.

#### OBJECTIVE

1. To prepare, review and amend national park management plans as required by the National Parks Act 1980 in consultation with the relevant conservation board/s.
2. To manage Kahurangi, Paparoa, Arthur's Pass, Westland *Tai Poutini* and Mt Aspiring National Parks in accordance with their individual national parks management plans.

#### POLICIES

1. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy will assist the Nelson/Marlborough Conservancy to amend and review as appropriate the management plan for Kahurangi National Park, in consultation with the Nelson/Marlborough and West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Boards.
2. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy will assist the Canterbury Conservancy to amend and review as appropriate the management plan for Arthur's Pass National Park, in consultation with the Canterbury *Aoraki* and West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Boards.
3. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy will assist the Otago Conservancy to amend and review as appropriate the management plan for Mt Aspiring National Park, in consultation with the Otago and West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Boards.
4. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy will amend and review as appropriate the management plans for Paparoa National Park and Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park in consultation with the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board.
5. The Department will consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga and give particular regard to their views when preparing national park management plans that relate to Deed of Recognition areas (see Section 3.1.3.3).

*See also* Section 3.1.3.3 Deed of Recognition  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 2(d), 3(d) and 12(a)-(f)

### 3.8.6 Conservation Management Plans

Some important sites or areas of public conservation land may have issues or management requirements that are too complex to be addressed adequately through the CMS, or may in time face threats that were not present when the CMS was prepared and which require specific management direction.

To meet these contingencies, Conservation Management Plans (CMP) may be prepared for specific sites or areas. There is no statutory requirement that CMPs must be prepared for any particular type of conservation land but a CMS may require

that CMPs be prepared for specific named sites or areas or in certain circumstances. These conservation management plans must not be in conflict with the requirements of the CMS and if there is a conflict the CMS prevails. CMPs are required to be approved by the relevant conservation board(s) for the site or area in question.

In preparing a CMS regard must be given to existing management plans prepared under the various Acts that detail the Department's management responsibilities. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy currently has 25 such management plans, most of them prepared for specific reserves under the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977. Each of these plans will be replaced with this CMS (see Policy 4 below).

## **OBJECTIVE**

- 1. To prepare, review or amend conservation management plans as required.**

## **POLICIES**

- 1. The Department will provide advice to the Mawhera Incorporation as and when required in the preparation of a management plan for Waitaiki Historic Reserve, Arahura River Catchment.**
- 2. Conservation management plans should only be prepared for places of national or international importance, where detailed objectives need to be identified, in consultation with the public, for effective management.**
- 3. The Department will consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga and give particular regard to their views when preparing conservation management plans that relate to Deed of Recognition areas (see Section 3.1.3.3).**
- 4. The Department will withdraw or revoke (under section 65(12)(c) of the Conservation Act 1987, or section 40A of the Reserves Act 1977) all plans in the following list. These areas will therefore be managed according to the relevant statute and general policies and this CMS:**
  - a) All Crown Land Management Area Management Plans (including the Hooker-Landsborough Crown Land Management Area Management Plan)**
  - b) Central Southern Alps Crown Land Management Strategy**
  - c) Eldon Coates Scenic Reserve Management Plan**
  - d) Hokitika Lakes Management Plan**
  - e) Hooker-Landsborough Management Plan**
  - f) Kakapotahi Scenic Reserve Management Plan**
  - g) Kawhaka Creek Scenic Reserve Management Plan**
  - h) Lake Haupiri Wildlife Management Reserve Management Plan**
  - i) Lake Ianthe Scenic Reserve Management Plan**
  - j) Marsden Scenic Reserve Management Plan**
  - k) Mt Hercules Scenic Reserve Management Plan**
  - l) North Westland Regional Management Plan**
  - m) North West Nelson Forest Park Management Plan**

- n) Omotumotu Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- o) Paynes Gully Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- p) Pleasant Point Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- q) Poerua River Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- r) Pukekura Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- s) Rapahoe Range Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- t) Saltwater Lagoon Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- u) Taramakau Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- v) The Exile Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- w) Waitaha Scenic Reserve Management Plan
- x) Waitangiroto Nature Reserve Management Plan
- y) Wilberg Range Scenic Reserve Management Plan

*See also* Section 3.1.3.3 Deed of Recognition  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 2 (d), 3(d) and 13(a)-(g)

### 3.8.7 Compliance and Law Enforcement

The Department undertakes compliance and law enforcement to maintain standards that protect and preserve conservation values. Compliance is encouraged by effective education and making information readily available. Voluntary compliance is the Department's aim, but it also recognises that awareness of offences and penalties can act as a useful deterrent to offending.

Compliance and law enforcement issues facing the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy include (but are not limited to): compliance with the Whitebait Fishing (West Coast) Regulations 1994; Wildlife Act 1953 and Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 offences; carrying on a business activity, such as guided tourism operations, without an appropriate concession; erecting a structure or facility on public conservation land without authority; illegal aerial hunting contrary to the provisions of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977; illegal occupation of facilities on public conservation lands; the control of dogs on conservation areas, national parks and reserves; illegal aircraft landings on public conservation lands; controlling access to caves; stock trespass; sphagnum moss, tree and timber theft; taking of plants; and damage to vegetation and land due to unlawful mining.

In order to more effectively manage national parks, the Department is in the process of seeking the preparation of bylaws for Paparoa National Park. Bylaws already exist for Kahurangi, Arthur's Pass, Westland *Tai Poutini* and Mt Aspiring National Parks. These bylaws will, in particular, address where camping is permitted, the lighting of fires, access by vehicles including mountain bikes, and the disposal of waste.

#### OBJECTIVES

1. To prevent illegal activities occurring both within the Conservancy's public conservation lands and beyond these areas when the activities affect conservation values for which the Department has management responsibility.
2. To encourage compliance and deter potential offenders.
3. To pursue prosecutions, where warranted, for breaches of controls contained in legislation.

1. Compliance with legislation, regulations and bylaws should be encouraged via education, working with communities, and other public awareness initiatives.
2. Information should be included in relevant Departmental publications about the types of behaviour that may damage conservation values (to encourage compliance) and offences and penalties (as a deterrent to offending).
3. Detect, control and reduce the incidence of illegal taking, damage, pollution or destruction of the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage by implementing effective and ongoing law enforcement response and reporting mechanisms.
4. Bylaws and regulations should be prepared and/or amended as required, under relevant legislation (i.e. s106 of the Reserves Act, s56 of the National Parks Act or s48 of the Conservation Act) for: Kahurangi National Park; Paparoa National Park; Arthur's Pass National Park; Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park; Mt Aspiring National Park; and other areas as appropriate (e.g. to control aircraft landings, cave access, mountain bikes, other vehicles, camping etc).
5. Incidents of non-compliance should be reported and acted upon promptly.
6. Where compliance fails, sufficient evidence should be obtained, available or sought for enforcement action to be taken as a priority.

*See also* Part 3 (all relevant objectives and policies)  
Section 3.6.4.17 Vehicle use

### 3.8.8 Fire Risk Management

The Minister of Conservation has responsibility for controlling all fires on public conservation lands. The prevention of uncontrolled fires, or minimising their impact if they are already established, is the Department's main concern (acting under delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation).

Under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977 the Department: prepares a yearly fire plan; complies with the National Rural Fire Authority's code of practice; monitors and investigates wild fires seeking cost recovery and prosecution where appropriate; supports co-ordinated fire prevention programmes; keeps fire-fighting equipment in a high state of readiness; trains Departmental staff and volunteers in fire-fighting at all levels; and supports rural fire parties registered with the Department through grants, training and equipment where appropriate.

The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy is currently a member of the West Coast Rural Fire District. Other members include Buller District Council, Grey District Council, Westland District Council and Timberlands West Coast.

A written fire permit from the Department is required to light fires on public conservation land. Where necessary, Departmental staff will inspect the site proposed for the fire and set conditions to ensure the danger of wild fires is minimised. The permit system will also allow staff to identify whether fires reported by members of

the public are likely to be wild fires or permitted fires. When a fire is reported the holders of permits in that location will be contacted to ascertain whether or not it is a permitted burn. If it is permitted and under control, there is no need to respond to a wild fire.

#### OBJECTIVE

- 1. To prevent uncontrolled fires and effectively deploy staff and equipment to identify and control fires.**

#### POLICIES

- 1. Priority should be given to fire prevention, because it is more efficient and less damaging to take steps to ensure that uncontrolled fires do not reach, or start in, public conservation lands:**
  - a) High fire risk areas and times should be identified, and preventative planning and rapid response efforts focused on these areas and times.**
  - b) Public awareness of fire risks, fire prevention programmes and land user responsibilities should be raised.**
- 2. The Conservancy will continue to use the Fire Permit system to identify and control fires. Where necessary, Departmental staff will inspect the site proposed for the fire and set conditions to ensure the danger of wild fires is minimised.**
- 3. Fire damage to public conservation lands should be minimised. Priority should be given to fighting fires that present a threat to the natural heritage or historic fabric of the area.**
- 4. The Department should consider cooperative arrangements with other fire authorities and stakeholders to achieve more extensive rural fire management for the Conservancy.**
- 5. Where practical, cost recovery for the fighting of fires occurring in public conservation areas should be sought from those responsible for the fire.**

*See also* Section 3.3.1.3 Threats to terrestrial biodiversity values  
Section 3.3.3.2 Maintenance and restoration of the indigenous natural character of ecosystems  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policies 4.3(a)-(c)  
General Policy for National Parks 2005, Policies 4.7(a)-(b)

### **3.8.9 Resource Management Act Exemptions**

Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) includes a provision that enables an exemption for actions of the Department on public conservation lands and waters where a resource consent may otherwise be necessary for land use activities managed by district councils (under section 9(1) RMA). The exemption applies under two circumstances: (i) where it is consistent with a CMS or management plan; and (ii) does not have significant adverse effect beyond the boundary of the area. Appendix 9 outlines some of the land use activities that this exemption will apply to within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

## OBJECTIVE

1. To provide for land use activities which are consistent with this CMS and do not have significant adverse effects beyond the boundary of public conservation lands, including those outlined in Appendix 9, as section 4(3) Resource Management Act 1991 exemptions.

# Part 4

## Desired Outcomes



Tramping, Mt Greenland  
Photo by: Ted Brennan.





## 4.0 DESIRED OUTCOMES

Part 4 describes what the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

The desired outcomes presented in Chapter 4.1 relate to the entire Conservancy. Desired outcomes for specific Places (see Map 5) within the Conservancy are described in Chapter 4.2. Both chapters should be considered together.

The objectives and policies presented in Part 3 apply to the whole Conservancy and should be referred to in conjunction with Part 4. A range of these policies will be required in order to attain each of the particular desired outcomes and to achieve integrated solutions to complex issues and problems that arise in each Place. In addition to advocacy or management by the Department, implementation may involve working with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, local communities, private land owners, volunteers and other people and organisations.

Applications for all activities requiring authorisation from the Department or Minister of Conservation will be assessed against the outcomes described in chapters 4.1 and 4.2. Consideration will be given to whether a proposed activity is consistent with the desired outcomes and whether conditions should be applied in order to ensure the proposed activity does not detract from the values of the Place.

### 4.1 DESIRED OUTCOME FOR THE CONSERVANCY

Chapter 4.1 describes what the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

#### 4.1.1 The West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy in 2020

Throughout the Conservancy, management undertaken by the Department focuses on:

- identification, conservation, protection and restoration of natural, historical and cultural heritage values; and
- provision for appropriate recreation, use and enjoyment of public conservation lands.

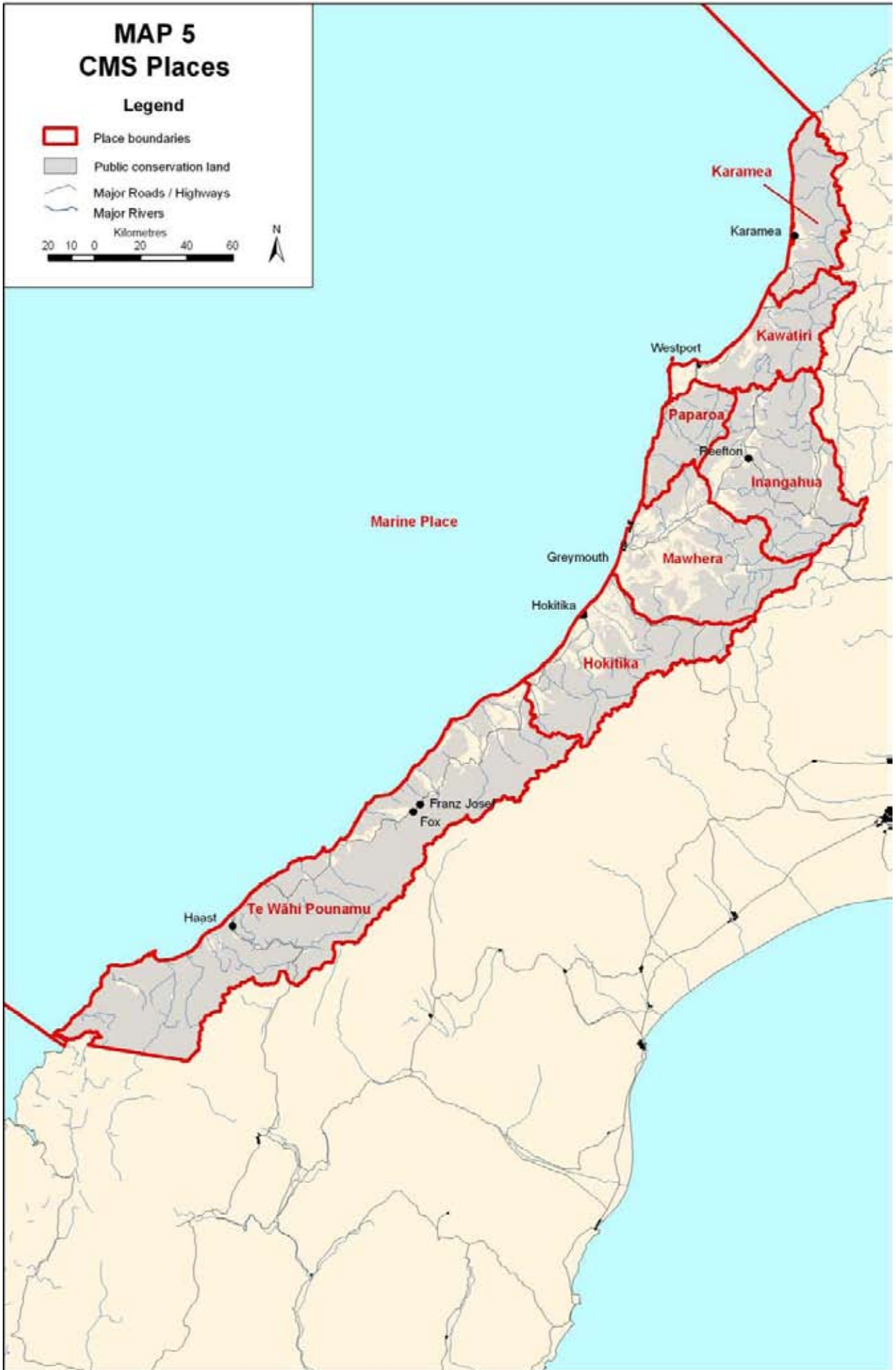
Within public conservation lands, natural, historical and cultural heritage is protected, maintained and enhanced. People highly value this heritage, understand the need for its protection and are able to enjoy and appreciate this heritage in appropriate ways. Communities increasingly engage in conservation. The Department has developed and strengthened relationships based on mutual good faith, cooperation and respect with Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, local residents and other people and organisations. These groups make valued contributions towards the management of public conservation lands. Conservation management reflects the importance of particular public conservation lands for Poutini Ngāi Tahu, local communities and recreational users. Opportunities are provided for people to learn about indigenous ecosystems, threatened species, historic places and the history and culture of the

# MAP 5 CMS Places

## Legend

-  Place boundaries
-  Public conservation land
-  Major Roads / Highways
-  Major Rivers

Kilometres  
20 10 0 20 40 60



West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Business opportunities and provision of public goods or services that are consistent with conservation outcomes are enabled.

Each national park has its own management plan. A national park management plan contains the outcomes planned for the park and the details of management as required by the National Parks Act 1980 and the General Policy for National Parks 2005. Kahurangi, Paparoa, Arthur's Pass, Westland *Tai Poutini* and Mt Aspiring National Parks are managed in accordance with their individual national park management plans.

*See also* Part 3 (all relevant objectives and policies)

#### **4.1.1.1 *Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020***

The Department, Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu continue to work together to build and strengthen an effective partnership. Conservation management is enhanced by this relationship. When interpreting and administering conservation legislation, the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are given effect to in the Department's work. The Department's obligations under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 are integrated into management of the Conservancy. Conservation management takes into consideration relevant provisions from the Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan and subsequent Papatipu Rūnanga pounamu management plans. Kaitiakitanga is reflected in the way that public conservation lands and conservation values are managed. There is an increased understanding, respect and consideration of Ngāi Tahu perspectives and mātauranga and this is incorporated in the way the Conservancy functions. Poutini Ngāi Tahu's relationship with the Department helps to maintain and strengthen their cultural relationship with the natural, historical and cultural heritage of public conservation lands. Where consistent with conservation legislation, Poutini Ngāi Tahu association with, and appropriate customary use of, public conservation lands and resources is fostered. Poutini Ngāi Tahu have access to cultural materials through an effective and culturally appropriate system. Some mahinga kai<sup>35</sup> resources are healthy enough to sustain harvesting. People can learn about the cultural association Poutini Ngāi Tahu have with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* via accurate and appropriate cultural interpretation presented by the Department and/or concessionaires. Wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga are protected and, where appropriate, actively managed in partnership with Poutini Ngāi Tahu. The Department supports Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in the opening and management of nohoanga entitlement areas throughout the Conservancy. Nohoanga provide Ngāi Tahu Whānui with opportunities to experience the landscape as their tipuna did and, where appropriate, to rekindle the traditional practices of gathering food and other natural resources, so long an essential part of Ngāi Tahu culture. Use of nohoanga by Ngāi Tahu Whānui continues to increase. Poutini Ngāi Tahu have a presence in the commercial tourism sector associated with the Conservancy's public conservation lands and may (via the concessions process) establish tourism opportunities involving pounamu and/or cultural activities within specific locations. Regular liaison takes place with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae, Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio and, where appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, over issues of common concern (such as

---

<sup>35</sup> Mahinga kai is the customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered.

resource consent applications and other planning or development issues with the potential to affect conservation values).

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

#### **4.1.1.2 Relationships with people and organisations in 2020**

People's understanding and appreciation of the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values and recreational opportunities is fostered and enhanced. The knowledge and ability to protect and conserve public conservation lands and natural, historical and cultural heritage values is transmitted to future generations. There is widespread familiarity with, appreciation of, and support for public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, the protection and conservation of their natural, historical and cultural values, and the management of conservation issues that the Conservancy faces. There are high levels of satisfaction within the community, a wide range of visitors, educational institutions, business and other interest groups with the information, education and interpretation products, activities, programmes and services provided by the Department. People have an increased understanding of the Department's management obligations and Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities, Poutini Ngāi Tahu values and the Department's management approach. The Department has an increased understanding of the range of values which people attach to West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* public conservation lands.

Close working relationships are developed and fostered with people and organisations including: Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae, Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio, local communities, local authorities, tourism operators, mining industry, public agencies, non-governmental organisations and volunteers. Successful partnerships are established and assist in the management of specific sites or places. Active engagement in conservation projects initiated by the Department (such as ecological restoration, historical and cultural heritage protection, interpretation, research and recreation projects) and other related activities or processes occurs. People and organisations, including Poutini Ngāi Tahu, also undertake their own conservation initiatives, supported by the Department where appropriate. Significant natural, historical and cultural heritage in environments for which the Department is not directly responsible are sustainably managed and conserved. Increased participation leads to increases in the achievement of conservation outcomes generally.

*See also* Chapter 3.2 Relationships with People and Organisations

#### **4.1.1.3 Identification and assessment of conservation values in 2020**

The Department has a more complete understanding of the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values, their significance and their management requirements. Many of these values are defined, identified and their relative significance assessed. The information available on natural, historical and cultural heritage values is updated as necessary.

*See also* Section 3.3.2 Knowledge, information needs and priority setting tools for natural heritage work

Section 3.4.1 Historical and cultural heritage values and threats

#### 4.1.1.4 *Proactive management of conservation values in 2020*

The Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values are proactively managed, rehabilitated, restored or enhanced.

The decline of indigenous biodiversity is halted. The security of threatened species unique to New Zealand and most at risk from extinction is improved. No extinctions of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* indigenous marine, freshwater and terrestrial species occur and managed threatened species have a lowered risk of extinction. Where practicable, representative populations of all indigenous species are secure in predominantly natural habitats within their natural range.

Examples of the full range of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine, freshwater and terrestrial ecosystems are conserved.

Where practicable, natural heritage is improved to a more natural state. The ecological integrity and natural character of managed sites is maintained or restored. Some distinctive marine areas are protected. The connectivity and natural functioning of mountain-sea ecosystems, lowland wetlands and riparian areas is improving. Advocacy for protection of freshwater fish habitats (see Section 3.8.3) is successful and artificial impediments to fish passage are progressively removed. Fire prevention and suppression play an active role in the protection of vulnerable ecosystems such as lowland pakihi wetlands, mānuka shrublands and alpine scrublands. Priority sites for biodiversity management (see Maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18) are being maintained and enhanced by controlling and, where possible, eradicating invasive weeds and animal pests. Control of introduced animals occurs in those areas with the highest indigenous biodiversity values at the greatest risk. The damage from harmful organisms established on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* is reduced. Further spread of unwanted exotic species is prevented, and no new unwanted organisms become established within public conservation lands. Formerly logged areas of public conservation land are regenerating. Research and monitoring increase our knowledge of indigenous ecosystems and their component species and the most effective management options for protecting them. The Department is able to demonstrate the difference conservation management makes. Management techniques improve over time.

The importance of natural areas located outside of public conservation lands is advocated by the Department (see Section 3.8.3) and actively recognised and provided for by other management agencies and land owners<sup>36</sup>. Land owners and occupiers understand the need to protect the values of these ecosystems and habitats and are supportive of conservation efforts. Natural heritage values in the privately-owned lowland areas are increasingly recognised and treasured by local communities, and the natural character of these areas is retained (e.g. through invasive weed control,

---

<sup>36</sup> On 26 April 2007, the Minister of Conservation and Minister for the Environment issued a Statement of National Priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land. This statement provides local authorities, communities and private landowners with information about the types of ecosystems and habitats on private land that from a national perspective are most threatened and in need of protection. The information about the national priorities can be used by local and central government agencies and landowners to co-ordinate their decisions and on-the-ground actions in relation to biodiversity. See the following brochures for more information: "Protecting our Places - Introducing the national priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land" and "Protecting our Places - Information about the national priorities for protecting rare and threatened native biodiversity on private land" (Ministry for the Environment, 2007).

restoration of wetland function and retention of large trees and forest remnants on farmland).

Historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation land is protected from unauthorised human uses. Actively managed historic places are maintained in a stable or improved condition. Research and inventory work significantly increase the Department's knowledge of historical and cultural heritage values within the Conservancy, facilitating selection of the best possible representative range of assets for active management. This representative range of historical and cultural heritage is conserved and interpreted. It reflects themes of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* history. Regular monitoring of historic assets at recreational sites helps to ensure that visitation does not compromise their preservation. The protection of significant historical and cultural heritage located outside of public conservation lands is advocated for by the Department (see Section 3.8.3) and provided for by other agencies, land owners and local groups.

**See also** Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management  
Section 3.3.4.3 Management of geodiversity and landscapes  
Section 3.4.2 Protection of historical and cultural heritage within public conservation lands  
Section 3.4.3 Protection of historical and cultural heritage beyond public conservation lands

#### **4.1.1.5 *Protection of conservation values from adverse effects of authorised uses in 2020***

The Department safeguards the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values by identifying and taking appropriate action to avoid or otherwise minimise adverse effects of human use or management. Threats to, or adverse effects on, natural, historical and cultural heritage values are identified and assessed accurately and in a timely manner. Potential threats and risks to natural, historical and cultural heritage values are avoided or are managed in ways that are consistent with the desired outcomes for Places described in Chapter 4.2 of this CMS.

**See also** Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Land  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment, Chapter 3.7 Other Uses of Public Conservation Land

#### **4.1.1.6 *Recreational use and enjoyment of public conservation lands in 2020***

People appreciate and enjoy public conservation lands and receive in full measure the inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits that may be derived from them, where these are not inconsistent with the protection of natural, historical and cultural heritage. New Zealanders have increased opportunities for recreation and outdoor activities. Communities and visitors are satisfied with the range and quality of recreational opportunities, facilities and services available in the Conservancy. Use of these places continues to increase, providing for healthy communities. All users of public conservation lands cooperate with the Department, especially in caring for natural, historical and cultural heritage and recreational facilities.

A wide range of quality recreation opportunities are available within the Conservancy. Low-impact recreation is permitted in most places. User numbers, activities and associated infrastructure are managed to limit adverse effects on indigenous ecosystems and wildlife, to protect the natural, historical and cultural integrity of

public conservation lands, and to protect people's recreational experiences. Day use of intense interest sites and frontcountry facilities is the most popular focus of recreation (in terms of user numbers), but increasing use is made of backcountry facilities and remote zones. As further commercial tourism facilities are developed they are located outside of public conservation lands wherever possible, although recreation and tourism concessions are granted within public conservation lands. Concessionaire-provided services and facilities support high quality environmental experiences and enhance conservation outcomes. Provision is made for mountain biking on selected tracks, and horse riding and four-wheel drive access on some formed roads, within public conservation lands. The range of high-quality information and interpretation at recreational sites, which includes information about Poutini Ngāi Tahu values wherever appropriate, increases people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of public conservation lands and their conservation values.

**See also** Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Land, Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

## 4.2 DESIRED OUTCOMES FOR PLACES WITHIN THE CONSERVANCY

For the purposes of this CMS, the entire West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy has been divided into seven land-based Places (Karamea, Kawatiri, Paparoa, Inangahua, Māwhera, Hokitika and Te Wāhi Pounamu) and one marine Place. The land based division of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (including both public and private land) into adjacent geographic areas (Places) has been chosen for practical management reasons. There are many conservation management issues that are common to the whole Conservancy, although these issues may have different emphases in the successive Places. For an overview of the location of the eight Places, see Map 5.

Chapter 4.2 identifies desired outcomes for each Place in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. While most of these outcomes relate directly to public conservation lands, some also relate to the Department's responsibilities for conservation advocacy and the protection of wildlife and freshwater fisheries on lands and waters of all tenures. Sections 4.2.1 to 4.2.7 describe the desired outcomes for each of the seven land-based Places, examining their indigenous biodiversity, geological features and natural landscapes, human history, cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi/ Ngāi Tahu and recreational opportunities. Individual maps (Maps 6-19) of each land-based Place show the locations of public conservation lands, sites that are actively managed historic places or priority sites for biodiversity management as at 2010, and recreational zones. The desired outcomes relating to the marine Place (see Map 20) are presented in Section 4.2.8. The Conservancy-wide outcomes presented in Chapter 4.1 apply to each CMS Place.

Five national parks are located either wholly or partially within CMS land-based Places: Kahurangi, Paparoa, Arthur's Pass, Westland *Tai Poutini* and Mt Aspiring *Tititea* (see Maps 1, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16 and 18). Each national park is a separate Place, nested within a larger CMS Place. Detailed information about the values, issues, desired outcomes, management objectives and policies for each park are contained within separate national park management plans (see Section 3.8.5). The CMS does not repeat this information, although key features are sometimes mentioned.

Note to reader. Chapter 4.2 is written in the present tense. Most of the text underneath each Place heading describes desired outcomes, i.e. the desired future condition of conservation values. However, some of the text does describe the situation existing as at the time of writing; such text has been included to provide background context for the outcomes that follow. To avoid confusion to the reader, text describing the existing situation is highlighted in grey. All other text describes desired outcomes.

#### **4.2.1 Desired Outcome for Karamea Place**

Section 4.2.1 describes what the Karamea Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

*See also* Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

##### **4.2.1.1 Place description**

The Karamea Place extends from Kahurangi Point in the north to Kongahu Point in the south, with its inland boundary following the western edge of the Mackay and Goulard Downs and the crests of the Goulard, Grange, Herbert and Radiant Ranges (Maps 6-7). A large part of the Karamea Place consists of Kahurangi National Park.

##### **4.2.1.2 Kahurangi National Park in 2020**

Kahurangi National Park stands as a premier example of natural New Zealand. It is an unbroken ‘mountains to sea’ national park without the intrusion of major development. It is a sanctuary for a diversity of nationally and internationally important geological features and indigenous plants and animals. Several sites are protected from invasive weeds and animal pests (see the Heaphy priority site on Map 6). The Park is uncluttered by intrusive structures. It contains exceptional natural landscapes and landforms and provides a window to the cultural history of the northwestern South Island. On the Park’s fringes, a network of high quality tracks allows people to make short excursions to explore its historic areas, karst landscapes, forests, and coastal and mountain scenery, and to experience natural quiet, peace and tranquillity. More adventurous recreationists are able to venture further on extensive track systems and routes to experience peace, solitude, inspiration, recreational enjoyment and challenge. The Tasman Wilderness Area (see Map 7) contains undisturbed natural treasures and provides the ultimate nature experience to those who wish to meet its challenges. The Honeycomb Hill cave systems in the Oparara Valley (a Specially Protected Area) contain a unique assemblage of Pleistocene fossil deposits, including an internationally important fossil record of now extinct native birds extending back 20,000 years. Kahurangi National Park is treasured and supported by the local communities surrounding it and by the nation.<sup>37</sup>

The Park is managed in accordance with the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan. Sections 4.2.1.3 to 4.2.1.8 provide further details about the desired outcomes for Kahurangi National Park.

---

<sup>37</sup> The text about Kahurangi National Park is sourced from the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan 2001-2011.



#### 4.2.1.3 *Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020*

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Karamea Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

The geology of the Karamea Place is dominated by a broad belt of coarse red/grey granite which extends southwards from near Kahurangi Point into the catchment of the Mokihinui River. North of Kohaihai, this granite extends from the ranges to the coast except for isolated remnants of younger sedimentary rocks in the lower Heaphy valley, at Kahurangi Point and at Kohaihai Bluff. South of Kohaihai, the western boundary of the granite moves inland, with much of the coastal lowlands (including the Karamea Bluff west of the highway) being overlain by tertiary sedimentary strata of limestones, siltstones and sandstones.

Many of the more striking landforms in the Conservancy occur in these areas of younger sedimentary rocks, especially in the limestone areas of the Ōpārara basin, lower Heaphy valley and along the coast. In the Ōpārara basin, limestones are confined to a fairly narrow belt but within this belt are three of New Zealand's most impressive natural arches and more than 60 caves (including the complex Honeycomb Hill system which has over 70 entrances). Further north, the lower Heaphy valley also contains bold limestone bluffs, vanishing streams and several large caves. The prominent Kohaihai and Heaphy Bluffs and Kahurangi Point are all remnants of formerly more extensive limestone outcrops, and limestone bluffs provide impressive coastal ramparts south of Little Wanganui.

The Karamea Place also includes many distinctive granite landforms. The deep lower gorge of the Karamea River portrays the dynamic effect of earthquakes and floods. North of Kohaihai, the steeply plunging granite landmass forms stunning coastal landscapes, with a sequence of wild beaches and bluffs backed by dense groves of nikau palms. The rolling granite upland of the Gunner Downs between the Heaphy and Kohaihai Rivers are one of a number of distinctive montane plateaux scattered across the northwest corner of the South Island, from the Goulard Downs and Mount Arthur tablelands in the north to the Buller coal plateaux in the south (see Section 4.2.2).

Many landforms in Kahurangi National Park are considered internationally, nationally or regionally important. The Fenian Range and mountains on the western fringes form a backdrop for Karamea township. The vast cave systems of karst areas contain spectacular cave formations (speleothems) and fossil remains. The limestone Ōpārara Arch is the largest of its kind in Australasia. Other scenic limestone features include the forested limestone bluffs of the lower Heaphy valley. The largely unmodified coast between Kahurangi Point and the Heaphy River mouth has very high scenic values.

*See also* Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### 4.2.1.4 *Indigenous biodiversity*

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

The Karamea lowlands have the greatest range of weeds in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, due to its moist mild climate. Most of these occur on the edges of public conservation lands and require regular active management. Major invasive weeds include old man's beard, wild ginger, banana passion-fruit, marram and spartina (which is recorded in the past in the Ōpārara Estuary). Weeds, however,

are relatively uncommon on the coast north of the Heaphy River (especially between Wekakura Point and the Kahurangi River), providing a unique opportunity to retain a substantial section of coastal environment in a virtually weed-free condition. Eucalyptus plantations detract from the natural character of Te Namu forest. Possums are widespread and have become a major animal pest. In addition to their highly destructive impact on forest structure and palatable plants, they are known to be significant predators of *Powelliphanta* snails, other invertebrates and birds. Red deer are also widespread, and goats are present in a few localities. Predators, especially stoats, impact on great spotted kiwi *roroa* and blue duck *whio* and many other native species.

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats, Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

### **Indigenous biodiversity in 2020**

At the Heaphy, Ōpārara Basin and Karamea Bluffs priority sites (see Map 6) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Karamea Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010.

Along with Paparoa and Te Wāhi Pounamu Places, Karamea is one of the last areas in mainland New Zealand with relatively intact natural vegetation sequences from the mountains to the sea. The Place is of major conservation significance for its biodiversity, its extensive tracts of lowland and coastal wetlands and forests, its lowland karst areas and the vegetation patterns of the granite hill country. The northwest corner of the South Island is the most biologically diverse region in New Zealand and the Karamea Place reflects this richness. The richer biota reflects the Place's history as a refuge during the Pleistocene glaciation and its warmer climate. It contains a large number of threatened, rare and/or locally endemic plants and animals, as well as a number of plants that reach their natural southern limit. Many of these are coastal or lowland species.

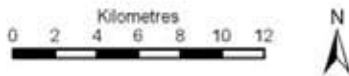
In the coastal environment, Hector's dolphin *aihe* is regularly seen off the Karamea coast and New Zealand fur seals *kekeno* are abundant along the coastline south of Kahurangi Point. Penguin nesting sites and New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* breeding colonies and haul-out sites around Kongahu Point and Wekakura Point (the second largest breeding colony on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*) are free from human-induced disturbance. Pingao *Desmoschoenus spiralis* and sand tussock *Austrofestuca littoralis* dominate the coastal sand dune communities located north of the Heaphy River. Gorse and marram grass are kept at very low levels. The coastal cress *Lepidium flexicaule* and spurge *Euphorbia glauca* thrive along the Heaphy coastline.

The scarlet flowers of northern rātā add a splash of colour to the luxuriant forest of the Heaphy coastline and lower reaches of the Heaphy valley each summer. Nikau palms are a dominant feature of the canopy. Kiekie and supplejack *karaeopirita* form dense thickets in the lush coastal understorey. Pate, northern rātā and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers regenerate as a result of wild animal control work undertaken in the Heaphy priority site (see Map 6), particularly in limestone areas. Northern rātā, kiekie, nikau and other coastal species provide a rich source of nectar and fruit for native invertebrates and birds such as New Zealand wood pigeons *kererū*, tūi and bellbirds *kōparapara/korimako*.

# MAP 6 Karamea Place conservation outcomes

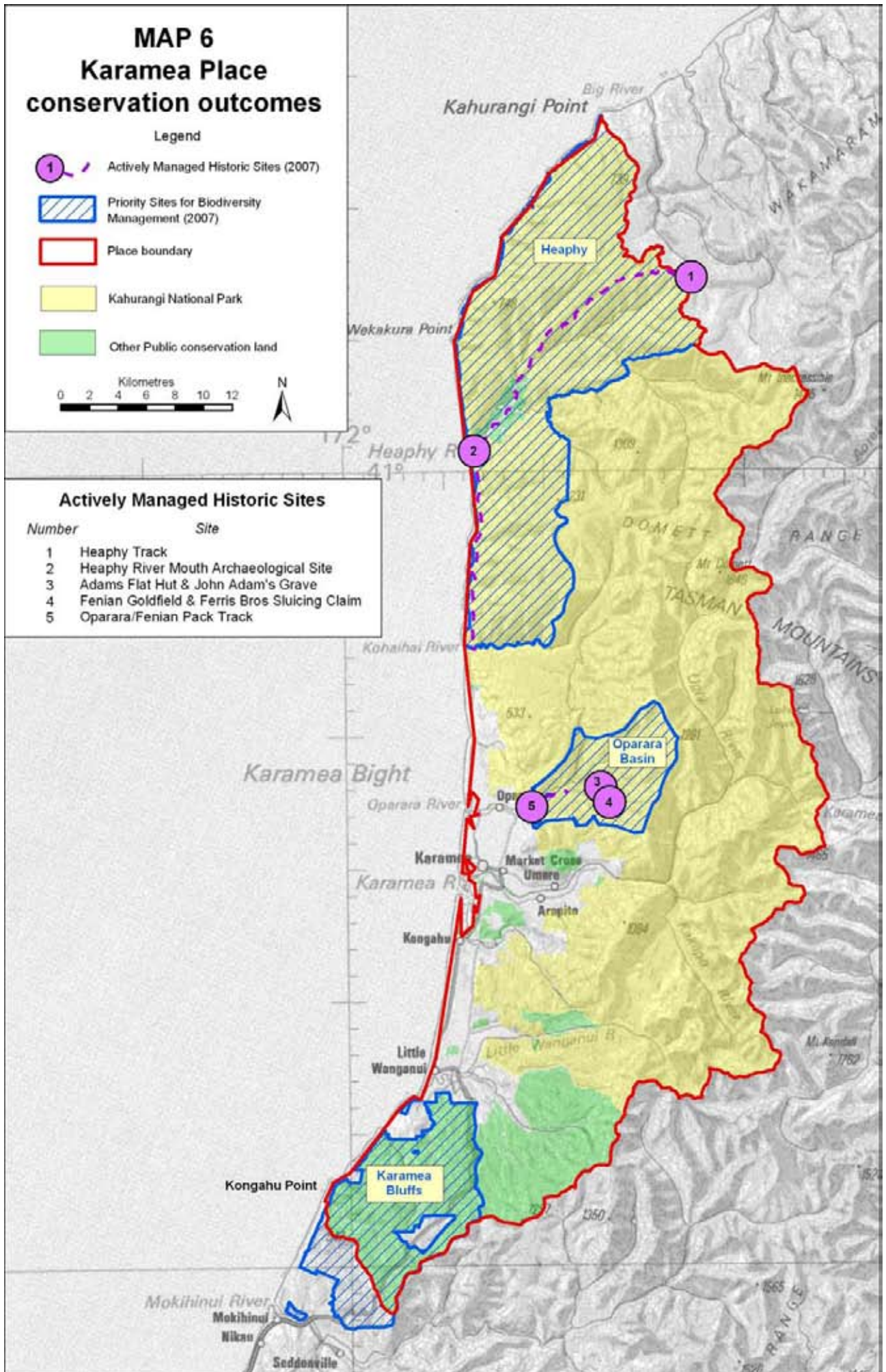
## Legend

-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2007)
-  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2007)
-  Place boundary
-  Kahurangi National Park
-  Other Public conservation land



## Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
1	Heaphy Track
2	Heaphy River Mouth Archaeological Site
3	Adams Flat Hut & John Adam's Grave
4	Fenian Goldfield & Ferris Bros Sluicing Claim
5	Oparara/Fenian Pack Track



# Map 7 Karamea Place recreation outcomes

## Legend

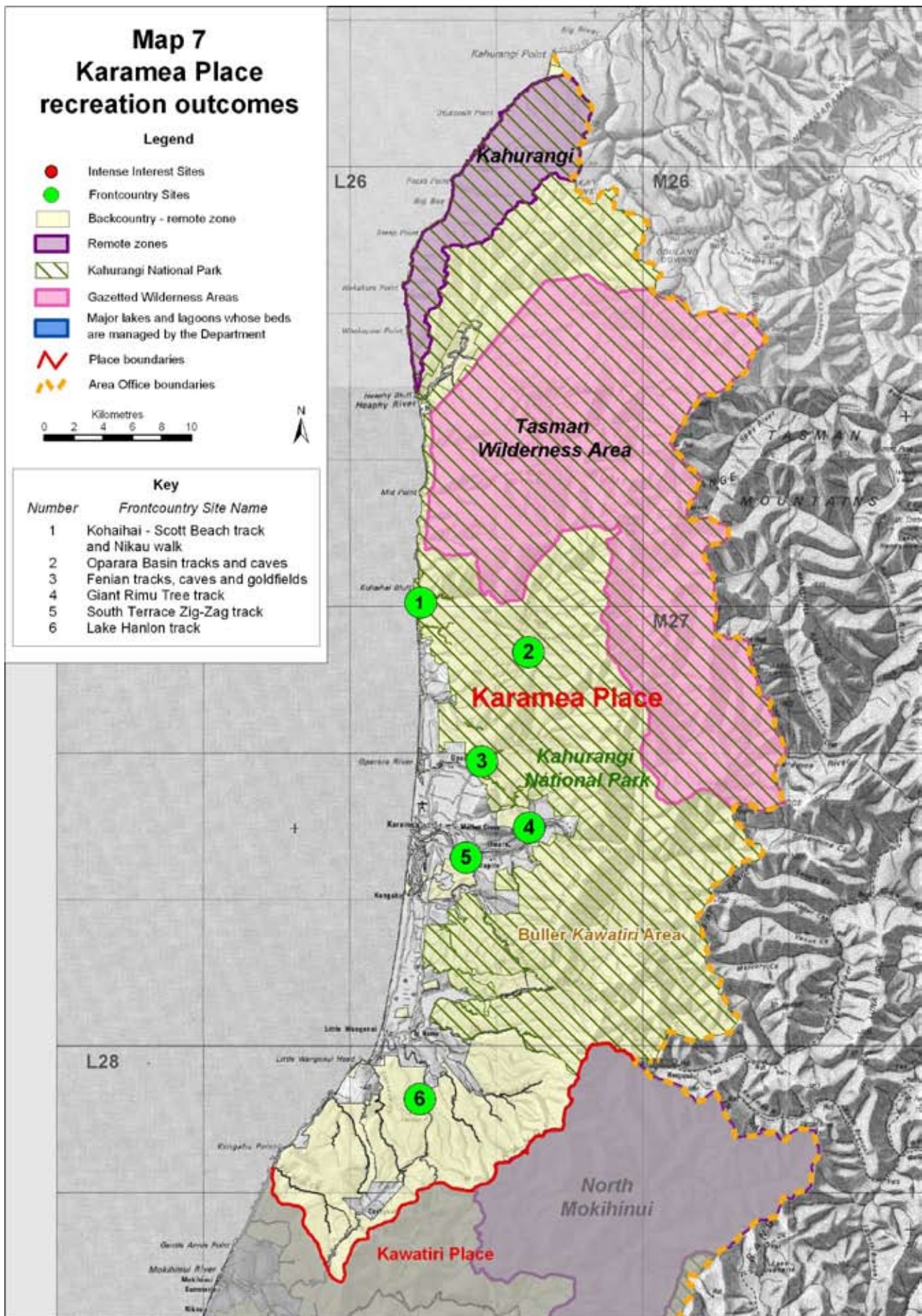
- Intense Interest Sites
- Frontcountry Sites
- Backcountry - remote zone
- Remote zones
- Kahurangi National Park
- Gazetted Wilderness Areas
- Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
- ~ Place boundaries
- ~ Area Office boundaries

Kilometres  
0 2 4 6 8 10



## Key

Number	Frontcountry Site Name
1	Kohaihai - Scott Beach track and Nikau walk
2	Oparara Basin tracks and caves
3	Fenian tracks, caves and goldfields
4	Giant Rimu Tree track
5	South Terrace Zig-Zag track
6	Lake Hanlon track



A representative sample of lowland forest and wetland remnants on the Karamea plains is legally protected within public conservation lands or via other mechanisms such as covenants and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3). The natural character of these remnants is improving.

The Karamea plain supports some of the largest and most important lowland wetlands in the northern West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, including the Ōpārara Estuary and the nationally significant Karamea/Otumahana Estuary with its associated whitebait fishery (Cromarty & Scott 1996). Each contains a variety of habitats, including tidal mudflats, saltmarsh, waterways and swamp forest. Smaller wetlands include the Karamea Aerodrome Lagoon and Little Wanganui River mouth. The network of functioning freshwater and estuarine wetlands on the Karamea plains is sustained and is valued by the local community. This network provides essential migration linkages and habitat for freshwater fish, birds, lowland invertebrates and plants. Native species are dominant. The aquatic weeds *Myriophyllum aquaticum* and *Spartina* spp. are eradicated.

River catchments in the northern part of the Karamea Place, including the Heaphy and Kohaihai, remain in a natural condition and continue to provide valuable habitat for native freshwater fish. Viable populations of shortjaw and giant kōkopu *taiwharu* exist in these rivers and the coastal wetlands associated with them. The largely intact nature of the Karamea River catchment vegetation and its environmental richness, which is a product of its diverse geology, are retained. The catchment provides important habitat for blue duck *whio* and contains viable populations of threatened fish, most notably long-finned eel *tuna*.

The natural heritage values of the privately-owned lowland areas of the Karamea plain are increasingly recognised and treasured by local communities, and the natural character of these areas is retained. Lowland wetlands are no longer under threat from land uses within their catchments. The Kongahu Swamp retains healthy remnants of indigenous vegetation, including swamp forest with emergent kahikatea, flax *harakeke-Coprosma* scrubland, rushland and fernland bog.

Several significant whitebait spawning areas and mudfish populations are maintained and enhanced throughout the Karamea Place. Riparian management continues to improve with the support of landowners, the local community and local authorities, enhancing the connectivity, viability and life-supporting capacity of the Karamea Place's ecosystems, particularly whitebait spawning habitat. Where practical, riparian margins throughout much of the Karamea Place are fenced to exclude livestock. Containment and/or treatment of pollutant discharges, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems.

Upland areas remain in a substantially wild and natural condition. Many of the non-coastal lowland forests form contiguous linkages with the coast, providing unbroken altitudinal sequences. On the western slopes and spurs of the granite ranges, coastal forest grades into rimu/hard beech *tawai* associations further inland. These in turn grade into mixed beech *tawai* with kāmahī and quintinia *tawherowhero* and, higher still, a belt of subalpine forest/shrubland in which leatherwood and mountain neinei are common components. North of the Kohaihai River, the granite plateau of the Gunner Downs contains subalpine communities similar to those of the Mackay Downs further north. On all of these upland plateaux, poorly drained infertile soils support a mosaic of vegetation communities, with large areas of red tussock grassland on the gentler rolling terrain interspersed by areas of shrubland and stunted forest in

which mountain beech *tawat*, leatherwood, bog pine, yellow-silver pine, pink pine and *Dracophyllum* are common species.

Populations of South Island kākā, New Zealand wood pigeon *kererū*, blue duck *whio*, rock wren, Nelson green tree gecko and long-tailed bats *pekapeka* exist in the Karamea Place. The great spotted kiwi *roroa* is more secure in this part of its range, while the kea remains an iconic species in the alpine and subalpine zones.

Viable populations of southern short-tailed bats *pekapeka*, blue duck *whio*, great spotted kiwi *roroa* and the locally endemic moss *Epipterygium opararensense* and land snail *Powelliphanta annectens* are maintained in the Ōpārara Basin priority site (see Map 6). Viable populations of the locally endemic giant land snails *Powelliphanta superba* “Gunner River”, *P. superba prouseorum*, *P. superba harveyi*, *P. annectens* and *P. gilliesi* “Heaphy” exist in the Heaphy priority site, and *P. lignaria lusca* (which is endemic to hill country between the Little Wanganui River and Kongahu Point) and *P. l. lignaria* exist in the Karamea Bluffs priority site (see Map 6). The natural processes, indigenous biodiversity (such as the Nelson cave spider), and archaeological and cultural values of karst ecosystems of the Ōpārara and other sites in Karamea are maintained.

Weed invasion from sources on the margins of Kahurangi National Park is prevented and kahili ginger and banana passionfruit are eradicated. Exotic trees are being removed from public conservation lands with the highest values or areas with the highest risk of invasion from such species. Formerly logged areas of public conservation land are regenerating.

Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer and goats, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and improved ecosystem health. Possum control within parts of the Karamea priority place is helping remnant populations of *Powelliphanta* snails and birdlife recover. Goat eradication and surveillance programmes prevent new herds of unwanted wild animals establishing. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout Karamea Place.

*See also* Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### **4.2.1.5 Human history**

Karamea’s human history has associations with the voyaging waka which came from the Pacific and made landfall around the coastline. These tauranga waka (canoe landing sites) are culturally significant to Poutini Ngāi Tahu, who are descendants of these first peoples. There were several permanent settlements and long-term residential occupations in the area, especially at the Heaphy River mouth and in the Whakapoai (Heaphy) valley through to and over the current boundary with the Nelson/Marlborough Conservancy. Many of these first inhabitants are buried in these places at sites of significance that are the subject of ‘silent’ cultural files. These sites may be threatened by human activities (e.g. track or hut building) or natural processes (e.g. coastal erosion).

Charles Heaphy and Thomas Brunner were guided through this area in 1846 by Kehu, a Māori guide. The Karamea Place was extensively prospected in the late 1860s but the absence of any significant gold discoveries north of the Karamea Bluff

meant that these districts remained free from the frenzy of gold rush action which saw the settlement of most of the Buller district at this time.

In 1874, Karamea became the site for a special government settlement scheme, but isolation, floods, dense forests and large areas of infertile pakihi soils presented great hardship. Road access across the Karamea Bluffs to Westport was eventually established in 1914. Since the 1880s, efforts had also been made to provide a northern link to Collingwood in Golden Bay and a benched horse track was constructed; the forerunner of the present Heaphy Track.

Dairying and timber milling in the 20th century have resulted in the clearance of virtually all of the coastal alluvial forest between the Kohaihai and Little Wanganui Rivers and some of the surrounding hill country. In the 1980s, the large Kongahu Swamp was also drained for farmland. Elsewhere, however, Karamea has retained much of its wild character and as a result tourism and recreation are now making a significant contribution towards the local economy. The creation of Kahurangi National Park, which has brought the natural, historical and cultural attractions of Karamea to wider public attention, has further boosted local and visitor interest in the region.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Comprehensive research is undertaken about the history of gold prospecting and the timber industry in Karamea Place.

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae to: monitor and mitigate, where appropriate, threats to archaeological sites (e.g. at the site near Heaphy Hut which is under threat from natural coastal erosion processes); to actively manage specific sites; to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area; and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands (such as the gold mining sites at Ōpārara and the archaeological site on the Heaphy Track – see Map 6) are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining in Karamea Place, so the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found in the area. Actively managed sites are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection.

*See also* Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation

#### **4.2.1.6 Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020**

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Karamea Place. These values include (but are not limited to<sup>38</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); ana (caves and karst); wai (water); mahinga kai (cultural

---

<sup>38</sup> This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae. The 'Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan' (in draft form as at 2010) provides further details about cultural values, as does Appendix 1 of this CMS.

materials and the places these are gathered); landscapes, maunga (mountains) and other wāhi taonga; landforms (e.g. Kahurangi Point); rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants); oral histories of settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hikoi; early pa and kainga (e.g at Whakapoai); wāhi whawahi (battlegrounds); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

Cave and karst areas are managed to protect wāhi tapu and natural values as a priority above recreation, tourism or other uses of these sites (see Section 3.3.3.2 and Section 3.6.4.8).

Each of the cultural redress sites identified in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Map 4 and Appendix 3) is managed in accordance with that Act, ensuring the protection of their significant Ngāi Tahu values (see Section 3.1.3). The Place contains two Ngāi Tahu Tōpuni sites: Kahurangi (an area of approximately 28 hectares at Kahurangi Point) and Ōtūkoru Iti (an area of approximately 40 ha, also within Kahurangi National Park). Tōpuni status highlights the tribal significance of these sites to Ngāi Tahu. A number of specific principles guide the management of Kahurangi and Ōtūkoru Iti (see Section 3.1.3.1). Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is the Statutory Adviser for both of these Tōpuni (see Section 3.1.3.2). The Ōtūkoru Historic Reserve, approximately 15 hectares in size, is adjacent to the Ōtūkoru Iti Tōpuni area. A pou whenua is erected by Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae at the Kahurangi Tōpuni, which is the north-west coastal boundary of the rohe of Poutini Ngāi Tahu and the statutory boundary of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. Nearby, 647 hectares of land at Whakapoai is returned to the 'Successors to the Whakapoai Land'<sup>39</sup>.

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

Appendix 1, Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### **4.2.1.7 People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020**

Categories<sup>40</sup> of recreational opportunities available in the Karamea Place (see Map 7) include:

- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones;
- remote zones; and
- the gazetted Tasman Wilderness Area.

Key recreational features include:

- the coastline between Kohaihai and Kahurangi Point, which is outstanding for both its scenic and biodiversity values and for providing the longest stretch of true wilderness coastline left anywhere in central or northern New Zealand;
- the impressive natural architecture and fossil-rich caves of the Ōpārara district; the earthquake-shattered gorge of the Karamea River, which is widely regarded as one of the northern South Island's finest locations for whitewater rafting; and

---

<sup>39</sup> The substance of the Whakapoai claim to the Waitangi Tribunal was that around 1,600 acres of land, now known as the Whakapoai block, which was set aside at the southern end of the Heaphy valley and the Gunner River valley, east of the Iwituaroa Range as a permanent reserve for 38 named individuals under the South Island Landless Natives Act (SILNA) 1906, was never in fact transferred to those owners. The Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 provides three alternative forms of redress for this claim. The Whakapoai block is surrounded by Kahurangi National Park and, at the time of writing, was managed as if it were a part of this Park.

<sup>40</sup> Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.



- the western ends of the Heaphy and Wangapeka Tracks which are among the most popular tramping routes in the northern half of the South Island.

The distinctive natural character of the Karamea Place and its recreational opportunities are protected and enhanced through the joint efforts of local communities and the Department. Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department and/or enhance people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of natural, historical or cultural values. Concession activities are generally of low impact and are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the conservation values of the particular site.

### **Frontcountry sites**

Recreational opportunities are safe and easily accessible. Mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9) and four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17) are possible on some formed roads, e.g. Oparara Valley logging road and Nimrodel Road, and mountain biking opportunities are also available on some tracks, e.g. K-Road.

The K-Road mountain biking track and other tracks provide access to a number of spectacular cave and karst features in the Ōpārara Basin. For instance, the Honeycomb Hill Caves contain over 13 km of passages and have yielded the most varied collection of subfossil bones ever recovered from a New Zealand cave. These include over 50 species of birds, more than a third of which are now extinct (including several moa species). The Honeycomb Hill Caves system is a fragile environment requiring protection from the impacts of visitation. People are able to access some cave and karst features, either unaccompanied (e.g. Box Canyon, Crazy Paving, Ōpārara Arch, Moria Gate and Fenian caves) or as part of a guided<sup>41</sup> trip (e.g. through the Honeycomb Hill Caves). In other situations, access to cave systems is restricted in order to protect natural or cultural heritage values (see Table 4 in Section 3.6.4.8).

The Ōpārara Valley Project Trust contributes to the provision of an extended range of day-use visitor facilities in the Ōpārara Basin. The Department supports this initiative through a Deed of Understanding, signed in 2003.

The Kohaihai end of the Heaphy Track and the associated Nikau Walk offer an introduction to the forest communities that occur along this coast. At some coastal locations, such as the Karamea estuary, potential exists for nature watching and interpretation facilities (see Section 3.7.1).

### **Backcountry-remote, remote zones and gazetted wilderness areas**

Tramping experiences available range from long day walks to the virtual wilderness. The Heaphy Track is New Zealand's longest Great Walk and is managed primarily to provide a comfortable multi-day tramping opportunity for people with limited backcountry experience. The partial review of the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan, which was publicly notified in 2009, determined whether mountain biking is permitted on the Heaphy Track on a seasonal basis. The Wangapeka track caters mostly for New Zealanders with some tramping experience. Group sizes for guided trips on the Heaphy and Wangapeka tracks are limited to a maximum of 12 people per trip, including guides. Guided walks (see Section 3.6.4.6) and mountain

---

<sup>41</sup> People must be guided by either an authorised concessionaire or an authorised member of the New Zealand Speleological Society, and visitation must comply with the West Coast Conservancy Cave and Karst Management Strategy and Operational Guidelines.

biking on the Heaphy Track (see Section 3.6.4.9) are managed in accordance with the provisions of the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan.

Another major attraction is the whitewater challenges of the Karamea River, which is regarded as one of the most scenic and challenging rafting rivers in the northern South Island. Practicable access to the head of the Karamea River for whitewater rafting or kayaking opportunities requires the use of an approved helicopter operator (see Section 3.6.4.2). Guided rafting and kayaking activities on the Karamea River (see Section 3.6.4.10) are managed in accordance with the provisions of the Kahurangi National Park Management Plan.

The Fenian Track through the lower Ōpārara gorge follows an old miners' trail to further caves and a scattering of historic gold mining sites. For those seeking more strenuous challenges there is a track on to Mount Stormy and the two main tramping routes through the northwest Nelson ranges (the Heaphy and Wangapeka Tracks).

No additional huts or multi-day tramping tracks are constructed in the Karamea backcountry-remote zone, either by the Department or concessionaires (see Section 3.7.1). New facilities in this zone include extended day walks associated with community/Department partnership agreements for the Ōpārara Basin. All facilities are managed so as to maximise the self-dependent, relatively quiet experience sought by people.

For those seeking a more remote experience, a marked route through the Karamea Gorge to Greys Hut provides access to outstanding backcountry fishing opportunities and the 86,946 hectare Tasman Wilderness Area. South of the Karamea River, a marked route onto the open tops of Stormy Ridge provides access to a popular area for hunting by locals and a vantage point over the southern reaches of the Kahurangi National Park. There is also extensive scope for wilderness tramping, both along the coast north of the Heaphy River and in the adjacent granite ranges and river valleys, including the western segment of the Tasman Wilderness Area.

The gazetted Tasman Wilderness Area (see Section 3.6.1.2) extends from near the sea at Kohaihai to the Tamsan Mountains and contains the headwaters of the Heaphy, Karamea and Aorere rivers. The Wilderness Area contains plants which survive from the Pleistocene glaciation of 50,000 years ago and which are not found anywhere else in the world. The hills, valleys, gorges and bluffs that are formed from some of the oldest and most complex rock formations in the South Island encircle spectacular lakes and rivers. The Wilderness Area provides a special recreational opportunity, offering sanctuary, peace, solitude and inspiration to wilderness seekers who have the desire and self-reliance necessary to explore the wild heart of Kahurangi National Park. People have the opportunity to witness a truly unspoilt landscape and experience nature on a one to one basis in the absence of tracks, huts or any other facilities. The Wilderness Area provides relatively open tramping terrain that is not particularly difficult to traverse outside of winter.

Kahurangi and North Mokihinui remote zones (see Section 3.6.1.3) are protected for their particular values and provide opportunities for self-reliant recreation on nature's terms; consequently they have few facilities or services.

Aircraft activities within Kahurangi National Park are managed in accordance with the air access provisions of the Park's management plan and, as a result, biodiversity values and the opportunity for people to experience the remoteness, impressive scenery, peace and natural quiet of the Park are protected. Aircraft may utilise

specified flight paths when flying over the Park, thereby minimising disturbance to people on the ground. In the backcountry-remote zone, aircraft operators may land wherever practicable – except in the Heaphy Track area where landings may be restricted to specified sites near huts. Flight paths are located away from the Heaphy Track. People in the backcountry-remote zone experience natural quiet for a large percentage of their trip duration. The unique wilderness qualities of the coastal Kahurangi remote zone are protected. Aircraft landings to position recreational users within the Kahurangi remote zone do not occur and the Department advocates against aircraft landings along the adjacent coastline. The high natural quiet values of the Tasman Wilderness Area are protected by prohibiting landings (other than for conservation management, emergency or search and rescue purposes) and discouraging overflights. There is a high probability that people undertaking trips in the Kahurangi remote zone and Tasman Wilderness Area will experience isolation from the sights and sounds of other humans.

Aircraft landings on public conservation land located outside of Kahurangi National Park (see Map 6) are managed as follows. Irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone (see Map 7). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and kayakers) or for scenic landings. Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings. (See also Section 3.6.4.2)

If a requiring authority proposes a designation for a road link or corridor between Karamea and Collingwood, the Minister of Conservation will subsequently consider the proposal. Any such consideration ensures that the protection of the landscape, ecological, historic and recreational values remain the primary objective of Kahurangi National Park's management.

The Karamea Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, whitebaiting, game bird, deer and goat hunting (see Sections 3.6.4.13 to 3.6.4.16).

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

#### **4.2.2 Desired Outcome for Kawatiri Place**

Section 4.2.2 describes what the Kawatiri Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

*See also* Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

##### **4.2.2.1 Place description**

The Kawatiri Place includes the coastal districts from Kongahu Point (midway along the Karamea Bluff) in the north to Westport in the south, and inland includes the ranges and valleys north of the Buller *Kawatiri* River as far east as Doctors Creek in the upper Buller gorge and virtually the entire catchment of the Mokihinui River (Maps 8-9). The southern boundary of this Place follows the Buller *Kawatiri* River from Inangahua township to the Coast Road turnoff, then down the Coast Road to the Nile *Waitakere* River, just north of Charleston. A small area near the Matiri Range

is gazetted as Kahurangi National Park (see Map 8). Kawatiri contains the second largest town on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, Westport (population 5,800 as at 2010).

#### **4.2.2.2 Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020**

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Kawatiri Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

Kawatiri is one of the more geologically complex parts of the Conservancy, with its great diversity of landforms and varied landscapes. Among its most distinctive features are the deep gorges carved through the coastal ranges by the Buller *Kawatiri* and Mokihinui Rivers and the rolling uplands of the Denniston and Stockton coal plateau. The assemblage of parent rocks includes gneiss, greywacke, granite, breccia, coal measures, limestones and siltstones. The high infertile coal plateaux provide some of this Place's highly distinctive ecological communities (see Section 2.2.1.4, Coal Plateau Landscape), as do similarly infertile areas of boggy upland and lowland 'pakihi'.

The topography of Kawatiri is dominated by the Buller *Kawatiri* and Mokihinui Rivers which flow westwards to the sea at right angles to the Mount William, Glasgow and Lyell Ranges, carving deeply incised continuous gorges quite different from the larger rivers further south. The Buller *Kawatiri* River has the sixth largest catchment in New Zealand and has the greatest increase in flow in times of peak flood, when increases can be up to 20 times mean flow. The long Mokihinui gorge is a deeper and steeper version of the lower Buller gorge, but the most confined and dramatic gorge in Kawatiri is in the Ngakawau River where it cuts a deep (300 m) narrow trench through the northern end of the Stockton coal plateau.

Other distinctive landscapes of gentler contour include: the extensive delta of the Buller *Kawatiri* River and associated complex of marine and fluvial terraces; the rolling uplands of the Denniston and Stockton coal plateaux; a series of wide inland forested basins in the Ngakawau, Orikaka and Mokihinui river systems; and sizeable areas of elevated inland pakihi.

*See also* Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### **4.2.2.3 Indigenous biodiversity**

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

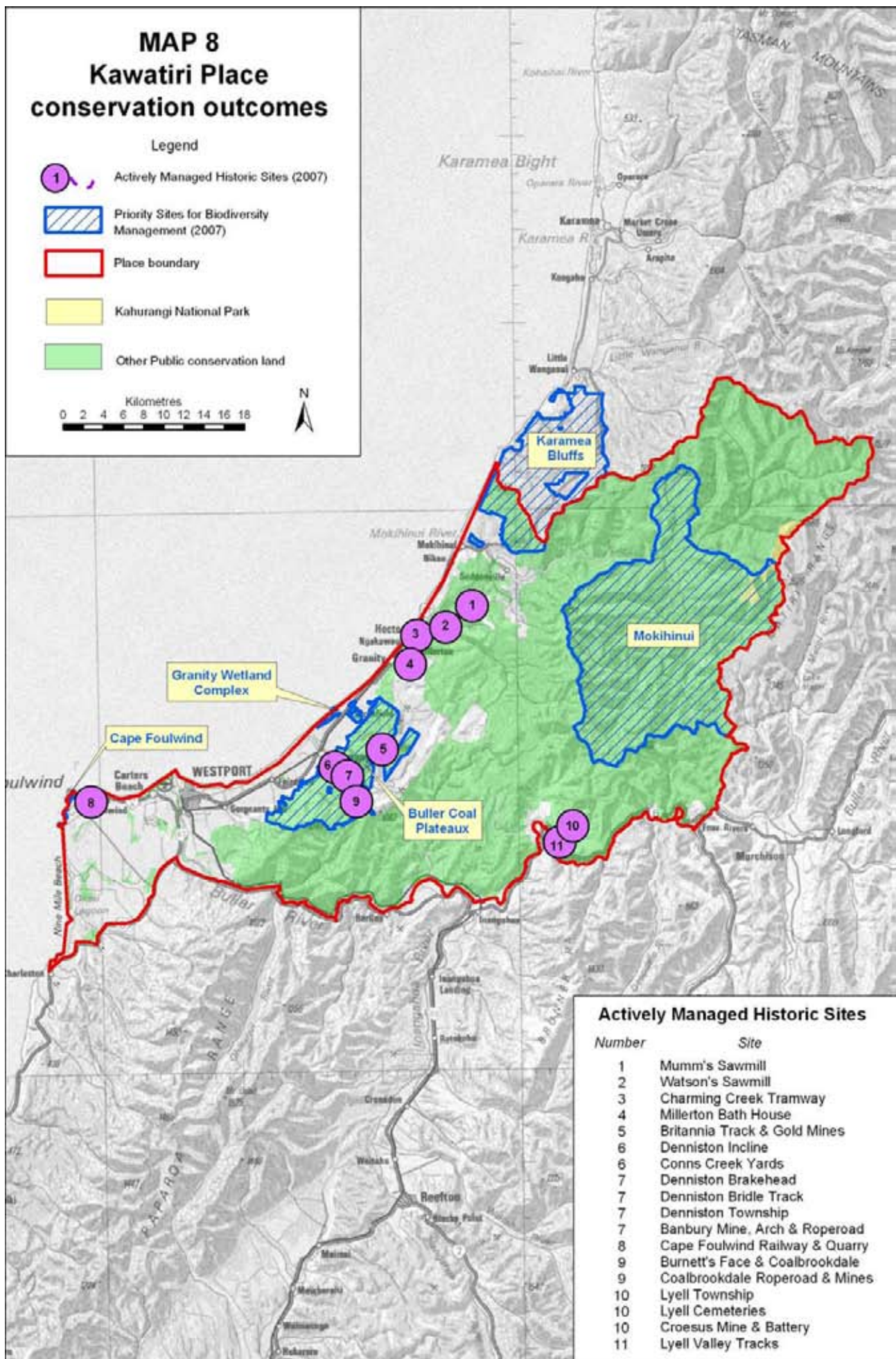
Remnant indigenous ecosystems, habitats and linkages on the coastal lowlands between Mokihinui and Westport, and on the Denniston and Stockton coal plateaux, have been and continue to be modified by a variety of land uses, including mining. Invasive weeds are a significant problem in Kawatiri, especially old man's beard, horsetail, asiatic knotweed and crack and grey willow. For example, old man's beard is present in the lower Buller *Kawatiri* gorge and crack willow in Bradshaw's Lagoon. At Mokihinui and Orikaka forests, exotic plantations are interspersed with remnant indigenous forest. Didymo is present in the Buller *Kawatiri* River. Goats, red deer and possums have been present for many years and continue to alter forest composition. The Ngakawau basin, South Mokihinui catchment and the Ōkari conservation area are particularly threatened by goats. Predators impact on *Powelliphanta* snails and many other native species. Great spotted kiwi *roroa* and blue duck *whio* are especially vulnerable to stoat predation. Fire is a potential threat

# MAP 8 Kawatiri Place conservation outcomes

## Legend

-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2007)
-  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2007)
-  Place boundary
-  Kahurangi National Park
-  Other Public conservation land

Kilometres  
0 2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18



### Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
1	Mumm's Sawmill
2	Watson's Sawmill
3	Charming Creek Tramway
4	Millerton Bath House
5	Britannia Track & Gold Mines
6	Denniston Incline
6	Conns Creek Yards
7	Denniston Brakehead
7	Denniston Bridle Track
7	Denniston Township
7	Banbury Mine, Arch & Roperoad
8	Cape Foulwind Railway & Quarry
9	Burnett's Face & Coalbrookdale
9	Coalbrookdale Roperoad & Mines
10	Lyell Township
10	Lyell Cemeteries
10	Croesus Mine & Battery
11	Lyell Valley Tracks

**Map 9**  
**Kawatiri Place**  
**recreation outcomes**

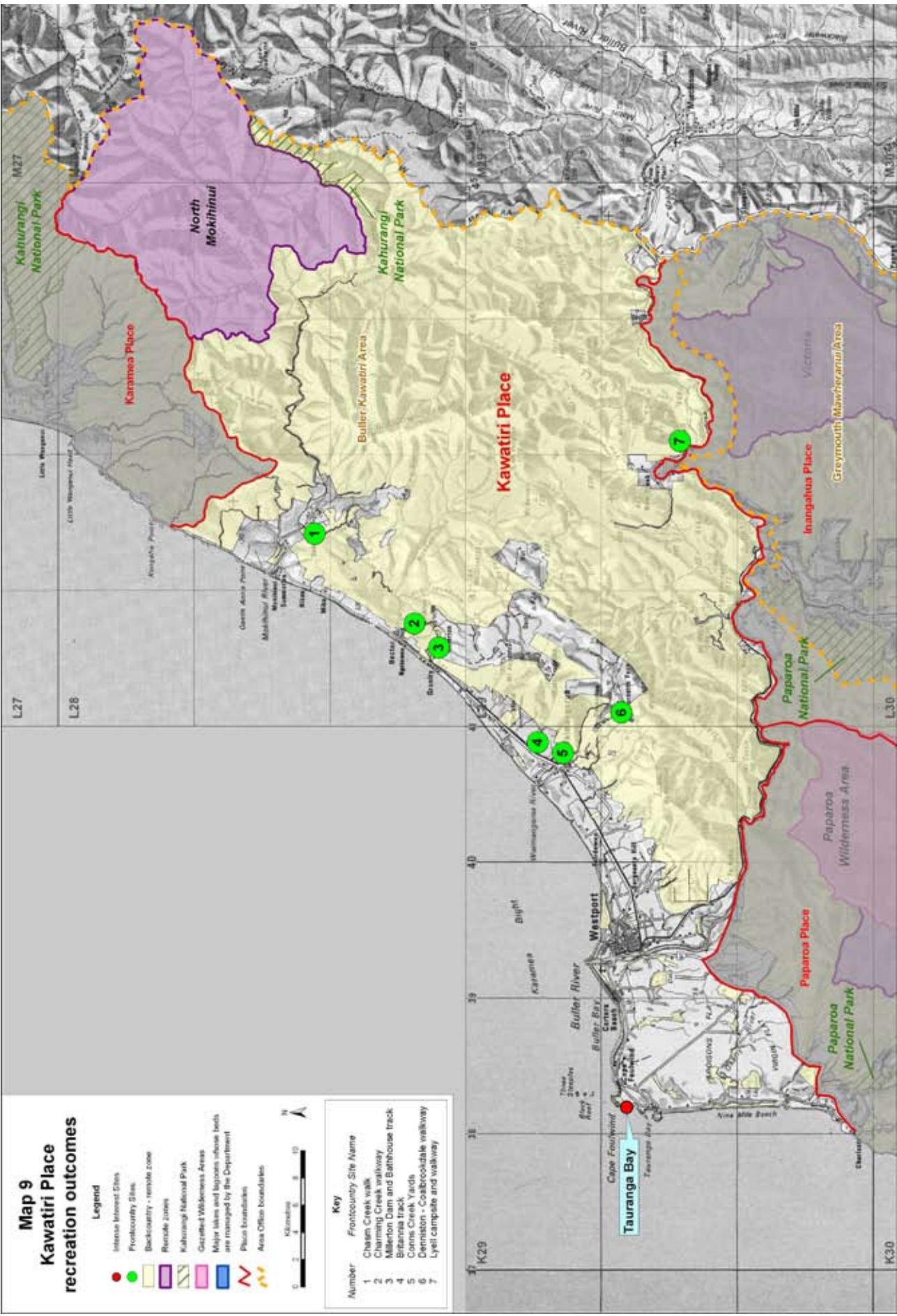
**Legend**

- Interim Interest Sites
- Frontcountry Sites
- Backcountry - remote zone
- Remote zones
- Kahurangi National Park
- Gairdell Wilderness Areas
- Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
- Place boundaries
- Area Office boundaries

**Key**

Number	Frontcountry Site Name
1	Chasen Creek walk
2	Charming Creek walkway
3	Milton Dam and Bathhouse track
4	Britannia track
5	Combs Creek Yards
6	Denniston - Coalbrookdale walkway
7	Lyell campsite and walkway

0 2 4 6 8 10 Kilometres



to large areas in Kawatiri, particularly tall mānuka shrublands between Charleston and White Horse Hill and alpine scrublands on Denniston plateau.

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

### **Indigenous biodiversity in 2020**

At the Karamea Bluffs, Mokihinui, Buller Coal Plateaux, Granity Wetland Complex and Cape Foulwind priority sites (see Map 8) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Kawatiri Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010.

Little blue penguin *kororā* colonies of the Kawatiri coastline and New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* breeding colonies and haul-out sites around Kongahu Point, Three Steeples and Cape Foulwind remain relatively free from human-induced disturbance. Viable populations of Hector's dolphin *aihe*, sooty shearwater *tūtū*, little blue penguin *kororā* and New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* exist. Threatened coastal plants, including coastal cresses *nau* (*Lepidium* spp.) and the spurge *Euphorbia glauca*, thrive along the Kawatiri coastline.

A representative sample of lowland forest and wetland remnants on the low-lying coastal plains between Mokihinui and Charleston is legally protected within public conservation lands or via other mechanisms such as covenants and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3). The natural character of these remnants is improving.

The network of functioning freshwater wetlands on the coastal plains is sustained and valued by the local community. Coastal swamps and lagoons, including:

- the Granity wetland complex (including Birchfield swamp), which extends along about 10 km of the coast between Granity and the Waimangaroa River (see Granity Wetland Complex priority site on Map 8);
- the nationally significant Orowaiti Lagoon located just north of Westport;
- the tidal areas at the mouth of the Buller Kawatiri River (especially on the western side); and
- the large Ōkari Lagoon south of Tauranga Bay,

retain their high biodiversity values and continue to provide important natural habitats in this lowland landscape. Native species are dominant. The natural character of the Granity wetland complex priority site (see Map 8) is improving and contains a substantial representation of the plant communities of the formerly widespread lowland coastal plain wetlands of the Kawatiri Place. Populations of indigenous freshwater fish, wetland birds (including Australasian bittern *matuku*) and the threatened aquatic plant *Myriophyllum robustum* are thriving. Indigenous freshwater fish populations are also sustained in other wetlands, including Ōkari Lagoon, Bradshaws Creek and other tidal creeks.

The Buller *Kawatiri* River and its tributaries support a higher diversity of freshwater fish species than any other single river system in the country. The Buller *Kawatiri* catchment contains nationally important populations of long-finned eels. The lower main stem contains reaches that are of national significance, and the entire catchment is one of the best remaining New Zealand examples of a large unregulated river (Chadderton *et al* 2004). In 2001 a National Water Conservation Order was issued over the majority of the Buller *Kawatiri* River catchment. These waters are retained

in their natural state because of their outstanding characteristics, features and values. Maintenance and enhancement of the exceptional freshwater biodiversity of the Buller *Kawatiri* River and catchment remains a high priority for the Department.

Other rivers and streams in the Kawatiri Place also have high freshwater value. For example, an initial national assessment of the most natural and representative river systems identified the Mokihinui River as the seventh-highest ranked river in New Zealand by natural heritage value (Chadderton *et al* 2004). This reflects the largely intact nature of its catchment vegetation and its environmental richness, which is a product of its diverse geology. The catchment provides important habitat for blue duck *whio* and contains populations of threatened fish, most notably long-finned eel *tuna*.

Riparian management continues to improve with the support of landowners, the local community and local authorities, enhancing the connectivity, viability and life-supporting capacity of ecosystems, particularly whitebait spawning habitat. Where practical, riparian margins throughout much of the Kawatiri Place are fenced to exclude livestock. Knowledge about the effects of land use on threatened freshwater fish species is improved and advocacy for protection of their habitats (see Section 3.8.3) is successful. Containment and/or treatment of acid mining discharges and other pollutants, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems.

Dense forest of northern *rātā*, *nīkau*, *kiekie* and other coastal species still cover hillsides overlooking the sea in the Granity/Ngakawau area and north of the Mokihinui rivermouth (Karamea Bluffs priority site, see Map 8). Northern *rātā* remains a dominant emergent tree along the Karamea Bluffs and these forests support viable populations of the locally endemic giant land snails, including *Powelliphanta lignaria lusca* and *P. l. lignaria*. Restoration projects, such as at the Cape Foulwind priority site (see Map 8), are being undertaken by local communities and private land owners. These projects are increasing the connectivity and thus viability of remnant ecosystems, and returning tree species such as northern *rātā* and *nīkau* to the coastal lowlands.

Beech *tawai* forest continues to dominate both lowland and montane forests throughout much of Kawatiri. Beech forest remains widespread in the Mokihinui catchment and the northern tributaries on the north bank of the Buller *Kawatiri* River. Elsewhere, beech is usually a component of more complex forest communities including a wide variety of podocarp and broadleaved trees with rimu often prominent at lower altitudes. Impressive stands of tall kahikatea/rimu forest still remain in some inland lowland basins such as at Mokihinui Forks. Native broom, *Coprosma grandifolia*, pate and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers are regenerating on the earthquake-generated slips and in the forests of the Mokihinui priority site (see Map 8) as a result of wild animal control work. The Mokihinui catchment supports viable populations of the locally endemic giant land snails *Powelliphanta lignaria unicolorata* and *P. l. ruforadiata*.

The altitude of the treeline on the coastal ranges is generally 1000-1200 m a.s.l., but several thousand hectares of gently rolling terrain on the Denniston and Stockton plateau at altitudes of 600-900 m a.s.l. continue to be dominated by non-forest vegetation communities. The infertile, acidic often waterlogged soils support distinctive open moorlands of specialist tussock and shrubland communities. These communities are dominated by the endemic coal measure tussock *Chionochloa*



*juncea*, red tussock, and low shrublands of prostrate mānuka, yellow-silver pine and pygmy pine. A representative sample of viable coal measure ecosystems and landscapes on the Buller Coal Plateaux priority site (see Map 8) is legally protected. Rehabilitation is actively pursued on coal measure ecosystems and related freshwater ecosystems that were mined in the past. The natural character of previously modified areas is improving as invasive weeds, including gorse, broom and *Juncus squarrosus* are controlled and four-wheel driving is confined to existing formed roads. The Buller coal plateaux priority site (see Map 8) supports viable populations of locally endemic giant land snails, including *Powelliphanta patrickensis* and *P. "Augustus"*, the great spotted kiwi *roroa* and a high diversity of bryophytes.

The natural processes, indigenous biodiversity, and archaeological and cultural values of Kawatiri's cave and karst ecosystems are maintained.

Kawatiri remains a stronghold for great spotted kiwi *roroa* and for western weka; the latter are a common sight at the Cape Foulwind priority site (see Map 8). Viable populations of locally endemic giant land snails, including *Powelliphanta lignaria rotella* and *P. l. johnstoni* are found in the Ngakawau catchment. Other threatened species, including South Island kākā, blue duck *whio*, long-tailed bats *pekapeka*, the Granity skink and other lizards, also exist in the Kawatiri Place.

Weed invasion into public conservation lands from adjacent weed sources is prevented and human activities within public conservation lands do not contribute to the spread or introduction of invasive weeds or animal pests. Formerly logged areas of public conservation land are regenerating. Exotic trees are being removed from public conservation lands with the highest values or areas with the highest risk of invasion from such species. Kahili ginger is eradicated from public conservation lands, while the area covered by old man's beard continues to be reduced.

Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer and goats, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and improved ecosystem health. Goat control programmes are helping forest areas recover and regular surveillance prevents new populations of unwanted wild animals establishing. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout the Kawatiri Place.

*See also* Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### **4.2.2.4 Human history**

Kawatiri Place is significant from a Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural perspective. Occupation and use occurred from the coast to the high plateau of the Waimangaroa and the place called Te Kuha - one of the 'chain' of places used by Poutini Ngāi Tahu when travelling the length of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Other sites of cultural significance, which link the present day to the past, include the tauranga waka (landing place) at Tauranga Bay and the extensive sands and wetlands of Ōkari Lagoon. Large birding areas at Orikaka and vast coastal resources of marine mammals and other marine life provided sustenance for the people. The Buller *Kawatiri* River was also the 'highway' to and from the east for those following the pounamu trails.

Aspects of the coastal landscapes of Kawatiri were briefly described from the sea by Abel Tasman in 1642, James Cook in 1770 and Dumont D'Urville in 1827. It was later described in some detail by Charles Heaphy who explored this coast in 1846

with Thomas Brunner and Māori guide Kehu. Brunner added a description of the upper and lower Buller gorges in 1848. Subsequent explorers like James MacKay (1857), John Rochfort (1859) and Julius von Haast (1860) added further details on this region's topography and natural heritage.

Following gold discoveries on the Buller *Kawatiri* River and at Waimangaroa, Westport became the first European settlement on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (June 1861). Mining activity initially focused on the raised beach deposits and later the beach sands of Charleston, Brighton and Addisons Flat which, at their peak, were the commercial centres of a combined population of some 6,000 people. In 1869, a road was opened through the Buller gorge linking Westport with Nelson. The quartz reefs in the Buller greywacke rocks were extensively mined for gold at Lyell Creek and in the Mokihinui gorge.

As gold mining waned, coal became the mainstay of the Buller economy. The main coalfields and associated settlements were on the high plateau north of the Buller *Kawatiri* River, with mining underway at Denniston in 1880 and at Millerton in 1896. Considerable feats of engineering were required to bring the coal down to the coastal lowlands, with the Denniston inclined railway in particular being regarded as one of the engineering wonders of its time. With no rail link to other centres prior to 1941, the port at Westport, like that at Greymouth, was specifically designed for shipping coal. Coal was also mined in other widely scattered locations (e.g. Charming Creek).

Despite extensive prospecting of breccia (the only rock in New Zealand in which uranium/thorium mineralisation occurs) from the lower Buller *Kawatiri* gorge in the 1950s, no grades worthy of mining were located. From 1953 a large cement works has operated at Cape Foulwind using nearby deposits of high quality limestone.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Historic places are one of the most important features of Kawatiri and also one of the major attractions of its public conservation lands.

Comprehensive research is undertaken about the history of coal mining, gold mining and the timber industry in Kawatiri Place.

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae to monitor and mitigate (where appropriate) threats to archaeological sites, to actively manage specific sites, to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area, and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

Protection of historic places is a prominent management theme in Kawatiri. All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands (see Map 8) are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining in Kawatiri Place, so the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found in the area. Local communities are actively involved in historical and cultural heritage conservation projects. People are encouraged to visit and learn about many of these sites (e.g. the Charming Creek coal mining and sawmill site, coal mining sites at Millerton and Denniston, the Britannia gold mining site, the Cape Foulwind rock quarrying site and lighthouse, and gold mining and early settlement

sites at Charleston and Brighton). Actively managed sites are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection.

People are particularly encouraged to experience Kawatiri's mining history, with a focus on the Denniston and Millerton coal plateaux (see Section 4.2.2.6). The Department works with the local community and other people and organisations to develop and implement a concept plan for the Denniston coal plateau. Site management ensures that the protection of historic values takes priority over recreational use, with the emphasis on low-impact facilities and activities, such as walks and interpretation, which encourage people to learn about and understand the history of the site. In recognition of the area's significant values, the Department investigates the possibility of gazetting public conservation land on the Denniston coal plateau as an historic reserve.

*See also* Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation

#### **4.2.2.5 Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020**

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Kawatiri Place. These values include (but are not limited to<sup>42</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); wai (water); mahinga kai (cultural materials and the places these are gathered); ana (caves); landscapes, maunga (mountains e.g. Te Kuha, Mt Rochford Paparoa) and other wāhi taonga; landforms (e.g. Three Steeples Torea, Ōkari Lagoon and dunes); rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants); oral histories of: settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hikoi; early pa and kainga (e.g. at Whareatea); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

Cave and karst areas are managed to protect wāhi tapu and natural values as a priority above recreation, tourism or other uses of these sites (see Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.6.4.8).

The Ōkari Lagoon cultural redress site (a Statutory Acknowledgement and Deed of Recognition area) is managed in accordance with the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Section 3.1.3 and Appendix 3), ensuring the protection of its significant Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values.

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

Appendix 1, Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### **4.2.2.6 People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020**

Categories<sup>43</sup> of recreational opportunities available in the Kawatiri Place (see Map 9) include:

- the Tauranga Bay intense interest site;
- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones; and

---

<sup>42</sup> This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae. The 'Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan' (in draft form as at 2010) provides further details about cultural values, as does Appendix 1 of this CMS.

<sup>43</sup> Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.

- remote zones.

People are attracted to the wide range of recreational opportunities which Kawatiri Place offers and are able to use a variety of access methods to explore natural areas and discover historic treasures. Key features include Denniston, Mokihinui River, with its white-water rafting opportunities, and the Tauranga Bay seal colony 'intense interest' site. Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department and/or enhance people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of natural, historical or cultural values. Concession activities are generally of low impact and are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the conservation values of the particular site.

### **Intense interest sites and frontcountry sites**

Recreational opportunities in this zone are dominated by the Tauranga Bay seal colony, Denniston and a range of other sites associated with the industrial heritage of Buller *Kawatiri*. These opportunities are safe and easily accessible.

The New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* breeding colony at Tauranga Bay near Westport is the most popular wildlife viewing opportunity in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy. The colony is located at the southern end of the 4 km coastal Cape Foulwind track and is probably the most accessible place in the country to observe a New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* breeding site at close quarters without unduly disturbing the occupants. High visitor use does not have an adverse impact on either the appeal or natural values of this intense interest site. This is primarily due to continuing ecological restoration undertaken in partnership with the community, and the careful design and construction of facilities. A wheelchair standard track provides access to the seal colony viewpoint in the west, and a walking track continues over the cape headland to Lighthouse Road. The Cape Foulwind sea cliffs provide launch sites for paragliders, which can land on the beach below.

Kawatiri has a colourful colonial history, including two of the largest goldfields and the spectacular feats of engineering associated with its long era of 'coaling from the clouds'. Today an important component of its appeal derives from this mining past, both in its range of historical sites (see Section 4.2.2.4) and in the walking and tramping opportunities provided by former mining and timber milling tracks, tramways and railways.

The historic coalfields, communities and industrial heritage of the Buller *Kawatiri* plateaux are a popular recreational focus, where the emphasis is on day walks. Mount Rochfort is an easily accessible place to experience the coal measure ecosystems and landscapes of the coal plateaux. An outstanding opportunity for historic heritage appreciation is available at Denniston. People may take part in an underground museum experience via an interpretative journey along the restored Banbury roperoad by tram. The one kilometre journey begins at the brakehead and continues along the roperoad, past the restored Banbury Arch, into Banbury mine. The historic bridle track provides walking access to the brakehead and Denniston township. People can also drive up to the brakehead car park. Several walking opportunities are available within the township and across the plateau. A new track, incorporating above-ground sections of the old roperoad and Denniston Incline, provides access through to Burnetts face and Coalbrookdale areas and links to the town walk at Denniston. Interpretation on the plateau informs people about historic heritage values as well as natural heritage. A four-wheel drive loop track on the Denniston plateau provides a challenging journey across a spectacular sub-alpine

environment, offering dramatic views of mountain and coastal landscapes. Due to the fragile nature of the area, access is restricted, and controlled by a locked gate (see Section 3.6.4.17). Formed roads also provide access to paragliding launch sites on the Denniston and Stockton Plateaux.

The Charming Creek track through the Ngakawau gorge is a major attraction, where people are able to experience distinctive natural, historical and recreational values. The site is managed to protect both its historic integrity and maintain the day-walking and mountain biking opportunities the track provides. These values are not compromised by other activities. At Lyell, in the upper gorge of the Buller *Kawatiri* River, facilities for camping, picnicking and walking are provided. Tracks on either side of Lyell Creek provide access to the historic cemetery and 19th century alluvial and hard rock gold mining remains. Recreational gold fossicking opportunities are available at Lyell Creek and Britannia Stream (see Table 6).

Other frontcountry tracks include the short Chasm Creek track near Seddonville and an old benched miners' track to the historic Britannia Mine in the coastal hills between Granity and Waimangaroa.

Within Kawatiri, four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17), mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9) and horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) are possible on some roads (e.g. four-wheel drive roads at Denniston and Rochfort). Additional mountain biking opportunities are also available on some tracks or routes (e.g. in the Denniston area and on the Charming Creek track).

#### **Backcountry-remote and remote zones**

The Mokihinui catchment is managed primarily to provide the kind of challenging remote backcountry opportunities enjoyed by experienced New Zealanders and is maintained accordingly. Management of the catchment protects the opportunity for people to experience the remoteness, peace and natural quiet of the area and its natural, historical and cultural heritage values. The historic inland pack track up the Mokihinui gorge to Specimen Creek is maintained. A marked route continues on to the Mokihinui Forks Hut. In the north branch of the river the North Mokihinui remote zone provides opportunities for self-reliant recreation (e.g. hunting and tramping) on nature's terms and consequently has few facilities or services (see Section 3.6.1.3). The Goat Creek Hut provides accommodation in the south branch of the Mokihinui. Backcountry routes give access to areas such as the Glasgow Range, the Thousand Acres at Matiri, and up Lyell Creek, enhancing hunting opportunities. No additional tracks or huts are constructed by the Department, but the potential for access linking the Mokihinui and the Lyell is recognised. The waters of the Mokihinui River, including the rapids of the Mokihinui gorge, are valued for kayaking and rafting (see Section 3.6.4.10).

Mountain biking is increasingly popular on the Buller Coal Plateaux and along the pylon line maintenance tracks between Denniston and New Creek in the lower Buller *Kawatiri* gorge.

Irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone and the remote zone (see Map 9). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and

kayakers) or for scenic landings. Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

The Kawatiri Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, whitebaiting, game bird, deer and goat hunting.

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

### **4.2.3 Desired Outcome for Paparoa Place**

Section 4.2.3 describes what the Paparoa Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

*See also* Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

#### **4.2.3.1 Place description**

Paparoa Place is one of the most complex and distinctive Places in the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. It includes much of the Paparoa Range (down to the Barrytown coastal plain in the south) and most of Paparoa National Park (see Map 10), excluding outlier areas west of State Highway 69 that were gazetted as part of the Park in 2002.

The southern boundary of the Paparoa Place runs from the coast at the southern end of the Barrytown flats to the crest of the central Paparoa Range (Maps 10-11). The eastern boundary runs up the central Paparoa Range to Rough River, then down Rough River for a short distance and back up the eastern branch of Paparoa Range to Mt Wise. From here the boundary follows the range to the eastern boundary of the Paparoa Wilderness Area and then down Blackwater River to the Buller *Kawatiri* River. The northern boundary follows the Buller *Kawatiri* River from Blackwater River junction to the Coast Road turnoff, then down the Coast Road to the Nile *Waitakere* rivermouth, just north of Charleston.

#### **4.2.3.2 Paparoa National Park in 2020**






Paparoa National Park stands as a premier example of natural New Zealand. It is one of the few national parks where natural quiet predominates and is a sanctuary for a diversity of nationally and internationally important geological features and indigenous plants and animals. The Park is uncluttered by intrusive structures. It contains exceptional natural landscapes and landforms, including the Bullock Creek polje<sup>44</sup> Ramsar site. The central feature is a low-lying forested basin: the complex Barrytown Syncline. The syncline lies parallel with the rest of the main Paparoa range and extends from the Punakaiki River to the Tiropahi River. Its influence has led to the distinctive drainage pattern, soils and vegetation of the area as well as many cave systems. A network of high quality tracks allow people to make short excursions to explore the Park's karst landscapes, forests, rivers and coastal scenery, and to experience natural quiet, peace and tranquillity. More adventurous recreationists are able to venture further on extensive track systems and routes to experience peace, solitude, inspiration, recreational enjoyment and challenge. The adjacent Paparoa Wilderness Area (see Map 11) contains undisturbed natural treasures and provides the ultimate nature experience to those who wish to meet its challenges. Paparoa

---

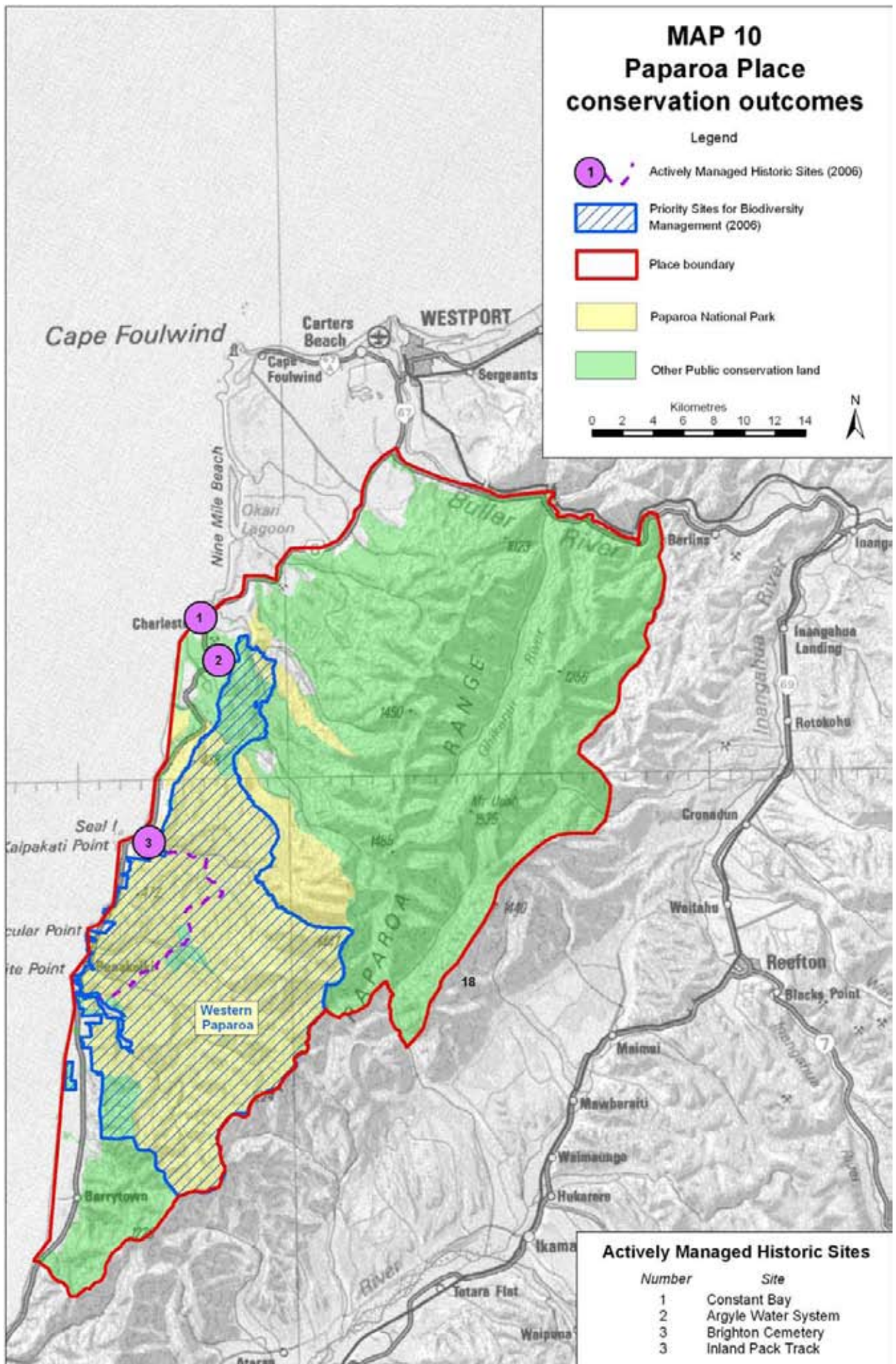
<sup>44</sup> A 'polje' is a large enclosed depression (with steep sides and a flat floor) caused by subsidence in a karst region.

# MAP 10 Paparoa Place conservation outcomes

## Legend

-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2006)
-  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2006)
-  Place boundary
-  Paparoa National Park
-  Other Public conservation land

Kilometres  
0 2 4 6 8 10 12 14



## Actively Managed Historic Sites

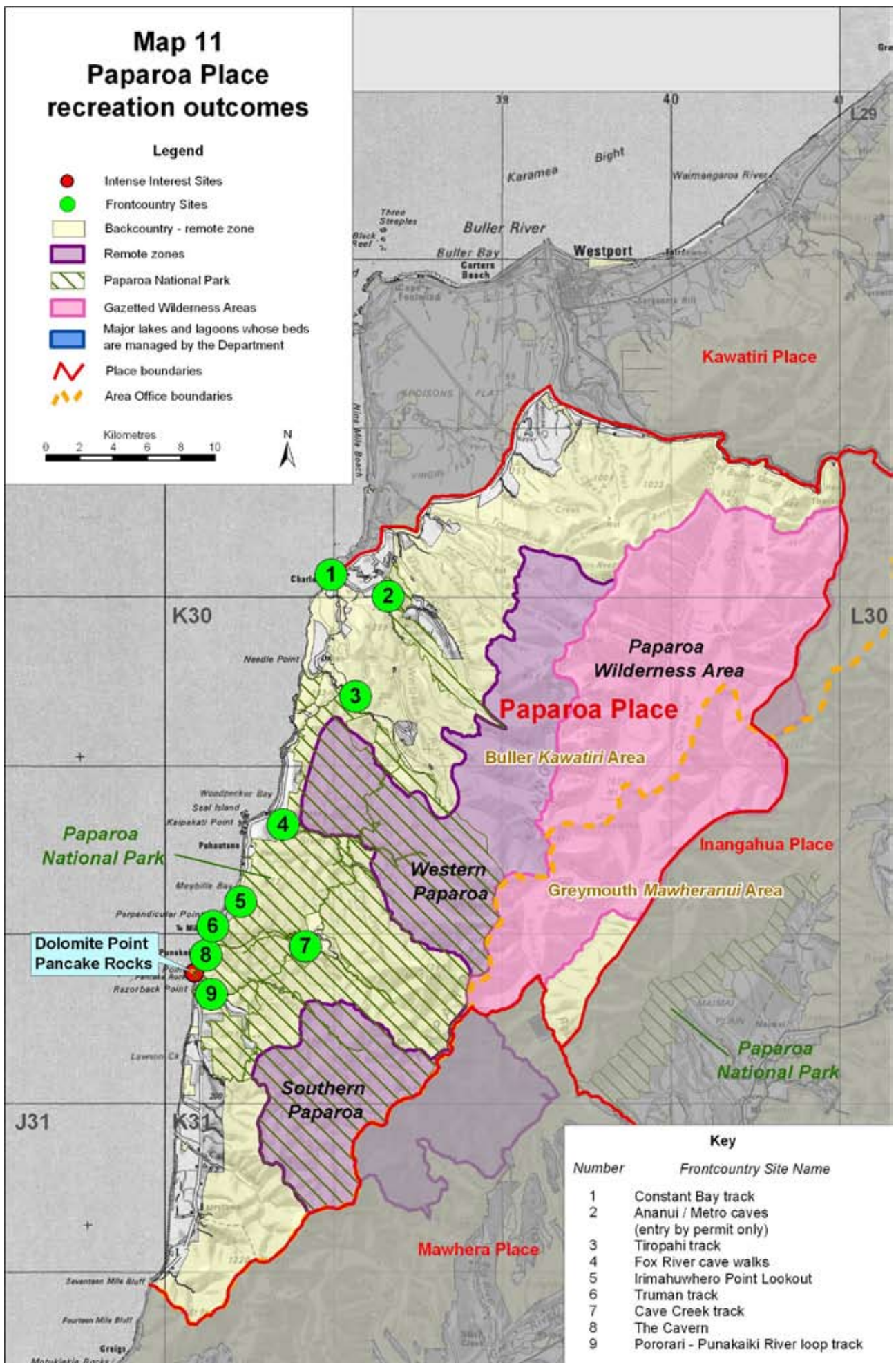
Number	Site
1	Constant Bay
2	Argyle Water System
3	Brighton Cemetery
3	Inland Pack Track

# Map 11 Paparoa Place recreation outcomes

## Legend

- Intense Interest Sites
- Frontcountry Sites
- Backcountry - remote zone
- Remote zones
- Paparoa National Park
- Gazetted Wilderness Areas
- Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
- ⋈ Place boundaries
- ⋈ Area Office boundaries

0 2 4 6 8 10  
Kilometres



## Key

Number	Frontcountry Site Name
1	Constant Bay track
2	Ananui / Metro caves (entry by permit only)
3	Tiropahi track
4	Fox River cave walks
5	Irimahuwhero Point Lookout
6	Truman track
7	Cave Creek track
8	The Cavern
9	Pororari - Punakaiki River loop track



National Park is treasured and supported by the local communities surrounding it and by the nation.

The Park is managed in accordance with the Paparoa National Park Management Plan. Sections 4.2.3.3 to 4.2.3.8 provide further details about the desired outcomes for Paparoa National Park.

#### **4.2.3.3 *Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020***

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Paparoa Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

Paparoa is renowned in New Zealand for its range of striking and unique landforms. Significant features include limestone country and rugged sub-alpine landscapes of the Paparoa Range. The dramatic and scenic coastline comprises a sequence of sculpted headlands in limestone, sandstone and granite interspersed by wild beaches and intimate sandy coves. The symmetry of the Pancake Rocks at Punakaiki and their attendant blowholes attracted 326,487 visitors in 2010, and has featured on the front cover of several books about New Zealand landforms and scenery.

Features of the Paparoa limestone area include towering coastal bluffs, a sequence of vertical-walled river canyons, large natural arches and overhangs, sinkholes, self-draining basins, rivers and streams along with complex patterns of underground drainage, numerous caves, sculpted creekbeds and patterns of surface etching that cover whole cliff faces in some places. Inland of the tilted coastal limestone plateau lies a broad, shallow trough (or syncline) running parallel to the coast and containing further variations on the kind of landforms found in the coastal limestone belt. Further inland, the country rises abruptly to the crest of the Paparoa Range. Prominent among its distinctive landforms are a huge bluff containing coal-measures at the head of the Punakaiki River and a rugged sequence of pinnacles, spires, jagged crags, towering bluffs and deep-gouged cirques through the central and northern sections of the range. Alpine lakes are common in the numerous cirque basins of the Paparoa Ranges.

The geology of the Paparoa Ranges is similar to that of Fiordland ranges. Parent rocks have gradually been moved northwards along the western side of the Alpine Fault so that they are now aligned in the northwest corner of the South Island. Granite is the principal basement material, although a variety of other types of rock are also found here, including the hard-banded granitic gneiss of the central parts of the Paparoa Range and areas of both limestone and coal measures.

*See also* Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### **4.2.3.4 *Indigenous biodiversity***

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

Apart from the impacts of animal pests, and invasive weeds around the margins, much of Paparoa National Park remains in a substantially natural condition. Much of the surrounding areas, including the coastal strip, the inland Bullock Creek and Tiropahi basins and the lower Punakaiki valley, have been modified to various degrees by human activities. Visitor pressure at Punakaiki continues to increase. Aircraft and lighting from buildings and other structures are significant threats to the Westland petrel *taiko* as they cause the birds to become disorientated. Goats, possums and deer have been present for many years and continue to alter forest

composition. Predators impact on the Westland petrel *taiko* colony, great spotted kiwi *roroa*, blue duck *wbio*, *Powelliphanta* snails and many other native species. Ground dwelling birds are particularly vulnerable to stoat predation. Invasive weeds are a problem, particularly in coastal areas. On the eastern side of the Paparoa Range and near Charleston, exotic tree species such as eucalypts and Tasmanian blackwoods occur on public conservation land.

Key features requiring conservation management in Paparoa include: the coastal and lowland forests and wetlands; karst and freshwater ecosystems including the fragmented complex of wetland and forest areas at the northern end of the Barrytown flats; and rare and/or threatened animals and plants.

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

### **Indigenous biodiversity in 2020**

At the Western Paparoa priority site (see Map 10) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Paparoa Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010.

Along with Karamea and Te Wāhi Pounamu Places, Paparoa is one of the last areas in mainland New Zealand with relatively intact natural vegetation sequences reaching from the mountains to the sea. Nationally important lowland and coastal forest communities are found here, including a rare example of dune/swamp forest in the Nikau Scenic Reserve and other remnants of coastal swamp and forest near the northern end of the Barrytown flats. The world's only breeding colony of the endemic Westland petrel *taiko* exists in the Western Paparoa priority site, in the coastal hills between Punakaiki and Barrytown. This seabird guano ecosystem provides a rare opportunity to see how New Zealand's mainland ecosystems functioned before the arrival of humans and exotic species.

The national importance of the Westland petrel *taiko* breeding colony and associated ecosystem is recognised. The Department works together with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae, the Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society of New Zealand (owners of a reserve harbouring part of the petrel colony), private land owners (who have some parts of the petrel colony on their land), the local community and other interested parties to maintain the petrel colony by minimising threats, such as predation, noise, lighting along flight paths, and disturbance by recreationists and aircraft. The streams connecting the petrel colony to the Tasman Sea are recognised as an integral part of the guano ecosystem; hence their riparian vegetation is maintained and restored.

The endemic Hector's dolphin *aibe* populations and little blue penguin *kororā* colonies of the Paparoa coastline, and New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* breeding colonies at Charleston and haul-out sites around Punakaiki, are viable and remain relatively free from human-induced disturbance. Threatened coastal plants, including coastal cresses *nau* (*Lepidium* spp.), the spurge *Euphorbia glauca* and a locally endemic coastal gentian *Gentianella scopulorum*, thrive along the Paparoa coastline.

The outstanding scenic qualities of the Coast Road between Punakaiki and Charleston are maintained, and the predominantly natural character of these landscapes from the coastline through to the top of the Paparoa Range is retained (see 4.2.3.3). Nikau palms and northern rātā are dominant features of the coastal forest canopy,

particularly when the scarlet flowers of northern rātā bloom in summer. Northern rātā, kiekie, nikau, kōwhai and other native plant species provide a rich source of nectar and fruit for native birds and invertebrates. Northern rātā, *Coprosma grandifolia* and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers continue to regenerate as a result of wild animal control work in the Western Paparoa priority site (see Map 10).

The natural processes, indigenous biodiversity, and archaeological and cultural values of Paparoa's wetlands, caves and extensive karst ecosystems are maintained. Significant protected freshwater ecosystems include important areas of pakihi in the Tiropahi basin and the Bullock Creek polje – an example of a self-draining swamp, which is totally enclosed by the Paparoa National Park. The Bullock Creek polje (see Western Paparoa priority site on Map 10) is designated as a Ramsar site in recognition of its international significance (see Section 3.8.2.2). Following retirement from grazing, Bullock Creek is returning to a more natural vegetation cover and natural hydrological and biological processes are restored. Some of the scenic views from the polje are retained at key locations such as at the point where the tracks diverge. The rivers draining from the main range through the adjacent limestone area continue to provide important habitat for freshwater fauna.

The western slopes of the Paparoa Range contain highly complex networks of ecological communities. The subtropical character of the coastal forest contrasts with the scrubby, stunted vegetation found on infertile coal measures and pakihi soils of the coastal lowlands near Charleston and in the headwaters of the Pororari and Punakaiki Rivers. The inland Pororari basin contains 25 different forest types, ranging from almost pure stands of kahikatea forest up to 55 m tall to stunted associations of rimu, silver pine *kopara*, yellow-silver pine and mountain toatoa. Beech *tawai* forest is widespread in the central parts of the Paparoa Range.

The subalpine and alpine habitats of the Paparoa Range support viable populations of several local endemics, including the giant mole weta and giant land snails *Powelliphanta* “Paparoa”. The large herbs *Anisotome haastii* and *Ourisia macrocarpa* and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers continue to regenerate, flower and fruit as a result of wild animal control work.

Paparoa provides important habitat for uncommon and threatened fauna. It is one of the last strongholds of the great spotted kiwi *roroa*, which is more secure in this part of its range. Paparoa remains a stronghold for western weka, which are a common sight in the Punakaiki area. Yellow-crowned parakeets *kākāriki* and South Island robins *kakaruai* are also common in the beech forests, and blue duck *whio* are still present in most of the main rivers and major tributaries. Rock wren, kea, New Zealand falcon *kārearea* and brown creeper *pipipi* are all present at high altitudes in the Paparoa Ranges. Long-tailed bats *pekapeka* and the giant land snail species *Powelliphanta* “Buller River” also exist in the Paparoa Place. Other rare or threatened species of lizard, invertebrates or cave fauna may be discovered as a result of more systematic research into this complex limestone area. Paparoa constitutes the southern limit for several plant species. Threatened plant species present include the water milfoil *Myriophyllum robustum* and the grass *Amphibromus fluitans*.

The natural heritage values of privately-owned wetlands and forest patches of the coastal and valley lowlands are increasingly recognised and treasured by local communities. The natural character of these areas is retained (e.g. through weed control and restoration of wetland function) and some remnants are legally protected

under covenant and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3). The local community also values the significance of wetlands such as the Tiropahi pakihi, Nikau Scenic Reserve and Maher Swamp. Restoration projects are being undertaken by local communities and private land owners. These projects are increasing the connectivity and thus viability of remnant ecosystems, and returning tree species such as northern rātā, totara and nikau to coastal plains. If not eradicated, the aquatic weed *Lagarosiphon major* remains confined to one small site on the coastal lowlands (at Barrytown Flat ponds). Knowledge about the effects of land use on threatened freshwater fish species is improved and advocacy for protection of their habitats (see Section 3.8.3) is successful. Where practical, riparian margins throughout much of the Paparoa Place are fenced to exclude livestock. Tidal systems such as the Pororari River are managed to sustain indigenous freshwater fish populations and enhance whitebait spawning habitat. Containment and/or treatment of acid mining discharges and other pollutants, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems.

Weed invasion into public conservation lands from adjacent weed sources is prevented and human activities within public conservation lands do not contribute to the spread or introduction of invasive weeds or animal pests. Kahili ginger and banana passionfruit are eradicated from all public conservation lands, including Paparoa National Park, and sources of reinvasion are reduced. Formerly logged areas of public conservation land are regenerating. Exotic trees are being removed from public conservation lands on the eastern Paparoa Range and in the Charleston/Four Mile area.

Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer and goats, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and improved ecosystem health. Goat control within parts of Paparoa Place is helping forests recover and regular surveillance prevents new populations of unwanted wild animals establishing. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout Paparoa Place.

*See also* Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### **4.2.3.5 Human history**

Paparoa is an ancient name from beyond these shores. Coastal campsites at Punakaiki provide evidence of early occupation by Māori. The Place has witnessed considerable times of warfare over the last 600 years. The coast was an important link in the pounamu (greenstone) trails; the beaches themselves containing important repositories of pounamu. The extensive sands and wetlands of Pakihiroa (Barrytown flats) are culturally significant. Flint (heaphyite) and other stones for working pounamu were sourced from Pauhatane (Limestone Creek); these stones were widely traded. Limestone areas are important for cultural practices associated with both life and death and are repositories of much cultural information and mātauranga Ngāi Tahu.

Tasman's first sighting of what he described as 'a land uplifted high' (and named 'Staten Landt') was on the Paparoa coast in the Punakaiki-Barrytown area. The pioneer journals of Thomas Brunner (1846), Charles Heaphy (1846) and Julius von Haast (1860) contain records of their visits to this Place. Gold rushes at Brighton, Charleston and Addisons Flat in 1866-67 resulted in the construction of the Inland

Pack Track between the Fox River and Razorback Point. Today, this track provides trampers with easy access to Paparoa National Park. Timber, flax and farming occupied a small and scattered population. Tourists were few and far between until the final section of the Coast Road was completed in 1929. Thereafter, visitor numbers increased steadily. From the late 1960s, cavers began investigating the limestone area more closely and a decade later trampers became more common as a campaign to protect the region as a national park gradually gathered momentum. With the creation of the Paparoa National Park in 1987, the extent of the outstanding scenic and recreational attractions of the region became better known to the wider public.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Comprehensive research is undertaken about the history of gold mining and the timber industry in Paparoa Place.

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae to monitor and mitigate (where appropriate) threats to archaeological sites, to actively manage specific sites, to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area, and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands (such as the Inland Pack Track – see Map 10) are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining in Paparoa Place, so the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found in the area. Actively managed sites are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection.

*See also* Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation

#### **4.2.3.6 Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020**

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Paparoa Place. These values include (but are not limited to<sup>45</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); wai (water); mahinga kai (cultural materials and the places these are gathered); ana (caves and karst); ahi pao/rehu (flint); landscapes, maunga (mountains) and other wāhi taonga; landforms (e.g. Pancake Rocks); rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants e.g. kawakawa); oral histories of: settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hikoi; early pa and kainga (e.g. cave at Fox River); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

Cave and karst areas are managed to protect wāhi tapu and natural values as a priority above recreation, tourism or other uses of these sites (see Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.6.4.8).

---

<sup>45</sup> This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae. The Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan (in draft form as at 2010) provides further details about cultural values, as does Appendix 1 of this CMS.

The Nohoanga Entitlement sites at Pororari and Punakaiki Rivers are managed in accordance with the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Section 3.1.3), ensuring the protection of their significant Ngāi Tahu values.

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

Appendix 1, Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### **4.2.3.7 People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020**

Paparoa Place provides the full spectrum of recreational opportunities<sup>46</sup> (see Map 11), including:

- the Pancake Rocks intense interest site at Dolomite Point;
- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones;
- remote zones; and
- the gazetted Paparoa Wilderness Area.

People are attracted to the wide range of recreational opportunities which the Paparoa Place offers. Key features include the caves and limestone formations of the Paparoa Syncline and the spectacular Pancake Rocks formation and blowholes at Dolomite Point, Punakaiki. Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department and/or enhance people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of natural, historical or cultural values. Concession activities are of low impact and are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the outstanding natural character of the Place and the absence of intrusive noise. Sustainable tourism is the predominant focus.

##### **Intense interest sites and frontcountry sites**

A range of safe and easily accessible recreational opportunities are available: from the intensely busy Pancake Rocks formation to nearby coastal walks.

The Coast Road (State Highway 6) that traverses the Paparoa coastline is one of the most scenic and dramatic stretches of coastal highway in New Zealand.

The Dolomite Point intense interest site at Punakaiki is one of the most visited sites in the Conservancy, yet it retains its distinctive natural character. High recreational use does not have an adverse impact on the appeal or natural heritage values of this site, and the design and layout of facilities enables people to progress around the site without congestion occurring to an unacceptable extent. A wheelchair-accessible loop track gives access to the Pancake Rocks, where on-site interpretation panels and other services are also provided. The new Paparoa National Park icon visitor centre at Punakaiki is the Department's primary visitor contact point, conveying key conservation and recreation messages (e.g. detailed interpretive displays about the unique flora, fauna, karst features and heritage of the area). Any services provided by the Department complement those provided by the private sector. The Department recognises the potential for congestion to occur and is working with the community to ensure that infrastructure in the village is fit-for-purpose, low-impact and able to cope with growth in demand.

An enlarged network of high-standard walking tracks around Punakaiki village caters for increasing recreational use. Popular short tracks include those to the Pancake

---

<sup>46</sup> Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.

Rocks, Fox River Caves, Cave Creek and the Truman Track. Access to the Pororari-Punakaiki River Track from State Highway 6 is bridged, removing the requirement for people to ford the Punakaiki River. The section of Inland Pack Track between the Pororari River and Bullock Creek provides a day tramping trip opportunity along with easy access to the interior of the Park. All-weather access to Cave Creek is provided via a bridge across the Pororari River.

Experienced cavers are able to access a variety of caves and other karst features unaccompanied (e.g. at Dolomite Point, Punakaiki Cavern, Bullock Creek polje, Cave Creek *Kotibotiboti* resurgence and the Tiropahi). People are able to access some caves as part of a guided<sup>47</sup> trip (e.g. through the Metro *Ananui* cave, part of Te Tahi cave, or the upper level of Xanadu cave). In other situations, access to cave systems is restricted in order to protect fragile values (see Table 4 in Section 3.6.4.8).

At Constant Bay, near Charleston a picnic area and short tracks to rock climbing areas and viewing points are provided. At other sites, the community actively contributes to the provision of low-impact recreational facilities. Public use of some tracks is restored following a major effort by the Charleston-Waitakere Community Group. One of these tracks leads to the remnants of the Charleston Basin gold mining area, worked in the late-1800s, located just inland from Charleston. This track starts at 4 Mile Road and follows the Argyle Water Race to the gold workings. Another track leads in the opposite direction from the same point, running above the Argyle Dam to State Highway 6 and from there across the pakihi to Deep Creek, then out to the coast to link with the existing track from Constant Bay. The Department works with the local community and concessionaires to provide toilet and parking facilities for visitors at the northern entrance to Paparoa National Park. The Nile River valley is a key focus of recreational interest and is the only site within the Paparoa Place where concessionaires operate light rail transport.

Four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17), mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9) and horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) are possible on some roads, such as those located within the Charleston Conservation Area. Additional mountain biking opportunities are also available on some tracks or routes (e.g. within Punakaiki Valley, Bullock Creek and along the Tiropahi Track at Four Mile).

#### **Backcountry-remote zones, remote zones and gazetted wilderness areas**

Paparoa National Park is renowned for its natural quiet, the retention of its outstanding natural remote character and its range of low-impact, nature-based, passive recreational activities. Other than vehicle use (see Section 3.6.4.17) of the Bullock Creek public road and Perseverance Road (the latter is located in Inangahua Place), the Park is free of activities involving vehicles, including aircraft; however, mountain biking opportunities may be available on specified roads or routes identified in the Paparoa National Park Management Plan.

The Civil Aviation Authority airspace restrictions at Punakaiki (NZR 702) continue to protect the Westland petrel *taiko* colony from the impacts of aircraft. A 500 metre wide 'restricted aircraft landing' buffer zone is established on public conservation lands bordering Paparoa National Park, for the purpose of protecting the high natural quiet values of the Park. Within this buffer zone, aircraft may only land for

---

<sup>47</sup> People must be guided by either an authorised concessionaire or an authorised member of the New Zealand Speleological Society, and visitation must comply with the West Coast Conservancy Cave and Karst Management Strategy and Operational Guidelines.

conservation management or emergency purposes. The Department advocates strongly against scenic flights over the Park and Paparoa Wilderness Area (see Map 11), so that people can continue to enjoy the natural quiet of these places. The Civil Aviation Authority designates a restricted airspace over the sensitive key destinations within Paparoa National Park and points of interest, including the Paparoa Wilderness Area, after receiving a case from the Department of Conservation and community groups that this is desirable and in the public interest. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

Outside Paparoa National Park, irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone and the remote zone (see Map 11). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and kayakers) or for scenic landings. Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

The Inland Pack Track is a popular tramping track, offering day visit experiences as well as multi-day tramps. Unlike many other tramping opportunities, which have a valley-pass-valley or forest-tops-forest theme, the Inland Pack Track traverses the Paparoa Syncline. Features include karst landforms and lush lowland forest. No huts or built accommodation exist on this track, which is maintained as a unique backcountry experience. At informal campsites associated with this track, such as the Ballroom Overhang, concessionaire guided parties take up no more than 50% of the available space at one time.

Longer journeys through this limestone district and onto the Paparoa Range are increasingly popular. More people explore the subterranean Paparoa landscapes, especially through the opportunities offered by concessionaires like the 'underworld rafting' journeys through the Metro *Ananui* (Nile River) Caves at Charleston. The sea cliffs at Charleston, limestone valleys and granite/gneiss tops of the Paparoa Ranges provide opportunities for rock climbing.

The western entrance of the Croesus track ascends from Barrytown, traverses the main ridge between Mt Ryall and Croesus Knob, then descends, eventually reaching Blackball in the Grey Valley. Within close proximity of Westport, the marked route to Bucklands Peak hut provides access to the greater Paparoa Range. The gazetted Paparoa Wilderness Area covers unique, rugged terrain. It has lower altitude ranges than any other South Island wilderness area but its vegetation is diverse, with dense sub-alpine scrub found down to 400 m asl. Travel through the area is difficult and only for the experienced. However, it also provides the opportunity to leave the Buller Gorge road and within a short time feel completely engulfed in wilderness. The Paparoa Wilderness Area (see Section 3.6.1.2) and Western and Southern Paparoa remote zones (see Section 3.6.1.3) are protected for their particular values and provide opportunities for self-reliant recreation on nature's terms; they have few, if any, facilities or services. The marked route onto the open tops at Mt Bovis complements the access that the Croesus Track and Buckland Peak Route provide to the Paparoa Range. In order to protect the wilderness character of the Paparoa Range, no additional tracks or routes are available here.

The Paparoa Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, whitebaiting, game bird, deer and goat hunting.



# MAP 12 Inangahua Place conservation outcomes

## Legend

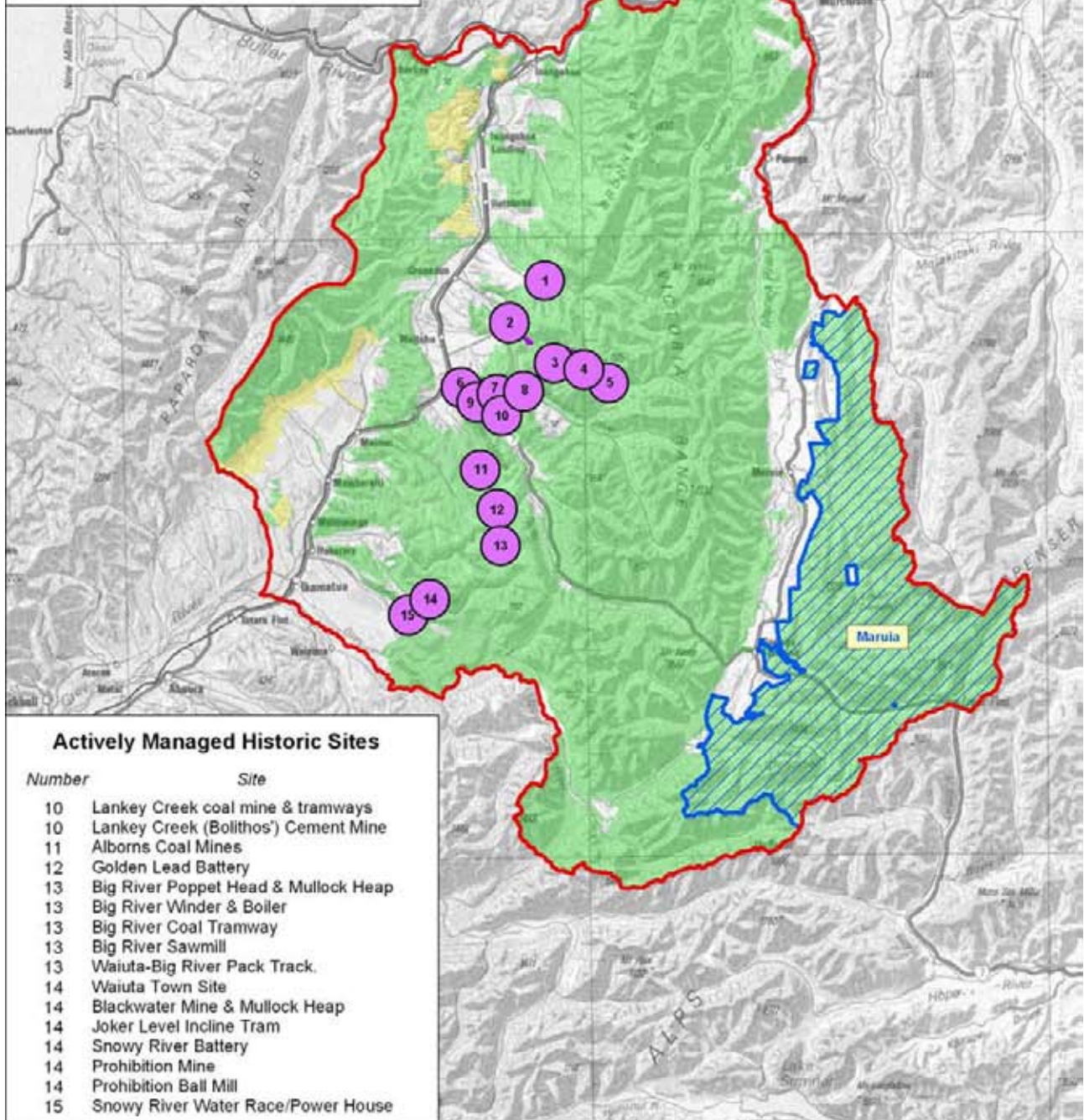
-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2007)
-  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2007)
-  Place boundary
-  Paparoa National Park
-  Other Public conservation land

Kilometres  
0 2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16



## Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
1	Caledonian Mine & Steam Engine
1	Larrys No.2 South Battery & Argyle Tunnel
2	Kirwans Hill Pack Track
3	Waitahu Water Powered Sawmill
4	Kirwans Reward Open Cast Gold Mine
4	Kirwans Tramways
4	Kirwans Aerial Ropeways
5	Lord Brassey (Kirwans) Battery
6	Reefton School of Mines
7	Ajax/Golden Fleece mine
8	Inglewood Mine
9	Blacks Point
9	Murray Creek Track
9	Energetic Gold Mine



## Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
10	Lankey Creek coal mine & tramways
10	Lankey Creek (Bolthos') Cement Mine
11	Alborns Coal Mines
12	Golden Lead Battery
13	Big River Poppet Head & Mullock Heap
13	Big River Winder & Boiler
13	Big River Coal Tramway
13	Big River Sawmill
13	Waiuta-Big River Pack Track.
14	Waiuta Town Site
14	Blackwater Mine & Mullock Heap
14	Joker Level Incline Tram
14	Snowy River Battery
14	Prohibition Mine
14	Prohibition Ball Mill
15	Snowy River Water Race/Power House

# Map 13 Inangahua Place recreation outcomes

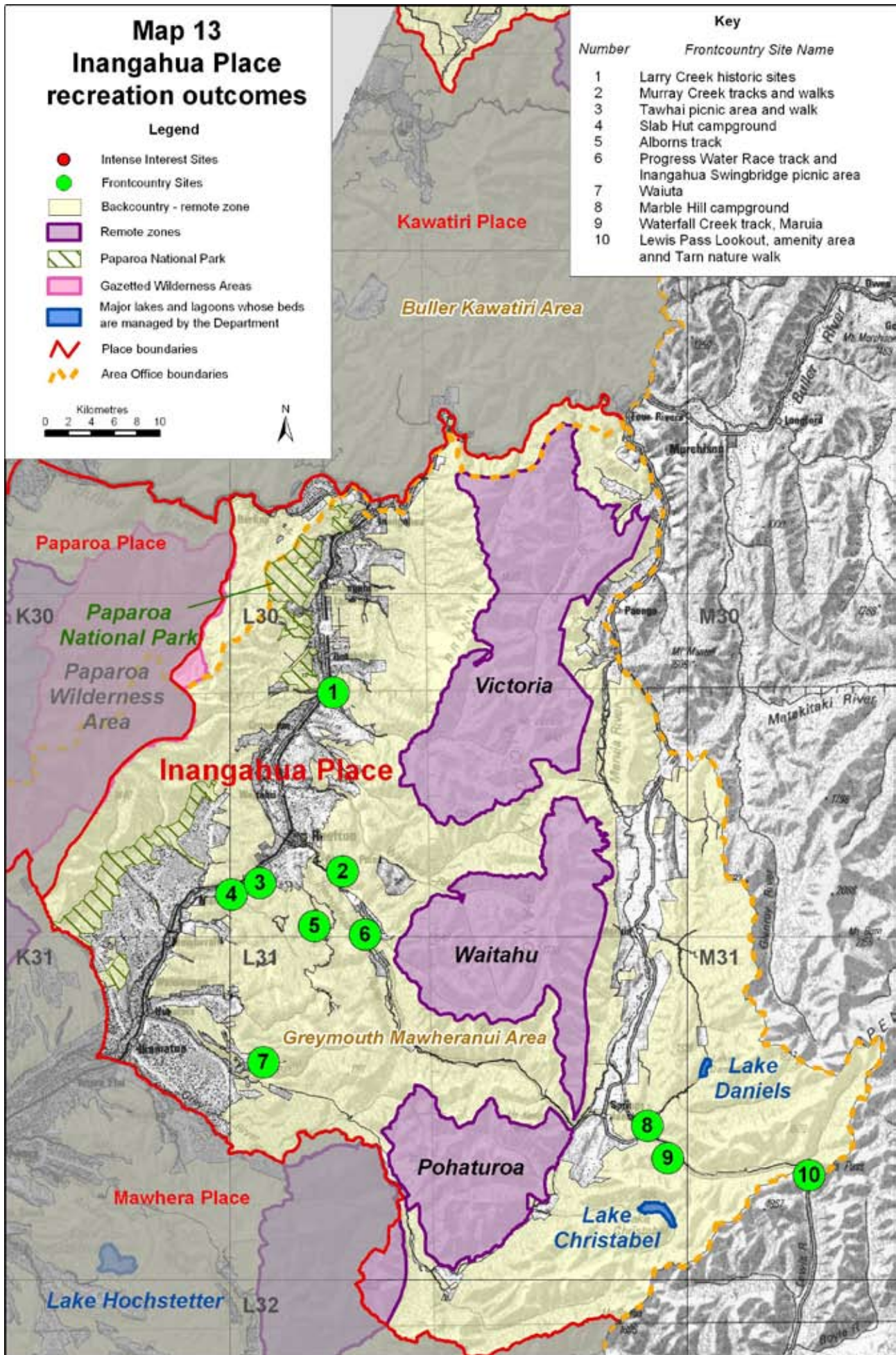
## Legend

- Intense Interest Sites
- Frontcountry Sites
- Backcountry - remote zone
- Remote zones
- Paparoa National Park
- Gazetted Wilderness Areas
- Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
- ~ Place boundaries
- ~ Area Office boundaries

Kilometres  
0 2 4 6 8 10



Key	
Number	Frontcountry Site Name
1	Larry Creek historic sites
2	Murray Creek tracks and walks
3	Tawhai picnic area and walk
4	Slab Hut campground
5	Alborns track
6	Progress Water Race track and Inangahua Swingbridge picnic area
7	Waiuta
8	Marble Hill campground
9	Waterfall Creek track, Maruia
10	Lewis Pass Lookout, amenity area and Tarn nature walk



*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

#### **4.2.4 Desired Outcome for Inangahua Place**

Section 4.2.4 describes what the Inangahua Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

*See also* Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

##### **4.2.4.1 Place description**

Inangahua is the only Place in the Conservancy that has no contact with the coastline. It is typical of the more widely settled parts of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* with most of the valley floors and large areas of lower hill country having been logged or cleared for farming and settlement, although most of the mountain country still supports native vegetation cover. Key features in this part of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* are the 206,826 hectare Victoria Forest Park<sup>48</sup> and the western ends of the Lewis Pass National Reserve and St James Station. Also of major conservation significance are a number of ecological areas which protect representative examples of a range of, mainly lowland, vegetation types. These ecological areas and the other public conservation lands located between them form 'wildlife corridors', providing links that facilitate movement of fauna between the Paparoa Range and Victoria Forest Park.

The northern boundary of Inangahua Place (Maps 12-13) follows the Buller *Kawatiri* River from the Blackwater River junction through to the Conservancy boundary where State Highways 6 and 65 meet. Its western boundary follows the Blackwater River up to the eastern boundary of the Paparoa Wilderness Area then along the crest to Mount Wise and down the Rough River to Ikamatua and its southern boundary follows the southern edge of Victoria Forest Park inland to the Conservancy boundary at the Main Divide. Inangahua Place includes a few discrete areas west of State Highway 69 that were gazetted as part of Paparoa National Park in 2002 (see Map 12).

##### **4.2.4.2 Paparoa National Park in 2020**

See Section 4.2.3.2.

##### **4.2.4.3 Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020**

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Inangahua Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

The dominant topographical features of the Inangahua Place are the three mountain chains - the Main Divide, the Brunner and Victoria Ranges, and the Paparoa Range - and the broad river valleys between them (the Maruia and Upper Grey-Inangahua).

In the east is the rapidly eroding greywacke and schist mountain range of the Main Divide, which is part of the Pacific plate. The land in the west is part of the Indo-Australian plate. These plates are divided by the Alpine Fault which runs northeast/

---

<sup>48</sup> Victoria Forest Park is legally gazetted as a conservation park, but the term 'Forest Park' is used in all references to this area.

southwest through the ranges between Haupiri and Lake Daniells, linking the valleys of the Nancy, Upper Grey and Alfred Rivers.

The topography of the Maruia valley west of the Alpine Fault is largely formed by glaciation. Tall sandstone and agglomerate outcrops are a distinctive feature on the eastern valley flanks. Further west are the mainly granite Brunner and Victoria Ranges. These basement rocks contain a band of greywacke-argillites that is the oldest sedimentary rock in New Zealand. They have been extensively folded and faulted and are the source of the gold-bearing quartz in the Reefton and Lyell areas.

The Upper Grey-Inangahua valley is comprised of an extensive series of river terraces. In the northwestern area between the Inangahua River and Berlins is a large area of forested karst. The Tertiary sediments in both valleys contain extensive coal measures. Further west is the Paparoa Range, again mostly granite.

Drainage patterns correlate to the predominant structural grain and uplift of the mountain areas. The Grey *Māwheranui*, Inangahua and Maruia Rivers occupy broad valleys primarily with braided beds and extensively terraced banks but also some gorges. The Buller *Kawatiri* River is deeply incised in the Buller *Kawatiri* gorge and flows at right angles to the mountain ranges. There are two major lakes in the Place: Christabel (the source of the Grey *Māwheranui* River) and Daniells (on the Alpine Fault and drained by the Alfred River). Tarns are common in the higher mountainous regions.

Major earthquakes have also altered the landscape. The Maruia Falls, for example, were formed when the 1929 Murchison earthquake altered the course of the Maruia River.

**See also** Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### 4.2.4.4 **Indigenous biodiversity**

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

The floors and terraces of the main valleys have been largely cleared of forest and converted into farmland. Today only scattered and often modified remnants of the tall rimu, kahikatea, matai and red and silver beech *tawai* forests that formerly occupied fertile alluvial sites have survived. Most large wetland areas have also been cleared and drained, except for extensive areas of infertile pakihī on the eastern side of the Paparoa Range. As a result, most public conservation lands are forested hill country dominated by a range of beech *tawai* species.

Fragmentation of ecosystems via land development continues to threaten indigenous biodiversity in the Inangahua Place. Goats are present in the Rappahannock/Lake Daniells area, the southern and western Victoria Range and Ahaura Gorge. Invasive weeds threaten many areas - particularly the upper Maruia valley which (as at 2010) is largely free of gorse, broom and willows. Red deer, pigs and possums are widespread. Rodents and stoats reach plague numbers every few years following heavy beech *tawai* seeding and/or podocarp fruiting, with consequent impacts on many native species. Feral cats are regularly seen on roads. Introduced wasps reach high numbers in summer and autumn in beech *tawai* forests where honeydew is present. Didymo is present in the Inangahua and Waitahu Rivers. Acid mine discharges and those from coal mines pose threats to freshwater fish and their habitats.

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

## Indigenous biodiversity in 2020

At the Maruia priority site (see Map 12) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Inangahua Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010. On the eastern flanks of the Paparoa Range poorly drained infertile soils on glacial outwash terraces continue to support a more stunted community of podocarps and silver beech *tawai* with specialist hardwoods, such as kāmahi, quintinia *tauberoubero*, mountain toatoa and southern rātā, on the fringes of open areas of pakihi.

In the Maruia and Grey *Māwheranui* River headwater valleys, pure beech forests remain dominant. Tall red and silver beech *tawai* forest covers the lower slopes and montane valley floors. Red beech *tawai* forests remain a feature of the Maruia valley, while at higher altitudes forests are dominated by silver or mountain beech *tawai*. Exceptions to this include the high altitude podocarp/hardwood association on the western side of the Brunner Range. In the mid-Grey *Māwheranui* and Inangahua valleys, hill forests are more mixed, with emergent podocarps (mainly rimu) over a mixed canopy of hard beech *tawai*, kāmahi and other broadleaved species. Above the timberline a mosaic of tussock land, grassland, herbfield and alpine rock and gravel fields can be found. The full range of beech *tawai* species (red, silver, black, mountain and hard) inhabits forests near Reefton. In Victoria Forest Park, palatable species such as broadleaf *kāpuka* and haumakāroa are regenerating in the understorey of the beech *tawai* forests.

Representative examples of grey scrub communities on the Maruia valley floor are restored with the help of the local community, and contain viable populations of *Coprosma wallii*, matagouri and *Meliccytus flexuosus*. Kōwhai provide a valuable source of nectar in spring for tūi and bellbirds *kōparapara/korimako*, particularly along river margins. Invasive weeds such as gorse, broom, willow and Russell lupin are eliminated in the upper Maruia catchment, which continues to be maintained as an alpine valley that is free of woody weeds. The Maruia catchment continues to support viable populations of indigenous fish, including five non-migratory species (e.g. the Canterbury, longjaw, alpine and dwarf northern galaxiids and upland bully). The headwaters and upper reaches of the Maruia River is the only location on the west coast of the South Island where *Galaxias vulgaris* (Canterbury galaxias), *G. prognathus* (longjaw galaxias) and *G. paucispondylus* (alpine galaxias) are found. These three Galaxias species are normally associated with East Coast rivers.

Some public conservation lands, particularly in the lowlands, are regenerating following logging and mining. Representative samples of forest and wetlands of the upper Grey, Inangahua and upper Maruia valley floors are protected as public conservation lands or via other mechanisms such as covenants and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3). The natural character of these remnants is improving. Land that has received priority for such protection includes<sup>49</sup>:

- Various areas of lowland forest in the Maruia Valley; mostly beech forest on gentle hillslopes and alluvial terraces, but including kahikatea swamp forest remnants and other small wetlands. These areas are contiguous with higher altitude forest

---

<sup>49</sup> List sourced from Tasman District Council: opportunities for further protection of biodiversity in the Reefton Ecological District - see <http://tdc.govt.nz/index.php?ReeftonEcologicalDistrict>

and buffer and connect public conservation lands. They provide valuable habitat for birds such as robin, kaka and kakariki.

- Beech forest on toeslopes, fans and alluvial terraces in the Warwick River valley, which complement upland areas.
- The nationally important river ecosystem in the mid Maruia Valley (Maruia Gorge). This area has high habitat and fish diversity and important ecological sequences and connections.
- Riparian beech forest remnants.

Natural processes in bogs, such as peat formation, continue to operate. Adjacent land owners and community groups maintain wildlife corridors between alpine areas and lowland forest and improve the connectivity of remnant forest and wetlands through revegetation work.

Good numbers of both common and threatened birds occur in many parts of Inangahua, due to the maintenance of wildlife corridors for migration and food supplies. Populations of forest birds such as yellow-crowned parakeets *kākāriki* and South Island robins *kakaruai*, bats *pekapeka* and three species of beech mistletoe are flourishing in the mixed red-silver beech *tawai* forests of the upper Maruia valley, including the Lewis Pass National Reserve. Honeydew provides a valuable food source for tūi and bellbirds *kōparapara/korimako*. Viable populations of great spotted kiwi *roroa* are maintained. Inangahua is a stronghold for western weka. South Island kākā are widespread and their population densities rival those found between Pāringa and Big Bay *Tīhei Mauri Ora* further south. Blue ducks *whio* are present in many of the main rivers and major tributaries. Rock wren, New Zealand falcon *kārearea* and brown creeper *pipipi* are all present at high altitudes, both in the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* and the Victoria Range. The kea remains an iconic species in the alpine and subalpine zones in this part of its range. A viable population of the giant land snail *Powelliphanta* “Buller River” is maintained in the lower Buller *Kawatiri* River catchment.

The high altitude forests and subalpine tussock grassland on Mount Baldy support a viable population of the locally endemic land snail *Powelliphanta* “Matakitaki”, while the subalpine tussock grasslands of Victoria Forest Park support a viable population of the locally endemic land snail *Powelliphanta* “Kirwans”.

All geothermal sites and surrounding landscapes retain their natural character and are not irreversibly altered in any way (see Section 3.6.4.5).

The Buller *Kawatiri* River and its tributaries support a higher diversity of freshwater fish species than any other single river system in the country. Its catchment contains nationally important populations of long-finned eels. The lower main stem contains reaches that are of national significance, and the entire catchment is one of the best remaining New Zealand examples of a large unregulated river (Chadderton *et al* 2004). A National Water Conservation Order, issued in 2001, over the majority of the Buller *Kawatiri* River catchment includes provisions to preserve and protect the waters of the Buller *Kawatiri* and Maruia rivers, many of their tributaries, and Lake Daniells. These waters are retained in their natural state because of their outstanding characteristics, features and values. Maintenance of the exceptional freshwater biodiversity of the Buller *Kawatiri* River and catchment is a high priority for the Department.

The upper Grey *Māwheranui* River is also highly natural and contains three nationally significant lakes: Lake Christabel, Ahaura and Haupiri<sup>50</sup> (Chadderton *et al* 2004). The National Water Conservation (Grey River) Order 1991 includes various provisions to preserve and protect the waters of the Blue Grey River, its tributaries, and Lake Christabel in their natural state. Although rainbow trout are found in Lake Daniells, Lake Christabel remains trout-free.

Riparian management continues to improve with the support of landowners, the local community and local authorities, enhancing the viability and life-supporting capacity of ecosystems. Many inland rivers and creeks remain in near natural condition and continue to provide good habitat for native freshwater fish. Non-migratory galaxiid and bully species are found throughout. Knowledge about the effects of land use on threatened freshwater fish species improves and advocacy for protection of their habitats (see Section 3.8.3) is successful. Where practical, riparian margins throughout much of the Inangahua Place are fenced to exclude livestock. Containment and/or treatment of acid mining discharges and other pollutants, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems.

Weed invasion into public conservation lands from adjacent invasive weed sources is minimised. Rowan, sycamore, *Rhododendron ponticum*, barberry and holly are rarely found in the beech *tawai* forests of Inangahua Place. Areas of public conservation land formerly managed for forestry purposes (i.e. both indigenous logging and exotic plantations) are recovering to a more natural state. Exotic trees are being removed from public conservation lands with the highest values or areas with the highest risk of invasion from such species.

Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer, goats and pigs throughout the forests and subalpine-alpine habitats of the Inangahua, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and improved ecosystem health. Possum control within parts of the Maruia priority site is helping remnant populations of beech mistletoe, fuchsia *kōtukutuku* and birdlife recover. Goat control in places keeps populations at very low levels and prevents dispersal to goat-free areas. Regular surveillance prevents new populations of unwanted wild animals establishing. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout Inangahua Place.

*See also* Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### **4.2.4.5 Human history**

The Maruia, Inangahua and Māwhera (Grey) valleys were well known to Poutini Ngāi Tahu as significant battle grounds, as areas renowned for bird-hunting and eel-fishing and as routes to and from the pounamu rivers of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. At the time of Thomas Brunner's journey of exploration in 1846-48, these valleys seem to have been used mainly as places for harvesting seasonal foods. The area appeared to lack permanent habitation until Samuel Meggit Mackley began farming near Ikamatua in 1862. Things changed rapidly thereafter, and by late 1865 the gold rushes spread to the upper Grey Māwheranui valley. A bridle track was formed to Nelson via the Big Grey *Māwheranui*, Maruia and Matakītaki Rivers. The following

---

<sup>50</sup> Note that Lakes Ahaura and Haupiri are located within Māwhera Place.

year, alluvial diggings spread through the Inangahua valley with Kynnersley, near the confluence of the Waitahu and Inangahua Rivers, being the area's first township.

The returns from alluvial mining in the district were often modest; of far greater significance was the quartz mining era. This began at Lyell in 1869 and at Reefton the following year, where 50 quartz mining ventures were registered in the first 18 months. This created a second major phase of mining for the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* as the main alluvial gold rushes had all taken place between late 1864 and 1868. It resulted in the establishment of Reefton and several smaller mining towns, an improvement in roads and accelerated the growth of supply industries like coal-mining, farming and timber milling. Reefton acquired a telegraph link in 1872, the first and only stock exchange ever to operate on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (1888-9), and, in 1888, electric lighting for its streets - the first town in New Zealand to enjoy this new luxury. A large quartz mine was established at Waiuta in 1906. Quartz mining waned in the 1920s, although Waiuta operated through to 1951. Coal mining, begun to supply quartz mine boilers, later developed as an independent industry. Coal became increasingly important to Reefton's economy while the neighbouring valleys settled into a lifestyle of farming and timber milling.

Tourism was very limited prior to the opening of the Lewis Pass highway in 1938. Today the promotion of the historical and natural features of the region has seen an increase in tourist and recreational use. Mining has again become a focus with Globe Hill, one of the largest gold mines in the country, currently operating near Reefton.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Historic places are one of the most important features of Inangahua Place and also one of the major attractions of its public conservation lands. Protection of historic places is a prominent management theme. Several historic places in the place are 'actively managed' (see Map 12) including one of a select number of sites on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* designated by the New Zealand Historic Places Trust as Category I status: the Reefton School of Mines. The Blacks Point Museum and Reefton School of Mines contain excellent historic collections. All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. Comprehensive research is undertaken about the history of coal mining, gold mining and the timber industry in Inangahua Place. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining, so the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found here. People are encouraged to visit and learn about many of these sites (e.g. the gold mining and early settlement sites at Big River, Waiuta and other parts of the Reefton goldfields). Historic places are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection (see Section 3.4.2.3).

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae to monitor and mitigate (where appropriate) threats to archaeological sites, to actively manage specific sites, to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area, and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

**See also** Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation



#### 4.2.4.6 **Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020**

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Inangahua Place. These values include (but are not limited to<sup>51</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); wai (water) and waiwera (hot springs and thermal waters); mahinga kai (cultural materials and the places these are gathered); ana (caves); landscapes, maunga (mountains) and other wāhi taonga; landforms (e.g. Grey *Māwheranui* Valley); rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants); oral histories of: settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hikoi; early campsites; wāhi whawhai (battlegrounds); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

Appendix 1, Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### 4.2.4.7 **People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020**

Categories<sup>52</sup> of recreational opportunities available in the Inangahua Place (see Map 13) include:

- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones; and
- remote zones.

State highways link the northeast of the South Island *Te Waipounamu* with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and provide access to a wide diversity of recreational attractions. Along with Kawatiri and Māwhera Places, many of Inangahua Place's more prominent recreational opportunities are constructed around aspects of its historical and cultural heritage, especially relics from the extensive quartz mining operations within the Victoria Forest Park. People are able to use a variety of methods to access and explore natural areas and discover historic treasures.

Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department and/or enhance people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of natural, historical or cultural values. Concession activities are generally of low impact and are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the conservation values of the particular site.

##### **Frontcountry sites**

The historic social and industrial heritage of Reefton goldfields is a popular focus of interest at frontcountry sites, where the emphasis is on day-walking opportunities. Facilities are provided for people to access and enjoy key sites associated with this period of history (see Map 13). Recreational facilities and historic sites at Waituta and Big River (including associated tracks and roads), the Murray Creek and Waitahu tracks, the Kirwans loop track to Capelston, along with the Awarau or Larry River track, combine to form the Reefton Goldfields Journey. The local community works in partnership with the Department to provide conservation interpretation and education at the Reefton Visitor Centre, which has a strong historical emphasis.

---

51 This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae. The 'Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan' (in draft form as at 2010) provides further details about cultural values, as does Appendix 1 of this CMS.

52 Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.

Other recreational facilities, including those around Marble Hill and the Lewis Pass, provide opportunities for short scenic walks and viewpoints alongside highways.

### **Backcountry-remote and remote zones**

In the backcountry-remote zone (see Map 13), multi-day tramping opportunities exist at Big River, Murray Creek/Kirwans, St James, Lake Daniells and Lake Christabel. Tramping tracks and a mix of strategically placed standard and serviced huts connect Waiuta, Big River, Murray Creek, Kirwans and Awarau or Larry River. Easy tramping tracks and serviced huts are provided in the Maruia headwaters at Lake Daniells, and on the western end of the popular St James circuit near the Lewis Pass. A three to four day tramping circuit with standard huts is maintained in the Grey Māwheranui River Headwaters, through the Blue Grey/Lake Christabel/Robinson River area. Marked routes leading to remote areas are also maintained at key locations in the Rahu area, providing access to open tops. This includes access to the Lewis tops and Mount Mueller from the Lewis Pass highway (State Highway 7) as well as onto the striking upturned wedge of Mount Haast just west of Rahu Saddle.

Guided parties crossing eastward into Nelson Lakes National Park are restricted to seven people including guides. Aircraft may only land for conservation management or emergency purposes in a buffer zone created to protect the natural quiet of the Park. At Mt Gloriana these restrictions on aircraft landings apply to all areas located above the bushline, while elsewhere along the Park boundary the buffer zone is 500 metres wide. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

Irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone and the remote zone (see Map 13). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and kayakers) or for scenic landings. Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

Outstanding opportunities exist for kayaking and rafting, especially in the wild river gorges of the Buller *Kawatiri*, Maruia and Upper Grey *Māwheranui* (Gentle Annie) (see Section 3.6.4.10).

Large tracts of mountain country, including much of the Victoria Range, Waitahu and Pohaturua, lie within the remote zone (see Map 13). They are protected for their particular values and provide extensive opportunities for self-reliant recreation on nature's terms; consequently they have few facilities or services (see Section 3.6.1.3).

The Department works with other agencies (such as the West Coast Regional Council, Buller District Council, Fish and Game New Zealand West Coast and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae) to ensure that the conservation values and natural character, including the trout-free status of Lake Christabel and natural quiet and scenic beauty of both Lake Daniells and Christabel are protected and preserved. Recreational activities on or adjacent to these lakes do not unduly disturb protected birdlife nesting or feeding at the lakes and do not harm indigenous freshwater species. No motorised water craft are permitted on these lakes, unless required for conservation management purposes (see Section 3.6.4.12).

# MAP 14 Mawhera Place conservation outcomes

## Legend

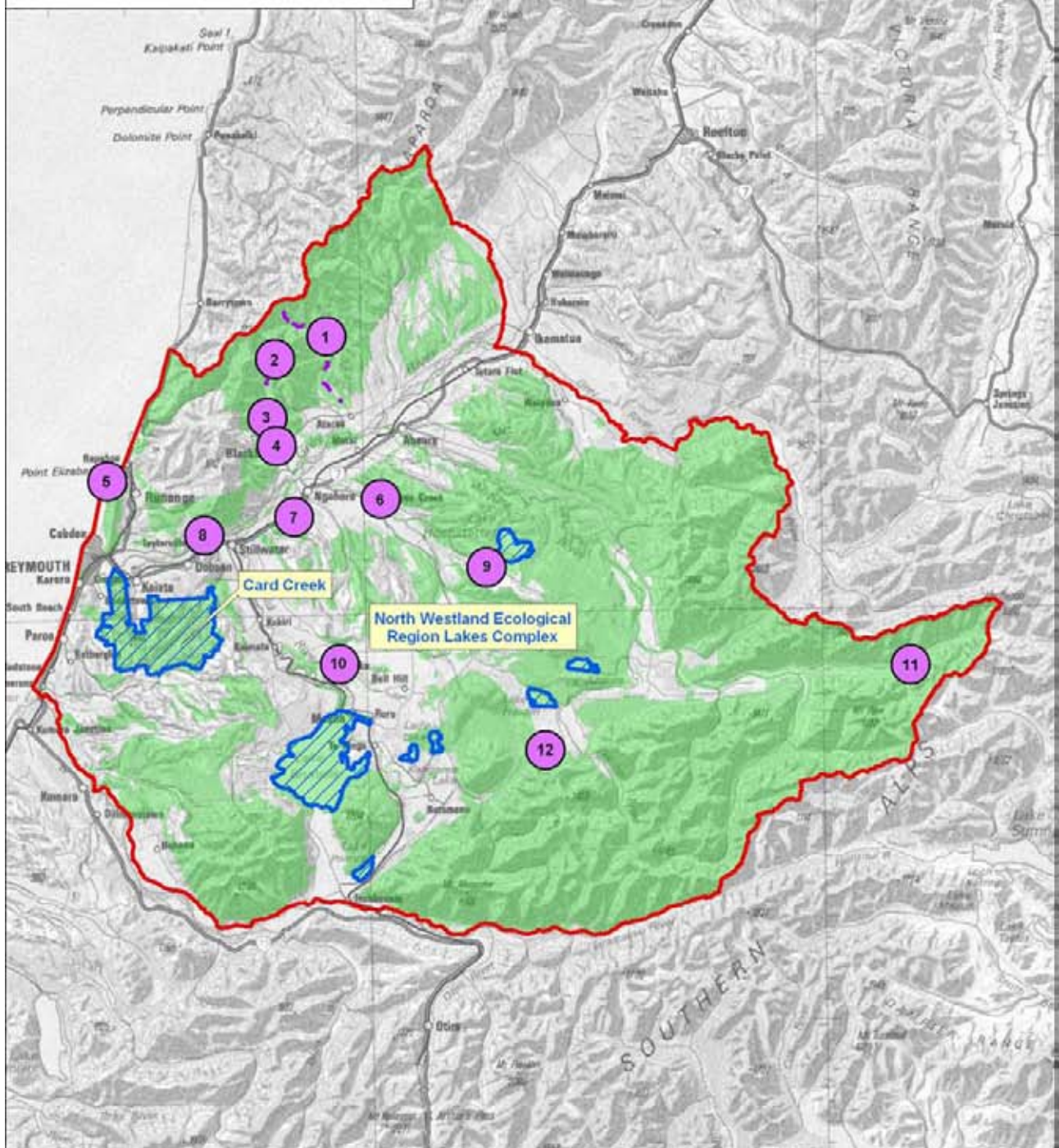
-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2007)
-  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2007)
-  Place boundary
-  Public conservation land

Kilometres  
0 4 8 12 16 20



## Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
1	Moonlight Valley Track
2	Garden Gully Battery
2	Garden Gully Hut
2	Croesus Top Hut
3	Croesus & Garden Gully Tracks
4	Blackball Chimneys
4	Return Air Vent & Fan Chamber, Blackball
5	Darkies Terrace - Point Elizabeth
6	Nelson Creek Swingbridge
6	Hatters Terrace
7	Davidson Steam Locomotive
8	Brunner Mine Site
9	Hochstetter Dam
10	Jack's Mill School
11	Slaty Creek Hut
12	Brownlees Steam Shovel



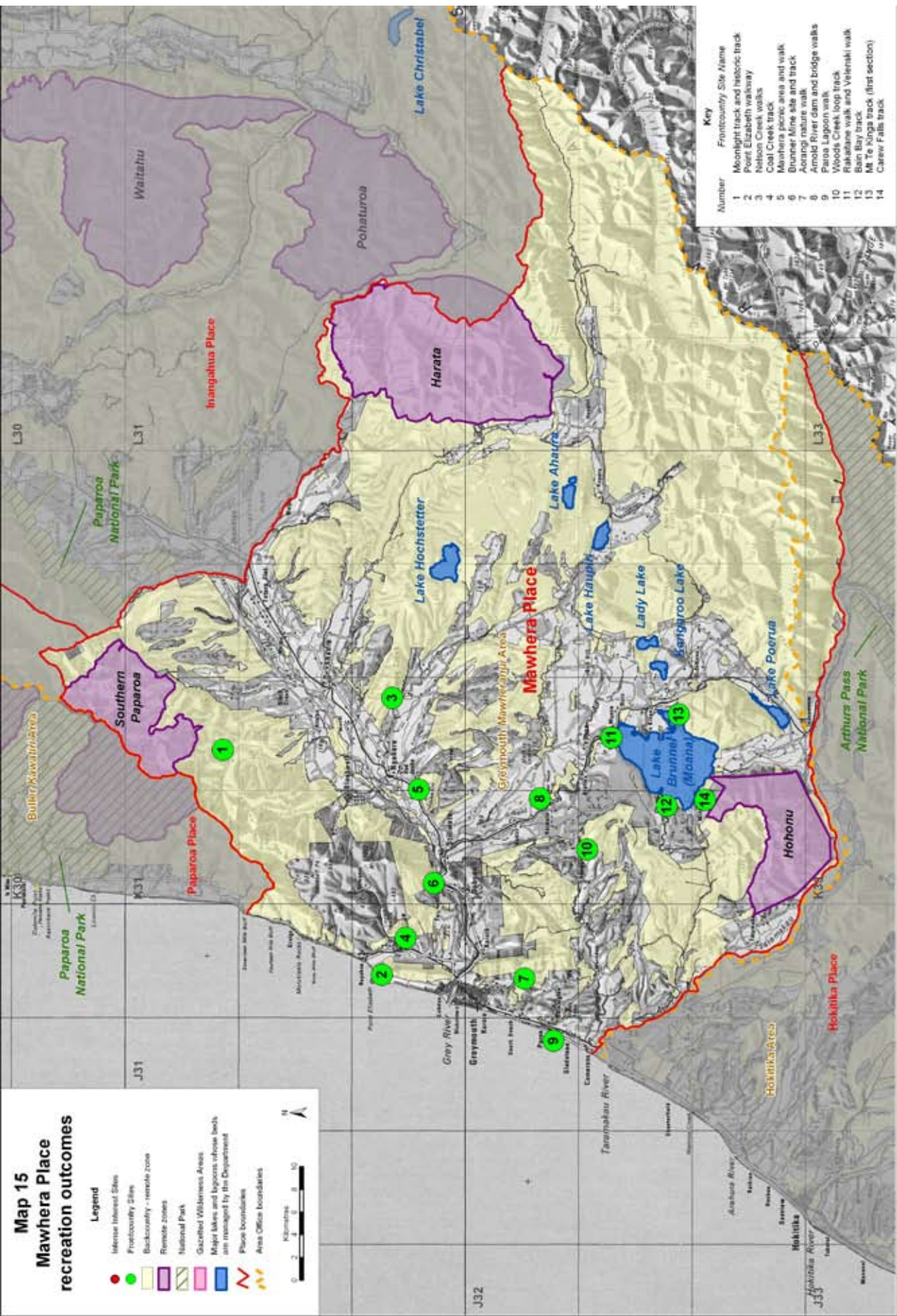
# Map 15 Mawhera Place recreation outcomes

**Legend**

- Intense Interest Sites
- Frontcountry Sites
- Backcountry - remote zone
- Remote zones
- National Park
- Gazetted Wilderness Areas
- Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
- Place boundaries
- Area Office boundaries

Kilometres  
0 2 4 6 8 10

N



**Key**

Number	Frontcountry Site Name
1	Moonlight track and historic track
2	Point Elizabeth walkway
3	Nelson Creek walks
4	Coal Creek track
5	Maitani picnic area and walk
6	Brunner Mine site and track
7	Brunner nature walk
8	Arnold River dam and bridge walks
9	Puroa Lagoon walk
10	Woods Creek loop track
11	Rakahane walk and Vaheraki walk
12	Siro Bay track
13	Mt Te Funga track (first section)
14	Carey Falls track

Within Inangahua, four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17), mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9) and horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) are possible on some roads, (e.g. the road to Big River and the four-wheel drive road to Montgomery Hut, Waitahu Valley Road). The extensive network of old logging roads means this Place offers excellent scope for four-wheel driving activities on terrain where vehicle use is less likely to cause conflicts than in some other Places. Additional mountain biking opportunities are also available on some tracks or routes (e.g. Kirwans Track, Big River to Waiuta Track and Murray Creek to Waitahu River Track).

The Inangahua Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, game bird, deer, chamois, goat and pig hunting. Trout fishing is extremely popular, with most rivers and streams supporting large brown trout, and rainbow trout in Lake Daniells.

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

#### **4.2.5 Desired Outcome for Māwhera Place**

Section 4.2.5 describes what the Māwhera Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

*See also* Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

##### **4.2.5.1 Place description**

Māwhera Place is characterised by forested mountains, numerous lakes (including Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaoho*) and developed hill country and river flats containing remnants of lowland forests and wetlands. The northern boundary of the Māwhera Place runs from the southern end of the Barrytown flats to the crest of the central Paparoa Range up to and along the southern boundary of the Paparoa Wilderness Area as far as the Rough River then down to Ikamatua, and then along the Upper Grey River and southern Victoria Forest Park boundary to Mount Barron on the Main Divide (Maps 14-15). Māwhera extends to the northern edge of the Taramakau River in the south, with its inland boundary being the crest of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*. It contains the largest town on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, Greymouth (population 9,500 as at 2010).

##### **4.2.5.2 Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020**

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Māwhera Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

The extensive alluvial gold deposits throughout much of Māwhera derive mainly from the greywacke rocks of Paparoa and Reefton and subsequent glacial processes. Both extensive coal measures and fragmented areas of gold-bearing quartz lie at the southern end of the Paparoa Range. Away from the ranges younger sedimentary rocks (limestone, sandstone, siltstone) form much of the lowland hill country between Rapahoe and Taramakau.

The topography of Māwhera includes broad valleys close to the Main Divide. West of the Alpine Fault, granite summits of the Hohonu Range, Mount Te Kinga and Bell Hill rise above subsidiary ranges of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*, while the coal measures of the southern Paparoa Ranges provide some of the most barren terrain found anywhere on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

Glaciers eroded and transported materials then deposited them as moraines west of the Alpine Fault, creating extensive lowland landscapes in the Grey and Taramakau catchments. Many large lakes were created when valleys and basins were dammed by moraine. Today these lakes, which include Lakes Ahaura, Haupiri and Brunner *Kotuku-Wbakaobo*, provide one of the more distinctive landscape features of this Place.

In keeping with the scale of the mountains in this region and the distance of the Main Divide from the sea, large, slow flowing rivers occupy wide valleys. The Little Grey *Māwheraiti* and Grey *Māwheranui* Rivers weave through broad valleys, often with braided beds and extensively terraced banks.

*See also* Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### 4.2.5.3 **Indigenous biodiversity**

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

The floors and terraces of the main valleys have been largely cleared of forest and converted into farmland. Today only scattered and often modified remnants of the tall rimu, kahikatea, matai and red and silver beech *tawai* forests that formerly occupied fertile alluvial sites have survived. Most large wetland areas have also been cleared and drained, except for extensive areas of infertile pakihi on the eastern side of the Paparoa Range. As a result, most public conservation lands are forested hill country dominated by a range of beech *tawai* species.

Fragmentation of ecosystems via land development continues to threaten indigenous biodiversity in the Māwhera Place. Freshwater habitats and water quality is at risk from discharges from activities like mining, timber milling and farming, other land development and/or infestation by aquatic and riparian weeds. Didymo is present in the Grey *Māwheranui* River. Acid mine discharges and those from coal mines pose significant threats to freshwater fish and their habitats.

The spread of plantation tree species pose a risk to indigenous biodiversity and natural landscape values in some areas, especially Blackwater/Hukarere, Hochstetter, Māwhera, Omoto, Hohonu and Nemona forests. Goats threaten alpine ecosystems and other sites such as Card Creek and Rotomanu. Possums, red deer and chamois are widespread throughout Māwhera Place. Predators impact on great spotted kiwi *roroa*, blue duck *whio*, *Powelliphanta* snails and many other native species. Stoat predation affects many native bird species.

*See also* Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

##### **Indigenous biodiversity in 2020**

At the Card Creek and lowland lakes priority sites (see Map 14) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Māwhera Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010.

Little blue penguin *kororā* colonies of the Māwhera coastline are thriving and they, along with the New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* haul-out site at Point Elizabeth, are free from human-induced disturbance. The coastal cress *Lepidium flexicaule* thrives in coastal turf at Point Elizabeth.

The numerous lowland lakes, swamps and associated waterways in Māwhera Place, including the lowland lakes priority sites (see Map 14), continue to provide important habitat for rarer water birds and native freshwater fish. The former includes crested grebe *kāmāna*, Australasian bittern *matuku*, marsh crane, spotless crane and white heron *kōtuku*. Native freshwater fish include inanga, giant kōkupu *taiwharu* and shortfin eels *tuna* which inhabit coastal lagoons and lakes, shortjaw and banded kōkupu in lowland streams flowing under forest cover, brown mudfish in areas of swampy forest or pakihi, and koaro in alpine streams. In the lowlands, survey and monitoring focuses on freshwater habitat and species (particularly inanga, brown mudfish and shortjaw and giant kōkupu *taiwharu*).

Knowledge about the effects of land use on threatened freshwater fish species is improved and advocacy for protection of their habitats (see Section 3.8.3), including whitebait spawning habitat, is successful. Giant kōkupu *taiwharu* habitat around Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* is preserved. Where practical, riparian margins throughout much of the Māwhera Place are fenced to exclude livestock. Containment and/or treatment of acid mining discharges and other pollutants, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems.

Riparian management continues to improve with the support of landowners, the local community and local authorities, enhancing the connectivity, viability and life-supporting capacity of ecosystems, particularly Lakes Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* and Poerua. The other wetlands of the lowland lakes priority site (i.e. Lake Hochstetter, Lake Ahaura, Lake Haupiri, Kangaroo Lake and Lady Lake) are functioning naturally. Native wetland plants, including rare species such as *Carex tenuiculmis*, *Deschampsia cespitosa* and *Myriophyllum robustum*, dominate the emergent and submerged vegetation. Native waterfowl populations are thriving. The aquatic weed *Lagarosiphon major* remains confined to the main channel of the Grey River *Māwheranui*.

The National Water Conservation (Grey River) Order 1991 declared the waters of the Ahaura Gorge downstream of Hamers Flat to be an outstanding natural characteristic in the form of an incised river gorge with a meandering pattern and the Ahaura River to have outstanding scenic features. These characteristics and features are maintained.

Some common forest species from the northern parts of the Conservancy reach their natural southern limits in Māwhera, including ngāio, taupata and kawakawa. A prominent feature of the forest communities in this Place is that beech becomes progressively more scattered north of the Taramakau River. Beech is easily the dominant forest species in much of the forest in the upper Grey valley but is largely replaced by podocarp/hardwood forests from the Ahaura River southwards. Reserves like the Hochstetter, Ahaura, Deep Creek, and Greenstone Ecological Areas continue to protect this transition by preserving a mosaic of beech and non-beech communities, while reserves such as the Card Creek Ecological Area protect lowland podocarp/broadleaf forest remnants. At the Card Creek priority site (see Map 14), New Zealand wood pigeons *kererū* are increasing in number and lacebark *boubere*, hen and chickens fern *pikopiko* and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers continue to regenerate in the mixed podocarp-hardwood forests, as a result of wild animal control work. Representative remnants of the natural vegetation of the Grey valley floor are legally protected within public conservation lands or other

mechanisms such as covenants and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3). The natural character of these remnants is improving. Grey willow and old man's beard are rarely found in the Grey valley. Crack willow is progressively removed from the Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* catchment.

The natural processes, indigenous biodiversity, and archaeological and cultural values of Māwhera's cave and karst ecosystems are maintained.

Māwhera continues to be a stronghold for western weka. The subalpine and alpine habitats of the southern Paparoa Range support viable populations of giant land snail species *Powelliphanta* 'Paparoa' and the locally endemic *P. gagei*. Populations of great spotted kiwi *roroa* exist on the eastern Paparoa Range. New Zealand falcon *kārearea*, South Island kākā, kea, New Zealand parakeets *kākāriki*, blue duck *uhio* and native bats *pekapeka* exist in the mountain ranges and valleys. Viable populations of the locally endemic skink (*Oligosoma* 'Grey valley') are found in the Grey valley catchment.

Weed invasion into public conservation lands from adjacent invasive weed sources is minimised. Key weed species such as rowan, grey willow, kahili ginger, old man's beard, Darwin's barberry, Asiatic knotweed, *Rhododendron ponticum*, gorse, broom and *Lagarosiphon major* are controlled at priority sites<sup>53</sup>. Areas of public conservation land formerly managed for forestry purposes (i.e. both indigenous logging and exotic plantations) are recovering to a more natural state. Exotic trees are progressively being removed from public conservation lands. Control operations prevent goats from invading other areas. Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer, goats and pigs throughout the forests of Māwhera, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and improved ecosystem health. Regular surveillance prevents new populations of unwanted wild animals establishing. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout Māwhera Place.

*See also* Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### 4.2.5.4 **Human history**

Known pre-European Māori settlements in Māwhera Place were at Seventeen Mile, Kararoa (Twelve Mile), Ten Mile, Rapahoe, Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo*, Māwhera (Greymouth) and Taramakau. The forests, lakes, swamps and coast provided abundant supplies of birds and fish. The name Māwhera is a shortened version of the full name which is Ka Māwheranui o ka kuwha o Tu Te Rakiwhanoa, so named after the feats of an atua of Poutini Ngāi Tahu tangata whenua.

European exploration of the region began with the coastal journey of Charles Heaphy, Thomas Brunner and guide Kehu in 1846, and continued with Brunner's extended second visit, again with Kehu in 1847-8. The area was further explored by surveyor John Rochfort in 1859 and geologist Julius von Haast in 1860.

Payable gold was discovered in the Hohonu River in July 1864. By the end of 1865 a coach road had been constructed over Arthur's Pass and thousands of miners were working the alluvial gravels and sands from north of Greymouth to Haast. The

---

<sup>53</sup> Priority sites for weed control are chosen in accordance with the objectives and policies set out in Section 3.3.3.6 and may include areas subject to new weed infestations.



main phase of alluvial mining was followed by large-scale sluicing in the 1870s and 1880s. Small steam dredges worked in tributaries during the early decades of the 20th century, while larger dredges worked the lower reaches of the major rivers in later decades. From the 1870s, the vast coal measures at the southern end of the Paparoa Range replaced gold as the backbone of the economy. However, compared to gold mining, which often resulted in large-scale landscape modification, most coal mining was carried out underground and hence had much less impact on the natural environment.

Sawmills began operating in the 1860s to supply the widespread goldfields. As early as 1868, kahikatea was being exported to Australia from the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Timber milling has remained an important industry, with a major boost being provided by the opening of the Arthur's Pass rail link in 1923. Exotic plantations were introduced in a small way in the 1920s and more extensively in the 1960s, and continue to be logged in the Māwhera Place today. Logging of indigenous forests on Crown land ceased by 2002, when lands formerly managed by Timberlands West Coast Ltd were gazetted as public conservation lands. Farming expanded considerably in the 20th century with places like the Grey valley and Rotomanu providing excellent pasture. Tourism is a growing industry: roads have improved, opportunities and facilities for travellers have increased, and information on the full range of attractions has become widely available.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Historic places are one of Māwhera's most important features and also one of the major attractions of its public conservation lands. Protection of historic places is a prominent management theme. All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands (see Map 14) are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. Comprehensive research is undertaken about the history of coal mining, gold mining, the timber industry and wild animal control work in this Place. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining in Māwhera Place, so the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found in the area. People are encouraged to visit and learn about many of these sites (e.g. Nelson Creek Historic Reserve, Jacks Mill School, the Brunner industrial and early settlement site, and the Davidson locomotive). Historic places are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection.

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae to monitor and mitigate (where appropriate) threats to archaeological sites, to actively manage specific sites, to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area, and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

**See also** Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation

#### 4.2.5.5 *Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020*

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Māwhera Place. These values include (but are not limited to<sup>54</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); wai (water); mahinga kai (cultural materials and the places these are gathered); ana (caves); landscapes, maunga (mountains e.g. Te Kinga, Hohonu Range) and other wāhi taonga; landforms (e.g. Twelve Apostles island stacks); rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants); oral histories of: settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hīkoi; early pa and kainga (e.g. at Kararoa, Pa Point, Kōtuku); wāhi whawhai (battlefields); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

Cave and karst areas are managed to protect wāhi tapu and natural values as a priority above recreation, tourism or other uses of these sites (see Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.6.4.8).

Each of the cultural redress sites identified in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Map 4 and Appendix 3) is managed in accordance with that Act, ensuring the protection of their significant Ngāi Tahu values (see Section 3.1.3). A Statutory Acknowledgement and Deed of Recognition have been established for Kōtuku-Whakaoho (Lake Brunner (Moana)) and Taramakau River (see Section 3.1.3.3). The importance of Lake Brunner Kotuku-Whakaoho to Ngāi Tahu is reflected in a stronger Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae presence at the lake. Nohoanga Entitlements have been granted for sites at Lake Brunner (Moana), Lake Haupiri, Lady Lake and Taramakau River (see Section 3.1.3.4).

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
Appendix 1, Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### 4.2.5.6 *People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020*

Categories<sup>55</sup> of recreational opportunities available in the Māwhera Place (Map 15) include:

- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones; and
- remote zones.

The main focus of interest centres on the numerous lakes, industrial heritage and scenic areas along road corridors, as well as huts and tracks in the backcountry. People are able to use a variety of means of access to explore natural areas and discover historic treasures.

Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department and/or enhance people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of natural, historical or cultural values. Concession activities are generally of low impact and are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the conservation values of the particular site.

---

<sup>54</sup> This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae. The 'Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan' (in draft form as at 2010) provides further details about cultural values, as does Appendix 1 of this CMS.

<sup>55</sup> Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.

### Frontcountry sites

Lakes are managed to provide a range of recreational opportunities that are consistent with the protection of natural heritage and public interest (see Sections 3.6.4.10 and 3.6.4.12).

At 3,610 ha, Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* is the largest lake in the Conservancy. This lake is a major holiday destination and receives the greatest concentration of use. Boating, fishing, swimming, walking, picnicking and camping are popular activities. Several walking tracks are maintained at key locations around the lake margins. The Department has a continuing interest in ensuring that residential developments and recreational activities do not adversely impact on the lake's ecosystem (particularly protected birdlife nesting or feeding sites and water quality), scenic natural character, or Ngāi Tahu cultural values<sup>56</sup>. The Department acknowledges the importance of the lake as a visitor destination and shares responsibility for managing recreational activities at the lake with others, specifically the Moana community, Grey District Council, Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Tahu.

Activities and/or development that occur at Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* are consistent with the 'Wider Moana Management Strategy'<sup>57</sup> which aims to protect and sustainably manage natural, historical and cultural values within the lake's entire catchment. The Department advocates for zoning on this lake (see Section 3.8.3), to minimise conflict between different recreational activities and users. All forms of water craft are allowed on Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo*, with the exception of Swans Retreat Lagoon where no motorised water craft are permitted. Speed restrictions (as per the Maritime New Zealand rules and 'Lake Brunner Navigation Safety Plan') apply for the remainder of the lake. The two existing ski lanes, located on either side of the lake, are adequate for existing and future use. The Department negotiates with the community, Grey District Council and Maritime New Zealand to reduce the length of the western ski lane at the northern end of the lake, thereby providing more opportunities for swimmers and non-motorised water craft in this area.

Concessionaire use, on and adjacent to, Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* is limited to activities that are in keeping with protection of the lake's scenic character and Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural values, and maintenance of its natural setting and environmental quality. Concession applications are considered on a case by case basis with reference to other agencies and any joint management approaches developed to manage incremental growth and its impacts on the special values of Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo*. No moorings are permitted in Cashmere Bay, or in the area in front of the Arnold river outlet beaches (in a line from Petes Point to the picnic area east of the Moana jetty), or for private purposes. Applications for mooring buoys for non-profit and commercial purposes at other sites are considered on a case by case basis.

---

56 Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* is a Deed of Recognition site under the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

57 The 'Wider Moana Management Strategy' is a co-operative effort between the Department, Grey District Council, West Coast Regional Council, West Coast Fish and Game Council, Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and the communities surrounding the lake. As at 2010, an inter-agency group met regularly to discuss and co-ordinate progress with the objectives of this Strategy.

Lake Brunner *Kotuku-Whakaobo* is the only lake in the Conservancy where concessions are granted to moor houseboats. Such activities are incompatible with the outstanding natural values of all other lakes in the Conservancy, where the lake bed is public conservation land (see Maps 12, 14, 16 and 18).

Other lowland lakes in Māwhera include Kangaroo, Lady, Poerua, Haupiri and Hochstetter (see Map 14). Many are easily accessible by road or track. The Department works with other agencies (such as the West Coast Regional Council, Grey District Council, Fish and Game New Zealand West Coast and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae) to ensure that the natural, historical and cultural heritage values and natural character, including natural quiet and scenic beauty, of these lakes are protected and preserved. Recreational activities on or adjacent to these lakes do not unduly disturb protected birdlife nesting or feeding at the lakes and do not harm indigenous freshwater species. Lakes Poerua, Haupiri and Hochstetter offer opportunities for larger motorised water craft, however Maritime New Zealand speed restriction rules apply and no ski access lanes are provided. At Lady Lake boating is restricted to non-motorised or small, low-speed (5 knots or less) motorised water craft (i.e. dinghies with small outboards). No motorised water craft are permitted on Kangaroo Lake or Lakes Ahaura or Morgan. Motorised water craft may however be permitted for central or local government agency management purposes (i.e. Department of Conservation, Fish and Game, West Coast Regional Council, Maritime New Zealand, NIWA). No permanent mooring buoys (private or commercial) are permitted on Poerua, Haupiri, Lady, Ahaura, Hochstetter and Kangaroo lakes.

Elsewhere within Māwhera there is a focus on appreciation and interpretation of the historic heritage associated with coal mining, timber extraction and alluvial gold mining. The provision of recreational facilities and interpretation of gold mining history at Woods Creek, Nelson Creek, Blackball and the Moonlight valley enable people to enjoy quality experiences at these significant historic heritage sites. Coal mining, coke- and brick-making history is interpreted at the Brunner Mine Site. Recreational gold fossicking opportunities are available at Slab Hut Creek, Moonlight Creek and Nelson Creek (see Table 6). Other popular points of interest are at Point Elizabeth and Coal Creek Falls. Wheel-chair access is available on some short walks, including the Colls Dam Track at Nelson Creek.

### **Backcountry-remote and remote zones**

Most mountain valleys in Māwhera have a system of tracks (or access up open river flats) and huts, with great scope for hunting and 'backcountry adventurer' tramping. A number of tramping tracks and historic huts are associated with historic routes across the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* (such as the Amuri Pass) and others also have strong historic connections (e.g. the Croesus Track across the southern end of the Paparoa Range). Mountain range access is available at several sites including Croesus, Moonlight, and Mounts Te Kinga, French and Alexander.

Backcountry-remote zones within the lower Grey Valley include the eastern slopes of Paparoa range and lowland forested hill country (see Map 15). In the south-western Paparoa ranges, day trip and overnight facilities are available. The Croesus and Moonlight offer opportunities for visiting historic places in natural settings. The Croesus track ascends from Blackball, traverses the main ridge between Croesus Knob and Mt Ryall, then descends to Barrytown. The Ces Clark Memorial Hut on this track offers higher standard facilities and more comfort than other backcountry huts. A marked route linking the Croesus and Moonlight tracks provides a unique

opportunity to traverse the main ridgeline of the Paparoa Range. No further facilities or access routes to wilderness opportunities are available north of the Moonlight, along the Paparoa Range. Community and corporate interests have worked with the Department to develop the 'Southern Paparoa Journey': an easy tramping track with 'backcountry comfort seeker' style facilities. The track links old mining trails of the southern Paparoa Range and connects Sewell Peak to conservation land on the open tops of Mt Watson and to the Croesus Track.

Extensive backcountry opportunities are also available within the southern and eastern parts of Māwhera Place. Group sizes of guided parties travelling here, or across the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* into Canterbury Conservancy, do not exceed eight people (see Section 3.6.1.4). Marked routes are provided to the open tops of Mt Te Kinga, Mt French and Mt Alexander, enabling a variety of climbing, exploring and hunting opportunities. Huts and sections of marked route are provided in the Waiheke and Tutaekuri valleys, linking transalpine tramping opportunities to Canterbury systems in the Doubtful and Hope valleys (i.e. Amuri and Hope passes) and enabling local backcountry users to undertake a four-five day circuit. Routes connect the Trent and east branch of the Haupiri River and one hut is maintained in each valley. A two-three day advanced tramping opportunity is provided by way of a marked route onto the Morgan tops from the Haupiri valley, connecting Lake Morgan to the Crooked River valley and on down the main valley to the road end. Basic huts are maintained near Lake Morgan and at Jacko Flat in the Crooked River valley, to facilitate this opportunity.

Outstanding opportunities exist for kayaking and rafting the Ahaura River gorge (see Section 3.6.4.10).

Within Māwhera, four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17), mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9) and horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) are possible on some roads (e.g. the Sewell Peak four-wheel drive route, Napoleans Hill and Waipuna caves road, Palmers Road, Snowy River Road and Haupiri River forestry roads). Four-wheel driving opportunities in the lowland forests are limited to old logging roads. Many of these roads are retained for recreational four-wheel driving and are maintained in partnership with four-wheel drive clubs and organisations. Four-wheel drive use will continue until such time as these roads become hazardous or unsuitable for vehicle use. Additional mountain biking opportunities are also available on some tracks or routes (e.g. the Moonlight Track and seasonal access to the Smoke Ho carpark to Ces Clarke Hut section of the Croesus Track).

Irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone and the remote zone (see Map 15). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and kayakers) or for scenic landings. Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

The Southern Paparoa, Harata and Hohonu remote zones (see Map 15) are protected for their particular values and provide opportunities for self-reliant recreation on nature's terms, consequently they have few facilities or services (see Section 3.6.1.3).

The Māwhera Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, whitebaiting, game bird, deer, chamois, goat and pig hunting.

*See also* Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

#### **4.2.6 Desired Outcome for Hokitika Place**

Section 4.2.6 describes what the Hokitika Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

*See also* Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

##### **4.2.6.1 Place description**

The Hokitika Place extends from the Taramakau River in the north to the Waitaha River catchment in the south and inland to the crest of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* (Maps 16-17). Part of Arthur's Pass National Park is located within this Place (see Map 16).

Hokitika is split in two both geologically and ecologically by the Alpine Fault, which lies about 20 km west of the crest of the Main Divide. East of the fault, the schist mountains and valleys are rugged and broken, and a large portion is protected as public conservation land. West of the fault the geology is more complex, landscapes extensively modified and public conservation lands fragmented. This Place is the historic heart of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini's* pounamu trade and is the scene of gold mining, forestry and farming industries - particularly dairying. Hokitika is the largest town (population of 3,700 as at 2010).

##### **4.2.6.2 Arthur's Pass National Park in 2020**

Arthur's Pass National Park straddles the Main Divide of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*. The north-western part of the Park lies within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (see Map 16).

The Park is of considerable importance for scientific studies, its geological features, its Waimakariri River headwaters and as a habitat for threatened species. The rugged terrain, the wide range of altitudes, the relatively severe mountain climate, the swift rivers and the passes contribute to the nature of the Park in various ways. The Park is renowned for its alpine flora and the sharp contrasts in scenery that result from the topography and climatic influence. The environmental range from eastern grasslands, through beech forests to sub-alpine and alpine communities and western rainforests, is best represented within the spectrum of New Zealand's national parks by Arthur's Pass National Park.

The Park's more distinctive public use features are: its closeness to large and smaller population centres; the relative ease of access to its "remote" settings; the low level of obvious concessionaire development and activity; the dominance of walking as the means of access; and the high degree of natural quiet. People are able to enjoy the various natural, cultural and recreational values of the Park in many ways.

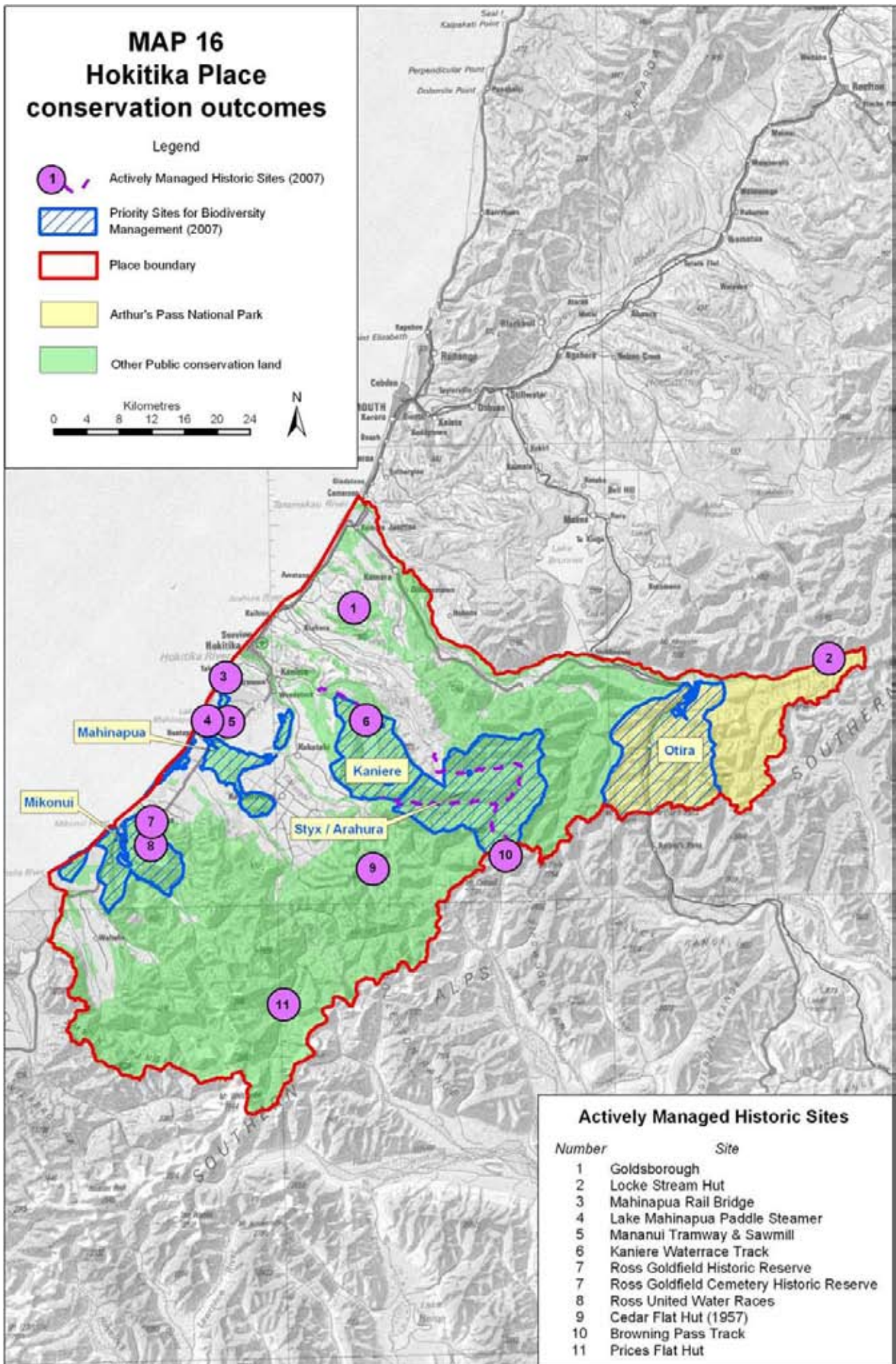
The Park is managed in accordance with the Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan. Sections 4.2.6.3 to 4.2.6.7 provide further details about the desired outcomes for Arthur's Pass National Park.

# MAP 16 Hokitika Place conservation outcomes

## Legend

-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2007)
-  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2007)
-  Place boundary
-  Arthur's Pass National Park
-  Other Public conservation land

Kilometres  
0 4 8 12 16 20 24



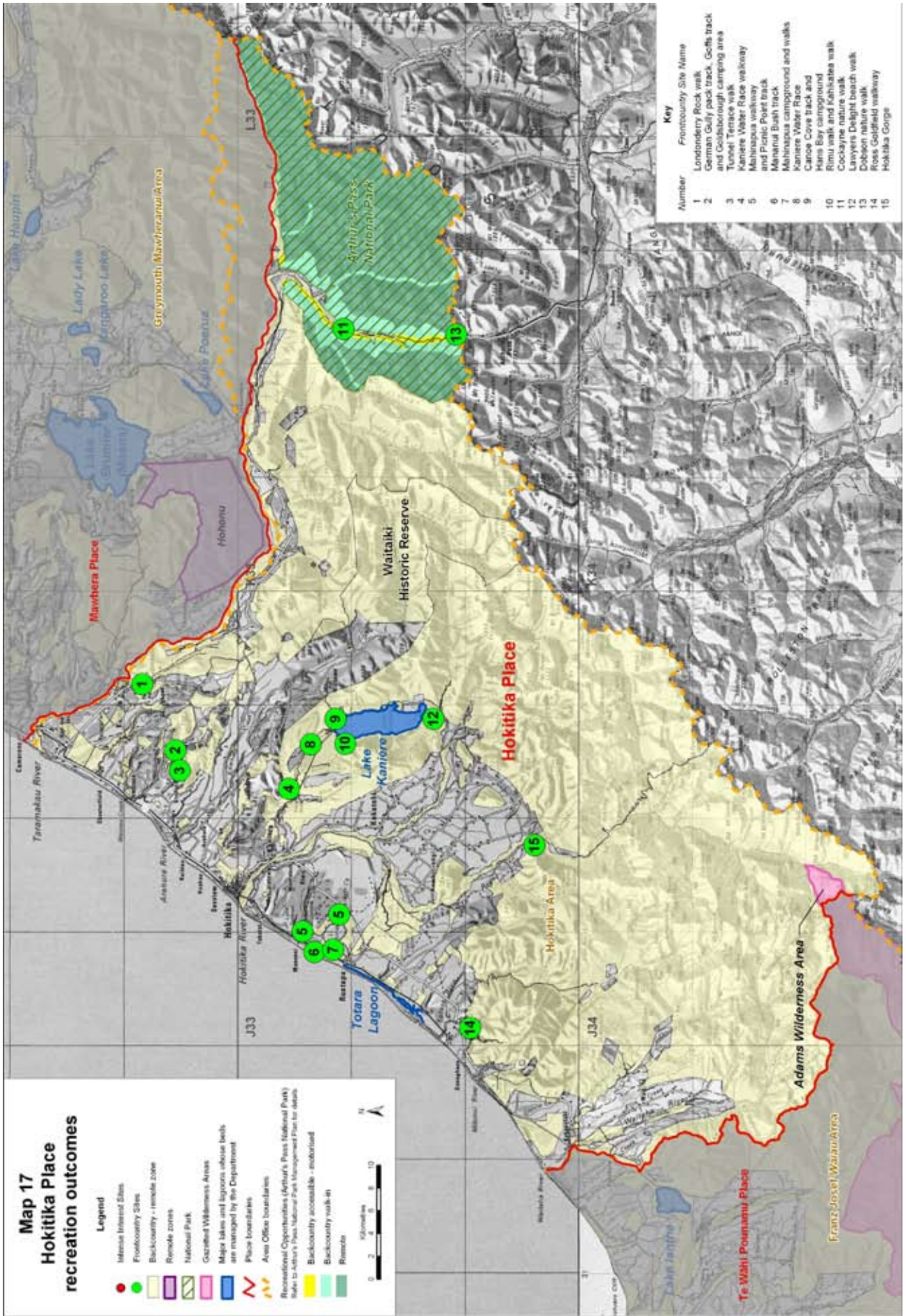
## Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
1	Goldsborough
2	Locke Stream Hut
3	Mahinapua Rail Bridge
4	Lake Mahinapua Paddle Steamer
5	Mananui Tramway & Sawmill
6	Kaniere Waterrace Track
7	Ross Goldfield Historic Reserve
7	Ross Goldfield Cemetery Historic Reserve
8	Ross United Water Races
9	Cedar Flat Hut (1957)
10	Browning Pass Track
11	Prices Flat Hut

## Map 17 Hokitika Place recreation outcomes

### Legend

- Intense Interest Sites
  - Frontcountry Sites
  - Backcountry - remote zone
  - Remote zones
  - National Park
  - Gazetted Wilderness Areas
  - Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
  - Place boundaries
  - Area Office boundaries
- Recreation Opportunities (Arthur's Pass National Park)  
Refer to Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan for details
- Backcountry accessible - motorised
  - Backcountry walk-in
  - Remote



### Key

- | Number | Frontcountry Site Name   |
|--------|--|
| 1      | Londonderry Rock walk  |
| 2      | German Gully pack track, Goats track and Galloway's camping area |
| 3      | Tonnet terrace walk  |
| 4      | Kaniere Water Race walkway                                       |
| 5      | Maniapou walkway   |
| 6      | Mid Picnic Point track   |
| 7      | Mahinapou campground and walks                                   |
| 8      | Kaniere Water Race   |
| 9      | Carole Cove track and  |
| 10     | Rim Bay campgrounds  |
| 11     | Rimau walk and Kahika walk                                       |
| 12     | Cockayne's main track walk                                       |
| 13     | Lobbers' Duffield beach walk                                     |
| 14     | Roses' Duffield walk   |
| 15     | Roses' Duffield walkway  |



#### 4.2.6.3 **Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020**

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Hokitika Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

East of the Alpine Fault the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* are composed of eroding sedimentary greywacke and schists. Granite outcrops occur extensively immediately west of the Alpine Fault (e.g. in Mounts Turiwhate, Tuhua and Rangitoto). Away from the ranges younger sedimentary rocks (limestone, sandstone, siltstone) provide much of the lowland hill country between the Taramakau River and Hokitika. An isolated occurrence of basalt is found on Mount Camelback. The Arahura and Taramakau riverbeds are a significant source of pounamu, which derives from geologic processes occurring along the Alpine Fault. Extensive alluvial gold deposits derive mainly from the ancient greywacke ranges located south of the Hokitika River (centred on Mount Greenland).

Close to the Main Divide are numerous narrow steep-sided gorged alpine valleys. The northernmost glaciers in the South Island occur near the headwaters of the Taramakau River, with glaciers becoming more frequent further south.

Large Ice Age glaciers issued from the Taramakau and Hokitika catchments and deposited vast heaps of morainic debris west of the Alpine Fault, creating extensive lowland landscapes. In this process many large lakes were created when valleys and basins were dammed by moraine, including Lake Kaniere and the coastal Lake Mahināpua.

**See also** Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### 4.2.6.4 **Indigenous biodiversity**

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

Freshwater habitat and water quality is at risk from discharges from activities such as mining, timber milling, farming or other land development and/or infestation by aquatic and riparian weeds. Didymo is present in the Arahura, Hokitika and Kakapotahi Rivers. The spread of plantation tree species also pose a threat to indigenous biodiversity and alters the natural character of landscapes in some areas, especially Blue Spur, Purcell (Kakapotahi), Blue Bottle and Falls Creek forests. Animal pests include chamois, hares, red deer and possums, many of which are widespread. Goats are present in some places including Kaniere Scenic Reserve and Vine Creek. The tahr range extends as far north as the Hokitika catchment, although there are occasional incursions beyond into the mountains further north. Predators, especially stoats, impact on great spotted kiwi *roroa*, blue duck *whio* and many other native species. Possums predate on *Powelliphanta* snails at Mt Tuhua and Mt Greenland.

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

##### **Indigenous biodiversity in 2020**

At the Otira, Styx/Arahura, Kaniere, Mahināpua and Mikonui priority sites (see Map 16) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Hokitika Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010.

A prominent feature of the forest communities in this Place is the absence of beech *tawai*. Although beech forest resumes again in the Pāringa River catchment (in Te Wāhi Pounamu Place), a number of other forest species from the northern parts of the Conservancy reach their southern limits in the Hokitika area, including nikau, northern rātā, and kānuka.

In the absence of beech *tawai*, montane forests are dominated by kāmahī, *quintinia tauberowbero*, southern rātā and Hall's totara with rimu increasingly present at lower altitudes. Nearer the coast, rimu is usually dominant on those glacial outwash surfaces that retain their natural cover. Kahikatea is found on wetter lowland alluvial sites where forest is regenerating. Other podocarps, miro, matai and tōtara, and a wide diversity of broadleaf species are common components of both original and regenerating lowland forests. Specialised podocarp communities of silver pine *kopara*, pink pine and yellow-silver pine are found on the wetter, colder or less fertile sites. Reserves such as Lake Kaniere Scenic Reserve, Shamrock Creek Amenity Area and the Doctor Hill and Mount Greenland Ecological Areas continue to protect some of the remaining lowland podocarp/broadleaf forest. Mananui Bush, a five hectare remnant of coastal sand plain forest near Hokitika, adequately maintains a scientifically valuable soil sequence of increasing age and decreasing fertility from the sea beach towards Lake Mahināpua.

Preserving and improving the natural heritage values of Arthur's Pass National Park remains a key focus, particularly within the Otira priority site (see Map 16). The slopes of the Otira valley turn red in summer when southern rātā blooms. Rātā flowers and the flowers and fruit of other species such as Hall's tōtara, mountain five-finger and fuchsia *kōtukutuku* provide a rich source of food for the abundant native invertebrates and birds. The valley floors of the upper Deception, Rolleston and Taramakau are virtually free of invasive weeds such as gorse and broom.

In areas of high ecological and recreational values (such as the river flats of the upper Taramakau and upper Styx valleys), shrublands and forest stands are recovering from a history of grazing.

All geothermal sites and surrounding landscapes retain their natural character and are not irreversibly altered in any way (see Section 3.6.4.8).

A representative sample of lowland forest and wetland remnants is legally protected within public conservation lands or via other mechanisms such as covenants and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3). The natural character of these remnants is improving.

The numerous lowland lakes, swamps and associated waterways in the Hokitika Place remain important habitat for rarer water birds and native freshwater fish. The former includes crested grebe *kāmana*, Australasian bittern *matuku*, marsh crane, spotless crane and white heron *kōtuku*. Native freshwater fish include inanga, giant kōkopu *taiwharu* and shortfin eels *tuna* present in coastal lagoons and lakes (e.g. Totara Lagoon, Lake Mahināpua), shortjaw and banded kōkopu which inhabit lowland streams flowing under forest cover, brown mudfish in areas of swampy forest or pakihī, and koaro in alpine streams. Survey and monitoring work is focused on freshwater habitat and species (with particular focus on inanga, brown mudfish and shortjaw and giant kōkopu *taiwharu*).

The wetlands of the Hokitika lowlands, including: Totara Lagoon, the Mahināpua wetland complex, Groves Swamp and Backcreek Swamp (Mahināpua priority site);

Lake Kaniere (Kaniere priority site); and Shearers Swamp (Mikonui priority site), are functioning naturally. Native species dominate the vegetation. The Department has worked in partnership with Papatipu Rūnanga, Fish and Game West Coast and the local community to control aquatic weeds such as water lilies in Lakes Kaniere and Mahināpua, and viable populations of rare aquatic plants such as *Myriophyllum robustum* are maintained. The linkages between Bold Head, Shearers Swamp and Fergusons Bush Scenic Reserve are maintained (see Mikonui priority site on Map 16).

Large and relatively undisturbed river systems, including the Hokitika River, have retained connectivity to their floodplains. Some of the best surviving sequences of floodplain kahikatea forests and riverine-wetland systems (e.g. Hokitika-Groves and Harman Swamps – wetlands of international importance: Cromarty and Scott 1996) continue to be maintained. Streams within this Place retain their status as national strongholds for giant kōkopu *taiwbaru*, shortjaw kōkopu and long-finned eels *tuna*. These populations are critical to the long-term survival of these species. Headwater catchments continue to provide important habitat for blue duck *wbio*.

Riparian management continues to improve with the assistance and support of landowners, the local community and local authorities, enhancing the connectivity, viability and life-supporting capacity of the area's ecosystems, including whitebait spawning habitat. Where practical, riparian margins throughout much of the Hokitika Place are fenced to exclude livestock. Knowledge about the effects of land use on threatened freshwater fish species is improved and advocacy for protection of their habitats (see Section 3.8.3) is successful. Indigenous freshwater fish habitat, particularly for shortjaw kōkopu, giant kōkopu *taiwbaru* and brown mudfish, is enhanced throughout Hokitika Place. Containment and/or treatment of pollutant discharges, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems.

Rock wren and kea are present in the subalpine and alpine habitats of Hokitika Place. Viable populations of the locally endemic land snails *Powelliphanta rossiana rossiana* and *P. fletcheri* are found in the subalpine habitats of Mounts Greenland (Mikonui priority site) and Tuhua (Kaniere priority site), respectively. A viable population of blue duck *wbio* is maintained in the Styx/Arahura catchments (see Styx/Arahura priority site on Map 16). The range of western weka does not contract and their abundance does not reduce. New Zealand falcon *kārearea*, South Island kākā, kākāriki and native bats *pekapeka* populations continue to exist. The southernmost populations of great spotted kiwi *roroa* are found in Arthur's Pass National Park. A viable population of the greenhood orchid *Pterostylis cernua* is maintained. The Mount Cook lily, the alpine buttercup *Ranunculus godleyanus*, the native broom *Carmichaelia arborea* and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers continue to regenerate, flower and fruit as a result of wild animal control work. Tahr are prevented from expanding their range north of the Hokitika catchment.

Invasive weeds, including old man's beard, banana passionfruit, aluminium plant, kahili ginger and Asiatic knotweed, are rarely found and are prevented from spreading further southward into Te Wāhi Pounamu Place. Formerly logged areas on public conservation land are regenerating. Exotic trees are rarely found in public conservation lands.

Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer, tahr and goats, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and

improved ecosystem health. Goat control operations prevent dispersal to goat free areas. Regular surveillance prevents new populations of unwanted wild animals establishing. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout Hokitika Place.

*See also* Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### 4.2.6.5 **Human history**

Human occupation of the Hokitika Place can be traced by Makaawhio back over 1000 years to the time that ancient iwi, such as Waitaha, Rapuwai, Ngāti Mamoe and Ngāti Wairaki, were known to have lived in the South Island. Tribal wars to gain control of treasured pounamu led to Ngāti Waewae and Kāti Māhaki gaining tribal authority on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

Māori settlements were located at sites such as Taramakau, Waimea (Goldsborough), Arahura, Hokitika, Kokatahi and Mananui. The forests, lakes, swamps and coast provided abundant supplies of birds and fish. The most significant natural resource of this region was the pounamu (greenstone) found in the beds of the Taramakau and Arahura rivers. The presence of pounamu made this part of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* a centre for trade in Aotearoa. It led to ‘greenstone trails’ being established across the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*, especially across Amuri, Noti Taramakau (Harper) and Noti Raureka (Browning) Passes. The Arahura River is culturally significant to Poutini Ngāi Tahu, particularly to Ngāti Waewae, as one of the main sources of pounamu. It is also unique as a river that is wholly in private Māori ownership under legislation.

European exploration of the region began with the coastal journey of Charles Heaphy, Thomas Brunner and guide Kehu in 1846 and continued with Brunner’s extended second visit, again with Kehu in 1847-8. In 1857 Leonard Harper crossed the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* to the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* via Noti Taramakau (Harper Pass). The area was further explored by surveyor John Rochfort in 1859 and geologist Julius von Haast in 1860. The first European crossing in 1863 via Rakaia Wai Pakahi (the Whitcombe Pass) was by George Henry Whitcombe and Jakob Lauper.

Payable gold was discovered in the Totara valley, Ross in late 1864. By the end of 1865 thousands of miners were working the alluvial gravels and sands from north of Greymouth to Haast. Hokitika was one of New Zealand’s busiest ports at this time. A coach road over Arthur’s Pass, constructed in 1865, also provided access from the east. The main phase of alluvial mining was followed by large-scale sluicing in the 1870s and 1880s and dredges worked the rivers, lakes and terraces in the early decades of the 20th century.

Sawmills began operating in the 1860s to supply the widespread goldfields. As early as 1868, kahikatea was being exported to Australia from the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Since then timber milling has been an important industry with a major boost being provided by the opening of the Arthur’s Pass rail link in 1923. Exotic plantations were introduced in a small way in the 1920s and more extensively in the 1960s, and continue to be logged in the Hokitika Place today. Logging of indigenous forests on Crown land ceased by 2002, when lands formerly managed by Timberlands West Coast Ltd were gazetted as public conservation lands. Farming

expanded considerably in the 20th century with places like Kokatahi-Kowhitirangi area and Waitaha valley providing excellent pasture. As in other parts of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, tourism has now become a major industry: roads have improved, opportunities and facilities for travellers have increased, and information on the full range of recreational attractions has become widely available.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Comprehensive research is undertaken about the history of gold mining, the timber industry and wild animal control work in Hokitika Place.

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio to monitor and mitigate (where appropriate) threats to archaeological sites, to actively manage specific sites, to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area, and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands (such as the historic rail bridge over the Mahināpua Creek *Tūwharewhare* and the Price Flat Hut - see Map 16) are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining in Hokitika Place, to ensure the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found in this area. Some huts in the backcountry are maintained in their original condition to represent the early wild animal control era. A comprehensive network of huts and bridges, originally established for this purpose, continues to be used by trampers and hunters today. Nineteenth century exploration and pack track construction is preserved by a representative range of actively managed historic places. Actively managed historic places are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection. The Department enjoys a strong partnership with the Ross community in the management of the Ross Historic Goldfields. Hokitika is a central location for West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* archives and other resources associated with historic places.

The Waitaiki Historic Reserve is managed by the Māwhera Incorporation. The Department supports the Māwhera Incorporation in the preparation and implementation of a management plan for the Reserve (see Section 3.4.2.4) and continues to maintain the huts and other structures within the Reserve, in accordance with the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Appendix 3).

*See also* Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation

#### **4.2.6.6 Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020**

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Hokitika Place. The Arahura River remains the most important source of pounamu for Ngāti Waewae. Other significant cultural values of the Hokitika Place

include (but are not limited to <sup>58</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); wai (water) and waiwera (hot springs); mahinga kai (cultural materials e.g. kiekie, mussels and the places these are gathered); landscapes, maunga (mountains e.g. Tuhua) and other wāhi taonga; landforms (e.g. landmark rocks at the top of the Otira viaduct); rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants); oral histories of: settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hikoi; stories of how Hokitika got its name and of significant battle sites (e.g. at Mahināpua); early pa and kainga (e.g. at Taramakau, Arahura and Hokitika); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

Each of the cultural redress sites identified in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Map 4 and Appendix 3) is managed in accordance with that Act, ensuring the protection of their significant Ngāi Tahu values (see Section 3.1.3). A Statutory Acknowledgement and Deed of Recognition is established for the Taramakau River and Lake Kaniere (see Section 3.1.3.3). Ownership of the bed of Lake Mahināpua is returned to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, who also has the role of Statutory Adviser for this lake (see Section 3.1.3.2). Nohoanga Entitlements are granted for single sites at the Taramakau River and Lake Kaniere and for two sites at the Mikonui River (see Section 3.1.3.4). Some land is vested in the Mawhera Incorporation in fee simple in the lower Arahura valley and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in fee simple at Lake Kaniere and Lake Mahināpua. In the upper Arahura valley the Waitaiki Historic Reserve is created and vested in the Mawhera Incorporation.

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua  
Appendix 1 - Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### **4.2.6.7 People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020**

Categories<sup>59</sup> of recreational opportunities available in the Hokitika Place (Map 17) include:

- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones;
- remote zones; and
- the gazetted Mt Adams Wilderness Area (see Maps 17 and 19a - note that the majority of this area is located within Te Wāhi Pounamu Place).

Hokitika Place provides a number of scenic and historic walks, a range of opportunities associated with its rivers and larger lakes (especially Lakes Kaniere and Mahināpua), and a comprehensive network of backcountry facilities (almost all the valleys of the backcountry contain tracks, huts and bridges).

Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department and/or enhance people's enjoyment, understanding and appreciation of natural, historical or cultural values. Concession activities are generally of low impact and are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the conservation values of the particular site.

---

58 This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by the relevant Papatipu Rūnanga. In addition to Appendix 1 of this CMS, two documents (which were in draft form as at 2010) provide further details about the cultural values of the Hokitika place: Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio Natural Resource Management Plan.

59 Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.

## Frontcountry sites

The striking scenic and natural values of Lakes Mahināpua and Kaniere make both lakes popular destinations for boating, fishing, swimming, picnicking, camping and walking. These lakes are an important focus of the Department's provision and development of services and facilities.

At Lake Mahināpua picnicking, walking, camping and boating activities take place in a peaceful natural setting, dominated by uninterrupted views of tall podocarp forests on the lake margins and beyond to the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*. Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values are strongly evident in the interpretation themes at this site, which acknowledge the cultural significance of the site. Water and wetland values are the focus of other interpretation themes. Recreational facilities are progressively improved, in keeping with the values of the site. The Department successfully advocates for no high speed motorised boats and minimal overnight mooring on Lake Mahināpua (see Section 3.6.4.12). Several walking opportunities are available on the north-western side of the Lake, including the Mahināpua Walkway which follows the route of an historic bush tramway.

At Lake Kaniere, the Department provides low-key camping and day-use facilities. Several short walks and longer tramping tracks are also provided, including the Kaniere Water Race Track. Ngāi Tahu Whānui have access to, and regularly use, the nohoanga site and associated facilities located adjacent to Hans Bay. Recreational activities on and adjacent to this lake are limited to those that are in keeping with protection of the lake's scenic character and Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural values<sup>60</sup>, and maintenance of the natural setting and environmental quality. There are no new moorings on Lake Kaniere (see Section 4.2.5.6, Frontcountry sites). Concession opportunities are in keeping with the protection of scenic natural character, environmental quality and recreational use by local communities.

Other important frontcountry sites include those in the western part of Arthur's Pass National Park (e.g. Cockayne Nature Walk), the Hokitika Gorge and the historic gold mining settlements of Kumara, Goldsborough *Waiimea* and Ross:

- At Hokitika Gorge, people can easily access the spectacular gorge scenery and its quiet natural setting and the Department's presence and investment in recreational facilities remains low key.
- Sites around Lake Kaniere and at Goldsborough *Waiimea* provide people with recreational opportunities such as camping, walking, picnicking and water-based activities. Existing recreational facilities are maintained.
- The history of the Ross goldfields is the basis for interpretive themes at the small historic reserve and on the adjacent walkway. The Ross community and the Department work together to progressively improve recreational facilities, enabling people to appreciate and understand the historic themes relevant to the area.
- Recreational gold fossicking opportunities are available at Shamrock Creek and Jones Creek (see Table 6).

Within the Hokitika Place, mountain biking (see Section 3.6.4.9) and horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) are possible on some roads (e.g. Wainihinihi forestry roads; Totara Valley Road to Old Mikonui Valley Homestead). Other roads are also available

---

<sup>60</sup> Lake Kaniere is a Deed of Recognition site under the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. In addition, a nohoanga site is located adjacent to Hans Bay.

for four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17) (e.g. Taipo Valley access road; Mt Greenland). Four-wheel drive use will continue until such time as these roads become hazardous or unsuitable for vehicle use. Many of these roads cross lands of other tenure. Additional mountain biking opportunities are also available on some tracks or routes (e.g. the Kaniere Water Race track and the Lake Kaniere Walkway).

### **Backcountry-remote zone, remote zone and gazetted wilderness areas**

New Zealanders continue to regard the extensive Hokitika backcountry as the country's backcountry adventurer 'capital', because of the comprehensive network of backcountry tracks, routes and huts. Opportunities range from multi-day valley and trans-alpine tramping via remote and challenging terrain, to day tramps and weekend trips to accessible huts or natural hot pools (the latter are found in several valleys, including at Cedar Flats and in the Taipo valley; see Section 3.6.4.8). A number of tramping tracks and historic huts are associated with historic routes across the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*, especially Harper Pass *Noti Taramakau*, Browning Pass *Noti Raureka* and Whitcombe Pass *Rakaia Wai Pakahi*. Numerous opportunities exist for extended north to south traverses utilizing routes and passes into the Newton Saddle, Mikonui, Tuke, Mungo and Waitaha catchments. Circuitous routes are also available, such as the Scamper-Torrent circuit up the Waitaha Valley and down the Smyth Range. Recreational facilities are generally concentrated on valley floors along the more popular tramping and traditional access routes. However there are several huts, ridge routes and a few bridges specifically sited to maximise 'non-tracked' linkages between valleys. Such facilities include Bluff Hut, Sir Robert Hut, Moonbeam Hut, County Stream Hut, County Junction swing bridge, Price Basin Hut and Ivory Lake Hut.

Part of Arthur's Pass National Park is within the Hokitika Place and is managed in accordance with the Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan. The backcountry corridor through the Otira valley and the classic backcountry tramps to Lake Kaurapataka and up the Deception and Taramakau valleys are within this part of the Park. There are also challenging routes to the open tops and remote huts and bivvys, including links to the popular 'Three Pass' route. Most of the Park is the 'Arthur's Pass remote zone' (see dark green area on Map 17), with few facilities, requiring people to be self-sufficient. Much of the opportunity in this area is challenging, remote and on nature's terms. Maintained huts and bivvys include: Carroll Hut, Pfeifer Biv, Otehake Hut, Koropuku Hut and Townsend Hut, some of which are reached via marked routes only.

The Minga/Deception tramping track is a classic east-west traverse of the Main Divide crossing over Goat Pass.

Maintained routes within short proximity of State Highway 73 include those in the Rolleston valley and up Barrack Creek and Mt Barron. There are tramping tracks into the upper Otira Valley and to Carroll Hut, providing people with access to challenging backcountry terrain.

The Taramakau Valley Track provides access through Harper Pass to the Hurunui valley, via the historic Locke Stream Hut. It is a multi-day tramp in backcountry with many river crossings. Group sizes of concessionaire-guided parties travelling over Harper Pass into Canterbury Conservancy do not exceed 15 people (see Section 3.6.1.4).



'Classic' backcountry tramps available include the 'Three Pass' circuit, the Browning Pass *Noti Raureka*, the tramp along the Toaroha Valley across Frew Saddle and the Whitcombe valley linkage to Canterbury. Concessionaire-guided party size on the Arahura - Styx circuit do not exceed 15 people, while east of the Arahura/Styx junction party size does not exceed 8 people (see Section 3.6.1.4). Group sizes of concessionaire-guided parties travelling over the Main Divide into Canterbury Conservancy via the Three Pass trip or elsewhere further south, do not exceed 8 people (see Section 3.6.1.4).

Hokitika is a world-renowned rafting and whitewater kayaking destination. The Styx, Toaroha and Kakapotahi rivers and Totara Lagoon are maintained as key places for kayaking that are free from high numbers of other users during kayaking trips (see Section 3.6.4.10).

Aircraft landings within Arthur's Pass National Park are managed in accordance with the Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan. A 500 m wide 'restricted aircraft landing' buffer zone is maintained along the ridgeline bordering Arthur's Pass National Park, for the purpose of protecting the natural quiet values of the Park. Aircraft landings for scenic flights, heli-skiing, heli-hiking or positioning recreationists should not be permitted in this buffer zone. See also Section 3.6.4.2.

Irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone and the remote zone (see Map 17). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and kayakers) or for scenic landings (including scenic snow landings). Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings. (See Section 3.6.4.2).

The Hokitika Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, whitebaiting, game bird, deer, tahr and goat hunting.

**See also** Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment

#### **4.2.7 Desired Outcome for Te Wāhi Pounamu Place**

Section 4.2.7 describes what Te Wāhi Pounamu Place will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

**See also** Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy

##### **4.2.7.1 Place description**

The northern boundary of Te Wāhi Pounamu Place runs west along the Smyth Range to Pukekura, then north up State Highway 6 to the Waitaha River and out to the Waitaha River mouth (Maps 18-19). The southern boundary begins at Awarua Point (at the northern end of Big Bay *Tīhei Mauri Ora*), and follows the boundary inland between the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and Southland Conservancies. Much of the eastern boundary follows the Main Divide.

Te Wāhi Pounamu Place encompasses all the land within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy designated as the Te Wāhipounamu *South-West New Zealand* World

Heritage Area (see grey areas on Map 3), and contains many outstanding examples of the features that have led to the granting of this highly prestigious international recognition (see Section 4.2.7.2). It also includes a number of other conservation areas (see green areas on Map 3). Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park and Mount Aspiring National Park (see Maps 3 and 18), the 46,587 hectare Adams Wilderness Area and parts of the Hooker/Landsborough Wilderness Area and Olivine Wilderness Area (see Maps 19a-c) are located within this Place. Other protected areas of special note include the Saltwater Ecological Area, which protects an outstanding coastal lagoon and its associated swamps, forests and meandering streams, and the 1534 hectare Waitangiroto Nature Reserve (see Section 4.2.7.5), which protects the country's only breeding colony of the white heron *kōtuku*.

This part of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* contains some of the most remote and inaccessible mountain country in New Zealand including many of the country's highest mountains, largest ice-fields and intact lowland forest ecosystems. The extensive sequences of public conservation lands are unique for their scale, complexity and diversity. State Highway 6 provides the best opportunity for travellers to see one of the last great unspoilt temperate wilderness landscapes left on earth.

#### **4.2.7.2 *Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area in 2020***

Those parts of the *Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area* that are located within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy retain the values described in Section 2.2.1.3 and are managed in accordance with Section 4.2.7 and Section 3.8.1.1 of this CMS.

#### **4.2.7.3 *Westland Tai Poutini National Park in 2020***

Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park protects qualities and attractions that range from historic features of local interest, through ecosystems of national scientific importance, to major physical features of international significance.

The park is valued nationally and internationally as an inspirational setting where a number of recreational opportunities can be enjoyed. The Park is included in the *Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area* and is recognised by United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) as one of the world's outstanding natural areas.

This Park is unique in the New Zealand context in that it contains a cross-section of landforms and vegetation that extends from the South Island's western coastline to the highest peaks of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*. Public interest in the best-known features, the Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hine Hukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* is high. Accommodation and guiding ventures continue their longstanding tradition in the locality and aircraft allow a wide range of people to access the glaciers and snowfields.






The Park is managed in accordance with the Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park Management Plan. Sections 4.2.7.6 to 4.2.7.10 provide further details about the desired outcomes for Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park.

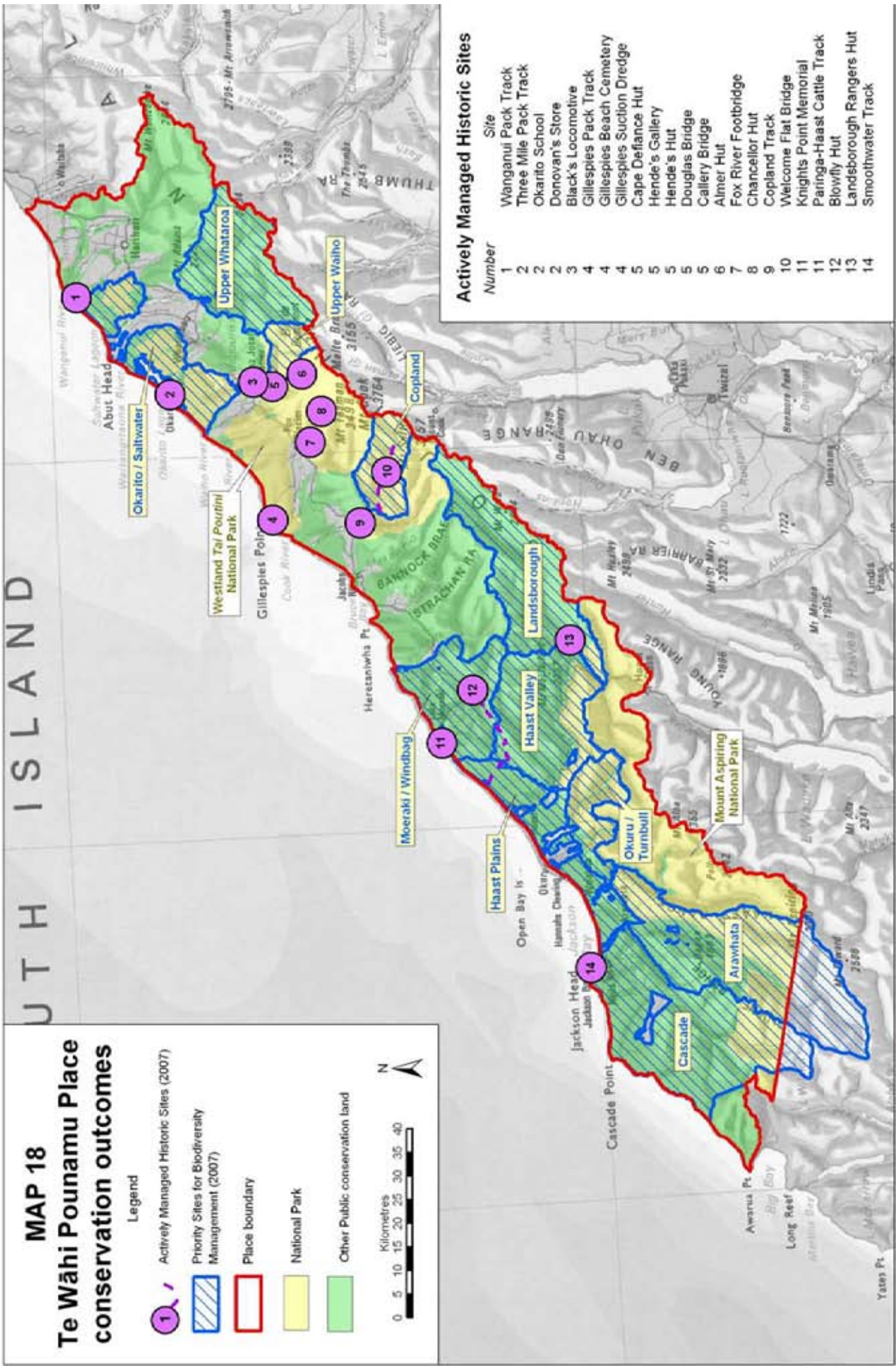
#### **4.2.7.4 *Mt Aspiring National Park in 2020***

Mt Aspiring National Park is included in the *Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area* and is recognised by United Nations Educational

# MAP 18

## Te Wāhi Pounamu Place conservation outcomes

- Legend**
-  Actively Managed Historic Sites (2007)
  -  Priority Sites for Biodiversity Management (2007)
  -  Place boundary
  -  National Park
  -  Other Public conservation land

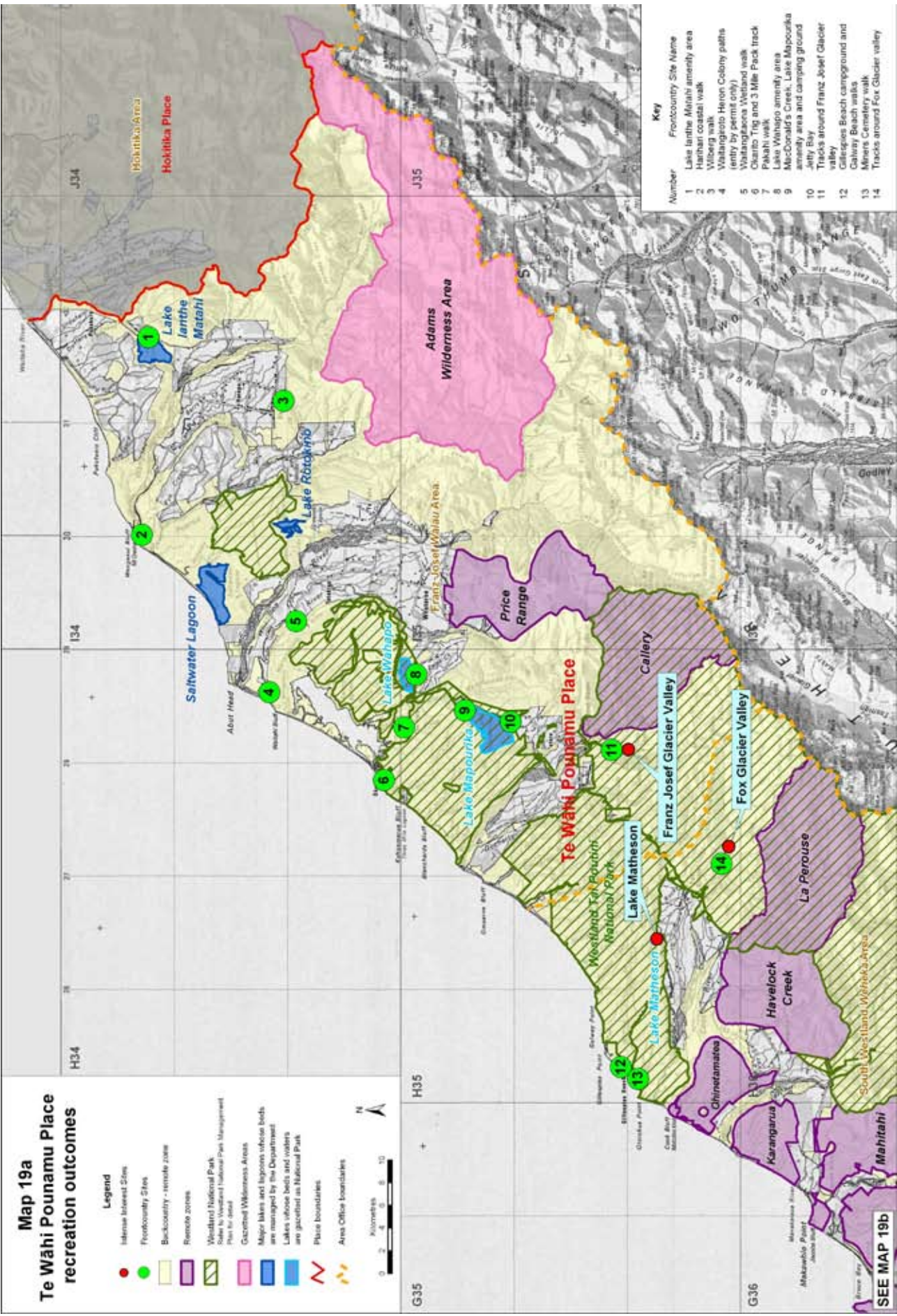


### Actively Managed Historic Sites

Number	Site
1	Wanganui Pack Track
2	Three Mile Pack Track
2	Okarito School
3	Donovan's Store
4	Black's Locomotive
4	Gillespies Pack Track
4	Gillespies Beach Cemetery
4	Gillespies Suction Dredge
5	Cape Defiance Hut
5	Hende's Gallery
5	Hende's Hut
5	Douglas Bridge
5	Callery Bridge
6	Almer Hut
7	Fox River Footbridge
8	Chancellor Hut
9	Copland Track
10	Welcome Flat Bridge
11	Knights Point Memorial
11	Paringa-Haast Cattle Track
12	Blowfly Hut
13	Landsborough Rangers Hut
14	Smoothwater Track

# Map 19a Te Wāhi Pounamu Place recreation outcomes

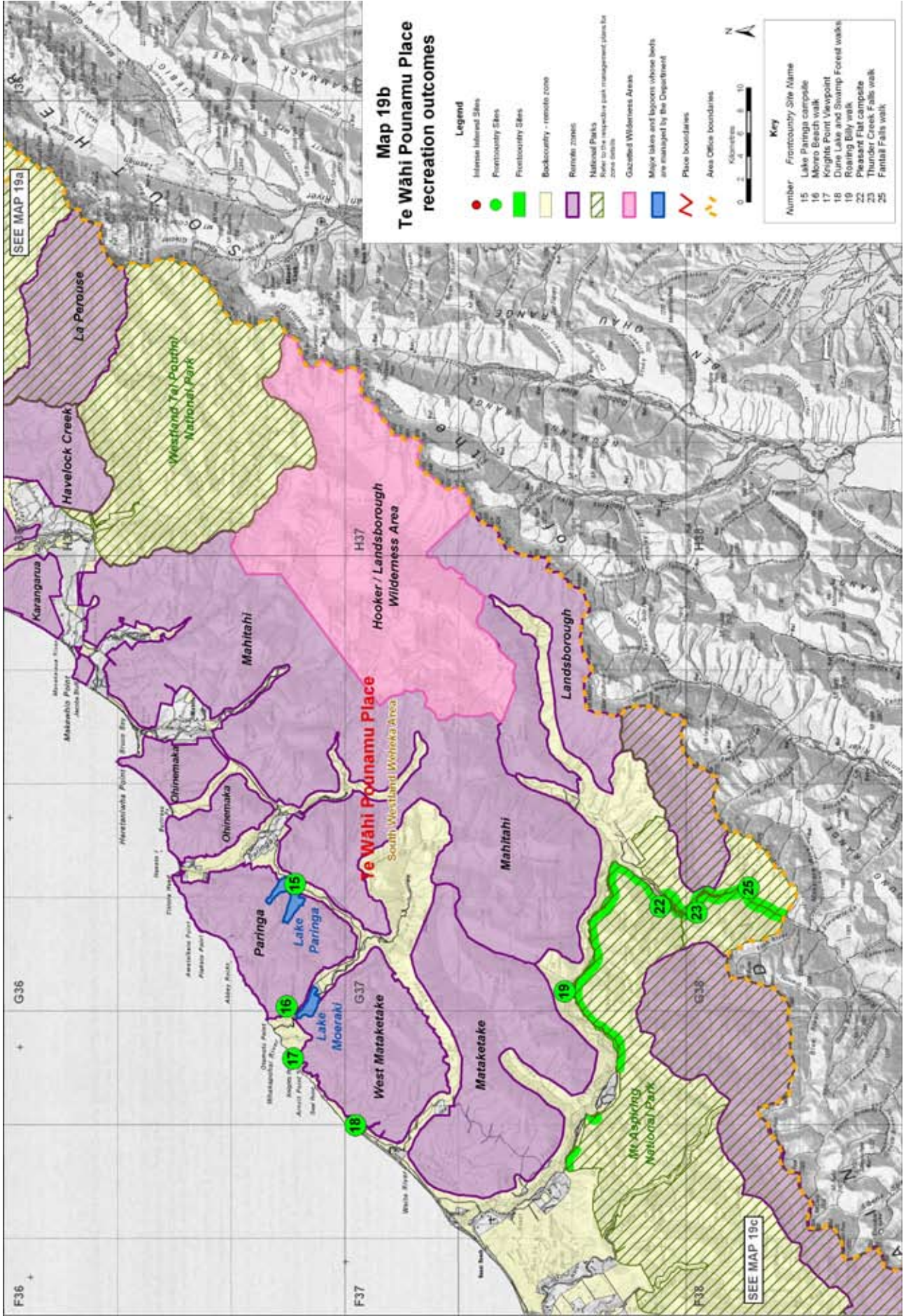
- Legend**
- Intense Interest Sites
  - Frontcountry Sites
  - Backcountry - remote zone
  - Remote zones
  - Westland National Park Rules to Westland National Park Management Plan for detail
  - Gazetted Wilderness Areas
  - Major lakes and lagoons whose beds are managed by the Department
  - Lakes whose beds and shores are gazetted as National Park
  - Place boundaries
  - Area Office boundaries



**Key**

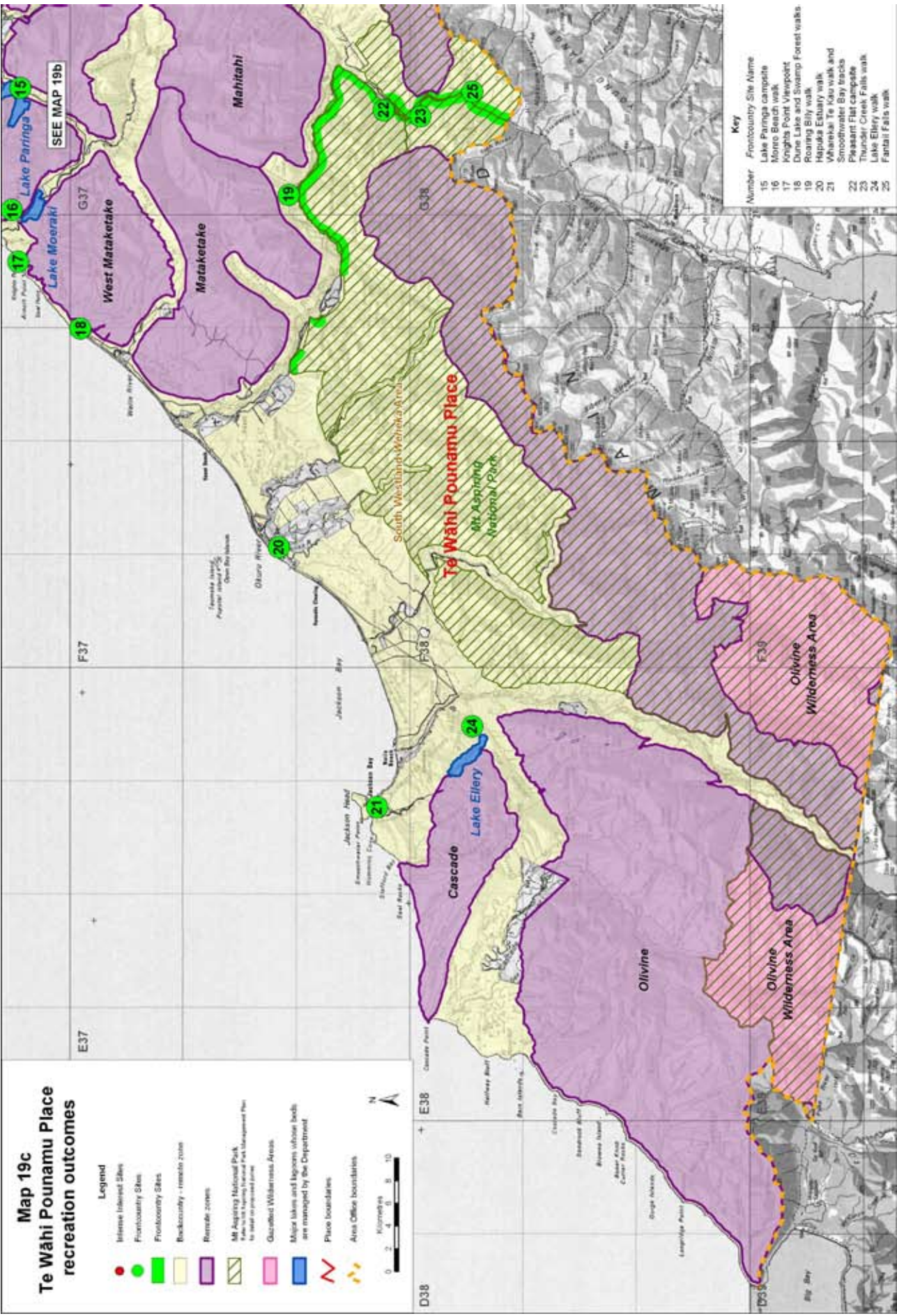
Number	Frontcountry Site Name
1	Lake Iritahi, Mirahi amenity area
2	Hairihi coastal walk
3	Wilberg walk
4	Waikareto Henon Coburn paths (entry by permit only)
5	Waikaretoa Wetland walk
6	Oxarto Trig and 3 Mile Pack track
7	PAKAI walk
8	Lake Waikare amenity area
9	MacDonald's Creek, Lake Māpoukita amenity area and camping ground
10	Jetty Bay
11	Tracks around Franz Josef Glacier valley
12	Callerys Beach campground and Callery Beach walk
13	Mines Cemetery walk
14	Tracks around Fox Glacier valley

SEE MAP 19b



# Map 19c Te Wāhi Pounamu Place recreation outcomes

- Legend**
- Intense Interest Sites
  - Frontcountry Sites
  - Frontcountry Sites
  - Backcountry - remote 2000
  - Remote zones
  - Mt Aspiring National Park  
Lake huts requiring National Park Management Plan  
to enter or proceed from
  - Quasi-Wilderness Areas
  - Major lakes and lagoons whose beds  
are managed by the Department
  - ~ Place boundaries
  - ~ Area Office boundaries



**Key**

Number	Frontcountry Site Name
15	Lake Paringa campsite
16	Monro Beach walk
17	Knights Point Viewpoint
18	Dune Lake and Swamp Forest walks
19	Roaring Eddy walk
20	Hapuku Estuary walk
21	Whareka Te Kōu walk and Smoothwater Bay tracks
22	Pleasant Flat campsite
23	Thunder Creek Falls walk
24	Lake Ellery walk
25	Fairfall Falls walk

Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) as having outstanding universal natural values. These features, including a glaciated schist landscape, extensive remote areas, the ultramafic rocks of the Red Hills, the horn of Mt Aspiring itself and the remnant ice sheets of the Olivine Ice Plateau are maintained.

The character of Mt Aspiring National Park lies in the diversity of physical and biological features – grassy flats, forested valley walls, rounded ridge tops, glaciers, extensive snow fields and soaring peaks. These habitats support a diversity of wildlife and varied recreational opportunities. The Olivine Wilderness Area is a major feature. Human activities have relatively little impact on the Park, which is managed to protect its wild and remote character and to facilitate recreational use that is compatible with this character. Traditional recreational activities of tramping and climbing predominate. Fishing, hunting, kayaking and short walks are also popular. The highest use areas tend to be near the tourist destinations of Wanaka and Queenstown in areas such as the Routeburn and the well known West Otago valleys, such as the Dart, Rees and Matukituki – all of which are located outside of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

The Park is managed in accordance with the Mt Aspiring National Park Management Plan. Sections 4.2.7.6 to 4.2.7.10 provide further details about the desired outcomes for Mt Aspiring National Park.

#### **4.2.7.5 Waitangiroto Nature Reserve in 2020**

The Waitangiroto Nature Reserve, located between the Waitangitaona (Waitangi Tahuna) River and Ōkārīto Lagoon (see Ōkārīto/Saltwater priority site on Map 18), encompasses the alluvial flats, swamps and moraine ridges of the Waitangiroto River's lower reaches. The outstanding natural features of the reserve, including:

- New Zealand's only white heron *kōtuku* breeding colony;
- a royal spoonbill *kōtuku-ngutupapa* breeding colony;
- a sizeable tract of unmodified coastal flood plain forest containing an area of kahikatea forest (a nationally scarce forest type);
- the unusual abundance of kowhai and the associated tui gatherings on the northern river banks of the reserve;
- swamp and flood plain vegetation;
- the naturalness of the vegetation over most of the reserve;
- the presence of several continuous environmental gradients including estuarine/freshwater, coastal/inland and forest bog sequences; and
- its linkages with the internationally significant Ōkārīto Coastal Wetland Complex

are maintained. The white heron *kōtuku* breeding colony continues to be protected from disturbance and the peaceful atmosphere of the reserve is maintained. This is achieved via the strict controls on public access (entry is by permit only<sup>61</sup>), by managing motorised water craft activity (see Section 3.6.4.12), and via the Civil Aviation Authority airspace restrictions (NZR 700)<sup>62</sup> over the area (see Section 3.6.4.2). The Civil Aviation Authority is notified of any breach of these regulations.

---

61 Reserves Act entry permits for the Waitangiroto Nature Reserve may be issued by the Area Manager.

62 Altitudinal restrictions on aircraft are in place from 1 August to 31 March inclusive each year.

The slow moving waters of Waitangiroto River usually allow for easy travel by row boat, kayak or canoe. Permit holders occasionally access the reserve by these means.

A sole concessionaire provides guided trips to view the white heron *kōtuku* breeding colony. During the nesting season limited numbers of guided trips take place, as a precautionary measure against disturbance. Breeding success of white heron *kōtuku*, royal spoonbill *kōtuku-ngutupapa* and little shag *kawaupaka* continues to be monitored. .

Only those facilities, buildings and structures compatible with the character and function of the reserve are provided and maintained. Whitebaiters are permitted to erect small temporary shelters on peripheral open areas along the Waitangitaona (Waitangi Tahuna) riverbank during the whitebait season.

Interpretative literature or other media illustrating and documenting natural features of the reserve are available to the general public.

Isolated patches of gorse are eliminated, particularly along the banks of the Waitangiroto River. The reserve remains free of other invasive weed species. Where necessary, stoat control is undertaken around the colony during the nesting season of the white heron *kōtuku* and royal spoonbill *kōtuku-ngutupapa*. Wild animals (possums, deer, goats etc) are kept at densities commensurate with the adjoining Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park, reserves and other conservation land.

Protection, either by addition to the reserve or by other means, maintains the integrity of the reserve and ensures the effective management of its wildlife. A review of the legal status of the Roto Road Conservation Area, which links the western and eastern parts of the Reserve, considers incorporation of this Conservation Area into the Waitangiroto Nature Reserve.

The Department works with adjacent landowners to protect wetlands of the Waitangiroto catchment (see Section 3.2.3.8). Adjoining land management practices and uses are sympathetic to the reserve and its values. Any land development that takes place within the wider Waitangiroto catchment does not alter the water quality or flow characteristics of the Waitangiroto River, cause coastal erosion, or adversely affect the local feeding grounds of the white heron *kōtuku*.

#### **4.2.7.6 *Geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in 2020***

The overall character of geodiversity, landforms and landscapes in Te Wāhi Pounamu Place is maintained in its 2010 condition, a summary of which is presented below.

Te Wāhi Pounamu provides the most graphic examples of geomorphological processes found anywhere in New Zealand. It contains many of the highest summits in the country (including Mounts Tasman *Horokoau* [3497 m a.s.l.], Aspiring Tititea [3030 m a.s.l.], Hopkins [2882 m a.s.l.] and Hooker [2652 m a.s.l.]), and some of the most expansive landscapes of permanent snow and ice, including the vast neves at the head of the Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere*, Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe*, and the large Therman, Volta and Hooker Glaciers. The icefalls of the Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* are among the fastest moving rivers of ice in the world. Landforms created by a long history of glaciation can be found throughout Te Wāhi Pounamu.



The line of the Alpine Fault clearly delineates the western flank of the Southern Alps and separates the mountain barrier from the coastal hills and plains. Outwash gravels from Ice Age glaciers have built up the present Haast coastal plain and contributed to its extensive wetlands. Rising from this plain are a number of distinctive granite 'beehive' hills (e.g. Mosquito Hill, Mount McLean). The coastline of the southern half of Te Wāhi Pounamu is comprised of bluff systems, sandy embayments, boulder banks and extensive gravel beaches. Along the coastal plain north and south of the Haast river mouth a sequence of parallel dune-ridges and entrapped dune-lakes have built up over the past 5000-6000 years and today provide the best example of this coastal land-building process in New Zealand.

A small area of Jackson limestone with some cave and karst features can be found near Jackson Head. It is the only sizeable karst area known south of the Taramakau River, and is culturally significant to Māori.

Among the more distinctive aspects of the lowland landscapes are the rivers, lakes and coastal lagoons. Draining westwards from the Main Divide are some of the biggest and wildest mountain rivers in New Zealand including the mighty Landsborough/Haast River. The valley now occupied by this river was carved by the largest glacier to issue from the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana* during the Ice Ages, with a maximum length of about 125 km (compared to a maximum of 85 km for the Tasman Glacier). Huge glaciers also issued from the Arawhata and Cascade valleys, creating between them one of the most impressive lateral moraines in temperate parts of the Southern Hemisphere. South of this the Cascade River now meanders across a broad floodplain. Ice Age glaciers left many distinctive features in the landscape of Te Wāhi Pounamu, including the Haast coastal outwash plain, the moraine-impounded Lakes Ianthe *Matabi*, Wahapo, Mapourika, Matheson, Pāringa, Moeraki and Ellery. Tidal lagoons and attendant swamps and meandering streams, including the Saltwater Lagoon *Pouerua* and one of the largest substantially natural estuaries left in New Zealand, Ōkārīto Lagoon are also features of past glaciations.

Te Wāhi Pounamu is one of the most geologically dynamic regions in the country. Cycles of mountain uplift and erosion are demonstrated by the short term changes that are occurring at the terminal regions of the Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe*. At Franz Josef *Waiiau* village, for example, the bed of the Waiho River has risen dramatically over the past 30 years, overwhelming the former suspension bridge and airfield and continuing to threaten other parts of the town. At Lake Wahapo and on the lower Cook River *Webeke* flats formerly healthy kahikatea forests have been inundated by river gravels. Massive and regular floods are an inevitable consequence of the topography and climate. Near the southern boundary are the distinctive barren red ultramafic uplands of the Red Hills Range. The separation of the Red Hills Range from similar ultramafic rocks in the Nelson area, 480 km to the north, is one of the key indicators of the amount of lateral displacement that has occurred along the Alpine Fault.

**See also** Section 3.3.4 Geodiversity and Landscapes

#### 4.2.7.7 **Indigenous biodiversity**

##### **Threats to indigenous biodiversity as at 2010**

Invasive weeds are generally at an early stage of colonisation but have the potential to spread into currently unmodified areas. Examples include wandering jew

*Tradescantia fluminensis* at the Ōkārīto delta, buddleia in the Waiho River bed, crack willow around lakes, wetlands and rivers, gorse and broom in the Haast valley, and giant gunnera in the Moeraki riverbed. Didymo is present in the upper Haast River.

Possoms are now widespread throughout Te Wāhi Pounamu, although they have only recently colonised the catchments of the Hope, Cascade, Gorge and Spoon rivers. Possoms pose a threat to southern rātā/kāmahi and mixed beech-podocarp/hardwood forests that otherwise remain in good condition. Tahr are present throughout Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park and most other alpine areas, while red deer and chamois are widespread. Red deer numbers have increased in southern parts of Te Wāhi Pounamu due to reduced hunting pressure. A few small pockets of goats are present. Other pests, including ship rats, are also widespread. Predators, especially stoats, impact on rowi, Haast tokoeka, yellowhead *mobua*, South Island kākā, blue duck *whio*, long-tailed bats *pekapeka* and many other native species.

New Zealand fur seals *kekeno* and Fiordland Crested Penguin *tawaki* may be disturbed by human activities, especially in areas where they are easily accessible to the public (e.g. at Waikowhai Bluff north of Gillespies Beach and Monro Beach).

**See also** Section 3.3.1 Biodiversity values and threats  
Conservation General Policy 2005, Policy 4.2(a)

### **Indigenous biodiversity in 2020**

The natural heritage values located within the Conservancy's portion of Te Wāhipounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area (such as its unique landscapes and landforms, intact 'mountain to sea' ecosystem sequences and ecological integrity) are recognised as internationally significant and conservation management reflects this status. At the Ōkārīto/Saltwater, Upper Whataroa, Upper Waiho, Copland, Landsborough, Moeraki/Windbag, Haast Valley, Haast Plains, Okuru/Turnbull, Arawhata and Cascade priority sites (see Map 18) natural heritage values are maintained and, where practicable, protected and enhanced. Elsewhere in Te Wāhi Pounamu Place, natural heritage values are maintained to at least the same condition they were in as at 2010.

The thriving indigenous biodiversity of Te Wāhi Pounamu is an example of what active management of relatively intact mainland habitats can achieve. At priority sites for biodiversity management (see Map 18), natural processes occur as free from adverse effects from humans as possible, indigenous species persist without threat of extinction, and people can enjoy the full splendour of natural New Zealand. Natural landscapes extending from mountain tops to the sea are maintained throughout much of the Place. All geothermal sites and surrounding landscapes retain their natural character and are not irreversibly altered in any way (see Section 3.6.4.8).

The wide variety of landforms and the extent to which forest has survived intact from the mountains to the sea has given Te Wāhi Pounamu a complex mosaic of different forest types. Among the more significant components of this mosaic are:

- Podocarp/broadleaf forest dominated by rimu on the better-drained parts of the lowland moraine hill country and glacial outwash terraces, including some of the best dense rimu forest in the country in the Ōkārīto (north and south), Waikūkupa and Karangarua forests;

- Kahikatea forest on the wetter flood plain areas. The last great dense lowland kahikatea forests in New Zealand are found south of the Cook River *Webeke*, especially between the Ohinetamatea and Ohinemaka Rivers;
- Matai/tōtara forest on well-drained parts of recent alluvial floodplains. Once widespread in Te Wāhi Pounamu, this forest type is confined now to a few remnants in the major river valleys;
- Silver pine *kopara*, yellow-silver pine, stunted rimu and mountain toatoa on the many poorly-drained sites among the lowland moraine hills;
- Southern rātā/kāmahi forest on the lower slopes of the main ranges and montane valleys, including some of the best condition southern rātā forest in the country in the Copland valley; and
- An often wide band of virtually impenetrable subalpine scrub which, in the absence of beech *tawai*, is dominated by various tree-daisies (*Olearia*) and grass trees (*Dracophyllum*).

The effect of past glacial activity on plant communities, whereby Ice Age glaciers scraped the entire central Westland landscape clear of all forest, is a significant feature of the vegetation in Te Wāhi Pounamu. This is most clearly shown by the general absence of beech *tawai* between the Taramakau and Pāringa rivers, other than a few outliers in the Karangarua and Mahitahi catchments – the central Westland ‘beech gap’. Evidence of the patterns of plant colonisation and soil formation following the retreat of glacial ice is illustrated in the present Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* valleys. More complex vegetation patterns occur on the moraine hills west of the Alpine Fault, which have been created over a much greater time-scale of glacial advance and retreat. Interactions between plant communities and dynamic landscapes are also a feature of the coastal environment, where constant erosion and aggradation has an effect on plant communities and habitats.

In the southern half of Te Wāhi Pounamu, forests and wetlands stretch unbroken from the foothills across the coastal lowlands. Kahikatea dominates forest on poorly drained valley floors, and beech *tawai* resumes and becomes increasingly common south of Pāringa. Silver beech *tawai* is dominant throughout, red beech *tawai* is present at lower altitudes in the catchments from the Arawhata south, and mountain beech *tawai* is scattered throughout, particularly on less fertile and imperfectly drained sites. A few isolated stands of hard beech *tawai* are present on Macfarlane Mound and Nisson Hill. This is the only location south of Greymouth where hard beech occurs. Podocarps are common in the mosaic of lowland forest communities. Groves of lowland ribbonwood *manatu* scattered through the silver beech forest along the Windbag, Haast and other valleys and kōwhai forests of the lower Cascade valley and around the Hapūka and Waiatoto coastal lagoons. In spring, these kōwhai forests attract hundreds of wood pigeons *kūkupa*<sup>63</sup>, tūi and bellbirds *kōparapara/korimako* and for a few brief weeks recreate the kind of sound that once filled New Zealand forests for much of the year.

Te Wāhi Pounamu is one of the most important areas on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (or indeed anywhere in mainland New Zealand) for biodiversity because of a number of factors: it contains such a wide range of ecosystems, much of it remains in a natural condition, and it features a number of areas that were very significant

---

63 Kati Mahāki refer to woodpigeon as *kūkupa*, whereas Ngati Waewae call woodpigeon *kererū*.

refuges for plants and animals during the Ice Ages. Invasive weeds and animal pests occupy a more restricted range or are present in lower numbers than is often the case elsewhere. The result of these factors is that many viable populations of rare and/or threatened species are found here.

Te Wāhi Pounamu provides key habitat for:

- the only population of rowi, New Zealand's rarest kiwi, with an estimated 250 surviving in just 10,000 hectares in South Ōkārito Forest;
- Haast tokoeka, another rare kiwi species, the only population of which occurs mainly between the Waikatoto and Arawhata Rivers;
- the only breeding colony in the country of the white heron *kōtuku* which, although widespread elsewhere in the Pacific and Asia, is seen as an important component of New Zealand's natural heritage;
- Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki*, which is confined to southern Westland, Fiordland and Stewart Island Rakiura coasts and whose main population is located at Jackson Head;
- Yellowhead *mohua*, one of whose last strongholds is in the Landsborough valley;
- South Island kākā, whose highest mainland densities occur in the forests south of the Cascade River;
- other threatened birds such as blue duck *whio*, New Zealand falcon *kārearea*, kākāriki, crested grebe *kāmana*, New Zealand scaup, little blue penguin *kororā* and kea;
- other threatened animals, including Hector's dolphin *aihe*, long-tailed bats *pekapeka*, several species of weta (*Deinacrida* spp. and *Zealandosandrus* spp.), and five locally endemic species: forest gecko (*Hoplodactylus* "Ōkārito" and *Hoplodactylus* "Cascade"), the Big Bay skink, a giant land snail (*Powelliphanta rossiana* "Fox") and day-flying moth (*Notoreas* "Rahu Saddle");
- three locally endemic species on Taumaka me Popotai Open Bay Islands: a land leech, gecko *moko taumaka* and skink. (Taumaka me Popotai Open Bay Islands are the only islands off the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* between Cape Foulwind and Jackson Head; they are privately-owned Māori land with wildlife refuge status);
- rare or threatened plants, including the spurge *Euphorbia glauca*, the coastal cress *Lepidium naufragorum* and three species of beech mistletoe (the continuing presence of large populations of beech mistletoe is indicative of the relatively recent possum invasion and effective possum control operations); and
- the threatened native broom *Carmichaelia juncea*, which is locally abundant in parts of the Waiho, Copland and Fox riverbeds.

Forest bird populations in the diverse mixed podocarp-beech-hardwood forests south of the beech gap (i.e. the Moeraki/Windbag, Landsborough, Haast Valley, Haast Plains, Okuru/Turnbull, Cascade and Arawhata priority sites identified on Map 18) are maintained and the forest continues to reverberate with the symphony of the dawn chorus. Possum populations, many of which have never been allowed to reach peak densities, continue to be held at low levels in these priority sites. Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to the maintainance of low deer and goat numbers within forested areas and the forest understorey remains intact with natural forest processes such as regeneration and recruitment continuing. Beech mistletoes,

southern rātā, fuchsia *kōtukutuku* and wineberry provide the rich high-energy sources of nectar and fruit required for successful forest bird breeding. Healthy beech mistletoe populations are maintained in the Moeraki, Haast, Landsborough and Hope valleys (Cascade priority site) and the hillsides come alive with bright red mistletoe flowers during December and January. The Pāringa-Moeraki area and Haast valley are two of the only places in New Zealand where mistletoe can be seen flowering beside a main highway. Flocks of South Island kākā, New Zealand parakeets *kākāriki* and New Zealand pigeons *kukupa* are a common sight in some areas. Viable populations of yellowheads *mohua* and long-tailed bats *pekapeka* are maintained in the Landsborough valley priority site.

The rowi and Haast tokoeka populations continue to increase. The Copland valley supports a thriving population of western weka<sup>64</sup>. Southern rātā flowers provide a source of nectar for tui, bellbirds *kōparapara/korimako* and native invertebrates each summer in the valleys of Whataroa, Upper Waiho and Copland priority sites. The soil and vegetation chronosequences developing following glacial retreat at Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* are maintained. The prostrate broom *Carmichaelia juncea* is thriving in the Copland valley, Fox valley and on the Waiho River floodplain. The taxonomic status and distribution of the locally endemic Ōkārito and Cascade forest geckos, Alpine skink and West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* populations of the Big Bay skink (which is also found in Southland Conservancy) are clarified.

Rock wren and kea are found throughout the subalpine and alpine habitats of Te Wāhi Pounamu. Populations of the locally endemic land snails *Powelliphanta rossiana* “Fox”, *P.* “Haast” (Haast Plains priority site) and *P.* “vittatus” (Cascade priority site) are maintained. The alpine buttercups *Ranunculus lyallii* and *R. godleyanus*, the native broom *Carmichaelia arborea* and other species that are palatable to mammalian browsers continue to regenerate, flower and fruit as a result of wild animal control work. Tahr are controlled to zero density within Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park and to low levels elsewhere, in accordance with the HimalayanTahr Control Plan. Tahr are prevented from expanding their range south of the Haast River. Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to the control effort of tahr, chamois, goats and red deer within subalpine and alpine areas.

The extensive network of largely pristine freshwater wetlands (including lakes, rivers, streams, swamps, coastal lagoons and meander system) in Te Wāhi Pounamu provides excellent habitat for a diverse range of freshwater species. These wetlands support a rich aquatic fauna and present the best prospects for conservation of freshwater ecosystems anywhere in New Zealand. They also continue to play a significant role in maintaining the richness and diversity of the freshwater fishery.

A number of New Zealand’s last great unmodified freshwater wetlands are found in the southern half of Te Wāhi Pounamu, including the Hermitage Swamp along the lower Cascade River and the Waiatoto, Okuru and Tawhārekiri swamps on the Haast coastal plain. These swamps provide landforms of striking beauty, with their russet/brown plant communities, dark winding streams and symmetrical margins of flax harakeke, shrubs and mixed lowland forest. Many of the extensive freshwater wetlands have been formed from being inundated by rising post-glacial seas and impounded by an aggrading shoreline. Today they occupy about 50% of the Haast

---

<sup>64</sup> At the time of writing the only surviving weka population within Te Wahi Pounamu Place was located within the Copland Valley.

coastal plain and floor of the lower Cascade valley. Great depths of semi-liquid peat have built up in some of these swamps and the waters draining through them (often as meandering, flax-lined, tannin-stained streams) create a highly favourable environment for indigenous aquatic plants and animals.

Te Wāhi Pounamu wetlands, including Saltwater Lagoon, Tawhārekiri Lakes and other wetlands of the Haast plains and Cascade valley (see priority sites on Map 18), are functioning naturally. They are dominated by native vegetation and support viable populations of the threatened or rare aquatic plants *Myriophyllum robustum*, *Deschampsia cespitosa* and *Carex tenuiculmis*. These wetlands are parts of intact sequences of natural ecosystems extending from the mountain tops to the sea, resulting in the viability not only of actual wetland habitats and margins but also of the natural functioning of the area's freshwater resources generally. The Ōkārīto Coastal Wetland Complex (see Ōkārīto/Saltwater priority site on Map 18) is designated as a Ramsar site in recognition of its international significance (see Section 3.8.2.2).

Freshwater fish communities are of outstanding conservation value; there is little modification to waterways and as a result Te Wāhi Pounamu supports nationally important whitebait fisheries. All five whitebait species can be found in single catchments. Many streams are national strongholds for giant kōkupu *taiwbaru*, shortjaw kōkupu and long-finned eels *tuna*. These populations are critical to the long-term survival of these species. Other freshwater fish present include the torrentfish *piripiripōbatu* and the primitive eel-like lamprey *kanakana/ute*. A number of small coastal streams (e.g. Cockabulla Creek, which flows into Three Mile Lagoon, south of Ōkārīto) are free of all introduced fish. Throughout Te Wāhi Pounamu Place, indigenous freshwater fish habitat is preserved and whitebait spawning habitat is enhanced.

Te Wāhi Pounamu Place contains many of the largest, least-disturbed river systems in New Zealand including: Cascade, Karangarua, Turnbull/Okuru, Waiatoto, Arawhata, Pāringa, Haast/Landsborough, Cook *Weheka* and Ōkārīto rivers. These rivers are of national importance and have retained connectivity to their floodplains, including some of the best surviving sequences of floodplain (kahikatea) forests and riverine-wetland systems (Chadderton *et al* 2004). Headwater catchments are important habitat for blue duck *whio* and viable populations are maintained in the Copland, Moeraki/Windbag and Landsborough priority sites (see Map 18).

Some valley floor shrublands and ribbonwood stands, including those in the lower Landsborough valley, are recovering from a history of grazing. In the Windbag, Haast and Cascade valleys, these stands include viable populations of the threatened and rare shrubs *Coprosma wallii*, *Melicytus flexuosus* and *Olearia lineata*. Gorse, broom and willows are absent from the Cascade, Arawhata and Landsborough valleys and are controlled to very low density in the Haast catchment. Near the coast, stands of kōwhai provide a valuable source of nectar in early spring for tūi and bellbirds *kōparapara/korimako*. Containment and/or treatment of pollutant discharges, along with restoration of freshwater fish habitats, result in no further degradation of aquatic ecosystems. Activities affecting the beds of rivers (including Waiho, Wanganui, Fox and Cook *Weheka* rivers) have no impacts on the acutely threatened native broom *Carmichaelia juncea*, whose last stronghold is on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (see Section 3.7.2).

The natural processes, indigenous biodiversity, and archaeological and cultural values of the cave and karst ecosystems in the Jackson Head area are maintained.

The coastline and beaches of Te Wāhi Pounamu are retained in the same wild and natural state as in 2010. The driftwood-strewn beaches and rocky shores continue to provide valuable resting and breeding habitat for coastal wildlife and habitat for the rare coastal plants *Euphorbia glauca*, *Austrofestuca littoralis* and *Lepidium naufragorum*. Pingao is the dominant cover on sand dunes at the Cascade River mouth, Ship Creek *Tauparikaka*, and Three and Five Mile Beaches. Marram grass and gorse are controlled to very low density along the coastline from Awarua Point to Jackson Bay. Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki* colonies situated between Mahitahi (Bruce Bay) and Big Bay *Tibei Mauri Ora*, and New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* breeding colonies and haul-out sites at Gillespies Point *Kōhaihai* and Arnott Point remain relatively free from human-induced disturbance. Viable populations of Hector's dolphin *aibe* exist along the coastline.

The Department provides support to the owners of Taumaka me Popotai (Open Bay Islands) to help conserve the islands' unique biodiversity. Taumaka me Popotai remain the stronghold of the coastal cress *Lepidium naufragorum* and support viable populations of their locally endemic gecko *moko taumaka*, skink and leech. The taxonomic status of the gecko and skink is clarified. Significant populations of Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki* and New Zealand fur seal *kekeno* also occur on Taumaka me Popotai.

A representative sample of indigenous ecosystems and habitats in Te Wāhi Pounamu are legally protected within public conservation lands or via mechanisms such as covenants and/or District Plans (see Section 3.8.3).

Weed surveillance continues to identify any new incursions of priority weeds and these are controlled appropriately. Formerly logged areas of public conservation land are regenerating. Recreational and commercial hunting contribute to controlling deer, chamois and tahr, thereby contributing to goals for the conservation of indigenous biodiversity and improved ecosystem health. Regular surveillance prevents new populations of unwanted wild animals establishing. Possum control operations in many places are helping to sustain functioning forest ecosystems. The Department is aided by local communities, businesses and other people and organisations in its efforts to control predators, animal pests, invasive weeds and unwanted organisms throughout Te Wāhi Pounamu Place.

**See also** Section 3.3.3 Ecosystem management

#### 4.2.7.8 **Human history**

Human occupation can be traced by Makaawhio back over 1000 years to the time that ancient iwi, such as Waitaha and Rapuwai, were known to have lived throughout the coastal areas of Te Wāhi Pounamu. Another iwi, Ngāti Wairangi, held sway over Te Tai o Poutini until tribal wars to gain control of treasured pounamu led to the Ngāi Tahu hapū (sub-tribes) Kāti Māhaki and Ngāti Waewae - collectively known as Poutini Ngāi Tahu - gaining tribal authority over the entire West Coast. Today, Ngāi Tahu remains the owner and Kāti Māhaki, centred at Te Tauraka Waka a Māui Marae at Mahitahi (Bruce Bay), kaitiaki (guardians) of the pounamu reserves at Tahutahi (Cascade). Archaeological evidence and Kāti Māhaki historical accounts confirm that their settlements comprised a fortified pā, Kohuamaru at Ōkārīto, large kāinga at Makaawhio (Jacobs River), Mahitahi (Bruce Bay), Parīnga, Okuru and Ōkahu (Arawhata/Neils Beach settlement), with other kāinga at intervals along the coast as far south as Whakatipu Waitai (Martins Bay). The placement of these settlements

was coastal, adjacent to large rivers, lagoons and forests containing an abundance of mahinga kai and other natural resources, including pounamu. Kāti Māhaki moved easily amongst their kāinga according to the season. All were key sites in accessing, working and the trading of pounamu. The Ōkahu settlement, located at the mouth of the Arawhata River, operated a large-scale pounamu factory and, at its peak, was estimated to have supported approximately 300-400 people.

Kāti Māhaki tipuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauraka waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use natural resources, the relationship of people with areas and their dependence on it and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important today.

The various settlements eventually converged on the Mahitahi/Makaawhio area which was described by James Cowan in 1906 as “the most isolated Māori settlement in New Zealand”. Subsequent generations continued to prosper and became proficient in all manner of skills, from being famed double-hulled waka builders, mountaineers, guides, bushmen, axemen, horticulturalists, seafarers, artists and workers of pounamu.

Ngāi Tahu and their ancestors discovered many mountain passes, including Haast Pass *Tiori pateā*, Copland Pass *Noti Obinetamatea*, Hollyford Track *Te Ara o Whakatipu Kotuku* and regularly traversed from one side of the island to the other when conditions permitted.

Te Wāhi Pounamu is a place of great beauty and a land of many ancient stories that are attached to the mountains, rivers and lakes. From the earliest time Māori named every foot of the landscape from the mountains to the sea. Many of these names remain in popular use to this day. Names such as Heretaniwha Point at Mahitahi (Bruce Bay), Kā Tiritiri o te Moana *a mirage of the ocean* (Southern Alps) and Tīhei Mauri Ora (Big Bay) date back to the earliest Polynesian explorer Māui, before his famous deed of fishing up Te Ika a Māui (the North Island).

Mahitahi (Bruce Bay) is acknowledged as the landing place of Māui, the story of which is retold and celebrated at Te Tauraka Waka a Māui marae, situated at Mahitahi, historically known by Kāti Māhaki as Porakiraki, commonly known as Bruce Bay. Heretaniwha – the point at the southern end of Mahitahi, which can be viewed from the new marae site, derives its name from Māui’s act of holding the taniwha captive. Place names are a significant symbol of Ngāi Tahu’s relationship with the landscape and serve as tangible reminders of their history in Te Wāhi Pounamu.

Sealers arrived on these coasts in the 1790s, and by the early 1800s a sealing station was operating at Jackson Bay *Ōkahu*. The remains of the earliest known place of European habitation on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*, a sealing hut, are present on Taumaka me Popotai (Open Bay Islands), which are privately-owned by Māori. A period of conflict followed between tangata whenua and the sealers, resulting in bloodshed on both sides.

The first European accounts were supplied by Thomas Brunner who, with Māori guide Kehu, journeyed as far south as the mouth of the Pāringa River in 1847, and the exploring geologist Julius von Haast who visited the region in 1863. In 1860, when the Crown land agent James Mackay walked down the coastline as far as Mahitahi, he was greeted with great curiosity by the wahine of the pā who had never before seen a white man. Mackay’s negotiations were motivated by the early discovery of



gold in the northern part of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. He travelled as far as Mahitahi (Bruce Bay) gathering Poutini Ngāi Tahu from their pā along the way and then returned for a final hui at Pouerua (Saltwater Lagoon). There, after five days of talks, rangatira reluctantly agreed to sell 7,500,000 acres from Kahurangi Point in the north to Piopiotahi (Milford Sound) in the south, the whole length of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* for 300 pounds and, 6,700 acres of small reserves scattered along the coastline.

Later in 1865 the European population spread southwards past Ōkārito and, although the main rushes in these parts were generally short-lived, gold mining continued for many decades at Five Mile Lagoon and Gillespies Beach. Along with the miners, farmers and timber millers moved into the region, but only very slowly. There were 33 stores and other buildings at Ōkārito by January 1866, yet no settlement at nearby Waiau (Franz Josef) until the final years of the century.

From the 1870s, the Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* and Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* had been attracting a scattering of hardy tourists and the construction of a road and hotel at Franz Josef *Waiau* in 1898 assisted tourism. It took another 30 years for the Waiho (Waiau) River to be bridged and the road pushed southwards to Fox *Webeka* township, by which time the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* glaciers had become one of the principal tourist attractions in New Zealand. Nonetheless the region remained both isolated and undeveloped, except for the large tourist hotels and access to the glaciers. It was not until 1965 that the highway was completed south from the glaciers, giving access to the Haast district and Central Otago.

Exploration of the remoter parts of the region was undertaken by men who were legends in their own lifetimes. Charles Douglas spent much of the final decades of the 19th century exploring the remoter valleys of southern Westland, including pioneering journeys through the Cascade/Pyke and Landsborough in 1886 and Waiatoto in 1891. In the early 1900s, a small group of local climbers (Peter and Alec Graham, Henry Newton and Ebenezer Teichelmann) began climbing many of the high peaks from the west and provided a guiding service for alpine journeys comparable to that available from The Hermitage at Aoraki/Mount Cook. A noteworthy but little-known component of the subsequent history of mountaineering was that the small Māori communities of Mahitahi (Bruce Bay) and Makaawhio (Jacobs River) produced many highly respected mountaineers and alpine guides. These included Ruera Te Naihi, Taane Te Koeti and George Bannister who in 1912 became the first Māori to ascend Aoraki/Mount Cook. In 1932 Joe Fluerty was a member of the party to make the first ascent of Mount Tasman *Horokoau* from the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* side. The history of exploration and climbing has also left a rich legacy of writings and photographs. Several early mountain huts today join sites like Donovan's Store at Ōkārito (one of the oldest wooden buildings on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*) as some of the region's most important historical and cultural heritage.

In 1875 a government project attempted to create a settlement near Jackson Bay but it failed because of the weather, waterlogged soils, unbridged rivers, lack of a wharf and the withdrawal of government support. The remaining pioneers began farming the coastal flatlands, and the Cascade valley. The building of a wharf at Jackson Bay in 1938 gave locals more secure access from the sea on an otherwise harbourless coast. The next decade saw the completion of the Haast to Jackson Bay road and the war-time construction of a good airfield at Haast. But the isolation really ended with

the completion of the main coast road. The Haast Pass *Tiori patea* section could be used by 1960 and the Pāringa to Haast link was completed by 1965. The impact of settlement, however, remains modest. The only widely-settled district is the Haast coastal plain, although even here 75 % of the land remains in a more or less natural state and is protected as public conservation lands.

### **Historical and cultural heritage in 2020**

Comprehensive research about the history of gold mining, the timber industry, grazing, tourism, whitebaiting and wild animal control work in Te Wāhi Pounamu Place is undertaken, published and made available to the public.

A schedule of Māori archaeological sites located within public conservation lands is maintained and updated. These sites remain free of unauthorised human disturbance. The Department works in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio to monitor and mitigate (where appropriate) threats to archaeological sites (e.g. at Mahitahi (Bruce Bay), which is under threat from natural coastal erosion processes), to actively manage specific sites, to increase knowledge about the Māori history of the area, and to ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place to protect wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga values (see Section 3.1.2.5 and 3.1.2.6).

All actively managed historic places in public conservation lands (such as the schoolhouse at Ōkārīto, the Harihari Coastal Track, Gillespies Beach historic area and the Haast to Pāringa Cattle Track – see Map 18) are maintained in their 2010 condition or better. Donovan's Store is restored in partnership with the local community and is in use. More information is obtained on the range of historic heritage remaining in Te Wāhi Pounamu Place, so the actively managed sites are the best representative examples of the different types of historic places found in the area. Actively managed historic places are monitored for any adverse effects, including cumulative effects, arising from visitation and appropriate mechanisms are in place to ensure their continued protection. Although there are relatively few actively managed sites here in comparison to other Places in the Conservancy, the historic profile of the area continues to be raised. See also Section 3.4.2.3.

There is an increased emphasis on interpretation of historical and cultural heritage within visitor centres and in Departmental publications (such as track information). Themes include historic tourism to the glaciers and hot pools, mountaineering, isolated farming, and the abandoned government-sponsored settlement at Jackson Bay. Historical information is provided for a network of tracks and huts in Te Wāhi Pounamu, including the Pāringa to Haast Cattle Track, Smoothwater Track, Barn Bay Track, Haast to Hollyford walk and in various historic huts. See also Section 3.2.1.

*See also* Chapter 3.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage Conservation

#### **4.2.7.9 Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu in 2020**

Cultural values of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are protected throughout Te Wāhi Pounamu Place. These values include (but are not limited

to<sup>65</sup>): Te Ao Turoa (the natural world); wai (water e.g. Makaawhio River); waiwera (hot springs e.g. Welcome Flat hot pools); mahinga kai (cultural materials e.g. kieke, mussels and the places these are gathered); ana (caves and karst); pounamu; landscapes, maunga (mountains) and other wāhi taonga; landforms; rakau rangatira (trees of significance); rongoā (medicinal plants); ara (pathways e.g. Noti Ohinetamatea); oral histories of: settlement of areas, travel, pathways, hīkoi; early pa and kainga (e.g. at Makaawhio, Ōkahu and Papakeri); rerenga wairua at Heretaniwha Point (a place from which the spirits of the dead depart for Hawaiiiki); urupā (burial ground); wāhi tapu; and ingoa wāhi (place names).

Cave and karst areas are managed to protect wāhi tapu and natural values as a priority above recreation, tourism or other uses of these sites (see Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.6.4.8).

Each of the cultural redress sites identified in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (see Map 4 and Appendix 3) is managed in accordance with that Act, ensuring the protection of their significant Ngāi Tahu values (see Section 3.1.3). Land is returned to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in fee simple at sites in Mahitahi (Bruce Bay), Pāringa River, Whakapohai River, Awarua, Arawhata and Ōkahu. An historic reserve is created at Lake Moeraki (Moeraki Lake Historic Reserve) and vested in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. Tititea (Mount Aspiring) has Tōpuni status; approximately half of the Tōpuni area is located in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy (see Section 3.1.3.1). Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is also Statutory Adviser for this area (see Section 3.1.3.2). As a result of the Tōpuni the Minister of Conservation has agreed that a number of specific principles will guide the management of Tititea. A Statutory Acknowledgement and Deed of Recognition is established for Tititea (Mount Aspiring), Pouerua (Saltwater Lagoon), Ōkārīto Lagoon, Karangarua Lagoon, Makaawhio (Jacobs) River and Lake Pāringa (see Section 3.1.3.3). Nohoanga Entitlements are granted for sites at Ōkārīto Lagoon and River (single site), Karangarua River, Mahitahi River, Waita River and Māori [Tawhārekiri] Lakes (single site), Okuru River, Waitototo Lagoon (two sites) and Cascade River (see Section 3.1.3.4).

*See also* Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

Appendix 1 - Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*

#### **4.2.7.10 People's benefit and enjoyment in 2020**

Te Wāhi Pounamu Place provides the full spectrum of recreational opportunities, ranging from highly popular and easily accessed natural attractions through to rugged and challenging wilderness areas. Categories<sup>66</sup> of recreational opportunities available in this Place (see Maps 19a-c) include:

- intense interest sites;
- frontcountry sites located adjacent to formed and maintained roads;
- backcountry-remote zones;
- remote zones; and

65 This is not a comprehensive list of all values of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/ Ngāi Tahu in this Place; such information is held by Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae. In addition to Appendix 1 of this CMS, two documents (which were in draft form as at 2010) will provide further details about the cultural values of Te Wāhi Pounamu: Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio Natural Resource Management Plan and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae Natural Resource Management Plan.

66 Section 3.6.2 includes a description of each 'recreation outcome zone' category.

- gazetted wilderness areas.

Recreational facilities and activities in Te Wāhi Pounamu are of low-impact and facilitate people's ability to enjoy and appreciate the internationally significant natural character of this Place. Concessionaires provide recreational opportunities that complement those provided by the Department. They are sympathetic to, and in keeping with, the natural, historical and cultural heritage values of the sites concerned. Recreational facilities or activities have no adverse effects on sites of cultural significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu, several of which are located in coastal areas.

### **Intense Interest and Frontcountry sites**

A co-ordinated approach to the provision of visitor information on Te Wāhi Pounamu *South West New Zealand* World Heritage Area is taken by the West Coast *Tai Poutini*, Otago, Canterbury and Southland Conservancies in order to ensure consistency, convey key conservation messages and promote the values of the World Heritage Area. The Franz Josef and Haast icon visitor centres provide interpretation about the western sector of the World Heritage Area. Key interpretation themes include: New Zealand's Gondwana heritage; the imprint of Ice Age glaciers; tectonic movements along the boundary between two of the earth's great crustal plates; the dramatic way in which plant and animal communities have adapted (or failed to adapt) to climate and landform; conservation of lowland forests, freshwater wetlands, coastal wetlands and a range of threatened species; the Māori quest for pounamu; the legacy of gold rushes; and past conservation campaigns.

Along the corridor of the 'heritage highway' (State Highway 6), and the local authority roads to Ōkārito, Gillespies Beach and south to Jackson Bay and east to Makarora, there are numerous opportunities for people to enjoy the spectacular natural environments of the World Heritage Area. Recreational facilities and some concessionaire-provided services are available for nature appreciation, wildlife viewing and historical and cultural heritage appreciation in these areas. With the exception of visitor centres (where applications for this activity will be considered on the basis of their effects on the values of the site), all roadside visitor facilities that the Department provides and maintains along the 'heritage highway' (see Maps 19a-c) remain free from on-site or roaming vendors (see Section 3.7.8). These facilities offer a predominantly nature based, passive recreation opportunity - allowing people to appreciate the splendour of the landscape in a natural setting.

At Harihari village, the short Wilberg Walk is maintained. The Harihari Coastal Walk (a loop track near the mouths of the Wanganui and Poerua Rivers) provides access to whitebaiting and historical features. Interpretation is also provided here.

A short walk onto the largely unmodified Waitangitaona (Waitangi Tahuna) wetland, offering local and natural history interpretation, is maintained.

Alongside the road to Ōkārito, a short pakihi walk allows those with time constraints relatively easy access to elevated views of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*, Franz Josef nevé and Ōkārito wetland. Interpretation about the historic extractive timber industry and subsequent protection of these areas as public conservation land is provided here.

The historic former gold mining township of Ōkārito has two key walking tracks. One climbs steadily to the Ōkārito Trig viewing area and the other continues beyond the road end to Three Mile Lagoon and beaches to the south. Donovan's Store and

the former school are maintained as historic places of heritage standard. The wharf is maintained. Overnight camping facilities are available at Ōkārīto. Static interpretative facilities are located at several points within the village.

Adjacent to Franz Josef *Waiāu* and Fox Glacier *Weheka* townships are several short walks, offering insights into human history and geological landforms of the area. These include walks through mossy forest and two tracks from the highway to the open tops (i.e. the Alex Knob and Mount Fox Tracks). Both of these provide panoramic vistas of the glaciers and surrounding peaks as well as the chance to examine the different zones of montane and subalpine forest that grow along much of the western side of the Main Divide. Recreational gold fossicking opportunities are available at Waiho River (see Table 6). At all sites, recreational facilities are progressively improved to assist people's appreciation and understanding of historic themes relevant to the area.

Franz Josef Glacier valley and Fox Glacier valley intense interest sites are two of New Zealand's foremost tourist attractions. They offer a unique opportunity to see glaciers descending down into temperate rainforest within a few minutes of a main tourist highway. Both locations provide a chance for people to walk to the glacier terminals (including guided tours onto the ice surface and ski touring on the glaciers/neve) as well as outstanding examples of the stark landscapes that have resulted from the rapid general retreat of all New Zealand glaciers over the past century. Increasing recreational use in the glacier valleys is managed to ensure the natural qualities of both areas are retained. People can walk as close to the glaciers as is safely practicable. Hazards are monitored daily. Within the Franz Josef Glacier valley, road access up to the final car park is sealed. The Department maintains the northern and southern glacier access roads in the Fox Glacier valley. The northern access road is sealed. Dual walking/cycling access is provided up to both glacier valley car parks, separating pedestrian and bicycle traffic from motor vehicles on the state highway and glacier access roads. At both glaciers, concessionaire use is limited to low-impact activities that are consistent with protection of the outstanding scenic character of the glaciers and maintenance of their natural setting. Commercial developments requiring the occupation of a specified area are not permitted within this setting, nor are on-site or roaming vendors (see Section 3.7.8). The Department, Civil Aviation Authority, local aircraft operators, aircraft users groups and Westland District Council have worked together cooperatively to address the issue of aircraft noise and improve the opportunity for people to experience natural quiet within Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park and gazetted wilderness areas. Quieter aircraft are phased in over time. The location and timing of aircraft landings in the Park is reviewed and the impact of aircraft activity on the quality of the experience of other recreational users in the Park's glacier valleys and snow fields is minimised (see Section 3.6.4.2).

The walking track around Lake Matheson (the "Mirror Lake") provides easy access to this world renowned destination where people have opportunities for viewing outstanding reflections of the Main Divide. The Department works with Westland District Council and local landowners to ensure adequate parking is provided at this site.

The Gillespies Beach historic area and the Galway track is a popular side trip for travellers overnighing at Fox *Weheka* township. Mining history, the rugged coast

and the seal colony on Galway Beach are key attractions here. Informal camping sites with toilet facilities are provided and maintained at Gillespie's Beach.

Knights Point is a key viewpoint/rest area for people travelling along State Highway 6. Adequate parking and toilet facilities are available for the high numbers of motorists, campervans and buses that use this site, which is maintained free from on-site or roaming vendors (see Section 3.7.8).

High-quality interpretative walks at places like Monro Beach, Ship Creek *Taupeirikaka*, Hapūka Estuary and Jackson Bay, provide travellers with incentive to explore southern parts of Te Wāhi Pounamu Place and appreciate the natural and historic values of the World Heritage Area. Short walks that cater for the disabled are available at Roaring Billy walk, Minnehaha track, Ship Creek *Taupeirikaka*, and part of the Lake Matheson track. The Department maintains toilet facilities at Lake Pāringa, Ship Creek *Taupeirikaka* and Jackson Bay *Ōkahu*.

Scenic walking opportunities, through kamahi and silver beech trees, are a focus for people travelling through the north-west section of the Mount Aspiring National Park. The attractive picnic and camping area at Pleasant Flat has impressive views of Mount Hooker and an enjoyable short walk beside a tranquil mountain stream. Nearby, the Deerstalkers hut at Pleasant Flat remains available for public use. The easy Thunder Creek Falls Walk along a sealed track, suitable for wheelchairs, leads to a view point of the spectacular 28 m high Thunder Creek Waterfall. The Fantail Falls track leads visitors to a beautiful fan-shaped waterfall only five minutes from the highway.

Lakes, rivers, streams and coastal lagoons provide a wide variety of settings for canoeing. For example, the meandering Ohinetamatea can be canoed between the main highway and the sea.

The accessible lakes in Te Wāhi Pounamu, including Ianthe *Matabi*, Wahapo, Mapourika, Matheson, Pāringa, Moeraki and Ellery, retain their outstanding scenic and natural values. Recreational activities at these lakes take place in peaceful natural settings, dominated by spectacular views of the Southern Alps *Kā Tiritiri o te Moana*. At Lake Ianthe *Matabi*, Mapourika and Pāringa, the Department provides small-scale overnight camping and picnicking facilities. No additional facilities or services are provided by the Department or envisaged at any of these lakes, except for the track at Lake Ellery. Recreational activities on or adjacent to these lakes do not unduly disturb protected birdlife nesting or feeding at the lakes and do not harm indigenous freshwater species. On Lakes Ianthe *Matabi* (which remains a stronghold for crested grebes *kāmana*) and Moeraki, activities are managed to protect and preserve the natural character of the lakes and their value as a waterfowl habitat. Recreational boating is not permitted on Lake Matheson, ensuring the renowned mirror-like qualities of this lake are retained (see Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park Management Plan). Recreational and concessionaire use on and adjacent to all lakes in Te Wāhi Pounamu Place is limited to low-impact activities that are consistent with the protection of the lakes' outstanding scenic character and cultural values, and maintenance of their peaceful natural settings and environmental quality. See also Sections 3.6.4.10 and 3.6.4.12.

Some formed roads in the Saltwater and north Ōkārīto forests are maintained to two-wheel drive standard. While many of the unused roads are now retired, several others remain available for recreational four-wheel driving (see Section 3.6.4.17), horse riding (see Section 3.6.4.3) and mountain biking use (see Section 3.6.4.9),

unless they become hazardous or unsuitable for vehicle use. Further opportunities for mountain biking are explored (e.g. on the Haast-Pāringa Cattle Track). Horse riding opportunities are also available in some areas.

The Department has worked with local authorities to ensure effective, environmentally sound systems for collection and removal of waste are in place throughout Te Wāhi Pounamu Place (see Section 3.6.4.7).

### **Backcountry-remote zones, remote zones and gazetted wilderness areas**

Te Wāhi Pounamu is dominated by vast backcountry, remote and gazetted wilderness areas, representing one of New Zealand's largest contiguous 'wilderness' resources. Opportunities for exploring untracked valleys and remote ranges are extensive. Remote zones include the Price Range, Callery, La Perouse, Havelock Creek, Ohinetamatea, Karangarua, Ohinemaka, Pāringa, West Mataketake, Mahitahi, Landsborough, Cascade, Arawhata and Olivine (see Maps 19a-c). These remote zones (see Section 3.6.1.3), and the gazetted Adams, Hooker/Landsborough and Olivine Wilderness Areas (see Section 3.6.1.2 and Maps 19a-c), are protected for their particular values and provide extensive opportunities for self-reliant recreation on nature's terms; consequently they have few (remote) or no (wilderness) facilities or services.

Many of the highest mountains in New Zealand are located along the boundary of this Place and its scattering of high altitude huts provide bases for a wide range of alpine journeys and ascents. In addition, the vast neve basins at the head of the Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe* and Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere* are a popular destination for mountaineering and ski-touring. Glacier guiding concessionaires provide opportunities for exploring the glaciers on foot. Approved aircraft landing sites provide access to spectacular locations both on and above the glaciers (see section 3.6.4.2). The large ice-fields of the Adams Wilderness Area, Hooker-Landsborough and Olivine Wilderness Areas are maintained to protect their wilderness character.

In backcountry areas north of Fox Glacier *Weheka* township, most of the major river valleys (e.g. Wanganui, Whataroa/Perth) contain networks of huts, tracks and routes, some of which are popular multi-day tramps whereas others are less frequented and of a more remote nature. Away from the highway corridor, remote and wilderness areas predominate.

The Wanganui River valley contains a mix of tramping tracks and marked and unmarked routes, giving access to its headwaters, the Waitaha and Whitcombe Valleys and the Adams Wilderness Area. Huts, structures and facilities continue to receive regular maintenance. A marked route provides access over the swingbridge spanning the Lambert River and beyond. From Hunters Hut in the mid Wanganui, access is provided onto Blue Lookout.

A marked route provides access from State Highway 6 along Little Man River to the open tops on the flanks of Mt Adams, giving climbers access to a major mountain peak. The Adams Wilderness Area, while similar to the Hooker-Landsborough and Olivine Wilderness Areas in the recreational opportunities it provides, differs significantly in its landscape and setting. It contains no beech forest and has at its core the vast neves of the Garden of Eden and Garden of Allah, which drain to the Perth and Wanganui rivers in the west. These areas of snow and ice are significantly larger than any other wilderness area, providing recreational opportunities such as

climbing and ski-touring at a completely different scale to that provided by other wilderness areas.

The Whataroa and Perth catchments remain popular destinations for hunters, trampers, climbers, kayakers and rafters, either independently or as part of a concessionaire guided group. Most recreational assets in the valley systems are maintained, including Nolan's Hut. Stan's Hut in the Price Range (managed by Safari Club International through a community agreement) is maintained to standard and is also available for public use.

The Perth, Butler and Whataroa headwaters are valued for their backcountry-remote recreational opportunities and experiences. During the tahr hunting season aircraft may be used more frequently to position hunters in the Perth and Whataroa headwaters, however outside of the hunting season natural quiet predominates (see Section 3.6.4.2). The Perth headwaters and the Adams Wilderness Area remain free of recreational facilities. The track to Scone hut links to the Bettison and Scone marked routes, which provide access for hunting and alpine passes. Foot access into the upper Whataroa Valley and Butler River to Ice Lake is maintained for hunters and trampers, as are the Butler River Junction and Whympers huts. A marked route provides access onto the Gunn Ridge.

In the upper reaches of the Waiho catchment the Department maintains Castle Rock Hut and the historic Almer Hut, and manages Centennial Hut, which is owned by the New Zealand Alpine Club.

Relatively few of the main valleys south of Fox Glacier *Weheka* township have formed tracks or routes in them. The Mount Fox route is in close proximity to Fox Glacier *Weheka* township and is a popular day trip into the alpine zone. The Karangarua/Copland *Obinetamatea* valley and Noti *Obinetamatea* are of high historical and cultural significance to Kāti Māhaki; this is recognised in the valley's management. Backcountry opportunities available in this catchment include the Copland Track. This relatively easy tramping track follows the river up the Copland Valley to the Welcome Flat Hut, then continues on to the trans-alpine crossing at Copland Pass *Noti Obinetamatea* into the Aoraki/Mt Cook region. The Copland Track is the most popular multi-day tramping destination in the Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park, on account of its high standard of facilities, dramatic alpine scenery and geothermal hot springs adjacent to the hut at Welcome Flat. Although frequented by many people, it continues to be managed with the primary objective of providing the kind of classic tramping opportunities enjoyed by New Zealanders. The natural character of the hot spring formations is maintained and the impacts of recreational use are mitigated. Seasonal overcrowding at Welcome Flat no longer occurs. The Karangarua valley route and Douglas valley route and their associated huts are also popular among trampers and hunters. There are two serviced alpine huts on the Fox Glacier *Te Moeka o Tuawe*: Pioneer Hut and Chancellor Hut. Pioneer Hut is managed and operated under a management agreement by the Department on behalf of the New Zealand Alpine Club. Chancellor Hut is a historic hut.

Huts and tracks (including the historic Pāringa to Haast stock route) are maintained within the Moeraki valley. The Pāringa to Haast Cattle Track is a graded and benched track suitable for backcountry adventurers and experienced mountain bikers. Easy access to the tops is only available from this track or via the Mount Brewster Track near the summit of the Haast Pass *Tiori pateā*. A marked route is provided from the Horseshoe Flat hut to the Rock bivouac in the head of the Moeraki River Valley.



Another marked route leads from the confluence of the Otoko and the Pāringa Rivers, through the Pāringa River Valley, to the Rock Bivouac at the head of the Pāringa River catchment. Beyond here, access to the Clarke River via Zeilian Creek, as well as Marks Flat, is on nature's terms.

The Hooker-Landsborough Wilderness Area is predominately alpine and sub-alpine lands and includes the upper Landsborough and Clarke catchments and the headwaters of the Paringa, Mahitahi and Makaawhio catchments. At its core is Mt Hooker, which is difficult to approach from any direction. It is one of the most isolated and best-buffered wilderness areas in the South Island. Foot access is tough, due to the very rugged terrain, high passes, glaciers and difficult rivers.

The north-west section of Mt Aspiring National Park lies within Te Wāhi Pounamu Place and is managed in accordance with the Mt Aspiring National Park Management Plan. Located within this section of the Park is: the frontcountry corridor around the Haast Pass *Tiori pateā*; the backcountry zone; the remote zone; and the Olivine Wilderness Area (see Maps 19b-c). Most of the recreational opportunities in the north-west section of the Park are challenging, remote and on nature's terms. The Gates of Haast Bridge give access to the Wills Valley and the four-bunk hut with the same name. Like most of the smaller valleys in this area, the Wills Valley is gorged in the lower reaches and opens out to river flats. The Fantail Falls Walk provides access to a track leading through beech forest to the bush line and then climbs through alpine vegetation to the Brewster Hut. This 12-bunk backcountry hut is located on the predominant ridge below Mount Armstrong. Limited facilities are provided within the remote zone (see Maps 19b-c); requiring people to be self-sufficient and thus gain the satisfaction and benefits from this independence. Aircraft landings are managed in accordance with the provisions of the management plan for the Park. The Olivine Wilderness Area encompasses the upper reaches of the Olivine and Forgotten rivers to the west, the Olivine ice plateau and adjoining peaks, and the upper Arawhata River. It's very rugged terrain consists of high mountains with extensive glaciers and icefalls, high passes and difficult rivers. There are also deep glaciated valleys with beech forest on the lower slopes. The core of the wild country can be approached through valleys from the east, north and south, but access is difficult. It provides superb trans-alpine recreational experiences in a remote wild setting.

There are a number of huts in the backcountry that are not connected to tracks. Some can be accessed by jet boat and are occasionally used by recreational fishermen and hunters, while others are accessible by helicopter.

The rugged coastline and the historic Cascade, Barn Bay to Big Bay *Tībei Mauri Ora* route are valued opportunities for multi-day tramps on a wild coast. This coastal traverse from the Cascade River down through Big Bay *Tībei Mauri Ora* to the Hollyford Valley has a hut at Gorge River. Group sizes of guided parties travelling along this track into Southland Conservancy do not exceed eight people including guide (see Section 3.6.1.4). The area south of the roadend at Cascade remains free from significant development.

Non-motorised water-based activities such as rafting and whitewater kayaking are popular in many of Te Wāhi Pounamu's river valleys. These activities are managed to ensure that they do not adversely impact on other recreational opportunities, vulnerable wildlife or other conservation values in these areas. The remote Landsborough River provides opportunities for more adventurous overnight rafting trips, which may be permitted within the Landsborough River backcountry-remote

zone (i.e. from Kea Flat and downstream). Temporary campsites exist at Toetoe Flat and Harpers Bluff, where facilities are provided by concessionaires and shared among users (See Section 3.6.4.4).

Concessions may be granted for activities such as guided tramping, fishing, hunting, rafting, kayaking, filming and Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural activities. Aircraft landings within Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park and Mt Aspiring National Park are managed in accordance with the respective Management Plan for each Park. Aircraft landings on public conservation land located outside of the National Parks are managed as follows. Irregular or occasional aircraft landing concessions may be granted throughout the backcountry-remote zone and the remote zone (see Maps 19a-c). Concessions may be granted for regular aircraft landings within the backcountry-remote zone where adverse effects on conservation values, recreational users, remote or wilderness values can be avoided or otherwise minimised. Regular landings may occur for the purpose of positioning backcountry recreationists (including hunters, rafters and kayakers) or for scenic landings (including scenic snow landings). Regular landing concession conditions specify restrictions on landing sites and frequency of landings (See Section 3.6.4.2).

Te Wāhi Pounamu Place provides opportunities for recreational sports fishing, whitebaiting, game bird, deer, tahr and chamois hunting.

**See also** Chapter 3.5 Authorised Uses of Public Conservation Lands  
Chapter 3.6 People's Benefit and Enjoyment  
Section 3.6.4.10 Non-powered water craft use on rivers, lakes and lagoons

#### **4.2.8 Desired Outcome for the Marine Place**

This section describes what the Marine Place (see Map 20) will be like in 2020 if the direction of this CMS is followed.

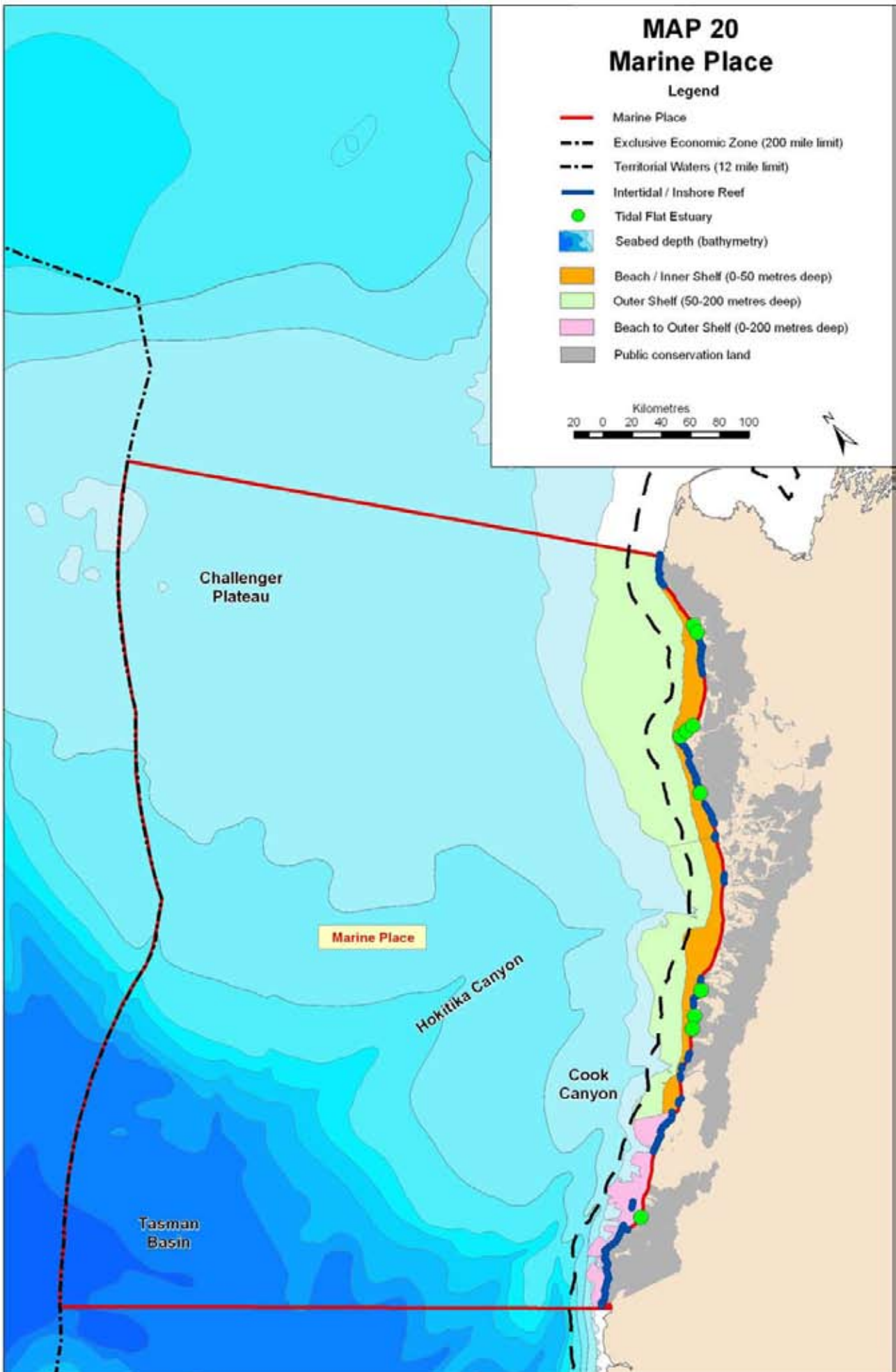
Distinctive representative examples of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine ecosystems are protected and contribute to a nation-wide Marine Protected Areas network (see Section 3.3.3.1). This protection has ensured the maintenance and enhancement of the biodiversity of each of these marine habitats over time. Scientific research undertaken by the Department has resulted in increased knowledge and understanding of marine protected areas, marine mammals and seabirds (see Section 3.3.2).

Marine mammals (whales, dolphins and seals) thrive in the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine environment, where they are not adversely affected by disturbance from human activities such as fishing and tourism. All marine mammal and seabird populations remain viable over time. Any bycatch of these species is avoided where practicable, and is not affecting their natural abundance, range or productivity. The West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* continues to be the stronghold for Hector's dolphins *aibe*, an important area for New Zealand fur seals *kekeno* and Fiordland crested penguin *tawaki*, and a migration route for southern right whale *toborā*. See also Section 3.3.3.4.

Coastal environments and species are managed by the accountable agencies within their respective legislative frameworks (see Sections 3.2.3 and 3.3.1.8). Public awareness, knowledge, understanding and appreciation of the conservation values of West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* marine ecosystems (including marine mammals and marine biodiversity), and the threats to these values, is well established compared

to 2010 (see Section 3.2.1). Community links with the marine environment remain strong (see Section 3.2.2). The principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are recognised and given effect to in the way in which conservation resources within the marine environment are protected (see Chapter 3.1). Papatipu Rūnanga, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* community understand and value the coastal marine environment and support measures taken to protect particular habitats and ecosystems (see Section 3.2.1).

**See also** 3.1 Working in partnership with tangata whenua  
Section 3.2.1 Public awareness and education  
Section 3.2.2 Sharing conservation work  
Section 3.2.3 Key people and organisations the Department works with  
Section 3.3.1.6 Marine biodiversity values  
Section 3.3.1.7 Threats to marine biodiversity values  
Section 3.3.1.8 Other marine environmental management issues  
Section 3.3.2 Knowledge, information needs and priority setting tools for natural heritage work  
Section 3.3.3.1 Legal protection of ecosystems  
Section 3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species  
Chapter 4.1 Desired outcome for the Conservancy



# Part 5



Radio tracking rowi.  
Photo by: Ian Gill.



## 5.0 MONITORING

### 5.1 CMS IMPLEMENTATION, REVIEW AND AMENDMENT

The CMS is implemented through the Department's annual business planning process. Within the overall directions set by the CMS, the annual business plan will detail the relative allocation of efforts and funds to work towards the desired outcomes and objectives of the CMS. The business plan must also be in accordance with national priorities and the direction of government.

Section 6M(c) of the Conservation Act 1987 establishes that one of the functions of conservation boards is to advise the New Zealand Conservation Authority and the Director-General on the implementation of CMS's. Chapters 5.2 and 5.3 of this CMS provide a framework for the West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Board to review progress in achieving the desired outcomes and objectives of this CMS. Other people and organisations, including Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, also have a shared interest in the implementation and monitoring of the CMS. The Conservation Act 1987 requires that a CMS be reviewed no later than 10 years after its approval although there is a provision for the Minister to extend this period. Within the period of a CMS parts of it may become outdated or provide inadequate information. Amendments may accordingly be initiated at any time by the Director-General after consultation with the conservation board affected. Amendments and reviews follow processes detailed in Sections 17H and 17I of the Conservation Act. An exception is provided for where an amendment will not materially affect the objectives of this CMS or the public interest in the particular area. In these instances a more simple process without public consultation may be followed.

#### OBJECTIVE

1. **To treat the CMS as a living document that is responsive to changes in knowledge and circumstance.**

#### POLICIES

1. **The Department will use the desired outcomes and objectives of this CMS to guide the preparation of its annual business plans.**
2. **The Department will provide monitoring reports to the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board on a regular basis (i.e. once or more per annum). This will assist the Board to monitor implementation of the CMS and recommend appropriate responses to changing circumstances (see chapters 5.2 and 5.3 below).**
3. **This CMS will be reviewed or amended when:**
  - a) **it is due for review, no later than 10 years after the date of its approval;**
  - b) **directed by the Director-General or Minister;**

- c) **changes to legislation, general policy or government directions represent a significant departure from the provisions of the CMS;**
- d) **circumstances change to indicate that the provisions of the CMS are inadequate or impractical or have been superseded by new information or evidence;**
- e) **monitoring by the conservation board indicate issues substantive enough to warrant it.**

## 5.2 CMS EVALUATION AND MONITORING

### 5.2.1 Evaluation

The aim of evaluation is to show whether the desired outcomes and objectives of this CMS are being accomplished or not and to improve overall management performance.

Evaluation shows the initial situation, what management tried to achieve, what was actually done, and how well management accomplished what was set out to achieve. Having this information provides the opportunity to learn from the process and improve future management. As such, evaluation is both a critical and integral component of conservation management.

The Department would like to be able to measure and report better on what it is doing and how well it is doing it. Measurement of public sector performance has moved beyond outputs, resulting in the requirement for a performance measurement and reporting system that:

- supports good judgement and decision making at all levels, enabling a lift in organisational performance; and
- reports on outcomes, capabilities and value delivered, enabling effective communication with external agencies and staff so that performance is demonstrated to all interested parties.

The desired outcomes (see Part 4) and the associated management objectives (see all chapters in Part 3) provide the basis against which the performance of the Department will be judged. This section sets out the overall monitoring framework that will provide the basis for evaluating, reporting on, and reviewing the Conservancy's management performance. Section 5.2.2 expands upon this framework by identifying key performance indicators (KPIs), which relate to the desired outcomes for the Conservancy. Some of the KPIs have been developed at a national level.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

1. **To evaluate the extent to which the management objectives in this CMS (see Part 3) are implemented and how effectively this is done.**
2. **To evaluate the extent to which the desired outcomes of this CMS (see Part 4) are achieved.**
3. **To continually improve conservation management in response to the findings of evaluation, through adaptive management.**



## **POLICIES**

- 1. The outcomes of conservation interventions at priority sites for biodiversity management and actively managed historic places (see maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18) should be measured on a consistent basis.**
- 2. The existing baseline data available to monitor change, particularly long-term cumulative change, in the condition of specific natural, historical and cultural heritage values of the Conservancy may be expanded.**
- 3. Regular CMS implementation monitoring reports will be produced for the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board. These reports may include:**
  - a) an evaluation of the extent to which a selection of the desired outcomes, objectives and milestones of this CMS have been implemented or achieved;**
  - b) the number and nature of major CMS initiatives implemented, and the extent of success of these initiatives;**
  - c) an analysis of the reasons for delays or failures in implementation;**
  - d) the nature and level of compliance/non compliance with the provisions of this CMS and any amendments to the CMS; and**
  - e) recommendations for improving conservation management.**
- 4. In conjunction with the preparation of reports (see Policy 3 above), Department staff and the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board will discuss monitoring and evaluation undertaken to date, and identify and discuss achievements, obstacles and new issues.**
- 5. The Department should assess and monitor the satisfaction of West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board with:**
  - a) the balance of management effort across the CMS management objectives (in particular the extent to which management effort and resources are focused on conservation of natural, historical and cultural heritage values);**
  - b) the rate of progress in implementing the provisions of the CMS; and**
  - c) the methods used for resolving conflicting issues and the adequacy of the outcomes achieved.**
- 6. Regular discussions between Department staff, Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be initiated to monitor and evaluate implementation of those sections of the CMS of specific interest to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu. This will provide opportunities to identify and discuss achievements, obstacles and new issues.**
- 7. The key performance indicators for evaluating the achievement of desired outcomes (see Section 5.2.2) and milestones (see Section 5.2.3) should be kept under review and may be revised if necessary.**
- 8. Conservation management may be revised according to the results of evaluation, scientific research or new information. Management may be adjusted to better achieve outcomes if monitoring demonstrates they are not being adequately achieved.**

## **5.2.2 Monitoring**

This section restates some of the desired outcomes for the Conservancy that were presented in paragraph format in Part 4, Chapter 4.1. Desired outcomes are the main results or end-points the Department is aiming to achieve via management. Corresponding key performance indicators are then identified alongside the relevant desired outcome(s). These key performance indicators will be used to answer the question “How will we know if we are on track to achieve the desired outcomes for the Conservancy?”

Section 5.2.2 is divided into the following conservation management themes:

- partnership with tangata whenua (see section 5.2.2.1);
- relationships with people and organisations (see section 5.2.2.2);
- identification and assessment of conservation values (see section 5.2.2.3);
- proactive management of conservation values (see section 5.2.2.4);
- protection of conservation values from adverse effects, including cumulative effects, of authorised uses (see section 5.2.2.5); and
- recreational use and enjoyment of public conservation lands (see section 5.2.2.6).

### **5.2.2.1 *Partnership with Tangata Whenua***

The Treaty relationship between the Department and Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu is a key consideration in the management of public conservation lands on the West Coast Te Tai o Poutini. The long-standing and close relationship of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu and their tūpuna to the lands, waters and taonga makes it essential for the Department to work closely with Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu as it manages the taonga of the Conservancy. In addition to the requirement for the Department to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, it is also required to ensure that the relevant parts of the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 are implemented.

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
<p>DO 1.0 The Department, Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu continue to work together to build and strengthen an effective partnership. Conservation management is enhanced by this relationship.</p> <p>DO 1.1 When interpreting and administering legislation administered by the Department, the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are given effect to in the Department's work.</p>	<p>KPI 1.0 Measured through an assessment of the extent to which the Department is giving effect to each of the principles of the Treaty. The assessment will be undertaken by the Conservancy's Treaty partners: Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu through Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio.</p> <p>KPI 1.1 Papatipu Rūnanga have been actively involved in key management projects/specific proposals (e.g. developing management plans and planning documents from start to finish of process).</p> <p>KPI 1.2 Satisfaction of key Papatipu Rūnanga and Departmental staff members involved in specific conservation proposals.</p> <p>KPI 1.3 Number and nature of conservation projects that the Department has provided support to Rūnanga.</p> <p>KPI 1.4 No actions by the Department have been considered to be in breach of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.</p> <p>KPI 1.5 Departmental staff demonstrate an increase in awareness and in skill levels when dealing with issues relating to Māori cultural values and with Ngāi Tahu representatives.</p>
<p>DO 2.0 The Department's obligations under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 are integrated into management of the Conservancy.</p>	<p>KPI 2.0 Extent to which requirements of the Settlement have been/are being fulfilled.</p> <p>KPI 2.1 Extent to which processes developed to implement Settlement obligations are being followed by the Department's staff.</p>
<p>DO 3.0 Conservation management takes into consideration relevant provisions from the Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan and subsequent Papatipu Rūnanga pounamu management plans.</p>	<p>KPI 3.0 Extent to which concession and mining activities have complied with the standard cultural condition for pounamu (see Chapter 3.5).</p> <p>KPI 3.1 There have been no concerns from Pounamu Protection Officer/Papatipu Rūnanga about access to pounamu located in public conservation lands.</p>
<p>DO 4.0 Kaitiakitanga is reflected in the way that public conservation lands and conservation values are managed.</p>	<p>KPI 4.0 Frequency and nature of formal and informal meetings between Departmental staff and Papatipu Rūnanga at Area and Conservancy levels.</p> <p>KPI 4.1 There have been no concerns from Papatipu Rūnanga about access to wāhi tapu or wāhi taonga sites located in public conservation lands.</p> <p>KPI 4.2 Level of satisfaction of Poutini Ngāi Tahu with the management of public conservation lands.</p> <p>KPI 4.3 Amount of Poutini Ngāi Tahu involvement in the management of public conservation lands.</p>

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 5.0 There is an increased understanding, respect and consideration of Ngāi Tahu perspectives and mātauranga and this is incorporated in the way the Conservancy functions.	KPI 5.0 Number and nature of conservation issues / projects / research proposals where mātauranga Ngāi Tahu has been considered and, where practicable, incorporated. KPI 5.1 Proportion of Departmental staff that feel comfortable approaching and working with Papatipu Rūnanga in their day to day work. KPI 5.2 Extent to which advice on advocacy for the protection of taonga located outside of public conservation lands has been provided to Papatipu Rūnanga (e.g through Resource Management Act 1991 processes).
DO 6.0 Poutini Ngāi Tahu's relationship with the Department helps to maintain and strengthen their cultural relationship with the natural, historical and cultural heritage of public conservation lands.	KPI 6.0 Extent that Poutini Ngāi Tahu feel the Department's management of natural, historical and cultural heritage has enabled them to maintain and strengthen their cultural relationship with taonga located in public conservation lands. KPI 6.1 Change in the satisfaction of Poutini Ngāi Tahu with the Department's activities to assist them to maintain their cultural relationships with taonga.
DO 7.0 Where consistent with conservation legislation, Poutini Ngāi Tahu association with, and customary use of, public conservation lands and resources is fostered. Poutini Ngāi Tahu have access to cultural materials through an effective and culturally appropriate system.	KPI 7.0 Extent of satisfaction of Poutini Ngāi Tahu with the ease of access to, and condition of, cultural materials.
DO 7.1 Some mahinga kai resources are healthy enough to sustain harvesting.	
DO 8.0 People can learn about the cultural association Poutini Ngāi Tahu have with the West Coast Te Tai o Poutini via accurate and appropriate cultural interpretation presented by the Department and/or concessionaires.	KPI 8.0 Nature of opportunities provided by the Department and concessionaires for people to learn about the cultural association Poutini Ngāi Tahu has with the West Coast Te Tai o Poutini. KPI 8.1 Level of satisfaction of Papatipu Rūnanga and Departmental staff with the process of incorporating cultural information into interpretation provided by the Department.
DO 9.0 Wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga are protected and, where appropriate, actively managed in partnership with Poutini Ngāi Tahu.	KPI 9.0 Extent of effort expended on protection of Māori historical and cultural heritage. KPI 9.1 Extent of satisfaction of Poutini Ngāi Tahu with management relating to wāhi tapu sites located within public conservation lands.
DO 10.0 The Department supports Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in the opening and management of nohoanga entitlement areas throughout the Conservancy.	KPI 10.0 Number of nohoanga entitlement areas open for use.

### **5.2.2.2 Relationships with People and Organisations**

Community appreciation of the values and benefits of public conservation lands can benefit management. Therefore it is vital that the international importance of the West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy is appreciated both by local people and visitors from all over the world. Meaningful community involvement is essential for the long-term care of the Conservancy. It is desirable that there be community support, participation and engagement in management decisions.

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 1.0 People's understanding and appreciation of the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values and recreational opportunities is fostered and enhanced.	KPI 1.0 Change in New Zealanders' understanding of important conservation issues.
DO 1.1 There is widespread familiarity with, appreciation of and support for public conservation lands on the West Coast Te Tai o Poutini, the protection and conservation of their natural, historical and cultural values, and the management of conservation issues that the Conservancy faces.	
DO 2.0 The knowledge and ability to protect and conserve public conservation lands and natural, historical and cultural heritage values is transmitted to future generations.	KPI 2.0 Changes in community attitudes (especially youth) towards the conservation of natural, historical and cultural heritage.
DO 3.0 Close working relationships are developed and fostered with people and organisations.	KPI 3.0 Change in people's satisfaction with their involvement in conservation.  KPI 3.1 Change in the percentage of people involved in conservation projects in general and on conservation land.  KPI 3.2 Change in the quality of the Department's engagement with key associates.
DO 3.1 Successful partnerships are established and assist in the management of specific sites or places.	
DO 3.2 Active engagement in conservation projects initiated by the Department and other related activities or processes occurs.	
DO 3.3 People and organisations, including Poutini Ngāi Tahu, also undertake their own conservation initiatives, supported by the Department where appropriate.	
DO 3.4 Significant natural, historical and cultural heritage in environments for which the Department is not directly responsible are sustainably managed and conserved.	
DO 3.5 Increased participation leads to increases in the achievement of conservation outcomes generally.	

### 5.2.2.3 *Identification and Assessment of Conservation Values*

This management theme is based on the principle that we need to know more about what is there, and how it works, in order to better manage and conserve the natural, historical and cultural heritage values of the Conservancy. An understanding of the factors or processes that maintain or affect natural, historical and cultural heritage values will enhance the foundation for sound conservation management. Recognition of the level of significance of values will assist in focusing management effort appropriately.

There is a broad spectrum of conservation values within the Conservancy, ranging from those of World Heritage significance through those of national, regional or local value to those of an individual nature. The intensity of conservation management will vary depending on the relative value of the natural, historical or cultural heritage, the level of threat to these values, and community values.

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 1.0 The Department has a more complete understanding of the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values, their significance and their management requirements.	KPI 1.0 The extent and adequacy of coverage and/or documentation of the natural, historical and cultural heritage values of the Conservancy.
DO 1.1 Many of these values are defined, identified and their relative significance assessed.	
DO 1.2 The information available on natural, historical and cultural heritage values is updated as necessary.	

#### 5.2.2.4 *Proactive Management of Conservation Values*

There are many existing and ongoing threats to natural, historical and cultural heritage values, including the presence of widespread invasive weeds and animal pests, corrosion of historic fabric due to climatic conditions or other natural processes, and a range of other factors.

This management theme complements the management theme outlined in section 5.2.2.5 (which aims to avoid potential adverse effects on, or threats to, conservation values from human activities) by focusing on maintaining the well-being of ecosystems and the integrity of historic fabric and, where necessary, by restoring degraded values or by partially or completely removing threats from specified locations. Rehabilitation and restoration aim to reverse damage done and, where possible, to restore conservation values. It is also recognised, however, that in many cases past actions or their ongoing effects cannot practicably be reversed.

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 1.0 The Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values are proactively managed, rehabilitated, restored or enhanced.	KPI 1.0 Trends in New Zealanders' views on the condition of our heritage, whether protection has improved, and whether the Department has made a valuable contribution.
DO 2.0 The decline of indigenous biodiversity is halted.	KPI 2.0 Tracking changes in the number of extinct species or subspecies (both confirmed and assumed extinctions).  KPI 2.1 Tracking changes in the threat classification status of managed 'acutely-threatened' and 'chronically threatened' species or subspecies.
DO 2.1 The security of threatened species unique to New Zealand and most at risk from extinction is improved.	
DO 2.2 No extinctions of West Coast Te Tai o Poutini indigenous marine, freshwater and terrestrial species occur and managed threatened species have a lowered risk of extinction.	
DO 2.3 Where practicable, representative populations of all indigenous species are secure in predominantly natural habitats within their natural range.	

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 3.0 Examples of the full range of West Coast Te Tai o Poutini marine, freshwater and terrestrial ecosystems are conserved.	KPI 3.0 Tracking trends in the percentage of the most at risk environment types (freshwater and terrestrial) under legal protection from year to year.
DO 3.1 Some distinctive marine areas are protected.	KPI 3.1 Percentage of lowland forest and wetland areas in protection.KPI 3.2 Progress of regional planning forums to implement the Marine Protected Areas Policy to establish a network of marine protected areas that is comprehensive and representative of New Zealand's marine habitats and ecosystems.
DO 4.0 Where practicable, natural heritage is improved to a more natural state.	KPI 4.0 Tracking changes in indigenous vegetation cover on public conservation land by environment type.
DO 4.1 The ecological integrity and natural character of managed sites is maintained or restored.	KPI 4.1 Tracking changes in the size-class structure of selected indigenous dominants in particular places within forests on public conservation land.
DO 4.2 The connectivity and natural functioning of mountain-sea ecosystems, lowland wetlands and riparian areas is improving.	KPI 4.2 Tracking changes in representation of specific species or functional groups in particular places within forests on public conservation land.
DO 4.3 Advocacy for protection of freshwater fish habitats is successful and impediments to fish passage are progressively removed.	
DO 4.4 Formerly logged areas of public conservation land are regenerating.	
DO 5.0 Fire prevention and suppression play an active role in the protection of vulnerable ecosystems such as lowland pakihi wetlands, mānuka shrublands and alpine scrublands.	KPI 5.0 Number, extent and control of fires occurring within public conservation lands.
DO 6.0 Priority sites for biodiversity management (see Maps 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16 and 18) are being maintained and enhanced by controlling and, where possible, eradicating invasive weeds and animal pests.	KPI 6.0 Increase in biosecurity and/or pest management responses by Biosecurity New Zealand to incursions/pests adversely affecting conservation values, as a direct response to the Department's biosecurity advice and advocacy.
DO 6.1 Control of introduced animals occurs in those areas with the highest indigenous biodiversity values at the greatest risk.	KPI 6.1 Changes in the number, nature and extent of biosecurity threats and the success in containing, reducing and eradicating existing invasive species populations.
DO 6.2 The damage from harmful organisms established on the West Coast Te Tai o Poutini is reduced.	KPI 6.2 Trend in the number or range of exotic unwanted organisms that are newly established, or established but not yet widespread within the Conservancy.
DO 6.3 Further spread of unwanted exotic species is prevented, and no new unwanted organisms become established within public conservation lands.	KPI 6.4 Distribution and abundance of invasive weeds and animal pests considered a threat.
DO 7.0 Historical and cultural heritage located within public conservation land is protected from unauthorised human uses.	KPI 7.0 Change in the percentage of historic places in 'improving', 'stable' and 'degrading' categories.
DO 7.1 Actively managed historic places are maintained in a stable or improved condition.	KPI 7.1 Change in the number of historic places that meet ICOMOS standards.
	KPI 7.2 Change in the number of sites for which key history has been safeguarded.

### 5.2.2.5 *Protection of Conservation Values from Adverse Effects of Authorised Uses*

Human activities within the Conservancy (such as intense recreational use, drainage or vegetation clearance) have the potential to cause significant damage to conservation values, whether the activity is intentional or unintentional (e.g. fire). This management theme recognises that the best means of protecting values is by taking management measures to identify and avert potential effects or threats before damage actually occurs. At the same time, it is recognised that some minor degree of impact (especially impact associated with the fulfilment of other management objectives) may be acceptable under certain circumstances in some places. Similarly, there may be some situations where the containment or control of processes or other factors may be beyond the financial and/or management capacity of the Department.

In addition to the type of proactive management described in section 5.3.4, the Department plays a direct role in safeguarding conservation values of public conservation lands by attaching conditions to for use (e.g. concessions and access arrangements). Advocacy for the protection of conservation values located outside of public conservation lands is another important role of the Department.

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 1.0 The Department safeguards the Conservancy's natural, historical and cultural heritage values by identifying and taking appropriate action to avoid or otherwise minimise adverse effects of human use or management.	KPI 1.0 Changes in the number, nature and extent of threats or adverse impacts on a sample of natural, historical and cultural heritage values.
DO 1.1 Threats to, or adverse effects on, natural, historical and cultural heritage values are identified and assessed accurately and in a timely manner.	KPI 1.1 Changes in the level of compliance with limits imposed to avoid or reduce adverse effects (e.g. compliance with concession conditions or access arrangement conditions).
DO 1.2 Potential threats and risks to natural, historical and cultural heritage values are avoided or are managed in ways which are consistent with the desired outcomes for Places described in Chapter 4.2 of this CMS.	
DO 2.0 Business opportunities and provision of public goods or services that are consistent with conservation outcomes are enabled.	KPI to be developed at the national level.

### 5.2.2.6 *Recreational Use and Enjoyment of Public Conservation Lands*

This management theme recognises that public conservation lands on the West Coast Te Tai o Poutini have intrinsic values for many people and offer a wealth of opportunities for people to experience the scenic, ecological, historical and cultural values present. Many people simply enjoy being amidst the natural sights, sounds and scents of public conservation lands. Others enjoy more active nature-based recreational activities such as tramping, hunting or fishing. For Poutini Ngāi Tahu, access to public conservation lands is an essential part of connecting with their traditional associations with the land and their tūpuna.

Most people who use public conservation lands use some form of facility, whether this be a visitor centre or a lightly marked track. Facilities can enhance people's experiences and in certain cases make them possible (e.g. wheelchair accessible tracks for disabled people); however, all facilities impact to some extent on the environment. A key role of management is to ensure that the types and levels of development and recreational use of West Coast Te Tai o Poutini public conservation



lands do not compromise achievement of the Conservancy’s desired outcomes and objectives for protecting conservation values.

Creative education and interpretation activities can enrich people’s experiences by encouraging and assisting people to discover more about the particular public conservation land for themselves. At the same time, these programmes can foster understanding and appreciation of the Conservancy’s conservation values.

DESIRED OUTCOMES	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS
DO 1.0 People appreciate and enjoy public conservation lands and receive in full measure the inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits that may be derived from them, where these are not inconsistent with the protection of natural, historical and cultural heritage.	KPI 1.0 Trends in the benefits New Zealanders seek and receive from the natural, historical and cultural heritage managed by the Department.
DO 2.0 New Zealanders have increased opportunities for recreation and outdoor activities.	KPI 2.0 Change over time in New Zealanders’ participation in recreation on public conservation land and their satisfaction with the quality and range of recreational opportunities provided.
DO 2.1 Communities and visitors are satisfied with the range and quality of recreational opportunities, facilities and services available in the Conservancy.	
DO 2.2 Use of these places continues to increase, providing for healthy communities.	
DO 2.3 A wide range of quality recreation opportunities are available within the Conservancy.	

### 5.3 CMS MILESTONES

Conservation General Policy 2005 [policy 13(f)] requires this CMS to include major milestones towards planned outcomes, in order to facilitate implementation reporting. The milestones listed below do not reflect all of the conservation work undertaken by the Department; however they are major milestones, which cover a variety of management themes.

Policy 13(f) also requires the Department to provide conservation boards with a report (at least annually) on the implementation of this CMS. The West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Board will meet with the Department on an annual basis to develop a monitoring strategy for the coming year. Items to be monitored may include a selection of KPIs, milestones and outcomes, objectives or policies located in Parts 3 and 4 of this CMS. As stated in Policy 7, Section 5.2.1, KPIs and milestones will be kept under review and may be revised during the life of this CMS.

#### 5.3.1 Completed by the End of Year Two After CMS Approval

- Partial review of Kahurangi National Park Management Plan, including investigation of potential mountain-biking opportunities, is completed.
- Review of Paparoa National Park Management Plan is completed.
- Review of Mt Aspiring National Park Management Plan is completed.
- The Department has worked with the Ōkārīto Community Association to facilitate the nomination of the internationally significant Ōkārīto Coastal Wetland Complex for Ramsar designation.
- A wild population of Haast tokoeka is maintained in situ; at least 15 juveniles of safe weight are known to be recruited into the population each year. In addition,

a founder population of at least 5 pairs is established and breeding in a predator free environment.

- A wild population of rowi is maintained in situ; at least 15 juveniles of safe weight are known to be recruited into the population each year. In addition, a founder population of at least 5 pairs is established and breeding in a predator free environment.
- The Landsborough yellowhead mohua population has increased from the 2006 level of 320 to at least 400 individuals recorded during 5 minute bird count monitoring.
- The Styx blue duck whio population has increased to at least 8 pairs and at least half of these pairs are fledging offspring annually.
- The Oparara blue duck whio population has increased to at least 12 pairs and at least half of these pairs are fledging offspring annually.
- The invasive weed old man's beard *Clematis vitalba* has been eradicated from Karamea Place.
- The invasive weed Cathedral bells *Cobaea scandens* has been eradicated from all sites within the Conservancy.
- Willow *Salix fragilis* has been controlled to zero density within the Lake Wahapo catchment.
- Powelliphanta 'Augustus' snails that were translocated to other sites in the wild in 2007 continue to survive.
- Restoration work on the historic Donovan's Store at Ōkārīto is completed.
- The Lake Matheson car park area has been upgraded.
- 90% of huts meet the Department's hut service standards and 60% of walking and tramping tracks meet the Department's track service standards.
- Voluntary conservation work undertaken within the Conservancy increases, both in terms of number of participants and total amount of volunteer hours.

### **5.3.2 Completed by the End of Year Five After CMS Approval**

- The Department has facilitated the nomination of the internationally significant Bullock Creek polje (near Punakaiki) for Ramsar designation.
- The in situ wild populations of Haast tokoeka and rowi are maintained and at least 20 new individuals are recruited into each population per year.
- The Haast tokoeka and rowi populations located in predator free environments are breeding and have grown to at least 10 pairs respectively.
- The Landsborough yellowhead mohua population has increased from the 2006 level of 320 to at least 463 individuals recorded during 5 minute bird count monitoring.
- The Styx blue duck whio population has increased to at least 12 pairs and at least half of these pairs are fledging offspring annually.
- The Oparara blue duck whio population has increased to at least 16 pairs and at least half of these pairs are fledging offspring annually.
- Translocated Powelliphanta 'Augustus' snails continue to survive and reproduce.
- More than 250 adult Charleston gentians exist in the wild.
- Heritage assessments have been completed for all actively managed historic places in the Conservancy.

- Major restoration work involving actively managed historic places at Denniston (including the underground mining experience) and Big River has been completed. Significant upgrades to recreation facilities have also been undertaken at these places.
- Safe pedestrian and cycle access is available between the State Highway and Franz Josef and Fox glacier car parking areas.
- The Punakaiki Visitor Centre has been rebuilt and is open for public use.
- Mackay Hut and Heaphy Hut (both on the Heaphy Track) have been rebuilt.
- 95% of huts meet the Department's hut service standards and 70% of walking and tramping tracks meet the Department's track service standards.

### **5.3.3 Completed by the End of Year Seven After CMS Approval**

- Review of Westland Tai Poutini National Park Management Plan is completed.
- Review of Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan is underway.
- The archaeological site information within the NZAA database has been updated for all recorded archaeological sites located on public conservation land within the Conservancy and the overall suite of actively managed sites reviewed.
- The in situ wild populations of Haast tokoeka and rowi are maintained and at least 25 new individuals are recruited into each population per year.
- The Haast tokoeka and rowi populations located in predator free environments are breeding and have grown to at least 20 pairs respectively.
- The Landsborough yellowhead mohua population has increased from the 2006 level of 320 to at least 500 mohua recorded during 5 minute bird count monitoring.
- The Styx blue duck whio population is maintained at an estimated capacity of 16 to 18 pairs and at least half of these pairs are fledging offspring annually.
- The Oparara blue duck whio population is maintained at an estimated capacity of 20 to 24 pairs and at least half of these pairs are fledging offspring annually.
- Monitored bird population levels appear to be either the same as those existing at the time the CMS was approved or higher.
- Offspring from translocated populations of Powelliphanta 'Augustus' have successfully been recruited into the population.
- The decline of the prostrate broom *Carmichaelia juncea* has been halted and more than 1000 individuals are present in the Waiho River - the species stronghold.
- The Landsborough, Haast and Cascade river valleys are maintained free of priority invasive weed species.
- Recreational facilities on the Heaphy Track have been upgraded.
- The Franz Josef Waiiau Visitor Centre has been upgraded.
- The Haast Visitor Centre has been upgraded.
- 95% of huts meet the Department's hut service standards and 75% of walking and tramping tracks meet the Department's track service standards.



# Part 6

## Supporting Information



Hunter, Arawhata.  
Photo by: Department of Conservation.



# GLOSSARY

**abiotic:** Relating to physical resources that do not include plants, animals or micro-organisms. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**access (public):** On foot, unless otherwise qualified.

**active management:** Used with reference to a planned programme of work that is required to maintain the values of specific places or objects. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**actively managed site:** Historical and/or cultural heritage site managed by the Department which requires current or proposed expenditure over the following 5-10 years.

**adaptive management:** A structured process of optimal decision making in the face of uncertainty, with an aim to reducing uncertainty over time via system monitoring. In this way, decision making simultaneously maximizes one or more resource objectives and, either passively or actively, accrues information needed to improve future management. Adaptive management is often characterized as “learning by doing”.

**advocacy:** The collective term for work done to promote conservation to the public and outside agencies by the Department of Conservation, Conservation Boards and the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Advocacy work includes taking part in Resource Management Act processes and using a range of methods to inform and educate the public on conservation issues.

**agreement:** Mutual understanding; covenant; treaty; arrangement undertaken by and legally binding on parties. (*The Concise Oxford Dictionary*)

**ahi kā:** Enduring occupation and authority. Describes the continuous unbroken occupation of land by whanau, hapū or iwi over successive generations, and refers to the way in which the rights to occupy land and use resources are kept alive by actual occupation and resource use. Literally means ‘to keep the home fires burning’.

**aircraft:** Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth. (*Civil Aviation Act 1990*)

**aircraft landing:** Includes the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft. (*s17ZF Conservation Act 1987*)

**amend:** In relation to conservation management strategies, conservation management plans, freshwater fisheries management plans and sports fish and game management plans, means any change that does not affect the objectives of the strategy or plan. Such a change may not require a full public consultation process.

**amenity area:** Any part of public conservation land set aside for the development and operation of recreational and public amenities and related services appropriate for the public use and enjoyment of the area.

**amenity values:** Those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people’s appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes. (*section 2, Resource Management Act 1991*) Can include open space, design features, vegetation, historical and cultural heritage, and intangible attributes such

as character, landscape and ‘sense of place’.

**all terrain vehicle:** A vehicle that travels on low pressure tires, with a seat that is straddled by the operator, along with handlebars for steering control. As the name implies, it is designed to handle a wider variety of terrain than most other vehicles.

**animal:** Any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind; but does not include a human being. (*section 2, Reserves Act 1977; section 2, National Parks Act 1980*) Any member of the animal kingdom other than a human being. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**aquatic life:** Any species of plant or animal life (except birds) that must, at any time of the life history of the species, inhabit freshwater; and includes any part of any such plant or animal. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**archaeological site:** A site that was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or is the site of a wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and is or may be able through investigation by archaeological means to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand (*section 2, Historic Places Act 1993*).

**a.s.l.:** Above sea level.

**assessment of environmental effects:** A report outlining the effects that a proposed activity might have on the environment.

**atua, ngā:** The gods.

**authorisation:** Collective term for all types of approvals by the Minister and the Director-General of Conservation provided for in a statutory process. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**awa:** River.

**bed:** (a) In relation to any river, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping the banks; and (b) In relation to a lake, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its physical margin. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**backcountry adventurers (BCA):** People seeking the traditional New Zealand backcountry experience. This group has a higher level of backcountry skills and experience than backcountry comfort seekers. They seek an experience that has challenge and a sense of freedom and they accept a degree of risk and discomfort.

**backcountry comfort seeker (BCC):** People seeking an outdoor experience in a backcountry environment that has low risk due to the provision of safe, comfortable facilities. To ensure a safe and comfortable experience this group sometimes uses guided or concessionaire operations.

**benthic:** The lowest region of seas, lakes and deep rivers where the organism benthos live. This is a zone of relatively low productivity.

**biodiversity:** The variability among living organisms from all sources including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**bioprospecting:** The collection of plants or animals for the purposes of extracting genetic and biochemical material.

**biosecurity:** The exclusion, eradication or effective management of risks posed by pests and diseases to the economy,



environment and human health. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**biota:** All plants, animals and micro-organisms at a place. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**building:** Has the same meaning as given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the Building Act 2004. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**burning, prescribed:** The controlled application of fire, under specified conditions, to achieve a fire of required intensity and rate of spread to attain planned management objectives. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**bycatch:** Accidental or unintended capture of species protected under the Wildlife Act 1953 or Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 during fishing operations.

**bylaw:** A bylaw made under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves whereas regulations may apply to conservation areas.

**catchment:** Land area from which water drains toward a common watercourse in a natural basin.

**classic tramping opportunity:** A classic tramping experience is walking, tramping or climbing and enjoying the remote nature of the New Zealand outdoors; an opportunity to be inspired by the natural surroundings and be tested in your endurance and self reliance. These experiences may be supported by a network of simple but effective recreational facilities. Being able to enjoy the naturalness and inspirational natural beauty of the New Zealand outdoors is something that is held dear by many.

**CMP:** Conservation Management Plan.

**CMS:** Conservation Management Strategy.

**coastal environment:** An environment in which the coast usually is a significant part or element. The extent of the coastal environment will vary from place to place depending upon how much it affects or is (directly) affected by coastal processes and the management issue concerned. It includes at least three distinct, but interrelated parts: the coastal marine area, the active coastal zone, and the land back-drop.

**coastal marine area:** The foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water (a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea; (b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of: (i) one kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or (ii) the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by five. (*section 2, Resource Management Act 1991*)

**commercial hunting:** Means hunting undertaken by professional hunters for their livelihood and intended to maximise the take or kill of animals. It does not include guided recreational hunting, transportation of recreational hunters, or other means of assistance for recreational hunting for which a consideration is paid. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**community (biological):** An association of populations of plants and animals which occur together in a common environment.

**community (social):** A grouping of people who share geographic locations or common interests.

**concession:** A lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987, to enable

the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business on areas managed by the Department of Conservation. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**concessionaire:** A person who is a lessee, licensee, permit holder or grantee of an easement.

**conservancies:** The Department of Conservation has 13 conservancy offices in different parts of the country, which are responsible for separate geographical areas and their administration. The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy Office is located in Hokitika.

**Conservancy, the:** Means the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

**conservation:** The preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

Under the Historic Places Act 1993, conservation includes the processes of preserving, maintaining and restoring historic places.

In the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter it means the process of caring for a place to safeguard its cultural heritage value.

**conservation board:** Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987 and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. There are 14 conservation boards throughout the country (one for each of the 13 conservancies and one for the Chatham Islands), each comprising up to 12 appointed members. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of conservation management strategies and national park management plans for their areas, approval of

conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority or Director-General of the Department of Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area, and advising on new walkways. They also have an important conservation advocacy role.

**Conservation General Policy:** A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Acts listed in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act 1987. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans. (*Conservation General Policy, 2005*)

**conservation legislation:** Is a term that applies collectively to the statutes which are administered by the Department of Conservation, and includes: the Conservation Act 1987, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

**conservation management plan:** A plan for the management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes which implements a conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within a place or places specified in a conservation management strategy. (*section 17E, Conservation Act 1987*)

**conservation management strategy:** A strategy which implements general policies and establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. A conservation management strategy is reviewed every ten years. (*section 17D, Conservation Act 1987*)

**conservation services levy:** Levies that may be imposed on owners of quota, owners of annual catch entitlements, licensed fish receivers, commercial fishers, fish farmers, owners, operators and notified users of New Zealand fishing vessels, owners and operators of registered fish carriers, and holders of permits, licences, or other authorities issued under the Fisheries Act for the purposes of the Crown to recover its costs in respect to one or more conservation service (*Fisheries Act 1996*).

**conservation values:** Natural and historic heritage values.

**consultation:** An invitation to give advice, and the consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to those consulted to enable them to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue. It does not necessarily mean acceptance of the other party's view, but enables informed decision-making by having regard to those views. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**contaminant:** Includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat: (a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or (b)

when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged (*section 2, Resource Management Act 1991*)

**contiguous zone:** Those areas of the sea from the outside edge of the territorial sea (which is 12 nautical miles from low-water mark along the coast of New Zealand) out to a distance of 12 nautical miles.

**Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD):** An international agreement on biological diversity that came into force in December 1993 following a meeting of governments in Rio de Janeiro. The objectives of the Convention are: the conservation of biological diversity; the sustainable use of its components; and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising out of the utilisation of genetic resources. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**cultural:** Societal values with an emphasis on New Zealand/European history and Māori tikanga that are handed down through the generations. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**cultural impact assessment:** cultural impact assessment is a report documenting Māori cultural values, interests and associations with an area or a resource, and the potential impacts of a proposed activity on these. Cultural impact assessments are a tool to facilitate meaningful and effective participation of tangata whenua in impact assessment. A cultural impact assessment should be regarded as technical advice, much like any other technical report such as ecological or hydrological assessments.

The preparation of a cultural impact assessment is different from consultation in that it is seeking expert advice in project development and/or application for authorisation to use public

conservation lands or resources. This is part of the gathering of information phase. Tangata whenua in preparing a cultural impact assessment are acting in a technical capacity, rather than one of advocacy. The outcomes from the cultural impact assessment can be reflected in the conditions of authorisation, if granted.

**cultural landscape:** A defined area reflecting a predominant cultural use (e.g. a landscape of pasture or a group of buildings).

**cultural materials:** For the purpose of this CMS, cultural materials are defined as: i) plants, plant materials; ii) materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds, and clay, minerals or stone, to the extent to which the Department holds and is responsible for them, and which are important to Ngāi Tahu in maintaining their culture.

**culturally significant species:** Any species that is deemed significant following consideration of criteria for determining significance of cultural heritage resources. The Department will work with Papatipu Rūnanga to develop and modify these criteria as required.

**cumulative effect:** An effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects. (*section 3, Resource Management Act 1991*)

**customary use:** Gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua according to tikanga. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**data:** Facts or things used as a basis for decision-making. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**Deed of Recognition:** Means a deed of recognition described in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, which is to be entered into by the Crown pursuant to the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement.

**Department, the:** The Department of Conservation.

**derogate:** To take away; detract. To deviate from a standard or expectation; go astray.

**diadromous:** Fish that migrate between marine and freshwater systems, for example inanga, koaro, banded kōkopu, giant kōkopu taiwharu and shortjaw kōkopu (the species whose juveniles make up the whitebait catch).

**Director-General:** The Director-General of Conservation

**district plan:** Prepared and changed by the territorial authority according to the requirements of the Resource Management Act 1991 for the purpose of sustainable management of natural and physical resources. District plans indicate what uses are permitted for land within the district.

**doline:** A closed depression in karst caused by collapse, subsidence, or water movement and dissolving of limestone. Also known as 'sinkhole' or 'swallow-hole'.

**easement:** A grant of an interest in land that gives the grantee the right to some benefit from the land, such as a right of way.

**ecological district:** One method used for the ecological classification of land. New Zealand has been divided into 268 ecological districts according to geological, topographic, climatic and biological features and processes, which interrelate to produce characteristic landscapes and ranges of biological communities (Protected Natural Areas Programme).

**ecological region:** A single, very distinctive ecological district, or more commonly, a group of adjacent ecological districts which have diverse but closely related ecological components and relationships (Protected Natural Areas Programme).

**ecological values:** Values related to living organisms, their interrelationships

with each other and their environments. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**ecological integrity:** The full potential of indigenous biotic and abiotic factors, and natural processes, functioning in sustainable habitats, ecosystems, and landscapes. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**ecology:** The study of organisms in relation to one another and to their surroundings. (*NZ Pocket Oxford Dictionary*)

**ecosystem:** A biological system comprising a community of living organisms and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**ecosystem services:** A wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help sustain and fulfil life. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**effect:** Regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, includes: any positive or adverse effect; any temporary or permanent effect; any past, present, or future effect; any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects. Also includes any potential effect of high probability and any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact. (*Resource Management Act 1991*)

**effect, minor:** In relation to this CMS, means an effect that is localised in its visible and auditory extent; that does not in any way reduce the continued survival of the population of any resident indigenous species; that does not impede or threaten the continued operation of any ecosystem comprised primarily of indigenous species; and that does not damage, threaten or destroy any historic place or any place recognised

by Poutini Ngāi Tahu in the conservancy as having cultural significance, or any landform or geological feature identified by the NZ Geological Society as having international, national or regional significance.

**endangered:** A plant or animal species in danger of extinction and whose survival is unlikely if the adverse causal factors continue.

**encampment\*:** Non-designated site used for the purpose of shelter or camping on either: (a) a permanent or semi-permanent basis by private individuals or groups; or (b) for more than short-term use by private individuals or groups. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**endemic:** A species which is native to, as well as restricted to, a particular natural area. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**endemism:** Occurrence of organisms or taxa (termed endemic) whose distributions are restricted to a geographical region or locality, such as an island or a continent.

**environment:** Includes (a) ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and (b) all natural and physical resources; and (c) amenity values; and (d) the social, economic, aesthetic and cultural conditions that affect those matters. (*Resource Management Act 1991*)

**environmental gradient:** Often referring to vegetation patterns; a zone of change in form example species composition, caused by underlying environmental differences, e.g. in base rock type, altitude, soil wetness.

**epiphyte:** A plant that uses another plant for physical support but not nourishment.

**eradicate:** To remove completely. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**esplanade reserve:** Local purpose reserve, usually 20 metres wide, vested in the territorial authority or in the Crown with the purposes of protecting conservation values, enabling public access to or along the sea, a river or lake and recreational use where this is compatible with conservation values. Usually created as a result of subdivision of private land. (*Resource Management Act 1991, Reserves Act 1977*)

**estuary:** A broad tidal area associated with a river where there is a mixing of saline and freshwater.

**eutrophication:** Excessive plant and algae growth (especially in lakes) caused by elevated nutrient levels.

**Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ):** Those areas of sea, seabed, and subsoil beyond and adjacent to the territorial sea (which is 12 nautical miles from low-water mark along the coast of New Zealand) out to a distance of 200 nautical miles.

**exotic species:** Species other than indigenous species.

**exploration:** Any activity undertaken for the purpose of identifying mineral deposits or occurrences and evaluating the feasibility of mining particular deposits or occurrences of one or more minerals; and includes any drilling, dredging, or excavations (whether surface or sub-surface) that are reasonably necessary to determine the nature and size of a mineral deposit or occurrence. (*Crown Minerals Act 1991*)

**ex-situ conservation:** 'Off-site conservation', i.e. the process of protecting an endangered species of plant or animal by removing part of the population from a threatened habitat and placing it in a new location, which may be a wild area or within the care of humans.

**extant species:** A plant or animal species that currently exists.

**extinct species:** A plant or animal species no longer known to exist.

**facilities, recreational:** Facilities that enable people to enjoy a range of recreational opportunities including (but not limited to): visitor and information centres, camping areas, tracks and walkways, bridges, backcountry huts, roads, car-parking areas, toilets, picnic areas, signs and interpretation panels, viewing platforms, wharves and boat ramps. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**fauna:** Animal life of a given place or time.

**Fire Officer:** Person appointed as a Rural Fire Officer pursuant to the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Fish and Game Council:** Statutory body with functions pertaining to the management, maintenance and enhancement of the sports fish and game resource in the recreational interests of anglers and hunters. (*section 26P, Conservation Act 1987*) See also definition of game.

**fishery:** One or more stocks or parts of stocks or one or more species of freshwater fish or aquatic life that can be treated as a unit for the purposes of conservation or management. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**flora:** Plant life of a given place or time.

**foreshore:** means such parts of the bed, shore, or banks of a tidal water as are covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**foreshore and seabed:**

(a) means the marine area that is bounded,—

(i) on the landward side by the line of mean high water springs; and

(ii) on the seaward side, by the outer limits of the territorial sea; and

(b) includes the beds of rivers that are part of the coastal marine area (within the meaning of the Resource Management Act 1991); and

(c) includes the bed of Te Whaanga Lagoon in the Chatham Islands; and

(d) includes the air space and the water space above the areas described in paragraphs (a) to (c); and

(e) includes the subsoil, bedrock, and other matters below the areas described in paragraphs (a) to (c). (*Foreshore and Seabed Act 2004*)

**fossil:** A relic or representation of a plant or animal that existed in a past geological age, occurring in the form of mineralised bones, shells, etc.

**freedom:** Non-guided activity, which may involve the rental of equipment for use on public conservation land.

**freshwater:** (a) All waters of rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, lagoons, wetlands, impoundments, canals, channels, watercourses, or other bodies of water whether naturally occurring or artificially made. (b) All waters of estuaries or coastal lagoons. (c) All other fresh or estuarine waters where freshwater fish indigenous to or introduced into New Zealand are found. (d) All waters in the mouth of every river or stream, and the mouth of every river and stream shall be deemed to include every outlet thereof and the seashore between those outlets and the waters of the sea or lying within a distance of 500 metres from any place where at low tide the waters of a river or stream meet the waters of the sea. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**freshwater fish:** Includes finfish of the Classes Agnatha and Osteichthytes, and shellfish of the Classes Mollusca

and Crustacea, that must at any time in the life history of the species, inhabit freshwater; and includes finfish and shellfish that seasonally migrate into and out of freshwater. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**game:** Means the wildlife declared to be game specified in the First Schedule to the Wildlife Act 1953. As at the date of the adoption of this CMS they are all birds viz: black swan, Canada goose, chukar, grey duck, mallard duck, paradise duck, spoonbill duck, partridge, red-legged partridge, pheasant, pukeko, Australian quail, Californian quail and Virginian quail.

**general policy:** Is a guide for decisions based on general approaches. General policy is used to mean a statement, directive or guide adopted by the Minister of Conservation, or the New Zealand Conservation Authority following a statutory process under the Conservation Act 1987, National Parks Act 1980, Reserves Act 1977, Wildlife Act 1953, Marine Reserves Act 1971, Wild Animal Control Act 1977, Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990. Conservation management strategies are required to implement statements of General Policy.

**General Policy for National Parks:** A policy to implement the National Parks Act 1980 and to provide consistent national direction for the administration of national parks through conservation management strategies and national park management plans. (*General Policy for National Parks, 2005*)

**genetic diversity:** Variation in the genetic makeup of populations or species. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**geodiversity:** Geological diversity. All the variety of minerals, rocks, soils, geothermal resources and landforms and

the processes which have formed these features throughout geological time.

**geopreservation:** The preservation of geological, soil and landform features and the protection of processes that give rise to or maintain them.

**geopreservation site:** A site that is recognised as having such significance for the interpretation and understanding of New Zealand geological or landforming processes, that it is listed in the New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory as worthy of protection.

**geothermal water:** Water heated within the earth by natural phenomena to a temperature of 30 degrees Celsius or more; and includes all steam, water, and water vapour, and every mixture of all or any of them that has been heated by natural phenomena. (*section 2, Resource Management Act 1991*)

**Great Walks:** The Department's premier walking tracks, through areas of some of the best scenery in the country. The huts and tracks on the Great Walks are of a higher standard than other tramping tracks, and many of the Great Walks have booking systems to manage visitor pressure.

**guide dog:** A dog certified by the Royal New Zealand Foundation of the Blind as being a guide dog or a dog under training as a guide dog. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**habitat:** The environment within which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**hapū:** Sub-tribe.

**historic area:** An area of land that contains an inter-related group of historic places, some or all of which are registered; forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand; and lies within the territorial limits of

New Zealand. (*Historic Places Act 1993*)

**historic place:**

(a) Means–

i. any land (including an archaeological site); or

ii. any building or structure (including part of a building or structure); or

iii. any combination of land and a building or structure, that forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand; and

(b) includes anything that is in or fixed to such land. (*section 2, Historic Places Act 1993*)

**Historic Places Trust:** A charitable trust established by an Act of Parliament in 1954. Governed by a Board of Trustees and a Māori Heritage Council, the Trust's mission is to promote the identification, protection, preservation and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand.

**historic resource:** Means a historic place within the meaning of the Historic Places Act 1993; and includes any interest in a historic resource. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**historical and cultural heritage:** Any building or other structure, archaeological site, natural feature, wāhi tapu, or object, associated with people, traditions, events or ideas, which contribute to an understanding of New Zealand's history and cultures. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**horse:** Includes any horse, mule, donkey, or ass.

**hui:** Gatherings, discussions, meetings.

**ICOMOS:** International Council on Monuments and Sites.

**indigenous species:** Refers to plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance



of human beings and without the assistance of vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. Use of the words 'indigenous' and 'native' have the same meaning in this CMS.

**information:** Includes interpretation. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**integrated conservation management:** The management of natural resources, and historical and cultural heritage, and existing or potential activities in a manner which ensures that priorities are clear and that the effects of each activity on others are considered and managed accordingly. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**integrated pest control:** Pest control management that delivers the optimum mix of control methods for pests present at a place to achieve the biodiversity goals for that place.

**intellectual property rights:** Ownership of knowledge or vested interest in the ownership of knowledge. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**intermontane basin:** A basin between mountain ranges.

**interpretation:** Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of national or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media. It occurs in the vicinity of the subject and is designed to stimulate visitor interest, increase understanding and promote support for conservation.

**intrinsic value:** A concept which regards the subject under consideration as having value or worth in its own right independent of any value placed on it by humans. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**introduced species:** Species other than indigenous species. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**invertebrate:** An animal that lacks a backbone or spinal column (e.g. an insect, snail or worm).

**IUCN:** International Union for Conservation in Nature.

**iwi:** A Māori tribe or people. A group of several hapū with common ancestral links.

**iwi authority:** The authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so. (*Resource Management Act 1991*)

**iwi management plan:** An iwi planning document recognised by an iwi authority. It may include planning for social, economic and resource management issues based on tribal management and self-development.

**kai:** Food.

**kai hau kai:** The exchange of local food and resources.

**kaimoana:** Seafood.

**kainga:** Village, settlement, home.

**kaitiaki:** Guardian. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Kaitiaki Roopu:** A committee comprising representatives Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio with which the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy consults with on a regular basis.

**kaitiakitanga:** The exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga. In relation to a resource this includes the ethic of stewardship based upon the nature of the resource itself. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**kanohi te kanohi:** Face to face.

**karakia:** Chant, incantation, prayer.

**karst:** Distinctive surface and subsurface landforms that primarily arise from the greater solubility of certain rock types (e.g. limestone, marble)

in natural waters. Includes but is not limited to, the classic characteristics of a hummocky, bumpy appearance caused by surface hollows, depressions and fissures, collapse structures such as natural arches, caves, disappearing and reappearing rivers and streams, and strangely shaped rocky outcroppings.

**kaumātua:** Elders, decision-makers for the iwi or hapū.

**kaupapa:** An abstract word with many meanings (e.g. plan, strategy, tactics, methods, fundamental principles). Within the Department it is generally used in the sense of vision, philosophy, cause, idea or theme.

**kawa:** Māori protocol; proper ways of doing things.

**kawanatanga:** Government, the right of the Crown under the Treaty of Waitangi to govern and make laws.

**ki uta ki tai:** From the mountains to the sea (see Appendix 1, Section 1.9).

**koivi:** Bones, skeletal remains.

**koha:** Gift, present.

**kōrero:** Discussion, debate.

**kōrero pūrākau:** Stories.

**lacustrine:** Of or relating to lakes.

**lake:** A body of fresh water whose bed has an area of 8 hectares or more and which is entirely or nearly surrounded by land. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**land:** Includes land covered by water and the air space above land.

**landforms:** Natural features in the landscape formed by physical processes, e.g. mountain ranges, glacial moraines, rock outcrops.

**landing:** See 'aircraft landing' above.

**landscape:** For the purposes of this CMS, landscape is defined as including:

a) the physical formations of mountains, hills, valleys and plains, coastal margins,

islands, open coastal water adjacent to land, and lakes, rivers and wetlands and their margins;

b) the waters within the landscape and seascape and their qualities, how they are experienced and the values placed on them;

c) rocks, sands, muds, soils and other geological features and their context;

d) cultural values on special places such as urupa (cemeteries), wāhi tapu (places of special significance), tauranga waka (canoe landing sites) and mahinga kai (gathering sites);

e) visible remnants of earlier occupation and industrial sites, or associated with special events or people;

f) vegetation cover characterising a place and associated with the soils and other land surfaces, including lichen, mosses, ferns, forest types, scrub-land types and grasslands;

g) the habitats that arise from the vegetation cover and other land surfaces;

h) the natural character of a place in its totality, including the flora and fauna and their patterns in and on the land and waters;

i) the blending of one area of land or water into another (e.g. the juxtaposition of water and mountain);

j) the visual amenity values placed on viewsapes and backdrops to places and activities; and

k) the non-visual experiences within a landscape area or site that are derived from odours, noise and texture.

This definition is necessarily wide to incorporate the formative influences, the form and pattern, the relations between separate parts of the landscape, the experiences of landscape and the values placed on these qualities or experiences.

**land status:** Legal protection given to land by the Act under which it is classified.

**lease:** A grant of an interest in land that gives exclusive possession of the land and makes provision for any activity on the land that the lessee is permitted to carry out. (*Conservation Amendment Act 1996*)

**lianes:** Wiry or woody free-hanging or climbing plants.

**licence:** Means a profit a prendre (the right to take produce from land and/or a grazing right), or any other grant that gives a non-exclusive interest in land, or a grant that makes provision for any activity on the land that the licensee is permitted to carry out (Conservation Amendment Act 1996).

**livestock:** Any cattle, sheep, horse, mule, goat, pig, or deer, except one that is living in a wild state.

**local government/local authority:** Generic terms for the sub-national form of government, which includes regional councils, territorial authorities and unitary authorities.

**lowland forest:** Forest up to the upper altitudinal limit of rimu (usually c. 500m a.s.l.).

**mahinga kai:** The customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered. (*Section 167, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

**Mahitahi Roopu:** A committee comprising representatives of Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio with whom staff from the Hokitika, Franz Josef Waiau and South Westland Weheka Area Offices consult with on a regular basis.

**maimai:** Any hide or shelter for the purpose of game bird hunting, and any wheeled mobile hide or shelter that is parked temporarily for the same purpose.

**mana:** Prestige; authority. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**manāki:** Host, care for.

**manākitanga:** Show respect, kindness, hospitality.

**manuhiri:** Visitors

**marae:** Local community and its meeting-places and buildings. Includes the area of land on which all buildings such as the wharenuī (meeting house), the wharekai (dining room), ablution blocks, and any other associated buildings are situated.

**marginal strip:** Land reserved from disposition by the Crown under the Land Act 1948 and the Conservation Act 1987 along the foreshore, water ways greater than 3 metres wide (when are not used by the Electricity Corporation of New Zealand for generating electricity) and lakes. This term also refers to land acquired in exchange for marginal strips. Marginal strips are 20 metres wide unless a reduction of width has been approved by the Minister. Some marginal strips are not surveyed, and move with movements in the adjoining water body. (For more information, refer to the Conservation Act 1987).

**marine mammals:** Whales, dolphins, seals, sea lions.

**marine protected area:** An area of sea especially dedicated to or achieving the protection and maintenance of biodiversity at the habitat or ecosystem level, and managed through legal or other effective means. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**marine reserve:** A marine area constituted as a marine reserve under the Marine Reserves Act 1971.

**mataitai:** A mataitai identifies an area that is a place of importance for customary food gathering and is managed by the tangata whenua for those purposes. Under modern fisheries legislation,

a mataitai can be established over any area of New Zealand fisheries waters of the South Island. Provisions for mataitai are declared under the Fisheries (South Island Customary Fishing) Regulations 1998. Tangata tiaki are appointed by the tangata whenua to manage the reserve through the making of bylaws. A mataitai prohibits commercial fishing within its boundaries, unless otherwise authorised by the tāngata tiaki.

**mātauranga Māori:** Māori traditional knowledge. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**matāwaka:** Visitors.

**maunga:** Mountain.

**mauri:** Essential life force, the spiritual power and distinctiveness that enables each thing to exist as itself. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Māwhera Incorporation:** The Proprietors of Māwhera constituted as a Māori incorporation under and subject to Part IV of the Māori Affairs Amendment Act 1967 by clause 3(1) of the Māwhera Incorporation Order 1976 and continued under section 357 of the Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993. (*section 8, Ngāi Tabu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

**may:** Policies intended to allow flexibility in decision-making, state that a particular action or actions ‘may’ be undertaken. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**mineral:** A naturally occurring inorganic substance beneath or at the surface of the earth, whether or not under water. Includes all metallic minerals, non-metallic minerals, fuel minerals, precious stones, industrial rocks and building stones, and a prescribed substance within the meaning of the Atomic Energy Act 1945. (*Crown Minerals Act 1991*)

**mining:** Means to take, win or extract by whatever means, a mineral existing

in its natural state in land, or a chemical substance from that mineral, for the purpose of obtaining the mineral or chemical substance; but does not include prospecting or exploration; and “to mine” has a corresponding meaning. (*section 2, Crown Minerals Act 1991*)

**mining operations:** Operations in connection with mining, exploring, or prospecting for any Crown owned mineral including: the extraction, transport, treatment, processing, and separation of any mineral; and the construction, maintenance, and operation of any works, structures, and other land improvements, and of any machinery, and equipment, connected with such operations; and the removal of overburden by mechanical or other means, and the stacking, deposit, storage, and treatment of any substance considered to contain any mineral; and the deposit or discharge of any mineral, material, debris, tailings, refuse, or wastewater produced from or consequent on, any such operations; and the doing of all lawful acts incidental or conducive to any such operations when carried out at or near the site where the mining, exploration, or prospecting is carried out. (*Crown Minerals Act 1991*)

**Minister:** Minister of Conservation.

**moana:** Sea or large lakes.

**mokihi:** Traditional Māori canoe or raft, made from raupō (bulrush) and harakeke (flax).

**motorised vessel:** Any boat, vessel or craft used in navigation not solely powered manually or by sail and including hovercraft and small motor craft.

**mountain bike:** See ‘non-powered vehicle’.

**MPA:** Marine Protected Areas.

**national park:** All land included in a national park where land may include the

foreshore, and the bed of a stream, river, tarn or lake and other permanent water bodies, such as peat bogs, wetlands and tidal waters that flow through that area of a national park within the coastal marine area. It is a matter of legal fact in the case of each national park whether or not 'park lands' include foreshore and seabed areas; not all foreshores and seabeds surrounded by or adjoining a national park will have the status of national park.

**NPMP:** National Park Management Plan. A NPMP provides for the management of a national park in accordance with the National Parks Act 1980. (*section 45(2), National Parks Act 1980*)

**national park values:** The values outlined in section 4 of the National Parks Act 1980.

**national policy statement:** A statement of policy issued under section 52 of the Resource Management Act 1991 on matters of national importance that are relevant to achieving the purpose of the Act.

**native:** Indigenous. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**natural:** Existing in or produced by nature. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**natural character:** The qualities of an area which are the result of natural processes and taken together give it a particular recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**natural character, indigenous:** A place has 'pristine' indigenous natural character if it is completely free of human induced disturbance (threats to, or pressures on natural heritage values, imposed either directly or indirectly by humans) and its effects. Five thousand years ago, the indigenous natural character of West Coast *Tai Poutini*

was 100 % pristine because humans had no influence on its natural heritage in any way. Today the indigenous natural character of West Coast *Tai Poutini* ecosystems has been irreversibly changed through human induced extinction of species such as moa and the southern grayling *upokororo*. Several introduced invasive weed and animal pest species have become established throughout public conservation lands, altering the natural diversity and composition of ecosystems, and many types of human activities have destroyed and continue to threaten natural heritage values in various localities.

**natural hazard:** Any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment. (*section 2, Resource Management Act 1991*)

**natural heritage:** This term has the same meaning as 'natural resources' (see definition below).

**natural quiet:** Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**natural resources:** Plants and animals of all kinds, and the air, water, and soil in or on which any plant or animal lives or may live, and landscape and landform, and geological features, and systems of interacting living organisms, and their environment, and includes any interest in a natural resource. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**natural state:** Unmodified by human activity or introduced plants or animals. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**nature conservation / natural heritage conservation:** The

preservation and protection of the natural resources of New Zealand, having regard to their intrinsic values and having special regard to indigenous flora and fauna, natural ecosystems and landscape. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy:** A government-approved national strategy (2000) providing an integrated response to New Zealand's declining indigenous biodiversity, prepared in part to meet a commitment under the Convention on Biological Diversity.

**New Zealand Conservation Authority, (NZCA):** A national body of 13 appointed members established under section 6A of the Conservation Act 1987. Amongst other functions, it has the statutory responsibility for approving General Policy, conservation management strategies and national park management plans. The NZCA must also be consulted over any access notice over national park land under the Crown Minerals Act 1991. (*Conservation Act 1987, National Parks Act 1980*)

**New Zealand fisheries waters:** (a) All waters in the exclusive economic zone of New Zealand; (b) All waters of the territorial sea of New Zealand; (c) All internal waters of New Zealand (i.e. any areas of the sea that are on the landward side of the baseline of the territorial sea of New Zealand); (d) All other fresh or estuarine waters within New Zealand where fish, aquatic life or seaweed that are indigenous to or acclimatised in New Zealand are found. (*Fisheries Act 1996*)

**Ngā Whenua Rāhui:** A contestable fund to assist Māori landowners to protect indigenous forests and other habitats and ecosystems.

**ngahere:** Forests.

**Ngāi Tahu:** The term is used throughout this CMS to refer to all Ngāi Tahu individual persons, Ngāi Tahu whānau,

Ngāi Tahu hapū, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga.

**Ngāi Tahu values in relation to a Tōpuni:** Means Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu's statement of the cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with the Tōpuni. (*section 237, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

**Ngāi Tahu Whānui:** Means the collective of the individuals who descend from the primary hapū of Waitaha, Ngāti Mamoe, and Ngāi Tahu, namely, Kati Kuri, Kati Irakehu, Kati Huirapa, Ngāi Tuahuriri, and Kai Te Ruahikihiki. (*section 2, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996*)

**NGO:** Non-government organisation. Any organised interest group.

**nival zone:** On slopes with a thinner patchy snow cover, nivation (the action of frost and thaw on the surrounding rocks) combined with the removal of the shattered material by gravity transport causes development of depressions.

**nohoanga:** Temporary camping area.

**non-point source pollution:** Source of pollution in which wastes are not released at one specific, identifiable point but from a number of points that are spread out and difficult to identify and control.

**non-powered vehicle:** Includes, but is not limited to, all non-motorised cycles and mountain bikes.

**non-vascular plants:** Herbaceous plants (e.g. mosses) lacking a vascular system for conveying sap as their primary means of transporting nutrients.

**NZCA:** New Zealand Conservation Authority.

**NZGI:** New Zealand Geopreservation Index.

**objectives:** Statements of management intentions, aimed at achieving desired outcomes and long-term goals. These

can be broad or narrow in scope, and may be accompanied by more specific implementation methods.

**Order-in-Council:** An order made by the Governor-General in Council. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**outcome:** A goal or end result of a conservation action or series of actions. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**outstanding:** The extent to which areas selected for legal protection or conservation management are of exceptional interest, importance or significance from the point of view of the relevant community/communities of interest. For natural heritage, criteria include the perspectives of science, conservation, natural beauty and recreation. For historic heritage, criteria include historical, physical and cultural significance. (*DoC Statement of Intent 2003-2006*)

**pā:** Site of former Māori occupation, often in a strategic location such as a hilltop.

**pakihi:** Originally a Māori word denoting a clearing free from forest. Now used to define areas of flat or gently sloping wetland on the South Island's West Coast *Tai Poutini*, which support a low stunted vegetation community on wet, infertile soils.

**pakiwaitara:** Mythology.

**palustrine:** Of, pertaining to, or living in, a marsh or swamp; marshy.

**papa kāinga:** Original home; home base; village.

**Papatipu Rūnanga:** Papatipu Rūnanga are the modern day administrative councils and representatives of the hapū and whānau who have kaitiakitanga over a particular area and its resources. Each Rūnanga has its own area (takiwā or rohe), determined by natural boundaries such as mountain ranges and rivers.

Most of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy lies within the rohe the iwi Ngāi Tahu, and specifically the rohe of the hapū Ngāti Waewae and Ngāti Māhaki ki Makaawhio (see Map 2). The Papatipu Rūnanga within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy are Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae (the administrative body for Ngāti Waewae) and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio (the administrative body for Ngāti Māhaki ki Makaawhio). The exclusive rohe of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae is centered on Arahura and Hokitika and extends from Kahurangi Point to the north bank of the Hokitika River and inland to the Main Divide, together with a shared interest with Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio in the area situated between the south bank of the Hokitika River and the north bank of the Poerua River. The exclusive rohe of Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio is centered at Makaawhio and extends from the south bank of the Poerua River to Piopiotahi (Milford Sound) and inland to the Main Divide, together with a shared interest with Te Rūnanga O Ngāti Waewae in the area situated between the north bank of the Poerua River and the south bank of the Hokitika River.

**Papatūānuku:** The earth mother. Papatūānuku gave birth to a number of supernatural beings, gods or deities from whom Māori are descended.

**participation:** The contribution of effort, information and ideas towards the work of the Department. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**partnership:** The relationship between individuals or groups that is characterised by mutual cooperation and responsibility for the achievement of a specific goal. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**people and organisations:** An inclusive phrase used to refer to all individuals, clubs, companies, councils and other organisations and groups,

both public and private, with an interest in the policies of and actions undertaken by the Department of Conservation in relation to public conservation lands and species management. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**permit:** A grant of rights to undertake an activity that does not require an interest in land. (*Conservation Amendment Act 1996*)

**personal mobility device:** A device designed to transport one person, is propelled by hand or a propulsion system with a maximum speed of 15 km per hour, and is ridden by a disabled person. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**personal water craft (including, but not limited to, jet skis):** Power-driven vessel that has a fully enclosed hull, does not retain water on board if it capsizes, and is designed to be operated by a person standing, sitting or kneeling on the vessel, but not seated within the vessel; and may include space for one or more passengers. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**pest:** Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen or disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems or freshwater fisheries. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**pest management:** Pest management covers actions aimed at avoiding or mitigating unwanted harm from pests that are established in the Conservancy.

**Place:** An area identified in a conservation management strategy or plan for the purposes of integrated conservation management. It may include any combination of terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas and may be determined by a range of criteria including but not limited to: ecological districts, geological features, catchments, internal departmental, regional

or district council or rohe/takiwā boundaries, land status, major recreation or tourism destinations, commonality of management considerations and unique management needs. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*) For the purposes of this CMS, the entire West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy has been divided into seven land-based Places (Karamea, Kawatiri, Paparoa, Inangahua, Māwhera, Hokitika and Te Wāhi Pounamu) and one marine Place. The land based division of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* (including both public and private land) into adjacent geographic areas (Places) has been chosen for practical management reasons. There are many conservation management issues that are common to the whole Conservancy, although these issues may have different emphases in the successive Places.

**plant:** Any member of the plant kingdom; and includes any alga, bacterium, or fungus, and any part of or seed or spore from any plant. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*). Any angiosperm, gymnosperm, fern or fern ally; and includes any moss, liverwort, alga, fungus, or related organism. (*section 2, National Parks Act 1980*)

**podocarps:** A predominantly Southern Hemisphere family of coniferous plants which include the kahikatea, tōtara, matai, miro, rimu and celery pine tanekaha.

**point source pollution:** Source of pollution in which wastes are released at one specific, identifiable point.

**policies:** Specific statements on how conservation management objectives are to be achieved, which may include criteria for assessment.

**polje:** A large enclosed depression (with steep sides and a flat floor) caused by subsidence in a karst region.

**pollution:** Undesirable change in the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of the air, water, or land



that can harmfully affect the health, survival, or activities of human or other living organisms.

**pounamu:** New Zealand greenstone, as defined in the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997.

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu:** Derive their status as tangata whenua of *Te Tai o Poutini* by whakapapa from their ancestors who held customary title and rights to the land of *Te Tai o Poutini* at the time of the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi in 1840.

**Pou whenua:** Marker pole or post. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**precautionary principle:** Taking a cautious approach to conservation management decisions when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate. This principle recognises that one of the major challenges of conservation management is to make good decisions under uncertain or inadequate information. This recognises the variety of perceptions of people. It also acknowledges the difficulties of precise definition of sustainable ecological limits. Principle 15 of the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development states that, in order to protect the environment, the precautionary approach should be widely applied. 'Where there are threats of serious or irreversible damage, lack of full scientific certainty shall not be used as a reason for postponing cost-effective measures to prevent environmental degradation'. (*Environment 2010 Strategy*)

**prescribed burning:** See Burning.

**preservation:** In relation to a resource, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of its intrinsic values. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi:** The principles of the Treaty of Waitangi identified from time to time

by the Government of New Zealand. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**private accommodation:** Place to live or lodge which is not available to the general public on an open basis. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**private land:** Any land that is any Māori land within the meaning of *Te Ture Whenua Māori (Māori Land) Act 1993* or has been alienated from the Crown. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

**profit à prendre:** A right to enter upon land to take some part of the land that is capable of being owned e.g., soil, mineral, vegetation.

**prospecting:** Any activity undertaken for the purpose of identifying land likely to contain exploitable mineral deposits or occurrences. (*Crown Minerals Act 1991*)

**protected areas:** Terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas that are protected primarily for the purpose of the conservation of natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, using a range of legal mechanisms that provide long-term security of tenure, status or land use purpose, either privately or publicly owned. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Protected Natural Areas (PNA)**

**programme:** A programme which aims to establish a network of reserves and other protected natural areas which is representative of the full range of New Zealand's natural diversity. Ecological districts are surveyed and areas identified which best represent the diversity of their natural features. These are termed recommended areas for protection or RAPs.

**protected wildlife:** (a) Any animal for the time being absolutely protected pursuant to section 3 of the Wildlife Act 1953; (b) Any animal for the time being partially protected pursuant to section 5 of the Wildlife Act 1953, other than such

an animal in circumstances in which that animal may be hunted or killed under the authority of subsection (2) of that section; (c) Any animal that is a marine mammal within the meaning of the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**protected wildlife vulnerable to dogs:** (a) Any flightless protected wildlife; (b) Any limited-flight protected wildlife; (c) Any protected wildlife that nests (including moulting or breeding), or roosts, upon or in close proximity to the ground; (d) Any protected wildlife that feeds upon or in close proximity to the ground; (e) Any animal that is a marine mammal within the meaning of the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**protection:** In relation to a resource, means its maintenance, so far as is practicable, in its current state; but includes: (a) its restoration to some former state; and (b) its augmentation, enhancement, or expansion. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**protocol:** A statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which sets out: (a) how the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers, and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngāi Tahu claim area; and (b) how the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and provide for Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu's input into its decision-making process. (*section 281, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*) See Appendix 2: Protocols on the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues (1997).

**public accommodation:** Place to live or lodge in that is open to or shared by

all people. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**public conservation lands and waters:** Lands and water areas administered by the Department of Conservation for whatever purpose, including the natural and historic resources of those areas covered by this conservation management strategy. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**public interest:** Interest that is open to or shared by all people. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**pūrākau:** Stories, legend, a method of passing knowledge.

**rāhui:** A restriction or control of specified activities put in place by the tangata whenua as kaitiaki to manage an area in accordance with tikanga. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**rakau rangatira:** Trees of significance for Māori cultural purposes, including carvings.

**Ramsar Convention:** The Convention on Wetlands, signed in Ramsar, Iran, in 1971, is an intergovernmental treaty which provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources ([www.ramsar.org](http://www.ramsar.org)). It was signed by New Zealand in 1976.

**Ramsar site:** A wetland with Ramsar status (i.e. recognised as being of international significance).

**rangatira:** Chief, leader.

**rangatiratanga:** Rangatiratanga incorporates the right to make, alter and enforce decisions pertaining to how a resource is to be used and managed, and by whom.

**rare:** Species with small world populations that are not at present

endangered or vulnerable but are at risk.

**Recommended area for protection (RAP):** A place identified as a priority for protection because it contains the best example(s) of its type or class of natural ecosystem and/or landscape in an ecological district.

**recreation:** For the purpose of this CMS, the term 'recreation' encompasses the full range of activities undertaken by people for leisure purposes and the experiences they gain through these activities. 'Recreational uses' thus encompasses both passive enjoyment (such as the appreciation of natural scenery from roadways) and more active outdoor activities (such as walking, tramping, hunting and motorised recreation).

**Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS):** ROS is a system for classifying outdoor experiences. It identifies opportunities along a continuum of categories from urban to wilderness and provides both an inventory and planning process.

**recreational character:** The extent and diversity of the natural landscapes that make the West Coast *Tai Poutini* distinctive within New Zealand. Includes the outstanding range of internationally and nationally significant features and diverse recreational opportunities.

**recreational freshwater fisheries:** Means any freshwater fisheries where the fishing of sports fish and indigenous freshwater fish is lawfully carried out for recreational purposes. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**regional coastal plan:** Must be prepared by all regional councils to help manage resources in the coastal marine area of that region. It may form part of a regional plan.

**regional council:** A locally elected council which has primary

responsibility for promoting the sustainable management of natural and physical resources, for ensuring that environmental planning is carried out in an integrated fashion and for carrying out a number of other regional functions (such as hazard mitigation, soil conservation and management of hazardous substances).

**regional plan:** The purpose of these is to assist regional councils and unitary authorities to carry out their functions. They are designed to address specific resource management issues for which regional councils and unitary authorities are responsible. Councils must decide what regional plans they will prepare. Plans may cover matters such as water management, coastal management, soil conservation, natural hazard mitigation and air pollution (refer regional policy statements).

**Regional Policy Statement (RPS):** Must be prepared by all regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991. Each RPS provides an overview of the resource management issues of the region and policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the whole region. They provide the overall framework for achieving sustainable management in the region and are binding on regional and district plans.

**regulations (for conservation areas):** Regulations made under section 48 of the Conservation Act 1987. Regulations may apply to conservation areas whereas bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves.

**rehabilitation:** To return a degraded ecosystem or population to a non-degraded condition; this may be different from its original condition.

**representative:** Examples typical of a given indigenous species, habitat or ecosystem that currently occur or once

occurred in a place. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**reserve:** Reserve has the meaning given to that term in the Reserves Act 1977 and includes the following reserves: recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose, local purpose. (*section 2, Reserves Act 1977*)

**resource:** Natural, historical or cultural heritage (as defined in this glossary).

**resource consent:** Consent for activity regulated under the Resource Management Act 1991. Resource consents include land use consents, subdivision consents, coastal permits, water permits and discharge permits and can be obtained from the responsible public authority through a statutory process.

**restoration:** The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes and their cultural and visual qualities; or for historic heritage, to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**review:** In relation to any conservation management strategy or management plan, means to consider all objectives and policies of those provisions under review and to approve a new strategy or plan, having regard to increased knowledge or changed circumstances; and, for the purposes of this definition, an 'objective' is a statement of intent from which a policy is derived. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**risk:** The chance of something happening that will have an impact upon objectives. It is measured in terms of consequences and likelihood.

**risk analysis:** A systematic use of available information to determine how

often specified events may occur and the magnitude of their likely consequences.

**risk assessment:** The process used to determine risk management priorities by evaluating and comparing the level of risk against pre-determined standards, target risk levels or other criteria.

**risk management:** The systematic application of management policies, procedures and practices to the tasks of identifying, analysing, assessing, treating and monitoring risk.

**riverine:** Relating to or resembling a river.

**road:** Means: (a) a road that is formed and maintained for vehicle use by the public; (b) a route that is marked by the Department for vehicle use by the public or identified in a conservation management strategy or conservation management plan for use by vehicles generally or for a particular type of vehicle (for example a bicycle) or as a vehicle parking area. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**rohe:** Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**rongōa:** Plants traditionally used for medicinal purposes.

**ropu:** Organisation, group, team.

**Regional Pest Management Strategy (RPMS):** The principal mechanism under the Biosecurity Act 1993, at a regional level, for the effective management or eradication of pests and unwanted organisms that become established in New Zealand.

**Rūnanga:** Committee of senior decision-makers of an iwi or hapū (see Papatipu Rūnanga).

**salmonids:** Means: (a) Brown trout (*Salmo trutta*): (b) Rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*): (c) (American) Brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*): (d) Lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*): (e)

Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*): (f) Quinnet or Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*): (g) Sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*): The above sports fish includes any hybrid and the young, fry, ova, and spawn, and any part of any such fish; but does not include salmon preserved in cans and imported into New Zealand. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**short stop opportunities:** These opportunities are easily accessed by vehicle and involve visits of a short duration, usually associated with lunch/cup of tea break/toilet stop/stretch of the legs or a visit to a natural attraction.

**should:** Policies that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions 'should' be undertaken. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**site:** A defined area within a wider place. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**sp.:** Single species.

**spp.:** Multiple species.

**specially protected area:** Any part of a national park set apart as a specially protected area under section 12 of the National Parks Act 1980 or other parts of public conservation lands set apart as a specially protected area under Part 4 of the Conservation Act 1987.

**species:** A group of organisms which has evolved distinct common inheritable features and occupies a particular geographical range, and which is capable of interbreeding freely but not with members of other species. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**species recovery group:** A group of persons appointed for the purpose of making recommendations to the Department of Conservation in relation to a threatened or endangered species

including persons with expertise relating to that threatened species from within the Department of Conservation and elsewhere, as well as persons who may be otherwise affected by such recommendations. (*section 287, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1996*)

**species recovery plan:** A written statement by the Department of Conservation of its intentions for the conservation of threatened species or endangered species over a defined period, that is intended to provide guidance to the Department of Conservation on the allocation of resources and promote discussion with the public, and includes any plan issued by the Minister of Conservation pursuant to section 41(1)(e) of the Wildlife Act 1953. (*section 287, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1996*)

A plan of action intended to halt the decline of a threatened species and increase its population.

**speleothem:** A secondary mineral deposited in a cave by the action of water. Also known as cave formation.

**sports fish:** Every species of freshwater fish that the Governor-General may declare to be sports fish for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987; examples are trout and salmon.

**sports fish and game management plan:** Plan approved by the Minister of Conservation under section 17M of the Conservation Act 1987.

**sports fishing guide:** A person whose services are actively promoted or advertised for hire or reward with the express purpose of organising and assisting persons to fish for sports fish. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**statutory:** Related to legislation or prescribed in law or regulation.

**statutory adviser:** Means Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in its role as an adviser to the Minister of Conservation appointed

under, and on the terms set out in, the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

**statutory acknowledgment:** Means an acknowledgement made by the Crown in respect of a statutory area and, except as expressly provided, on the terms set out in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

**statutory areas:** Means the areas, rivers, lakes, and wetlands described in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the general locations of which are indicated on the SO plans referred to in the Act, and ‘statutory area’ means any one of them.

**stewardship area:** A conservation area that is not a marginal strip, watercourse, conservation park, ecological area, sanctuary area or wilderness area, or land in which an interest is held under the Conservation Act 1987 for one or more of these purposes. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**stronghold:** An area where a significant proportion of the total natural population of a species is found.

**sustainability (ecological):** The use of the components of an ecosystem in ways that allow for the perpetuation of the character and natural processes of that ecosystem.

**sustainable management:** Managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; (b) safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems, and (c) avoiding, remedying, or initiating any adverse effects of activities on the environment. This definition is specific to the Resource Management Act 1991.

**swamp:** Wetlands that are periodically or permanently flooded from through-flowing streams, containing varying amounts of organic matter, mixed with silt, minerals and other materials carried in by the floodwaters. Swamp soils are richer and less acidic than bog soils, and decomposition occurs more rapidly in them. There is generally a wide seasonal fluctuation in water levels.

**sward:** Short turf usually maintained by grazing.

**tahr/thar:** For the purposes of this CMS, the terms ‘tahr’ or ‘thar’ are used to describe ‘Himalayan tahr/thar’ - a large Asian ungulate, related to the wild goat, which is classified as a wild animal under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. The term ‘thar’ is used when quoting legislation or the Himalayan Thar Control Plan, but in all other instances the term ‘tahr’ is used.

**taiāpure:** A taiāpure is an area, whether estuarine or coastal waters, that has customarily been of special significance to iwi or hapū as a food source or for spiritual or cultural reasons. Provisions for the establishment of taiāpure are contained within Part IX of the Fisheries Act 1996. This Act provides for a management committee to be established to give advice and recommendations to the Minister of Fisheries, and for regulations to provide integrated management of the fisheries in that area. The effect of the taiāpure on the fisheries in the area, and on the people using those fisheries, will depend on the controls that are established within the regulations.

**taking:** In relation to any plant, includes the breaking, cutting, destroying, digging up, gathering, plucking, pulling up, and removing, of the plant. In relation to any fish, means fishing. (*section 2, Conservation Act 1987*)

**takiwā:** Place or territory used by or associated with an iwi, hapū or whanau. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**tāngata tiaki system:** A system for Ngāi Tahu to manage natural resources and activities according to tikanga and under the various legislative requirements. Akin to the system established by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Ministry of Fisheries for the management of those customary fisheries that come under the Fisheries Act 1996.

**tangata whenua:** Iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**taonga:** Valued resources or prized possessions held by Māori, both material and non-material. It is a broad concept that includes tangible and intangible aspects of natural and historic resources of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu and intellectual property. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**taonga raranga:** Plants which produce material highly prized for use in weaving. (*section 2, Resource Management Act 1991*)

**taonga species:** The species of birds, plants, and animals described in Schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1996 found within the Ngāi Tahu claim area (section 287, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1996). Taonga species found within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* are listed in Appendix 4 of this CMS.

**tapu:** Sacredness, spiritual power or protective force.

**tauranga waka:** Tauranga waka (canoe/vessel landing sites) are, with regard to the marine environment, traditional landing places along the coastline. These places were generally chosen and valued for their sheltered approach to the shore, appropriate gradient for beaching, proximity to settlements and relationship to fishing resources.

**temporary shelter:** A temporary shelter is a small structure which is erected for a short time period (e.g. the whitebaiting season) and used to shelter from the weather during the daytime while undertaking an activity in or adjacent to a public conservation land.

**Te Papa Atawhai o Te Tai Poutini:** Department of Conservation, West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy.

**te reo:** The Māori language.

**Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu:** The Ngāi Tahu tribal council. The 18 Papatipu Rūnanga each have a member elected on to the tribal council. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is recognised in legislation as a corporate body with the authority to act on behalf of the iwi.

**Te Tai o Poutini:** The West Coast of the South Island.

**te taiao:** The natural environment.

**Te Wai Pounamu:** The South Island.

**territorial:** Relating to an area or territory.

**territorial authority:** Local government structure, either a city council or district council (including the four unitary authorities). There are 74 territorial authorities in New Zealand (15 city and 59 district councils), responsible for the provision of local services and land use planning under the Resource Management Act 1991.

**territorial sea:** Those areas of sea from low-water mark along New Zealand's coast out to a distance of 12 nautical miles.

**The Crown:** Her Majesty the Queen acting through ministers and departments of state. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**threat:** An external factor that presents an existing, or potential, danger to the achievement of the goals, desired outcomes or objectives for public conservation lands.

**threatened species:** A collective term referring to any species that is rare, vulnerable or endangered.

**tikanga:** Māori custom, obligations and conditions. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**tohunga:** Priests.

**toka:** Rocks.

**Tōpuni:** An area of land which is administered under the National Parks Act 1980, the Conservation Act 1987, or the Reserves Act 1977, has Ngāi Tahu values, and is declared as Tōpuni under and on the terms set out in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. (*section 237, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*) The concept of tōpuni derives from the traditional Ngāi Tahu tikanga (custom) of persons of rangatira (chiefly) status extending their mana and protection over a person or area by placing their cloak over them or it. In its new application a Tōpuni confirms and places an overlay of Ngāi Tahu values on specific pieces of land managed by the department. A Tōpuni does not over-ride or alter the existing land status (e.g. national park), but ensures that Ngāi Tahu values are also recognised, acknowledged and provided for.

**track:** A formed but unsealed way for foot traffic. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**traditional site:** Place or site that is important by reason of its historical significance or spiritual or emotional association with Māori.

**Treaty of Waitangi:** The founding document of New Zealand as a nation, given legal effect in its incorporation into various statutes, particularly for environmental and resource management. By the Treaty, Māori ceded to the Crown the right to govern, and in return the Crown confirmed and guaranteed the rangatiratanga of tangata whenua. (*Parliamentary*

*Commissioner for the Environment 2005*)

**tūāhu:** Alters.

**tūpuna/tipuna:** Ancestors.

**turangawaewae:** Home, ancestral area or marae, literally 'a place to stand'.

**turfing algae:** A dense growth of small seaweed species with a canopy height of 10 cm or less.

**ultramafic rock:** Rock that is rich in magnesium and iron.

**UNESCO:** United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

**unitary authority:** A territorial authority that exercises the functions, duties and powers of both a regional council and a city or district council. There are four unitary authorities in New Zealand - Nelson City Council, and Tasman, Marlborough and Gisborne District Councils.

**unwanted aquatic life:** Any species (including subspecies, hybrids, and variations of that species listed in the Third Schedule to the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983) of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed that is determined by a chief technical officer under the Biosecurity Act 1993 to be an unwanted organism. (*Fisheries Act 1996*)

**unwanted organism:** Means any organism that a chief technical officer believes is capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm to any natural and physical resources or human health; and (a) includes: (i) any new organism, if the Environmental Risk Management Authority has declined approval to import that organism; and (ii) any organism specified in Schedule 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; but (b) does not include any organism approved for importation under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act



1996, unless: (i) the organism is an organism which has escaped from a containment facility; or (ii) a chief technical officer, after consulting the Environmental Risk Management Authority and taking into account any comments made by the Environmental Risk Management Authority concerning the organism, believes that the organism is capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm to any natural and physical resources or human health. (*section 2, Biosecurity Act 1993*)

**upoko:** Head, leader.

**urupā:** Burial ground.

**utilities:** Includes but not limited to: structures and infrastructure for telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas; roads and airstrips; hydrological and weather stations. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**vascular plants:** Plants (e.g. trees) with a vascular system for conveying sap as their primary means of transporting nutrients.

**vehicle:** Means any device that is powered by any propulsion system and moves on rollers, skids, tracks, wheels, or other means; and includes any device referred to previously from which the propulsion system has been removed; or the rollers, skids, tracks, wheels, or other means of movement have been removed; and does not include: (a) a pushchair or pram; (b) a child's toy; (c) a personal mobility device used by a disabled person. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**vertebrate:** Animals characterized by a segmented spinal column and a distinct, well-differentiated head (e.g. fish, amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals).

**viability:** The ability of a species or a community to persist over time. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**vulnerable:** A species believed likely to move into the endangered category in the near future if the casual factors continue.

**wāhi ingoa:** Place names of historical and traditional significance.

**wāhi taonga:** Places and resources of historical and traditional significance. Wāhi taonga are more often than not linked to significant mahinga kai values and/or wāhi ingoa. Examples of wāhi taonga on the West Coast *Tai Poutini* include the Arahura River, Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere*, Lake Mahināpua and Makaawhio (Jacobs) River. Wāhi taonga also include landforms and other features, such as glaciers, karst landscapes, waterways, caves, and rocks or trees used for trail marking and ceremonies.

**wāhi tapu:** Place sacred to Māori in traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual or mythological sense. (*section 2, Historic Places Act 1993*)

Wāhi tapu include sites that are, or have been, made tapu in nature to protect their intrinsic values and/or because of their association with the atua, the tipuna, or important historic and cultural events and activities. Wāhi tapu may be or have one or more of the following attributes:

urupā or ana;

sites associated with birth or death;

sites associated with rituals, ceremonies or pilgrimage;

places imbued with the mana of chiefs, tūpuna, iwi or hapū;

battle sites or other places where blood has been spilled;

pa or kainga sites (former and current);

places associated with traditional or religious events or movements;

other places of cultural importance to tangata whenua.

**wai:** Water.

**waiata:** Songs, lyrics.

**waihapua:** These waters refer to coastal estuaries and lagoons where salt and fresh water mixes. The water quality of these swampy areas was formerly good enough to sustain food, so they were important mahinga kai for Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu. Ōkārīto Lagoon is an example of a waihapua.

**waiora:** This water is the purest form of water and has the potential to give life, sustain well-being and to counteract evil. Waiora is used in sacred rituals to purify and sanctify. Tohunga used these waters for healing.

**waipuna:** Waipuna (springs) play an integral part in the natural environment as well as the cultural practices of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu. These waterbodies had various uses including mahinga kai sites, tūāhu and waiwhakaheketūpāpaku.

**wairua:** Life principle, spirit. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**waitohi:** These waters were used by tohunga to whakanoa during initiation and baptismal ceremonies. The function was to remove the tapu from people, that is, to whakanoa. For this reason, restrictions were imposed on these waters in order to ensure their continued purity.

**waiwhakaheketūpāpaku:** Water burial sites.

**waka:** Canoe, vehicle.

**waka hunua:** Double-hulled canoe.

**Walkway:** An area of land that has been declared to be a walkway or an area of land over which a walkway has been

established under the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990.

**wananga:** Place of education and research, university (such as Ōkārīto).

**wastewater:** Water containing waste including greywater, blackwater or water contaminated by waste contact, including process-generated and contaminated rainfall runoff.

**water craft:** A ship, boat, hovercraft, jet ski, raft, kayak, canoe or vessel of any other description used, or designed to be used, in navigation.

**water craft, personal (including, but not limited to, jet skis):** Power-driven vessel that has a fully enclosed hull, does not retain water on board if it capsizes, and is designed to be operated by a person standing, sitting or kneeling on the vessel, but not seated within the vessel; and may include space for one or more passengers. (*General Policy for National Parks 2005*)

**water craft, powered:** A ship, boat, hovercraft, jet ski or vessel of any other description that is powered by a propulsion system and used, or designed to be used, in navigation.

**Water Conservation Order:** Made to recognise and sustain those characteristics of a water body which afford outstanding amenity or intrinsic values. They are made by the Minister for the Environment on the recommendation of a special tribunal and/or the Environment Court. (*Resource Management Act 1991*)

**West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Board:** One of the regional conservation boards whose functions include overseeing the preparation of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Management Strategy (CMS), recommending approval of conservation management plans (CMP), advising the NZCA or Director-General of the Department on regional conservation

matters, advising on new walkways in the region, and liaising with the West Coast Fish and Game Council.

**wetlands:** Permanent or intermittently wet areas, shallow water or land-water margins. Wetlands may be fresh, brackish or saline, and are characterised in their natural state by plants or animals that are adapted to living in wet conditions. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers, and lake margins. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**whaikorero:** Oratory, speeches.

**whakanoa:** To remove the tapu from people.

**whakapapa:** Recounting of genealogical lineage; genealogy. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**whakatauki:** Proverb.

**whānau:** Family groups. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Whānui:** See 'Ngāi Tahu Whānui' above.

**whitebait:** Whitebait catch consists primarily of the juveniles of three native fish species: inanga (*Galaxias maculatus*), koaro (*G. brevipinnis*) and banded kokopu (*G. fasciatus*); inanga is by far the most commonly caught species. Giant kokopu (*G. argenteus*), short-jawed kokopu (*G. postvectis*) and smelt (*Retropinna retropinna*) are also occasionally present along with the young of many other fish such as eels *tuna*, bullies and trout.

**whitebait season:** At the time of writing, the whitebait season for the West Coast of the South Island was 1 September to 14 November inclusive.

**wild animal:** Has the meaning set out in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and includes: possums, deer, wallabies, thar, wild goats, wild pigs, and chamois. (*section 2, Wild Animal Control Act 1977*) Except for deer kept in captivity for farming, does not include animals kept in captivity or rats, mice, rabbits, stoats, ferrets or weasels. The wild animals present in the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy at the time of writing were: red deer, fallow deer, chamois, thar, possums, goats and pigs.

**wilderness area:** Any conservation area set aside as a Wilderness Area under section 18 of the Conservation Act 1987, or any part of a national park set apart as a wilderness area under section 14 of the National Parks Act 1980.

**wildlife:** Any animal (as defined as in the Wildlife Act 1953) that is living in a wild state; and includes any such animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under the Wildlife Act 1953 or otherwise; but does not include wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. (*section 2, Wildlife Act 1953*)

**will:** Policies where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions 'will' be undertaken. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**World Heritage Site:** A site designated under the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) World Heritage Convention as being of outstanding universal value as a site of cultural or natural heritage.



# BIBLIOGRAPHY

## ***Publications***

Anderson, A. (1982). West Coast, South Island. In: Prickett, N. (Ed.), *The first thousand years: regional perspectives in New Zealand archaeology. New Zealand Archaeological Association Monograph* 13. The Dunmore Press, Palmerston North.

Ausseil, A.; Gerbeaux, P.; Chadderton, L. W.; Stephens, T.; Brown, D.; and Leathwick, J. (2008). *Wetland ecosystems of national importance for biodiversity: Criteria, methods and candidate list of nationally important inland wetlands*. Landcare Research Contract Report LC0708/158, 162p.

Biosecurity New Zealand (2008). Unwanted Organisms Register. Available online at <http://www.biosecurity.govt.nz/pests/registers/uor>

Booth, K.L.; Jones, N.C. and Devlin P.J. (1997). *The effects of aircraft overflights on recreationists in natural settings*. Report prepared by Department of Human and Leisure Sciences, Lincoln University, for Science and Research Division, Department of Conservation.

Campbell H. and Hutchings G. (2007). *In search of ancient New Zealand*. New Zealand Institute for Geological and Nuclear Sciences.

Chadderton, W.L.; Brown, D.J.; Stephens, R.T. (2004). *Identifying freshwater ecosystems of national importance for biodiversity: criteria, methods and candidate list of nationally important rivers*. Discussion document. Department of Conservation, Wellington, 112p.

Cromarty, P.; Scott, D.A. Eds (1996). *A directory of wetlands in New Zealand*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

Department of Conservation (1995): *Atawahi Ruamano - Historic Heritage Strategy*.

Department of Conservation (1996): *Visitor Strategy*.

Department of Conservation (1998): *Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds*.

Department of Conservation (1999): *Karst Management Guidelines - Policies and Actions*.

Department of Conservation (2005): *Conservation General Policy*.

Department of Conservation (2005): *West Coast Recreation Opportunities Review*.

Department of Conservation (2005): *Regional Economic Impacts of West Coast Conservation Land*.

Fleet, H. (1986). *The concise natural history of New Zealand*. Heinemann Publishers, Auckland.

Grange, K.R. (1990). *Macrobenthic communities of the New Zealand continental shelf*. Report prepared for Department of Conservation. New Zealand Oceanographic Institute, Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, Wellington.

- Hitchmough, R.; Bull L. and Cromarty P. (Comp.) (2007). *New Zealand threat classification system lists - 2005*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- ICOMOS. (1993). *New Zealand charter for conservation of places of cultural heritage value*. Te Mana O Nga Pouwhenua O te to. The New Zealand National Committee of the International Council on Monuments and Sites, Auckland.
- Kelly, D., McKerchar, A., Hicks, M. (2005) Making Concrete: ecological implications of gravel extraction in New Zealand rivers. *Water and Atmosphere*, Vol. 13(1) 2005-11-24.
- Kenny, J.A.; Hayward, B.W. (Eds) (1993). Inventory of important geological sites and landforms in the West Coast region. *Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication 76*. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.
- Leathwick, J.R.; Overton, J.M.; McLeod, M. (2003). An environmental domain classification of New Zealand and its use as a tool for biodiversity management. *Conservation Biology* 17, pp 1612-1623.
- McDowall, R.M. (2003). Impacts of Introduced Salmonids on Native Galaxiids in New Zealand Upland Streams: A New Look at an Old Problem. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society*: Vol. 132, No. 2 pp. 229-238.
- McEwen, W.M. (1987). *Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand*. *New Zealand Biological Resources Centre Publication 5* (in 4 parts). Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Madgwick, P. (1992). *Aotea: a history of the South Westland Māori*. Greymouth Evening Star, Greymouth.
- Ministry for the Environment (1995). *Environment 2010 Strategy*.
- Ministry for the Environment (2000). *New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy*. Available online at: <http://www.biodiversity.govt.nz/picture/doing/nzbs/contents.html>
- Ministry for the Environment (1997). *The State of New Zealand's Environment 1997*.
- Neale D.M.; Pindur N.B.; Reedy M.C.; Watson B.; Molloy L.F. (2007). *The West Coast marine and coastal environment: an initial report for the West Coast Marine Protection Forum*. West Coast Marine Protection Forum, Hokitika; 236p.
- New Zealand Conservation Authority, 2005: *General Policy for National Parks*.
- NIWA (2007). New Zealand national climate summary – the year 2006. National Climate Centre. National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research.
- Overmars, F.B.; Kilvington, M.J.; Gibson, R.S.; Newell, C.L.; Rhodes, T.J. (1998). *Ngakawau Ecological District. Survey report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme*. New Zealand Protected Natural Areas Programme Survey Report No. 11, Department of Conservation, Hokitika. 178 p.
- Probert, P.K.; Swanson, K.M. (1985). Sediment texture of the continental shelf and upper slope off the west coast of South Island, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research* (19): 563-573.
- Tai Poutini Tuna/Eel Management Committee* (1999). *Eel management plan covering the West Coast of the South Island, New Zealand*. Report prepared for Te Waka a Māui me ona Toka Mahi Tuna.

- Walker, K. (2003). *Recovery plans for Powelliphanta land snails 2003-2013*. Threatened Species Recovery Plan 49, Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Wardle, P. (1991). *Vegetation of New Zealand*. Cambridge University Press.

### **Acts**

- Biosecurity Act 1993
- Civil Aviation Act 1990
- Coal Mines Act 1979
- Conservation Act 1987
- Crown Minerals Act 1991
- Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998
- Dog Control Act 1996
- Fencing Act 1978
- Fisheries Act 1996
- Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977
- Forests Act 1949
- Forests (West Coast Accord) Act 2000
- Historic Places Act 1993
- Local Government Act 2002
- Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978
- Marine Reserves Act 1971
- Military Manoeuvres Act 1915
- Mining Act 1971
- National Parks Act 1980
- New Zealand Walkways Act 1990
- Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998
- Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997
- Official Information Act 1982
- Public Finance Act 1989
- Protected Objects Act 1975
- Reserves Act 1977
- Resource Management Act 1991
- Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996
- Wild Animal Control Act 1977
- Wildlife Act 1953





# Appendix 1

Poutini Ngāi Tahu Association with the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* - written by Ngāi Tahu

*See also* Part 3, Chapter 3.1 Working in Partnership with Tangata Whenua

Appendix 1 provides an overview of the values held by Poutini Ngāi Tahu and the issues Poutini Ngāi Tahu have relating to the management of these values on public conservation lands in the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Each section begins with a description of values. Relevant issues are then described under an 'issues' subheading, where appropriate. The information in Appendix 1 has been prepared by a representative from Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio, with input from Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, on behalf of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio<sup>64</sup>.

The reason for the change of authorship for Appendix 1 is because the Department and the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservation Board believe it is appropriate for the tangata whenua, Poutini Ngāi Tahu, to write about their own values and issues. The Department's response to the issues raised in Appendix 1 is presented in the objectives and policies of Section 3.1.2 (see Part 3).

## 1.1 PAPTIPU RŪNANGA

Papatipu Rūnanga are the modern day administrative councils and representatives of the hapū and whānau who hold mana whenua over a particular area and its resources. Mana whenua encompasses the concept of kaitiakitanga (guardianship; see Section 1.6). Each Rūnanga has its own area, determined by natural boundaries such as mountain ranges and rivers. These areas are called takiwā or rohe and are defined in the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996.

Most of the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy lies within the rohe the iwi Ngāi Tahu, and specifically the rohe of the hapū Ngāti Waewae and Ngāti Māhaki ki Makaawhio (see Map 2). The Papatipu Rūnanga within the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy are Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae (the administrative body for Ngāti Waewae) and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio (the administrative body for Ngāti Māhaki ki Makaawhio). The exclusive rohe of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae is centered on Arahura and Hokitika and extends from Kahurangi Point to the north bank of the

---

<sup>64</sup> References used to prepare this section include:

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu: *Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Freshwater Policy*;

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu (2002). *Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan*;

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu (2002). *Te Waibora Joint Management Plan Consultative Draft*;

Madgwick, P. (1992). *Aotea: a history of the South Westland Māori*. Greymouth Evening Star, Greymouth;

David O'Connell: *Defining aquamarine areas from a Ngāi Tahu perspective*; and

Hana Crengle: *Hurunui Catchment, tangata whenua values perspective*.

Hokitika River and inland to the Main Divide, together with a shared interest with Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio in the area situated between the south bank of the Hokitika River and the north bank of the Poerua River. The exclusive rohe of Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio is centered at Makaawhio and extends from the south bank of the Poerua River to Piopiotahi (Milford Sound) and inland to the Main Divide, together with a shared interest with Te Rūnanga O Ngāti Waewae in the area situated between the north bank of the Poerua River and the south bank of the Hokitika River.

#### 1.2 Ngāi Tahu whakapapa – Genealogical origins and creation

See pages following the Foreword to this document.

### 1.3 POUTINI NGĀI TAHU SETTLEMENT OF THE WEST COAST *TE TAI O POUTINI*

From Kawatiri (Buller) to Piopiotahi (Milford Sound), the Ngāti Wairangi and Patea people enjoyed a rather comfortable and undisturbed existence, in no small part due to geographic barriers. Traditionally, their troubles began around 1700 when a chieftainess named Raureka crossed over to the East Coast via Noti Raureka (Browning Pass), at the head of the Arahura River, and unwittingly disclosed to a party of Ngāi Tahu both a sample of the treasured pounamu, with which they were unfamiliar, and the path through the mountains to the source at Arahura. Peaceful trading began with the West Coasters, who were distant relatives of Ngāi Tahu, but the peace was short-lived; Ngāti Wairangi began demanding fair payment for their pounamu but Ngāi Tahu decided that it would be simpler to destroy them and claim the pounamu for themselves. Ngāi Tahu (by this stage a marriage of Tahu and Mamoe) laid siege to the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* with a succession of sporadic battles which continued for a century and brought with them the 18th century chiefs Taetae, Wharekai, Tuhuru and Te Koeti Turanga – the foundation of today's Poutini Ngāi Tahu.

### 1.4 MĀTAURANGA NGĀI TAHU

Ngāi Tahu history and whakapapa are embedded in the landscape and resources of Te Waipounamu. Their ancient histories explain the landforms and the creation feats of the myriad of gods required to perform their fabulous tasks. Ngāi Tahu customs, values, resources, mahinga kai, flora and fauna, wāhi ingoa and the pūrākau, pakiwaitara, whakataukī, waiata and accompanying kōrero are the embodiment of the tribe's ongoing identity. Their traditions represent the values and beliefs of the land, of their tribe, and of the hapū who by whakapapa retain the customary rights and responsibilities associated with ngā taonga tuku iho.

For Ngāi Tahu, the range of natural resources, species and other taonga found within their takiwā is a tangible treasure that transcends the generations. The maintenance of the mauri (see Section 1.7) of these resources is as important as the ability of the iwi to continue to survive and to foster healthy offspring. Mauri may be described as the life force, present in all objects living and inanimate, a force that stems from the beginnings and a value that is distinguished by qualities of health, abundance, vitality, the pristine and unpolluted. It is something sacred to their whakapapa;

a spiritual link in the widest sense, to the past, the present and to the future, the template of influence that maintains their culture with particular values and beliefs. All of these things lie at the very roots of Ngāi Tahu's existence and meaning - being the responsibility to pass on to the following generations the values, resources and age-old customs that distinguish Ngāi Tahu from any other iwi and that identify their hapū and iwi as mana whenua of their takiwā within Te Waipounamu.

Whakapapa and the link between all living things are reflected in traditional attitudes towards the natural world and resource management. This explains the rights and responsibilities associated with Poutini Ngāi Tahu kaitiakitanga (see Section 1.6).

Ngāi Tahu were dependent on their immediate environment for survival, and on their knowledge of mahinga kai (see Section 1.8) and the ability to sustainably gather resources for their endurance in this area. This, coupled with a long history of settlement, occupation, travel and resource use, results in the diverse mātauranga (traditional knowledge) accumulated about the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and its natural resources.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.2 Recognition of kaitiakitanga  
Section 3.3.2.1 Knowledge and information needs  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

## 1.5 RANGATIRATANGA

Rangatiratanga incorporates the traditional authority to make, alter and enforce decisions pertaining to how a resource is to be used and managed, and by whom. This is carried out in accordance with kawa and tikanga. Rangatiratanga is about Poutini Ngāi Tahu continuing to have the mana or authority to exercise the relationship between themselves, their culture and traditions, and the natural world. Rangatiratanga is traditionally embodied within the concept of mana whenua/mana moana. Mana whenua is held by the hapū and whānau who hold traditional authority over an area.

The protection and use of mahinga kai (see Section 1.8) help to develop and maintain identity and enforce rangatiratanga over an area or resource. Rangatiratanga is also closely linked to kaitiakitanga (see Section 1.6). Rangatiratanga enables Poutini Ngāi Tahu to manāki (host/care for) manuhiri and matāwaka (visitors) to the area with the provision of local foods and safety, once rangatiratanga was acknowledged by them.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.2 Recognition of kaitiakitanga  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

## 1.6 KAITIAKI

Traditionally, kawa and tikanga were established to govern the use of natural and physical resources and to ensure that the mauri (see Section 1.7) was protected from human actions. These systems of traditional management or kaitiakitanga were the means by which Poutini Ngāi Tahu sought sustainable management.

Kaitiaki is derived from the verb tiaki (to guard, to protect, to keep, to watch for, to wait for). To be kaitiaki is an important responsibility. The kaitiaki system is based on

whakapapa lineage and is an inherited traditional responsibility that is strongly held. Poutini Ngāi Tahu preserve the mana of kaitiaki, to ensure that the mauri of their taonga is healthy and strong. Kaitiakitanga is the act of guardianship and entails an active exercise of power in a manner beneficial to the resource.

### **Issues relating to recognition of kaitiakitanga**

For Poutini Ngāi Tahu, kaitiakitanga is not a passive custodianship, nor is it simply the exercise of traditional property rights. Rather, it entails an active exercise of power in a manner beneficial to the resource. This involves the use of traditional environmental management systems and values, which include mauri, tapu and rāhui. The people who practice kaitiakitanga do so because they hold the mana (authority) and responsibility to do so. Poutini Ngāi Tahu seek to play an active tangata tiaki role in the day-to-day management of natural and physical resources located within public conservation lands.

The practical implementation and integration of Poutini Ngāi Tahu values in relation to kaitiakitanga in the management of the Conservancy's resources and taonga is essential for Poutini Ngāi Tahu. The recognition of Poutini Ngāi Tahu as kaitiaki and their ability to interact with the environment on their terms is inextricably linked to their identity as tangata whenua. The ability of Poutini Ngāi Tahu to function as kaitiaki has been seriously eroded over the past 150 years. Poutini Ngāi Tahu are keen to see the practical integration of traditional environmental management systems in the management of public conservation lands and indigenous species (e.g. the use of rāhui/temporary closure of an area).

*See also* Section 3.1.2.2 Recognition of kaitiakitanga  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

## **1.7 WAIRUA AND MAURI**

All things are considered to have the qualities of wairua (spiritual dimension) and mauri (life force), to be living and to have a genealogical relationship with one another. For Poutini Ngāi Tahu, mauri is the life force that flows from wairua – the spirit or source of existence and all life. Mauri is the life force in the physical world as perceived and interpreted by the tangata whenua. It is present in all objects living and inanimate. Mauri stems from the beginnings of time, and is distinguished by qualities of health, abundance, vitality, the pristine and unpolluted. It is something sacred to Ngāi Tahu's whakapapa, a spiritual link in the widest sense, to the past, the present and the future; it is the template of influence that maintains their culture with particular values and beliefs.

As a life principle, mauri implies health and spirit. In the environment, mauri can be used to describe the intrinsic values of all resources and of the total ecosystem. In the community, mauri is of paramount importance to the well-being of the people. Mauri can be harmed by the actions of humans but is unaffected by natural processes such as natural disasters.

Traditionally, rules were established to govern the use of natural and physical resources and ensure that the mauri was protected from human actions. These rules form part of kawa and tikanga (Māori protocol).

At times, rāhui were used to safeguard the well-being of people and for the purposes of conservation – to restrict use and ensure the sustainability of a resource. This

ensured that the needs of present generations were met while protecting the overall health and availability of the resource to meet the needs of future generations.

There are indicators within the environment, both physical and spiritual, that Ngāi Tahu use to reflect the status of mauri. Physical indicators of the health of mauri include (but are not limited to) the presence of healthy mahinga kai and healthy flora and fauna, the presence of resources fit for cultural use and the aesthetic qualities of resources such as the visibility of important landmarks. Spiritual indicators are those from the Atua (gods), which can take many forms and are recalled in the kōrero pūrākau (stories) of whānau and hapū.

### **Issues relating to the preservation of mauri**

The preservation of the mauri of all natural resources is paramount to Poutini Ngāi Tahu. For Poutini Ngāi Tahu, the overall purpose of managing resources is to maintain the mauri of natural and physical resources and to enhance mauri where it has been degraded by the actions of humans, so that natural and physical resources can be used sustainably by present and future generations.

*See also* Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

## **1.8 MAHINGA KAI AND CUSTOMARY USE**

Section 167 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 defines mahinga kai as “*the customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered*”.

Mahinga kai was, and is, central to the Ngāi Tahu way of life. Mahinga kai are taonga. The mahinga kai custom of producing or procuring food resources from a range of resources throughout the region on a seasonal basis is a fundamental basis of Ngāi Tahu’s traditional economy. Maintenance of the custom and knowledge associated with the natural resource is governed by lore. Transfer from one generation to the next of the cumulative knowledge is tied to practical use and management of the mahinga kai resource.

This customary gathering encompasses the social, economic and educational elements of food gathering, including such customs as rangatiratanga, kaitiaki and whakapapa, as well as the role of tangata tiaki to implement and pass down these customs and the associated sustainable management methods such as the use of animal and plant species as tohu (signs or environmental indicators). In this way, mahinga kai includes the way resources are gathered, the places they are gathered from and the actual resources themselves. Mahinga kai resources are not limited to kai (food), rongōa (medicine) and other such materials (e.g. feathers and fibers), but also include features such as cave, karst and mountain landforms, timber and hot springs.

Mahinga kai resources are taonga because they enabled and sustained life in the harsh southern environment and constituted a major food source of the area. They were gathered according to kawa and tikanga to ensure their sustainability. Thus customary use, traditionally and today, is carried out within a sustainable use framework.

Participation in mahinga kai practices is reliant on sufficient health and supply of mahinga kai areas and resources, as well as access to mahinga kai sites and resources. The continuation of traditional practices and the passing down of values to current and future generations (thus ensuring their survival), is essential for the continuance of a strong cultural identity.

For Ngāi Tahu Whānui today, the ability to access and utilise these places and resources and participate in mahinga kai activities are extremely important expressions of cultural identity. The use of mahinga kai resources also helps transfer knowledge and values while providing for personal needs and the needs of hapū and whānau.

### **Issues relating to mahinga kai and customary use**

Maintenance of the diversity, quality and quantity of resources, especially mahinga kai, is important to Poutini Ngāi Tahu. Given that Ngāi Tahu access mahinga kai from numerous waterways, waterbodies and land sites, it is paramount that the environment is managed in ways that will ensure access to, and use of, healthy mahinga kai. There is a continued need for the Department and Ngāi Tahu to work together to ensure mahinga kai are protected both within and outside of public conservation lands.

The ability to access and use mahinga kai sites and resources has a major impact on the ability of Poutini Ngāi Tahu to relate to each other and to provide for themselves culturally, economically and socially. Poutini Ngāi Tahu would like to sustain themselves more from mahinga kai resources. Examples of current customary use and access requirements include the gathering of pingao from coastal dunes for weaving and for tuku tuku panels, harakeke for weaving, timber for building marae or papa kāinga housing, and tuna (eel) and whitebait harvesting.

Processes in place for accessing cultural materials within the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* help to provide a clearer role for Papatipu Rūnanga input into decision-making in relation to cultural materials. The process will rely on the Department keeping a good inventory of resources available for customary use (e.g. dead birds, fallen trees) and being committed to consulting Papatipu Rūnanga on customary use applications.

Similarly, processes for the protection of the pounamu resource and access to pounamu within public conservation lands, as outlined in the *Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan* and Papatipu Rūnanga pounamu management plans, will require the Rūnanga and the Department to work together in good faith.

Ngāi Tahu are also concerned at their loss of knowledge about mahinga kai sites, resources and activities, which affects their ability to pass these practices on to future generations. This has a direct impact on their sense of cultural identity, which is inextricably linked with their relationship with the environment including through mahinga kai. Ngāi Tahu believe that loss of access to resources, due to loss of numbers of species, degraded ecosystems, and/or legislation limits the ability of Ngāi Tahu to re-learn the mātauranga (traditional knowledge) of mahinga kai practices.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai – environmental protection  
Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga taonga tuku iho – Customary use  
Chapter 3.3 Natural Heritage Conservation  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

## 1.9 NGĀ WAI - THE WATERS

When managing any natural resource it is important to understand the significance of water to Ngāi Tahu. Water is the essence of all life, akin to the blood of Papatūānuku (Mother Earth) who supports all people, flora and fauna. Without water, no living thing - plant, fish or animal - can survive.

Water is also central to the Poutini Ngāi Tahu resource management philosophy “ki uta ki tai - from the mountains to the sea.” As water flows from the mountains to the sea so too should conservation management. This requires a holistic view of the world and integration and co-operation between agencies, legislation and management frameworks.

The waterways, rivers and lakes were also vital to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu when making alpine crossings. Although some dried and preserved foods were carried, the bulk of their food requirements had to be gathered on the way. The inland lakes were a focal point for essential supplies.

**Waiora** This water is the purest form of water and has the potential to give life, sustain well-being and to counteract evil. Waiora is used in sacred rituals to purify and sanctify. Tohunga (priests) used these waters for healing.

**Waitohi** These waters are used by tohunga to whakanoa during initiation and baptismal ceremonies. The function is to remove the tapu from people, that is, to whakatapu, pureora or whakanoa. For this reason, restrictions are imposed on these waters in order to ensure their continued purity.

**Waihapua** These waters refer to coastal estuaries and lagoons where salt and fresh water mixes. The water quality of these swampy areas was formerly good enough to sustain food, so they are important to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu for mahinga kai and rituals. Ōkārīto Lagoon is a perfect example of a waihapua.

**Waipuna** Waipuna (both fresh and hot water springs) play an integral part in the natural environment as well as the cultural practices of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu. These waterbodies have various uses including mahinga kai (food gathering) sites, tūāhu (altars), and waiwhakaheketūpāpaku (water burial sites).

### **Issues relating to ngā wai**

Water is also central to all Māori life and is a taonga of huge importance. It plays a unique role in the traditional economy and culture of Ngāi Tahu, and has an inherent value that needs to be recognised. Taking, using and disposing of water can have drastic effects on the environment and the values that Ngāi Tahu accord to a waterbody.

Ngāi Tahu consider that their relationship with the waters of their rohe has been eroded over the last 150 years. Evidence produced by Ngāi Tahu to the Waitangi Tribunal documented numerous examples of waterways within the Ngāi Tahu rohe that are now severely polluted by discharges and/or where reworking of the hydrological regime of waterways has resulted in unnatural patterns of erosion, sedimentation, drying-up of flows and damage to rich mahinga kai habitats on the riparian margins.

Poutini Ngāi Tahu's priority is to maintain the properties of water that are necessary to ensure the sustainability of customary uses. Customary uses range from the use of water for human sustenance (e.g. drinking water), to ceremonial purposes, to the

maintenance of the quality and quantity of water required to sustain mahinga kai populations and habitats.

Poutini Ngāi Tahu are also concerned about: the sustenance of the mauri and life-supporting capacity of waterways; protecting the continuity of flow from the mountains to the sea; protection of the opportunities for Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu to access and use freshwater resources in the future; the capacity for the Department and Papatipu Rūnanga to advocate under Resource Management Act processes for the protection of freshwater ecosystems and habitats; and protection of waterways, including wetlands of significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai - environmental protection  
Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga taonga tuku iho - Customary use  
Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020

## 1.10 FRESHWATER FAUNA

Native freshwater species have played a prominent role in sustaining generations of Poutini Ngāi Tahu and their predecessors. Favoured species include kanakana (lamprey), inanga and kōkopu (whitebait/galaxiids), waikōura (freshwater crayfish), wai kākahi (freshwater mussels) and tuna (eel). Of all the native fish species, tuna and inanga were, and continue to be, of the utmost importance to tangata whenua. The placement of many West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* seasonal campsites was dictated by the close proximity of tuna and inanga. These species are viewed by tangata whenua as a taonga and have extremely high mahinga kai value, therefore their sustainability is paramount. Both tuna and inanga have also played an important role in contributing to the livelihoods of Poutini Ngāi Tahu who, in early years, traded with other hapū and iwi (kai hau kai) and, in later and current years, participated as commercial fishers.

### **Issues relating to management of freshwater fauna**

Poutini Ngāi Tahu concerns relate to: ensuring adequate protection of native freshwater species and their habitats; ensuring Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu continue to retain access to freshwater species located within public conservation lands; ensuring Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu are able to undertake fishing activities within public conservation lands under the customary fishing regulations; the ongoing management and sustainability of the commercial eel and whitebait fisheries; and ensuring adequate access to waterways so that customary take of native freshwater fish can be spread over a number of waterways rather than placing a few waterways under pressure.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai - environmental protection  
Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga taonga tuku iho - Customary use  
Section 3.3.3.3 Management of freshwater fisheries  
Section 4.1.1 The West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy in 2020



## 1.11 NGĀ MEA HIRA O TE ROHE O TAKAROA - THE VALUES OF THE DOMAIN OF TAKAROA

The whole of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* coastal area offered a bounty of mahinga kai, including: a range of kaimoana (seafood); sea fish; tuna (eels) and other freshwater fish in lagoons and rivers; marine mammals (e.g. whales and seals); forest birds, waterfowl and seabird eggs; and a variety of plant resources, including harakeke (flax), fern and ti kouka (cabbage tree).

The coast was also a major highway and trade route, particularly in areas where travel by land was difficult. Travel by sea between settlements and hapū was common; hence tauranga waka (vessel landing sites) occur up and down the coast in their hundreds. A variety of different forms of waka were used, including the southern waka hunua (double-hulled canoe) and, post-European contact, whaleboats. Wherever a tauranga waka is located there is also likely to be a nohoanga (settlement), fishing ground, kaimoana resource and rimurapa (bull kelp), with the sea trail linked to a land trail or mahinga kai resource. The tūpuna had a vast knowledge of the coastal environment and weather patterns, passed from generation to generation. This knowledge continues to be held by whānau and hapū and is regarded as a taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the coast.

**Mataitai** A mataitai identifies an area that is a place of importance for customary food gathering and is managed by the tangata whenua for those purposes. Under modern fisheries legislation, a mataitai can be established over any area of New Zealand fisheries waters. Provisions for mataitai in the South Island are declared under the Fisheries (South Island Customary Fishing) Regulations 1998. Tangata tiaki are appointed by the tangata whenua to manage the reserve through the making of bylaws. A mataitai prohibits commercial fishing within its boundaries, unless otherwise authorised by the tāngata tiaki. As at 2010 no formal mataitai had been established on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

**Taiāpure** A taiāpure is an area, whether estuarine or coastal waters, that has customarily been of special significance to Ngāi Tahu or their hapū as a source of food or for spiritual or cultural reasons. In modern fisheries legislation, provisions for the establishment of taiāpure are contained within Part IX of the Fisheries Act 1996. This Act provides for a management committee to be established to give advice and recommendations to the Minister of Fisheries, and for regulations to provide integrated management of the fisheries in that area. The effect of the taiāpure on the fisheries in the area, and on the people using those fisheries, will depend on the controls that are established within the regulations. As at 2010 no formal taiāpure had been established on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

**Tauranga waka** Tauranga waka (vessel landing sites) are, with regard to the marine environment, traditional landing places along the coastline. These places were generally chosen and valued for their sheltered approach to the shore, appropriate gradient for beaching, proximity to settlements and relationship to fishing resources.

**Issues relating to ngā mea hira o te rohe o Takaroa** Poutini Ngāi Tahu concerns relate to: protection of, and access to, mahinga mataitai and their surrounding habitats (i.e. kaimoana beds); the establishment of marine reserves, which may affect customary fishing rights if located in important areas of mahinga kai; discharges into the sea, particularly human effluent; and protection of culturally significant features,

including wāhi tapu/wāhi taonga within the coastal marine area (e.g. tauranga waka, coastal middens).

**See also** Section 3.1.2.3 Mahinga kai – environmental protection  
Section 3.1.2.4 Ritenga taonga tuku iho – Customary use  
Section 3.3.3.4 Management of marine protected species  
Section 4.2.8 Desired outcome for the Marine Place

## 1.12 POUNAMU

Pounamu is a taonga of the utmost importance to Ngāi Tahu culture and tradition – a relationship that is recognised throughout iwi Māori. The major sources of pounamu are on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* and the mineral right is vested with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

All types of pounamu are of immense value to Ngāi Tahu. Their whānau and hapū recognised the different qualities of the various types and used them accordingly. For generations, pounamu has been discovered, identified, collected, worked, traded and protected, and in turn provided for the livelihood, mana and mauri of those whānau and hapū associated with the taonga. It was pounamu that in essence fed these whānau and hapū when it was traded for kai and resources from other regions. The traditions and customs involved in the collection, working and trading of pounamu remain important, particularly for those who uphold the ahi kā of where pounamu is found.

Pounamu has played a major role in the development of Poutini Ngāi Tahu identity and the growth of technical and material advancement of Ngāi Tahu, particularly in the period of New Zealand history before new materials were introduced and accorded a new importance alongside pounamu.

Today, the traditional values and customs associated with pounamu remain significant, along with the added awareness of needing to manage this resource for both present and future generations. This management balances the right of continual use to sustain and grow the well-being of those whānau and hapū associated with pounamu, with the responsibility of safeguarding this right for the future.

Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio are the kaitiaki of pounamu, within their respective rohe. The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Pounamu Resource Management Plan formally promulgates the tribal values, issues and management tools in relation to pounamu. As at 2010, both Papatipu Rūnanga were in the process of developing their own pounamu plans for their distinctive rohe.

**See also** Section 3.1.4 Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997  
Section 3.7.5 Crown minerals and pounamu

## 1.13 WĀHI TAPU/WĀHI TAONGA

These concepts link the value of taonga to particular sites and areas of special significance to Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu. Such sites include:

sites that are or have been made tapu in nature to protect their intrinsic values and/or because of their association with the atua, the tipuna, or important historic and cultural events and activities; and

other sites valued for their use as places from which resources are sourced, that are ecologically significant (e.g. as breeding or migratory habitats), or that are where significant species of taonga resources are located.

There are many known and undisclosed wāhi tapu/wāhi taonga located throughout public conservation lands on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*. Some of the known sites are recorded with the New Zealand Archeological Association and the Historic Places Trust. However, many sites are not recorded and their information is held by Poutini Ngāi Tahu hapū, whānau and individuals. Appropriate protection of these sites and the information relating to them is paramount for Poutini Ngāi Tahu. It is equally important that provisions are made for the accidental discovery of undisclosed sites.

Wāhi taonga are more often than not linked to significant mahinga kai values and/or wāhi ingoa. Examples of wāhi taonga include: Arahura River, Franz Josef Glacier *Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere*, Lake Mahināpua and Makaawhio (Jacobs) River. Some of these sites, but certainly not all, are recognised in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 as cultural redress sites (e.g. Statutory Acknowledgement and Deed of Recognition areas, Nohoanga Entitlements, Tōpuni etc; see Section 3.1.3) or through official recognition of dual English and Māori place names. The Ngāi Tahu values associated with those cultural redress sites located on public conservation lands are presented in the relevant sections of Chapter 4.2. Wāhi taonga also include landforms and other features, such as glaciers, karst landscapes, waterways, caves, and rocks or trees used for trail marking and ceremonies.

### **Issues relating to the protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga**

A key issue for Poutini Ngāi Tahu is the protection of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other culturally significant sites from human and natural disturbance or destruction, both within and outside of public conservation lands.

Although some sites are registered by the New Zealand Archaeological Association and the Historic Places Trust, in some cases the records are old and inaccurate. In addition, many sites are not recorded; knowledge of these sites is held by Ngāi Tahu hapū, whānau or individuals. This non-disclosure of sites is a practice used by Ngāi Tahu to preserve the sanctity of a place. Respecting the principle of confidentiality, however, brings management difficulties relating to ensuring management practices do not disturb historic values.

In some cases sites are at risk of destruction or disturbance from human or natural activities occurring within public conservation lands. For example, track work or any management work involving ground disturbance could affect a site. Natural occurrences, such as coastal erosion, also threaten many sites. Wāhi tapu sites may also be adversely affected in less tangible ways, through inappropriate activities occurring on the site. Outside of public conservation lands, sites are at greater risk from human developments (such as building, mining and forestry).

Sites under threat (e.g. from coastal erosion) need to be assessed by tangata whenua in order to determine whether further information needs to be recovered from the site. In some cases, koiwi tangata may need to be re-interred.

In the past, the Department's management has not always adequately recognised wāhi tapu or their management requirements. Human disturbance of sites should be avoided, and proper processes followed in the event of disturbance. Both Ngāi Tahu and the Department have protocols for the 'accidental discovery' of undisclosed sites that need to be adhered to.

The Department, the New Zealand Archaeological Association and the Historic Places Trust need to be aware of the sensitivity of cultural information about wāhi tapu/wāhi taonga sites, including their location. Further protocols need to be developed between the Papatipu Rūnanga and these three organisations to protect this information from misuse.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.5 Protection of wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

#### 1.14 WĀHI INGOA

Historically, Poutini Ngāi Tahu moved on a seasonal basis along the breadth of the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* following the seasonal characteristics of their food supplies: the birds, fish and plants. Places within the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* were given specific names that reflected the preferred locations for abundant or traditional foods, described a natural feature or an activity, or recalled a person who claimed the area and/or had an historic association with an area. An example of this is “Waikūkupa - the place where there is plenty of mussels and pigeons”. Places and their names formed vast oral maps that are an integral part of the culture of Ngāi Tahu. Many names on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini* reflect the association of Ngāi Tahu, Ngāti Mamoe and Waitaha with the area.

Landscapes include place names that link people and their language and concepts to the land. Place names and their continued use help to form and maintain the mātauranga (traditional knowledge) of the area and its resources. If these names are lost, the history associated with the landscapes and the resources is also lost.

**See also** Section 3.1.3.5 Place name changes

#### 1.15 CULTURAL INTERPRETATION

For Poutini Ngāi Tahu, it is extremely important that their unique cultural association with the environment, as kaitiaki, receives adequate recognition and provision within Departmental planning and decision-making processes. This includes appropriate interpretation of this unique relationship by both the Department (e.g. via interpretation panels) and also by those concessionaires who wish to incorporate cultural interpretation into their business.

Also of concern is the loss of Poutini Ngāi Tahu place names, histories and values through either a lack of use or their incorrect use. Taonga such as pounamu, place names, histories and values contribute significantly to the identity of Poutini Ngāi Tahu and their inappropriate use and/or interpretation is considered by Poutini Ngāi Tahu to be offensive.

In the future, Poutini Ngāi Tahu want to be the main providers of their cultural information to the public, through providing information to the Department and through their own cultural tourism ventures.

**See also** Section 3.1.2.7 Poutini Ngāi Tahu cultural interpretation  
Section 4.1.1.1 Partnership with tangata whenua in 2020

# Appendix 2

## PROTOCOLS ON THE DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION'S INTERACTION WITH NGĀI TAHU ON SPECIFIED ISSUES

### CLAUSE 12.12 DEED OF SETTLEMENT, 1997

*See also* Sections 281-286, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

### NOTIFICATION OF THE ISSUE OF PROTOCOLS

Under Section 282 (4) of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Minister of Conservation hereby notifies that she has issued Protocols on behalf of the Crown regarding the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues, and that the Protocols as set out in the Schedule hereto were issued on 22 October 1998.

### SCHEDULE

#### 1. INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 is to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and the Acts in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act. Section 4 of the Conservation Act requires that the Act be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.
- 1.2 The Director-General has certain management responsibilities in terms of legislation and can only delegate or share responsibility for decisions s/he makes within the limits of his/her legislation. However, in making such decisions, the Director-General will provide Te Rūnanga the opportunity for input, consistent with section 4, in its policy, planning and decision-making processes on the matters set out in these Protocols.
- 1.3 These Protocols apply across the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā, which spans five conservancies, and the Southern and Central Regional Offices of the Department.
- 1.4 Both the Department and Te Rūnanga are seeking a relationship consistent with the Treaty principle of partnership that achieves over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Te Rūnanga and the Department, as set out in this document.

#### 2. PURPOSE OF PROTOCOLS

- 2.1 These Protocols are issued pursuant to the Settlement Legislation and section 12.12 of the 1997 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu, which specifies the following:

##### 2.1.1 Definitions

Protocol means a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga, which sets out how the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers and duties in relation to specified matters within

the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area, and how the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga and provide for Te Rūnanga's input into its decision-making process.

#### 2.1.2 Authority to Issue, Amend or Cancel Protocols

The Minister of Conservation has the power to issue, amend and cancel Protocols.

#### 2.1.3 Issue of Protocols

On the Settlement Date (as defined in the Settlement Legislation) the Crown has agreed through the Minister of Conservation to issue Protocols in this form on the following matters:

- a) cultural materials;
- b) freshwater fisheries;
- c) culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu;
- d) historic resources;
- e) Resource Management Act 1991 involvement; and
- f) visitor and public information.

#### 2.1.4 Protocols subject to Crown Obligations

The Protocols shall be issued and amended subject to, and without restriction upon, the obligations of the Minister and the Department of Conservation to discharge their respective functions, powers and duties in accordance with existing law and government policy from time to time and the Crown's powers to amend policy and introduce legislation amending existing law. This clause is not intended to indicate, and should not be interpreted as indicating, any agreement by Te Rūnanga to any amendment to policy which would adversely affect the redress provided by the Crown pursuant to the Settlement Deed or the ability of either party to fulfil its obligations expressed in the Settlement Deed.

#### 2.1.5 Noting of Protocols on CMS

- a) The existence of the Protocols, once issued, and as amended from time to time, and including a definition of the Protocols as set out above and a summary of the terms of issue of the Protocols, shall be noted in conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and national park management plans from time to time affecting the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area.
- b) Such noting of the Protocols shall be for the purpose of public notice only and shall not be amendments to the relevant strategies or plans for the purposes of section 171 of the Conservation Act 1987 or section 46 of the National Parks Act 1980.

#### 2.1.6 Enforceability of Protocols

- a) Subject to the Crown's right to amend or cancel the Protocols, as set out in clause 10.1, the Minister of Conservation must comply with the Protocols as long as they remain in force.

- b) If the Minister of Conservation fails unreasonably to comply with the Protocols Te Rūnanga may, subject to the Crown Proceedings Act 1950, enforce the Protocols by way of public law action against the Minister of Conservation, except that damages shall not be available as a remedy.
- c) Any guidelines which are to be developed pursuant to the Protocols will not give rise to any enforceable obligations under the Protocols.

#### 2.1.7 Limitation of Rights

Pursuant to section 286 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, unless expressly provided in the Settlement Deed, the Settlement Legislation or in the Protocols, the Protocols will not of themselves have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, land held, managed or administered under the Conservation Act 1987 or the statutes listed in the First Schedule to that Act.

### 3 IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

#### 3.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Te Rūnanga and its Papatipu Rūnanga on a continuing basis by:

- a) maintaining at the conservancy level, with the assistance of Te Rūnanga, information provided on Papatipu Rūnanga, their office holders and addresses;
- b) providing reasonable opportunities for Te Rūnanga and Papatipu Rūnanga to meet with Department managers and staff.

#### 3.2 The Protocols provide for ongoing implementation of a range of matters, as well as Specific Projects which will require resourcing. It is not intended that all of the Specific Projects listed in these Protocols will be implemented in any one year. Implementation will be over time. Where these Protocols refer to Specific Projects that require resourcing, their implementation will be subject to provision being made in the relevant conservancy business plan. The process for the Department implementing any particular Specific Project in a business year will be as follows:

The Department will meet with Te Rūnanga in each conservancy and at Regional level annually to identify priorities for undertaking Specific Projects as listed in these protocols for the upcoming business year.

The identified priorities will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process at the conservancy and regional levels and considered along with other priorities.

The decision on whether any Specific Projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator and the Regional General Manager.

The Department will advise Te Rūnanga of the outcome of this process.

Te Rūnanga and the Department will then meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan for implementation of the Specific Projects in that business year, in accordance with the resources which have been allocated in the business plan. The Department will apply the allocated resources to give effect to that work plan, subject to unforeseen management requirements which may arise

from time to time, such as emergencies, adverse weather, staff shortages or reallocation of resources directed by the Minister.

### 3.3 The Department will:

- a) Meet with Te Rūnanga to review implementation of these Protocols and to deal with the matters in section 3.2; four times per annum, unless otherwise agreed, in each conservancy, twice per annum at regional level, and at least once per annum at Chief Executive level;
- b) As far as reasonably practicable, train relevant staff on these Protocols and provide ongoing training as required;
- c) As far as reasonably practicable, brief Conservation Board and NZCA members on these Protocols and the Ngāi Tahu Settlement, and provide ongoing information as required.

## 4 CULTURAL MATERIALS

### 4.1 For the purpose of these Protocols, cultural materials are defined as:

- i) plants, plant materials;
- ii) materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds

to the extent to which the Department holds and is responsible for them, and which are important to Ngāi Tahu in maintaining their culture.

### 4.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering of cultural materials.

### 4.3 The Department will:

- a) Have particular regard to Te Rūnanga's cultural use policy (Kawa Hua Taiao) as it relates to the Department's activities, and other relevant Te Rūnanga statements of policy produced from time to time.
- b) Consider requests from members of Ngāi Tahu Whānui for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the appropriate legislation.
- c) Agree, where reasonably practicable, for Ngāi Tahu to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance or culling of species.
- d) Consult with Te Rūnanga in circumstances where there are competing requests from non-Ngāi Tahu persons or entities for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes, to see if the cultural and scientific or other needs can be reconciled before the Department makes a decision in respect of those requests.

### 4.4 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

- a) Develop and implement guidelines for each conservancy within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā that help define levels of customary use of cultural materials, and set conditions, after consideration of tikanga, to be met for gathering.



- b) Identify local sources of plants and provide advice to Te Rūnanga with respect to the establishment by Te Rūnanga of cultivation sites.
- c) Establish Departmental cultural materials banks for cultural materials which have come into the Department's possession, and guidelines for their use.

## 5 FRESHWATER FISHERIES

5.1 The Department has a statutory role in advocating the conservation of aquatic life and freshwater fisheries generally. Its advocacy for freshwater biota, aquatic habitats and fish passage in all areas is primarily taken via statutory planning processes provided by the Resource Management Act 1991.

5.2 The Settlement Legislation provides the power to promulgate regulations with respect to customary freshwater fisheries in the South Island administered under the Conservation Act 1987, with such regulations to be promulgated as soon as practicable, and in any event within two years of the Settlement Date. Besides generally consulting with Te Rūnanga and providing for its participation in the conservation and management of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats, the Department will consult and have particular regard to the advice of Te Rūnanga as an Advisory Committee appointed under section 56 of the Conservation Act on all matters concerning the management and conservation by the Department of Conservation of Taonga Fish Species (as defined in the Settlement Legislation) within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā.

### 5.3 Advisory Committee

The Department will, in relation to the Taonga Fish Species and as far as reasonably practicable, provide the Advisory Committee with all relevant information to enable it to give informed advice, and will meet with the Advisory Committee at conservancy level as necessary to give effect to the Deed of Settlement and Settlement Legislation.

### 5.4 Customary freshwater fisheries regulations

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

- a) Provide for Te Rūnanga participation in the development and promulgation of customary freshwater fishing regulations by:

Establishing a joint working group;

Setting terms of reference for that working group;

Setting timelines for progress;

Providing information to Te Rūnanga in a timely manner and allowing Te Rūnanga an opportunity to comment.

### 5.5 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

- a) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to the promotion of compliance with customary freshwater fisheries regulations.

- b) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to monitoring the efficacy of the customary freshwater fisheries regulations at regular intervals.
- c) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to sharing accumulated management information and research data on customary freshwater fisheries with Te Rūnanga.

#### 5.6 Other matters

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to provide for active participation by Te Rūnanga in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:

- a) Seeking to identify areas for cooperation in advocacy, consistent with 9 below, focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats.
- b) Consulting with Te Rūnanga in developing or contributing to research programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements. The Department confirms that it regards Te Rūnanga as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

#### 5.7 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

- a) Conduct research to establish and address ecosystem threats to specified customary freshwater fisheries including barriers to migration, habitat loss and exotic species interaction.
- b) Contribute to the resolution of eel management issues, in particular, the administration of the fish passage regulations in the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations, and the promotion of the installation of effective fish passes where necessary and monitoring of their effects, by participating in discussions with Te Rūnanga and Te Waka a Māui me ona Toka Mahi Tuna.
- c) Identify the need for, and where necessary prepare, management plans for freshwater fisheries management.

### 6 CULLING OF SPECIES OF INTEREST TO NGĀI TAHU

6.1 As part of an integrated management regime, or because a species population has risen to become an ecological pest, it may from time to time be necessary for the Department to carry out a cull of a protected species under the Wildlife Act 1953. The Department recognises that Te Rūnanga is interested in such operations in the following ways:

- i) the carrying out of such a cull where the species to be culled is causing or is likely to cause ecological damage to species or habitats of particular significance to Ngāi Tahu;

- ii) the methods to be used in such culls; and
- iii) cultural materials arising from the cull.

6.2 The Department will:

- a) Have regard to any requests initiated by Te Rūnanga for the carrying out of culling operations.
- b) Consult with, and have particular regard to the views of, Te Rūnanga before deciding to carry out a cull of protected species on land administered by the Department, in respect of the reasons for the cull and the method proposed to be used.
- c) In situations where either a Fish and Game Council or a Regional Council intend to carry out a cull of protected species or game bird and the Department has a statutory role in the process, request the relevant body to consult with Te Rūnanga before carrying out any such cull.

## 7 HISTORIC RESOURCES

7.1 The Minister acknowledges the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them. Liaison with Te Rūnanga is important in the management of those places containing sites of historic and cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu, including places of settlement, horticulture, natural resource harvesting, warfare, communication, and places of cultural and spiritual connection.

7.2 The Department notes that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Ngāi Tahu is a practice used by Ngāi Tahu to preserve the sanctity of a place. Respecting the principle of confidentiality brings management difficulties of a particular kind. Where information is not available, management practices which (unintentionally) contravene the cultural purpose associated with a specific site, may be put in place. Where reasonably practicable, the Department will respect the principle of confidentiality that applies to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu. The primary responsibility for identifying and assessing Ngāi Tahu heritage values rests with Te Rūnanga.

7.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

- a) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that Ngāi Tahu values attaching to identified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department are respected by the Department, for example, by the Department giving consideration to impacts from visitor numbers, facilities and services.
- b) Manage, as far as reasonably practicable, wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993.
- c) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that when issuing concessions giving authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, those parties manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993.

- d) Have particular regard to relevant Te Rūnanga policies, including those relating to Koiwi Tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological and Rock Art Sites.
- e) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that it uses Ngāi Tahu's cultural information only with the consent of Te Rūnanga.
- f) When issuing concessions to carry out activities on the land administered by the Department, request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga before using Ngāi Tahu's cultural information.

#### 7.4 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

- a) Develop and implement guidelines for the identification, inventory and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu by the Department that take into consideration the traditional uses and practices of Ngāi Tahu and are, where reasonably practicable, consistent with Ngāi Tahu tikanga.
- b) Identify and actively protect specified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga or other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu on land administered by the Department.
- c) Develop and implement guidelines for the active protection of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu.
- d) Identify cooperative projects covering a range of options for the protection and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu.
- e) Develop and implement guidelines relating to the use of Ngāi Tahu's knowledge of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance of Ngāi Tahu, including the use of this information by the Department.
- f) Consult with and seek participation from Te Rūnanga with respect to research, survey or inventory projects that relate specifically to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them.

### 8 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

8.1 In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department recognises the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

8.2 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to encourage respect for Ngāi Tahu values by:

- a) As far as reasonably practicable seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between Te Rūnanga, the Department and other people and organisations, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars.

- b) Consulting on the provision of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu.
- c) Ensuring, as far as reasonably practicable, that Department information on new panels, signs, and visitor publications includes Te Rūnanga perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Ngāi Tahu where appropriate, including the use of traditional Ngāi Tahu place names.
- d) Encouraging Te Rūnanga participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes.

### 8.3 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

- a) Develop and implement guidelines on the provision of information and interpretation facilities and services for visitors, so as to identify and consider issues of concern to Te Rūnanga.
- b) Consider possibilities for Te Rūnanga to contribute to visitor appreciation of the cultural value of sites of cultural and historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department.
- c) Provide information to education providers, including kohanga reo and kura kaupapa Māori, for the development of educational resources on conservation issues and associated Ngāi Tahu values.

## 9 RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT

9.1 Te Rūnanga and the Department both have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act. These include effects on:

- wetlands;
- riparian management;
- effects on freshwater fish habitat;
- water quality management;
- protection of historic resources;
- protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

9.2 From time to time, Te Rūnanga and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest for discussion. It is recognised that their concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of them will continue to make separate submissions.

9.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to discuss the general approach that will be taken by each of Te Rūnanga and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern.

9.4 The Department will:

- a) Have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in 9.3(a) above in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act.
- b) Make non-confidential resource information available to Te Rūnanga to assist in improving their effectiveness in Resource Management Act advocacy work at the Papatipu Rūnanga level.

## 10 AMENDMENT AND REVIEW PROVISIONS FROM THE DEED

### 10.1 Amendment and Cancellation of Protocols

Protocols may be amended or cancelled at any time by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation, at the initiative of either the Crown or Te Rūnanga, and after consultation with Te Rūnanga and having particular regard to its views.

Dated at Wellington this 26 day of July 2001.

MATT ROBSON, for SANDRA LEE, Minister of Conservation.

(NZ Gazette 2001, page 2171)

# Appendix 3

## NGĀI TAHU SETTLEMENT LEGISLATION: CULTURAL REDRESS SITES AND ANCILLARY CLAIMS ON THE WEST COAST *TE TAI O POUTINI*

References to relevant sections of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 and Deed of Settlement 1997.

**Statutory Adviser** (*See sections 230-233, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

**Topuni** (*See sections 237-253, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

### **Kahurangi Tōpuni**

Specific Principles Relating to Kahurangi Tōpuni (*See attachment 12.141, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in Relation to the Specific Principles (*See clause 12.5.10, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

### **Ōtūkoro Iti Tōpuni**

Specific Principles Relating to Ōtūkoro Iti Tōpuni (*See attachment 12.139, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in Relation to the Specific Principles (*See clause 12.5.10, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

**Provision for Kahurangi Pou whenua** (*See section 254, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

### **Ōtūkoro Historic Reserve**

The Ngāi Tahu settlement resulted in the vesting of Ōtūkoro Historic Reserve (located near Kahurangi Point – see Map 4) in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which is now the administering body for this reserve under the Reserves Act 1977. (*See section 150, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

**Whakapoai Claim** (*See clause 15.3, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

### **Ōkari Lagoon Deed of Recognition**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for Ōkari Lagoon (*See attachment 12.119, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

#### **Kōtuku-Whakaoho (Lake Brunner/Moana) Deed of Recognition**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for Kōtuku-Whakaoho (*See attachment 12.102, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

#### **Taramakau River Deed of Recognition**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for Taramakau River (*See attachment 12.76B, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

#### **Waitaiki Historic Reserve**

The Ngāi Tahu settlement resulted in the vesting of Waitaiki Historic Reserve (located in the upper Arahura Valley – see Map 4) in the Māwhera Incorporation, which is now the administering body for this reserve under the Reserves Act 1977. The Department retains management responsibility of particular recreational facilities within the reserve.

Arahura Valley (*See sections 324-326, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

Special conditions and restrictions subject to which the Waitaiki Historic Reserve is vested (*See attachment 13.1, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

List of huts, bridges and tracks within the Waitaiki Historic Reserve (*See attachment 13.2, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

Ongoing Permits and Licences (*See clause 13.3.4, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

#### **Lake Kaniere Deed of Recognition**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for Lake Kaniere (*See attachment 12.104, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

#### **Lake Mahināpua**

Vesting of bed of Lake Mahinapua (*See sections 191-200, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*)

#### **Pouerua (Saltwater Lagoon) Deed of Recognition area**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for these areas (*See attachment 12.121, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

#### **Ōkārīto Lagoon Deed of Recognition area**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for Ōkārīto Lagoon (*See attachment 12.120, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)



### **Karangarua Lagoon Deed of Recognition area**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for these areas (*See attachment 12.122, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

### **Makaawhio (Jacobs) River Deed of Recognition area**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for these areas (*See attachment 12.77B, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

### **Lake Paringa Deed of Recognition area**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for these areas (*See attachment 12.103, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

### **Paringa River Site (Nga Whenua Rāhui Covenant)**

(*See section 15.3, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*). Section 15.3 provides detailed guidance on the Department's involvement in the management of this site. In the year 2023, the Minister of Conservation and landowners of this site are required to review the management objectives and conditions listed in section 15.3.

### **Moeraki Historic Reserve**

(*See section 159, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998*). The Ngāi Tahu settlement resulted in the vesting of Moeraki Historic Reserve (located near Lake Moeraki – see Map 4) in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which is now the administering body for this reserve under the Reserves Act 1977.

### **Tititea (Mt Aspiring) Tōpuni**

Specific Principles Relating to Tititea (Mt Aspiring) Tōpuni (*See attachment 12.133, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in Relation to the Specific Principles (*See clause 12.5.10, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

### **Tititea (Mount Aspiring) Deed of Recognition area**

Actions relating to the Deed of Recognition for these areas (*See attachment 12.68, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

Extracts from the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 about the values of cultural redress sites<sup>65</sup>

### **Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Kahurangi Tōpuni:**

---

<sup>65</sup> Italicised text directly quotes the settlement legislation. Non-italicised text has been inserted where appropriate, at the request of Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu.

*“Kaburangi is a tremendously significant land mark to [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/] Ngāi Tabu, marking the extreme north western point of the tribal takiwā. It is a distinctive and easily recognisable physical boundary marker.*

*Kaburangi was a natural landing point for seafarers travelling south by waka, to prepare for the next stage along a section of coastline that had very few safe anchorages or landing sites. Such tauranga waka (landing places) represent the intimate knowledge the tūpuna (ancestors) had of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the land. Knowledge of these routes and trails continue to be held by whānau and hapū and are regarded as taonga.*

*To [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu, Kaburangi is an important expression of the iwi's mana over the vast tract of land to the south. Its significance in this respect is to be marked by the construction of a pou whenua (boundary marker). [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu have expended great effort and human sacrifice over many generations to maintain the security and integrity of their Takiwā.*

*The mauri of Kaburangi represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life.”*

#### **Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Ōtūkoru Iti Tōpuni:**

*“As a result of the loss of life and blood spilt here during a significant battle, and the significance of the [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu victory, Ōtūkoru Iti is now regarded as a wāhi tapu (sacred sites). Such places hold the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of our tūpuna (ancestors).*

*Ōtūkoru Iti was an important kainga noboanga (permanent settlement), the northern-most of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu's traditional settlements on Te Tai o Poutini (the West Coast of the South Island). It was also the closest traditional settlement to the tribal boundary point of Kaburangi. As such, it is a symbol of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu's mana whenua (tribal authority) in this place.*

*The mauri of Ōtūkoru Iti represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life.”*

#### **Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Ōkari Lagoon:**

*“This hapua (estuary) once supported a number of significant kainga noboanga (settlements) including Tauraka, Ōmau, Ōweka, Ōrowaiti, Te Kuba, Ōrikaka, Waimakaroa and Whareatea. As a result of this pattern of occupation, there are a number of recorded and unrecorded archaeological sites associated with the Ōkari, including middens. Such sites are a focus for memories of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu tūpuna, and as such are wāhi taonga to the descendants of those tūpuna.*

*Ōkari was and still is a significant spawning ground and kōbanga (nursery) for a variety of fish species and a significant breeding area for manu (birds). The Lagoon remains a source of rich and abundant harvests.*

*The tūpuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to*

*use the resources of the lagoon, the relationship of people with the lagoon and their dependence on it and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu today.”*

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Kōtuku-Whakaoho (Lake Brunner/Moana):**

*“The name ‘Kōtuku-Whakaoho’ relates to a husband and wife called Kōtuku and Māwhera. Both were killed at this site which led to one (Kōtuku) having their name applied to the lake and the other (Māwhera) lending their name to the Grey River.*

*As with most lakes, there is also a tradition of a taniwha connected with Kōtuku-Whakaoho. The story tells how two taniwha were killed by a chief because they had killed his father and sister. On their deaths, the taniwha became islands<sup>66</sup> which now lie in the lake.*

*For [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the Gods and present generations; these histories reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Wai Pounamu and Ngāi Tahu as an iwi.*

*Kōtuku-Whakaoho holds an important place in [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu history as the site of the rangātira (chief) Tuburu’s battle with Ngāti Wairaki. Victory in this battle saw [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu gain mana whenua in this area.*

*Besides being a famous battle ground, Kōtuku-Whakaoho was important as the site of a permanent settlement, acting as a focal point for food gathering parties. The principal food taken from the lake was tuna (eel). Water fowl and forest fowl were also important mabinga kai in this area.*

*The tūpuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the lake, the relationship of people with the lake and their dependence on it, and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of resources. All of these values remain important to [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu today.”*

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Taramakau River:**

*“Taramakau River was and still is a significant indigenous fishery and source of manu (birds). The river remains a source of rich and abundant harvests. The area is noted particularly for its tuna (eel) and inanga (whitebait) fisheries.*

*The tūpuna had considerable knowledge of whakapapa, traditional trails and tauranga waka, places for gathering kai and other taonga, ways in which to use the resources of the river, the relationship of people with the river and their dependence on it and tikanga for the proper and sustainable utilisation of*

---

66 Refuge Islands *Takataka*.

resources. All of these values remain important to [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu today.

*There was a pā at the mouth of the river, and kainga noboanga (temporary settlements) were established along the length of the river which were related to the taking of mabinga kai and, in particular, the retrieval of pounamu. The river itself was, therefore, a significant part of the pounamu trail, via which the taonga was transported from its source to be traded up and down the country.*

*The tūpuna had an intimate knowledge of navigation, river routes, safe harbours and landing places, and the locations of food and other resources on the lake. The river was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey, and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whānau and hapū and is regarded as taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the river.*

*The mauri of Taramakau represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life.”*

#### **Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Lake Kaniere:**

*“Kaniere is noted in [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu tradition as a lake occupied by the Ngāti Wairaki explorer, Raureka. According to tradition, Raureka was the first to cross Kā Tiritiri o te Moana (the Southern Alps) from her village at Arabura. Apparently she left the village after an argument with her Ngāti Wairaki whanaunga (relatives). Raureka was accompanied by her slave as she wandered up to Kaniere and eventually came across a pass which took her to the Rakaia Valley and eventually the Canterbury Plains.*

*This route came to be later known as Noti Raureka (Brownings Pass). On the east coast, Raureka fell in with a number of Ngāi Tahu in the Temuka region who were felling timber with adzes. Raureka showed them her pounamu (greenstone) adze and proceeded to fell the tī tree. The Ngāi Tahu agreed that her pounamu was a better stone for an adze. Raureka eventually led a Ngāi Tahu party across the Alps to show them the source of pounamu.*

*For [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu, histories such as this reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped Ngāi Tahu as an iwi”.*

Raureka’s crossing led initially to peaceful trading between the east coast Ngāi Tahu and Ngāti Wairangi. When the value of the stone became clear, it became the catalyst for the pounamu wars which soon followed. Ngāi Tahu overcame Ngāti Wairangi and obtained the spoils of this hundred year war, and to this day are manawhenua on the West Coast *Te Tai o Poutini*.

#### **Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Pouerua (Saltwater Lagoon):**

*“Pouerua once supported a number of significant kainga noboanga (settlements), including one on the lagoon itself and others at the mouths of the Waitangi Taona (Waitangi Tabuna), Waitangi Roto, Whataroa and Pouerua Rivers. As*

*a result of this pattern of occupation, there are urupā and archaeological sites associated with Pouerua. Urupā are the resting places of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu tūpuna and, as such, are the focus for whānau traditions. These are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu tūpuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.*

*Pouerua was and still is a significant spawning ground and kōhanga (nursery) for a variety of fish species and a significant breeding area for manu (birds). The Lagoon remains a source of rich and abundant harvests.”*

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Ōkārīto Lagoon:**

*“The Ōkārīto Lagoon area was traditionally occupied by the Ngāti Wairaki and Rapuwai hapū before [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu gained mana whenua (tribal authority over the area). The area was important as the site of the Ngāti Wairaki Whare Wananga. It was to this wananga that the Ngāi Tahu rangātira (chiefs) went so as to learn the whakapapa to the South Island. For [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu, histories such as this reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Ngāi Tahu as an iwi.*

*Ōkārīto is well known as the place occupied by the kōtuku (white heron) and there are many [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu waiata (songs) that tell the tale of the kōtuku. The lagoon was also a rich mahinga kai.”*

According to Kāti Māhaki history, Ōkārīto was an important kāinga and was named after the Rangatira, Kārīto, which translates as the tips of the young raupō - a marsh reed. The daughter of Kārīto, Mapouriki is remembered in nearby Lake Mapourika.

To this day Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu retain an interest in Ōkārīto with a nohoanga, a seasonal occupation site set aside under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement Act 1997, which allows Ngāi Tahu to continue to practice mahinga kai (traditional food and resource gathering) as has been practised for generations.

Ōkārīto Lagoon is the main feeding ground of the white heron *kōtuku*. While not endemic to New Zealand it is very rare here with approximately 150 birds making the Waitangirotto Nature Reserve their home. To Māori it is “He kōtuku rerenga tahi”, a kōtuku of a single flight, a kōtuku to be seen perhaps once in a lifetime.

As a symbol of things both beautiful and rare, kōtuku occupy an important place in myth and folklore, and to compare a visitor to a kōtuku is a compliment of the highest order.

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Karangarua Lagoon:**

*“Seasonal kainga noboanga (settlements) were established at the mouth of the Karangarua Lagoon for the taking of kai-awa (river-sourced foods) and manu (birds).*

*Karangarua Lagoon was and still is a significant spawning ground and kōhanga (nursery) for a variety of fish species and a significant breeding area for manu. The Lagoon remains a source of rich and abundant harvests. Pokorotutu and Ōtebautumua were and are notable mabinga kai areas at the north and south ends respectively of the Karangarua. The area is noted particularly for its tuna (eel) and inanga (whitebait) fisheries, as a source of raranga (weaving) materials and other useful plants including raupo, wiwi and harakeke. The traditional practice of collecting seagull eggs from the lagoon during spring is still carried out by [Poutini]Ngāi Tahu.”*

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Makaawhio (Jacobs River):**

*“According to legend, the Makaawhio River is associated with the Patupaiarebe (flute playing fairies) and Maeroero (ogres of the forest). It is said that Tikitiki o Rebua was slain in the Makaawhio River by the Maeroero. The name ‘Tikitiki o Rebua’ is now attached to the ridge of hills (sometimes called Jacobs Ridge) on the north bank of the Makaawhio River.*

*Kainga noboanga (permanent settlements) were established at the mouth and on the banks of the river because of the plentiful supply of mabinga kai from the river, its estuary and surrounds. A northern settlement strategically sited on Tabikeakai (Jacobs Bluff) acted as a sentry lookout that warned of approaching visitors.*

*As a result of this pattern of occupation, there are a number of urupā and wāhi tapu along the river. Urupā are the resting places of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu tūpuna and, as such, are the focus for whānau traditions. Urupā and wāhi tapu are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tahu tūpuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.*

*The Makaawhio was and still is the source of a range of mabinga kai. Rocks at the mouth of the river still provide an abundance of kaimoana (seafood). The estuary of the river itself still provides an abundance of kaitawa (freshwater fisheries), including tuna (eels), patiki (flounders) and inanga (whitebait) and remains a significant kōhanga (nursery) for a variety of fish species.*

*The area is still a significant manu (bird) breeding area, once yielding a rich harvest. The flora of the area provided not only food, but also the raw materials for raranga (weaving), rongoa (medicines) and the building of waka (canoes) and whare (houses).*

*In addition to its bounty of mabinga kai resources, the Makaawhio is a source of the mineral kyanite (Aotea).”*

**Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Lake Pāringa:**

*“Seasonal kainga noboanga (settlements) were established for the taking of mabinga kai. Pāringa was and still is a noted tuna (eel) fishery, significant*

*spawning ground and kōhanga (nursery) for a variety of fish species and significant breeding area for manu (birds), including ducks, kukuapa (kereru/wood pigeon) and weka (now extinct in this area). The lake was therefore a source of rich and abundant harvests. The area also provided plants utilised in raranga (weaving) and other practices.*

*The lake also is a wāhi tapu. Wāhi tapu are places holding the memories, traditions, victories and defeats of [Poutini Ngāi Tahu/]Ngāi Tabu tūpuna, and are frequently protected by secret locations.”*

#### **Poutini Ngāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu values relating to Tititea (Mount Aspiring):**

*“As with all principal maunga (mountains), Tititea is imbued with the spiritual elements of Raki and Papa, in tradition and practice regarded as an important link to the primeval parents. Tititea is a prominent and majestic peak, clearly visible from a number of vantage points in the south, and its role in Ngāi Tabu’s creation stories gives rise to its tapu status.*

*The most common Ngāi Tabu name for the mountain known to Pākeba as Mount Aspiring is Tititea, referring to the mountain’s white peak. It is not unusual, however, for places and physical features to have more than one name, reflecting the traditions of the successive iwi who peopled the land. Other names for the mountain include ‘Mākahi Tā Rakiwhānoa’ (referring to a wedge belonging to Tū Te Rakiwhānoa) and ‘Ōtapabu’, which may refer to a type of dogskin cloak.*

*The Bonar Glacier is known as Hukaitoroa Tā Parekiore (which refers to the long, hard glacial ice and crevasses formed by Parekiore). Parekiore was a giant who used to stalk up and down the South and North Islands taking tītī (muttonbirds) northwards and returning with kumara. The lakes represent his footprints and the frozen splashes from his footsteps in the south were transformed into glaciers.*

*The area was an integral part of a network of trails which were used in order to ensure the safest journey and incorporated locations along the way that were identified for activities including camping overnight and gathering kai. Knowledge of these trails continues to be held by whānau and hapū and is regarded as taonga. The traditional mobile lifestyle of the people led to their dependence on the resources of the land.*

*The mauri of Tititea represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngāi Tabu Whānui with the area.”*

#### **Principles and actions relating to tōpuni**

**Specific Principles Relating to Kahurangi, Ōtūkororo Iti and Tititea Tōpuni** (See attachments 12.141, 12.139 and 12.133 Ngāi Tabu Deed of Settlement 1997)

The following specific principles are directed at the Minister of Conservation avoiding harm to, or the diminishing of, the Ngāi Tahu values related to the Tōpuni:

encouragement of respect for Ngāi Tahu's association with Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea;

accurate portrayal of Ngāi Tahu's association with Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea; and

recognition of Ngāi Tahu's relationship with wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga, including archaeological sites.

**Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in Relation to the Specific Principles** (*See clause 12.5.10, Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997*)

Pursuant to Clause 12.5.10 of the Deed of Settlement, the Director-General has determined that the following actions will be taken by the Department of Conservation in relation to the specific principles:

Encouragement of respect for Ngāi Tahu's association with Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea:

staff, Conservation Board members, concessionaires and the public will be provided with information about the Ngāi Tahu values and the existence of the Tōpuni over Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea;

educational material will be made available to visitors and all concessionaires (including climbers and all climbing guides) explaining that, to Ngāi Tahu, activities such as camping in the Ōtūkoro Iti area, or standing on the very top of Tititea (Mt Aspiring), denigrates its tapu status;

a review of conditions to be applied generally to new concessions will be undertaken;

the removal of all rubbish and wastes from Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea will be encouraged;

the Department will ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that it disposes of waste, particularly human waste, in a way that minimises the risk of contamination of waterways; and

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be consulted about the siting and design of new huts, buildings and structures, and particular regard had to its views.

Accurate portrayal of Ngāi Tahu's association with Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea:

the Department will ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that Ngāi Tahu's association with Kahurangi, Ōtūkoro Iti and Tititea is accurately portrayed in all of its new public information and interpretative material; and

the Department will consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in the provision of its new public information or interpretative material, and as far as reasonably practicable will only use Ngāi Tahu cultural information with the consent of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

Recognition of Ngāi Tahu's relationship with wāhi tapu and wāhi taonga including archaeological sites:

significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation will be avoided wherever possible; and



where significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation cannot be avoided, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu will be consulted and particular regard will be had to its relevant policies, including those relating to Koiwi Tangata (unidentified human remains) and archaeological and rock art sites.

### **Actions relating to Deed of Recognition Areas**

#### **Actions relating to Kōtuku-Whakaoho (Lake Brunner/Moana), Taramakau River, Lake Kaniere, Pouerua (Saltwater Lagoon), Karangarua Lagoon, Makaawhio (Jacobs) River, Lake Paringa and Tititea (Mount Aspiring) Deed of Recognition areas:**

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted and particular regard had to its views relating to the association Ngāi Tahu has with Deed of Recognition areas, concerning the following management and administration activities which may be undertaken from time to time by the Department in relation to those parts of Deed of Recognition areas that are administered by the Department:

the preparation of all Conservation Management Strategies and/or National Park Management Plans which relate to Deed of Recognition areas;

the preparation of all non-statutory plans, strategies or programmes for the protection and management of Deed of Recognition areas in relation to the following:

any programme to identify and protect indigenous plants;

any survey to assess current and future visitor activities;

any programme to identify and protect wildlife;

any programme to eradicate pests or other introduced species; or

any survey to identify the number and type of concessions which may be appropriate; and

the location, construction and relocation of any structures, and in the case of Tititea, huts, signs and tracks.

In order to enable Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to fulfil this role, the Department will provide Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu with relevant information to enable Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to consider and advise its views to the Crown on any matter on which it is consulted.

The Department will also inform Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu of all concession applications to Deed of Recognition areas (but retains the discretion to withhold commercially sensitive material).

#### **Actions relating to Ōkari Lagoon and Ōkārīto Lagoon Deed of Recognition areas:**

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted and particular regard had to its views relating to the association Ngāi Tahu has with Deed of Recognition areas, concerning the following management and administration activities which may be undertaken from time to time by the Department in relation to those parts of Deed of Recognition areas that are administered by the Department:

the consideration of any application to the Crown for any rights for use or occupation (including any renewals) in relation to Deed of Recognition areas, including the terms and conditions of rights of use or occupation;

the preparation of any plans, strategies or programmes for the protection and management of Deed of Recognition areas (including the involvement of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu in such plans, strategies or programmes);

any survey to identify the number and types of uses which are appropriate in relation to Deed of Recognition areas; and

any programme to eradicate introduced flora or fauna from Deed of Recognition areas.

In order to enable Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to fulfil this role, the Department will:

inform Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu of any applications to the Crown for rights or use or occupation (including any renewals) in relation to Deed of Recognition areas (but retains the right to withhold commercially sensitive material); and

provide Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu with relevant information to enable Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to consider and advise its views to the Crown on any matter on which it is consulted.

# Appendix 4

## TAONGA SPECIES

Schedules 97 & 98, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

See also: Sections 287-297, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

NAME IN MĀORI	NAME IN ENGLISH	SCIENTIFIC NAME
<b>BIRDS (SCHEDULE 97)</b>		
Hoiho	Yellow-eyed penguin	<i>Megadyptes antipodes</i>
Kāhu	Australasian harrier	<i>Circus approximans</i>
Kākā	South Island kaka	<i>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</i>
Kākāpō	Kakapo	<i>Strigops babroptilus</i>
Kākāriki	New Zealand parakeet	<i>Cyanoramphus spp.</i>
Kakaruai	South Island robin	<i>Petroica australis australis</i>
Kakī	Black stilt	<i>Himantopus novaeseelandiae</i>
Kāmana	Crested grebe	<i>Podiceps cristatus</i>
Kārearea	New Zealand falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>
Karoro	Black-backed gull	<i>Larus dominicanus</i>
Kea	Kea	<i>Nestor notabilis</i>
Kōau	Black shag	<i>Pbalacrocorax carbo</i>
	Pied shag	<i>Pbalacrocorax varius varius</i>
	Little shag	<i>Pbalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i>
Koekoeā	Long-tailed cuckoo	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i>
Kōparapara/Korimako	Bellbird	<i>Anthornis melanura melanura</i>
Kororā	Blue penguin	<i>Eudyptula minor</i>
Kōtare	Kingfisher	<i>Halcyon sancta</i>
Kōtuku	White heron	<i>Egretta alba</i>
Kōwhiowhio/Whio	Blue duck	<i>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos</i>
Kūaka	Bar-tailed godwit	<i>Limosa lapponica</i>
Kūkupa/Kererū	New Zealand wood pigeon	<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</i>
Kuruwhengu/Kuruwhengi	New Zealand shoveler	<i>Anas rhynchotis</i>
Mātā	Fernbird	<i>Bowdleria punctata punctata, Bowdleria punctata stewartiana, Bowdleria punctata wilsoni, Bowdleria punctata candata</i>
		<i>Egretta sacra</i>
		<i>Petroica macrocephala macrocephala</i>
Matuku moana	Reef heron	<i>Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi</i>
Miromiro	South Island tomtit	<i>Moboua ochrocephala</i>
Miromiro	Snares Island tomtit	<i>Porphyrio porphyrio</i>
Mohua	Yellowhead	<i>Anas superciliosa</i>
Pākura/Pūkeko	Swamp hen/Pūkeko	<i>Anas aucklandica</i>
Pārera	Grey duck	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae</i>
Pateke	Brown teal	<i>Chrysococcyx lucidus</i>
Pihoihoi	New Zealand pipit	<i>Rhipidura fuliginosa fuliginosa</i>
Pipīwharau	Shining cuckoo	<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>
Piwakawaka	South Island fantail	<i>Eudyptes robustus</i>
Poaka	Pied stilt	
Pokotiwaha	Snares crested penguin	

NAME IN MĀORI	NAME IN ENGLISH	SCIENTIFIC NAME
Pūtakitaki	Paradise shelduck	<i>Tadorna variegata</i>
Riroriro	Grey warbler	<i>Gerygone igata</i>
Roroa	Great spotted kiwi	<i>Apteryx haastii</i>
Rowi	Ōkārito brown kiwi	<i>Apteryx mantelli</i> [A. rowi]
Ruru koukou	Morepork	<i>Ninox novaeseelandiae</i>
Taiko	Westland petrel	<i>Procellaria westlandica</i>
Takahē	Takahe	<i>Porphyrio mantelli</i>
Tara	Terns	<i>Sterna spp.</i>
Tawaki	Fiordland crested penguin	<i>Eudyptes pachyrhynchus</i>
Tete	Grey teal	<i>Anas gracilis</i>
Tieke	South Island saddleback	<i>Pbilesturnus carunculatus carunculatus</i>
Titi	Sooty shearwater/Muttonbird	<i>Puffinus griseus</i>
	Hutton's shearwater	<i>Puffinus huttoni</i>
	Common diving petrel	<i>Pelecanoides urinatrix</i>
	South Georgian diving petrel	<i>Pelecanoides georgicus</i>
	Fairy prion	<i>Pachyptila turtur</i>
	Broad billed prion	<i>Pachyptila vittata</i>
	White-faced storm petrel	<i>Pelagodroma marina</i>
	Cook's petrel	<i>Pterodroma cookii</i>
	Mottled petrel	<i>Pterodroma inexpectata</i>
Tititipounamu	South Island rifleman	<i>Acantbisitta chloris chloris</i>
Tokoeka	South Island brown kiwi	<i>Apteryx australis</i>
Toroa	Albatrosses and Mollymawks	<i>Diomedea spp.</i>
Toutouwai	Stewart Island robin	<i>Petroica australis rakiura</i>
Tūi	Tui	<i>Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae</i>
Tutukiwi	Snares Island snipe	<i>Coenocorypha aucklandica buegeli</i>
Weka	Western weka	<i>Gallirallus australis australis</i>
Weka	Stewart Island weka	<i>Gallirallus australis scotti</i>
Weka	Buff weka	<i>Gallirallus australis hectori</i>

#### PLANTS (SCHEDULE 97)

Akatorotoro	White rata	<i>Metrosideros perforata</i>
Aruhe	Fernroot/Bracken	<i>Pteridium aquilinum var. esculentum</i>
Harakeke	Flax	<i>Phormium tenax</i>
Horoeka	Lancewood	<i>Pseudopanax crassifolius</i>
Houhi	Mountain ribbonwood	<i>Hoberia lyalli, Hoberia glabata</i>
Kahikatea	Kahikatea/White pine	<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>
Kāmahi	Kamahi	<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>
Kānuka	Kanuka	<i>Kunzia ericoides</i>
Kāpuka	Broadleaf	<i>Griselinia littoralis</i>
Karaeopirita	Supplejack	<i>Ripogonum scandens</i>
Karaka	New Zealand laurel/Karaka	<i>Corynocarpus laevigata</i>
Karamū	Coprosma	<i>Coprosma robusta, Coprosma lucida, Coprosma foetidissima</i>
Kātote	Tree fern	<i>Cyathea smithii</i>
Kiekie	Kiekie	<i>Freycinetia baueriana subsp. banksii</i>
Kōhia	New Zealand passionfruit	<i>Passiflora tetrandra</i>
Korokio	Korokio/Wire-netting bush	<i>Corokia cotoneaster</i>
Koromiko/Kōkōmuka	Koromiko/Hebe	<i>Hebe salicifolia</i>
Kōtukutuku	Tree fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia excorticata</i>
Kōwhai/Kōhai	Kowhai	<i>Sophora microphylla</i>
Mamaku	Tree fern	<i>Cyathea medullaris</i>

NAME IN MĀORI	NAME IN ENGLISH	SCIENTIFIC NAME
Mānia	Sedge	<i>Carex lucida</i>
Mānuka/Kahikātoa	Tea-tree	<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>
Māpou	Red matipo	<i>Myrsine australis</i>
Matai	Matai/Black pine	<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>
Miro	Miro/Brown pine	<i>Podocarpus ferrugineus</i>
Ngaio	Ngaio	<i>Myoporum laetum</i>
Nikau	New Zealand palm	<i>Rhopalostylis sapida</i>
Pānako	(Species of fern)	<i>Asplenium obtusatum</i>
Pānako	(Species of fern)	<i>Botrychium australe, Botrychium bifforme</i>
Pātōtara	Dwarf mingimingi	<i>Leucopogon fraseri</i>
Pingao	Pingao	<i>Desmoschoenus spiralis</i>
Pōkākā	Pokaka	<i>Elaeocarpus bookerianus</i>
Ponga/Poka	Tree fern	<i>Cyathea dealbata</i>
Rātā	Southern rata	<i>Metrosideros umbellata</i>
Raupō	Bulrush	<i>Typha angustifolia</i>
Rautāwhiri/Kōhūhū	Black matipo/Mapou	<i>Pittosporum tenuifolium</i>
Rimu	Rimu/Red pine	<i>Dacrydium cypressinum</i>
Rimurapa	Bull kelp	<i>Durvillaea antarctica</i>
Taramea	Speargrass/Spaniard	<i>Aciphylla spp.</i>
Tarata	Lemonwood	<i>Pittosporum eugenoides</i>
Tawai	Beech	<i>Nothofagus spp.</i>
Tētēaweke	Muttonbird scrub	<i>Olearia angustifolia</i>
Tī rākau/Tī kōuka	Cabbage tree	<i>Cordyline australis</i>
Tikumū	Mountain daisy	<i>Celmisia spectabilis, Celmisia semicordata</i>
Titoki	New Zealand ash	<i>Alectryon excelsus</i>
Toatoa	Mountain toatoa/Celery pine	<i>Phyllocladus alpinus</i>
Toetoe	Toetoe	<i>Cortaderia richardii</i>
Tōtara	Totara	<i>Podocarpus totara</i>
Tutu	Tutu	<i>Coriaria spp.</i>
Wharariki	Mountain flax	<i>Phormium cookianum</i>
Whinau	Hinau	<i>Elaeocarpus dentatus</i>
Wī	Silver tussock	<i>Poa cita</i>
Wīwī	Rushes	<i>All indigenous Juncus spp. and Juncus maritimus</i>

#### MARINE MAMMALS (SCHEDULE 97)

Ihupuku	Southern elephant seal	<i>Mirounga leonina</i>
Kekeno	New Zealand fur seal	<i>Arctocephalus forsteri</i>
Paieka	Humpback whale	<i>Megaptera novaeangliae</i>
Parāoa	Sperm whale	<i>Physeter macrocephalus</i>
Rāpoka/Whakahao	New Zealand sea lion/Hooker's sea lion	<i>Phocarctos hookeri</i>
Tohorā	Southern right whale	<i>Balaena australis</i>

#### TAONGA FISH SPECIES (SCHEDULE 98)

Kāeo	Sea tulip	<i>Pyura pachydermatum</i>
Koeke	Common shrimp	<i>Palaemon affinis</i>
Kōkopu/Hawai	Giant bully	<i>Gobiomorphus gobioides</i>
Kōwaro	Canterbury mudfish	<i>Neochanna burrowsius</i>
Pakari/Ngaiore	Common smelt	<i>Retropinna retropinna</i>
Piripiripōhatu	Torrentfish	<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>
Taiwharu	Giant kōkopu	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>

NAME IN MĀORI	NAME IN ENGLISH	SCIENTIFIC NAME
<b>SHELLFISH (SCHEDULE 98)</b>		
Pipi/Kākahi	Pipi	<i>Paphies australe</i>
Tuaki	Cockle	<i>Austrovenus stutchburgi</i>
Tuaki/Hākiari, Kuhakuha/Pūrimu	Surfclam	<i>Dosinia anus, Paphies donacina, Mactra discor, Mactra murchsoni, Spsula aequilateralis, Basina yatei, or Dosinia subrosa</i>
Tuatua	Tuatua	<i>Paphies subtriangulata, Paphies donacina</i>
Waikaka/Pūpū	Mudsnail	<i>Amphibola crenata, Turbo smaragdus, Zedilom spp.</i>

# Appendix 5

## INVENTORY OF HIGH-, MEDIUM- AND LOW-PRIORITY INVASIVE WEED SPECIES KNOWN TO OCCUR IN THE WEST COAST TAI POUTINI CONSERVANCY, AS AT 2010.

COMMON NAME	SCIENTIFIC NAME	CATEGORY
<b>HIGH PRIORITY WEEDS</b>		
African feather grass	<i>Pennisetum macrourum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Aluminium plant	<i>Galeobdolon luteum</i>	Ground cover
Bamboo, Japanese	<i>Pseudosasa japonica</i>	Shrub
Banana passionfruit	<i>Passiflora mollissima</i>	Climber
Barberry	<i>Berberis glaucocarpa</i>	Shrub
Barberry, Darwins	<i>Berberis darwinii</i>	Shrub
Blackberry	<i>Rubus fruticosus</i> agg.	Shrub
Blackberry, Cut-leaved	<i>Rubus laciniatus</i>	Shrub
Blue morning glory	<i>Ipomoea indica</i>	Climber
Broom	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Shrub
Buddleia	<i>Buddleja davidii</i> , <i>B. globosa</i>	Shrub
Burdock	<i>Arctium minus</i>	Shrub
Campsis vine	<i>Campsis x tagliabuana</i>	Climber
Cape honey flower	<i>Melianthus major</i>	Shrub
Cape pondweed	<i>Aponogeton distachyos</i>	Aquatic weed
Cathedral bells	<i>Cobaea scandens</i>	Climber
Cherry laurel	<i>Prunus laurocerasus</i>	Tree
Chocolate vine	<i>Akebia quinata</i>	Climber
Coltsfoot	<i>Tussilago farfara</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Cotoneaster	<i>Cotoneaster franchetii</i> , <i>C. glaucophyllus</i>	Shrub
Elder	<i>Sambucus nigra</i>	Shrub
Elaeagnus	<i>Elaeagnus x reflexa</i>	Climber
Field horsetail	<i>Equisetum arvense</i>	Herb/fern/grass
German ivy	<i>Senecio mikanioides</i>	Climber
Ginger, Kahili	<i>Hedychium gardnerianum</i>	Shrub
Gorse	<i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Shrub
Giant gunnera	<i>Gunnera tinctoria</i>	Shrub
Hawthorn	<i>Crataegus monogyna</i>	Shrub
Heath rush	<i>Juncus squarrosus</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Hieracium	<i>Hieracium lepidulum</i> , <i>H. pilosella</i> , <i>H. praealtum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Himalayan honeysuckle	<i>Leycesteria formosa</i>	Shrub
Holly	<i>Ilex aquifolium</i>	Shrub
Hydrangea	<i>Hydrangea macrophylla</i>	Shrub
Hypericum	<i>Hypericum kouytcbense</i> , <i>H. henryi</i>	Shrub
Japanese honeysuckle	<i>Lonicera japonica</i>	Climber
Kaisia berry	<i>Cotoneaster simonsii</i>	Shrub
Kikuyu grass	<i>Pennisetum clandestinum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Knotweed, Asiatic	<i>Reynoutria japonica</i>	Shrub

COMMON NAME	SCIENTIFIC NAME	CATEGORY
Knotweed, Giant	<i>Reynoutria sachalinensis</i>	Shrub
Lagarosiphon	<i>Lagarosiphon major</i>	Aquatic weed
Lodgepole pine	<i>Pinus contorta</i>	Tree
Lupin, Russell	<i>Lupinus polyphyllus</i>	Shrub
Marram grass	<i>Ammophila arenaria</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Mat grass	<i>Nardus stricta</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Montbretia	<i>Crocsmia x crocosmitiflora</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Old man's beard	<i>Clematis vitalba</i>	Climber
Pampas	<i>Cortaderia selloana, C. jubata</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Parrot's feather	<i>Myriophyllum aquaticum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Plectranthus	<i>Plectranthus ciliatus</i>	Ground cover
Privet	<i>Ligustrum sinense</i>	Shrub
Privet, Tree	<i>Ligustrum lucidum</i>	Tree
Red cestrum	<i>Cestrum elegans</i>	Shrub
Reed sweet grass	<i>Glyceria maxima</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Reed canary grass	<i>Phalaris arundinaceae</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Rhododendron	<i>Rhododendron ponticum</i>	Tree
Rowan	<i>Sorbus aucuparia</i>	Tree
Selaginella	<i>Selaginella kraussiana</i>	Ground cover
Spanish heath	<i>Erica lusitanica</i>	Shrub
Spartina	<i>Spartina spp.</i>	Aquatic weed
St Johns wort	<i>Hypericum perforatum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Sweet cherry	<i>Prunus avium</i>	Tree
Sycamore	<i>Acer pseudoplatanus</i>	Tree
Tutsan	<i>Hypericum androsaemum</i>	Shrub
Wandering Jew	<i>Tradescantia fluminensis</i>	Ground cover
Wattle	<i>Racosperma spp.</i>	Tree
White- edged nightshade	<i>Solanum marginatum</i>	Shrub
White water lily	<i>Nymphaea alba</i>	Aquatic weed
Willow, Bitter	<i>Salix elaeagnos</i>	Tree
Willow, Crack	<i>Salix fragilis</i>	Tree
Willow, Grey	<i>Salix cinerea</i>	Tree
Winter heliotrope	<i>Petasites fragrans</i>	Shrub
Yellow flag	<i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Herb/fern/grass

#### MEDIUM PRIORITY WEEDS

American horsebane	<i>Oenanthe sarmentosa</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Angels trumpet	<i>Brugmansia candida</i>	Shrub
Apple	<i>Malus x domestica</i>	Tree
Arum lily	<i>Zantedeschia aethiopica</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Bamboo, Variagated	<i>Pleioblastus variegatus</i>	Shrub
Blue eyed grass	<i>Sisyrinchium 'blue'</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Buttercup, Giant	<i>Ranunculus acris</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Californian thistle	<i>Cirsium arvense</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Canadian pondweed	<i>Elodea canadensis</i>	Aquatic weed
Cotoneaster	<i>Cotoneaster microphyllus</i>	Shrub
Fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia magellanica</i>	Shrub
Greater bindweed	<i>Calystegia silvatica</i>	Ground cover
Hedge stachys	<i>Stachys sylvatica</i>	Ground cover
Hemlock	<i>Conium maculatum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Hops	<i>Humulus lupulus</i>	Climber



COMMON NAME	SCIENTIFIC NAME	CATEGORY
Iceplant	<i>Carpobrotus edulis</i>	Ground cover
Ivy, English	<i>Hedera helix</i>	Climber
Japanese aralia	<i>Fatsia japonica</i>	Climber
Japanese wineberry	<i>Rubus phoenicolasius</i>	Shrub
Jasmine	<i>Jasminum polyanthum</i>	Climber
Jointed rush	<i>Juncus articulatus</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Kaffir lily	<i>Schizostylis coccinea</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Lupin, Tree	<i>Lupinus arboreus</i>	Shrub
Marsh thistle	<i>Cirsium palustre</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Monkey musk	<i>Mimulus guttatus</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Musk	<i>Mimulus moscbatus</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Nasturtium	<i>Tropaeolum majus</i>	Ground cover
Ragwort	<i>Senecio jacobaea</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Periwinkle	<i>Vinca major</i>	Ground cover
Pine	<i>Pinus spp.</i>	Tree
Pohutakawa	<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>	Tree
Quaking grass	<i>Briza maxima</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Rambler rose	<i>Rosa spp.</i>	Climber
Rice paper plant	<i>Tetrapanax papyriferus</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Shamrock pea	<i>Parochetus communis</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Spearwort	<i>Ranunculus flammula</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Three-cornered garlic	<i>Allium triquetrum</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Velvety nightshade	<i>Solanum chenopodioides</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Vipers bugloss	<i>Echium vulgare</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Wild turnip	<i>Brassica rapa</i>	Herb/fern/grass

#### LOW PRIORITY WEEDS

Buttercup, Creeping	<i>Ranunculus repens</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Cleavers	<i>Galium aparine</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Creeping bent	<i>Agrostis stolonifera</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Escallonia	<i>Escallonia rubra</i>	Shrub
Foxglove	<i>Digitalis purpurea</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Lotus	<i>Lotus pedunculatus</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Marsh bedstraw	<i>Galium palustre</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Scotch thistle	<i>Cirsium vulgare</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Selfheal	<i>Prunella vulgaris</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Watercress	<i>Rorippa nasturtium-aquaticum</i>	Aquatic weed
Water forget-me-not	<i>Myosotis spp.</i>	Aquatic weed
Tarweed	<i>Parentucellia viscosa</i>	Herb/fern/grass
Yarrow	<i>Achillea millefolium</i>	Herb/fern/grass



# Appendix 6

## GEOLOGICAL FEATURES AND LANDFORMS OF INTERNATIONAL, NATIONAL OR REGIONAL SIGNIFICANCE IN THE WEST COAST *TAI POUTINI CONSERVANCY*

GEOLOGICAL SITE	VULNERABILITY SCORE
<b>SITES OF INTERNATIONAL SCIENTIFIC IMPORTANCE</b>	
Buller gorge non-marine sedimentary sequence and plant beds	3
Cowan Creek daqingshanite carbonatite	3
Fox glacier <i>Te Moeka o Tuawe</i>	3
Franz Josef glacier <i>Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere</i>	3
Gaunt Creek Alpine Fault overthrust exposure	3
Gillespies Beach huttonite	3
Glenroy buchite with clinoenstatite	3
Gorge River awaruite	3
Haast Pass schist section	4
Hare Mare Creek Alpine Fault overthrust	3
Honeycomb Hill Holocene cave system	1
Kaka Creek Alpine Fault exposure	3
Lankey Creek Devonian fossils (Reefton)	2
Maruia River faulted terraces (Alpine Fault)	2
Megamania Cave*	1
Moa Cave, Ōpārara	1
Mount Inframeta pounamu ultramafics	3
Perpendicular Point Eocene crab and echinoid fossils	3
Rainy Creek Devonian fossils (Reefton)	2
Speargrass Fault Zone	3
Springs Junction Devonian road section	3
Te Ana Titi Cave*	1
Waiho valley alpine schist	3
Waikukupā thrust complex	3
Waitahu River Devonian section (Reefton)	2
Yorkey Creek Devonian fossils (Reefton)	2
<b>SITES OF NATIONAL SCIENTIFIC, EDUCATIONAL OR AESTHETIC IMPORTANCE</b>	
Abbey Rocks lithographic stone quarry	3
Alexander Street Miocene fossils (Greymouth)	5
Babylon Cave	2
Bamboo Cave	1
Blackball scarps (flexural slip faults A, B, C)	3
Buller Gorge	3
Buller Gorge uranium find	2
Callery Gorge	3
Charleston beryl	3

GEOLOGICAL SITE	VULNERABILITY SCORE
Charleston mica-rich granite / tonalite	3
Cook River <i>Webeke</i> mouth lateral moraine	3
Davis Creek gneiss	3
Desolation Row columbite and gahnite	3
Douglas Creek ultramafic pods	3
Dry Creek pseudotachylite	3
Fourteen to Seventeen Mile Bluffs folding	3
Franz Josef Glacier <i>Kā Roimata o Hinebukatere</i> glacierised surfaces	2
Grey River <i>Māuهرانui</i> Eocene sandstone and coal measures	3
Haast dune sequence	2
Hapuka Estuary	2
Hope Saddle glacial/interglacial sediments	3
Inchbonnie en-echelon fault scarps (Alpine Fault)	2
Ivory glacierised surfaces and Ivory Lake	3
Kapitea Creek Miocene macrofossils	3
Karoro Brickworks Miocene fossils	1
Kehu Stream fluorite	3
Kelly Saddle fault traces and ridge rents	2
Kiwi Jack Creek hornfels	3
Lake Brunner lamprophyre dike and alkali-metasomatism	3
La Perouse moraine	3
Loopline terminal moraine	2
Maruia Basin en echelon fold	3
Maruia Palaeozoic fossils/tauna	3
McLaughlins Pit crossbedded sand	2
Moana lateral moraine	3
Mount Albert fenite	3
Mount La Perouse folded schist	3
Nile River Cave (Te Ananui or Metro Cave)	3
Ohika hydrothermal metamorphism	4
Okuru River faulted terraces (Alpine Fault)	2
Ōpārara Arch	3
Ōpārara Quarry granite	3
Orowaiti raised terraces	3
Paparoa coal measures*	3
Paparoa interstratal karst, incorporating Punakaiki anticline and Barrytown syncline*	3
Paringa Fold (Alpine Fault)	3
Point Elizabeth mid-Tertiary fossiliferous sediments	3
Punakaiki pancake rocks, Dolomite Point	2
Selbourne Spur uplifted wave cut platforms	3
Slippery Rock Alpine Fault exposure	3
Taipo Spur molybdenite	3
Tawhārekiri Lakes salt pan and blowout	2
Tiropahi River giant crystals	2
Torea Rocks brecciated granite	3
Trig FZ exposure of Alpine Fault	2
Uranium Creek coffinite	3
Waiho River moraine loop	3
Waiho Valley cummingtonite	3

GEOLOGICAL SITE	VULNERABILITY SCORE
Whakapoai Point fluorite	3
White Creek Fault displaced terraces	2
White Horse Creek ultramylonites	3
Xanadu Cave/Bullock Creek/Cave Creek South <i>Kotibotibo</i>	3
<b>SITES OF REGIONAL SCIENTIFIC, EDUCATIONAL OR AESTHETIC IMPORTANCE</b>	
Ahaura River gorge	2
Alpine Fault (Tophouse-Taramakau), Evans River	3
Barrytown alluvial fans	3
Barrytown granite pluton and associated scheelite deposit	3
Brunner Gorge	3
Burnett Stream porphyry	2
Callaghans Creek Miocene macrofossils	2
Cape Foulwind granite	3
Cape Foulwind granodiorite	3
Cape Foulwind mid-Tertiary strata	3
Cascade morainic plateau	3
Cascade Point Pleistocene fossils	3
Clark Bluff folds	2
Cobden quarry Oligocene echinoids	3
Copland River (Welcome Flat) springs	2
Dee and Ram Creeks 1968 fault scarp	3
Denniston incline and coal workings	2
Denniston plateau	3
Denniston Road conglomerate sequence	4
Devastation Creek	3
Dublin Terrace fault scarp (Lyell Fault)	2
Evans River Alpine Fault exposure	3
Fern Flat granite	3
Fox Glacier <i>Te Moeka o Tuawe</i> glacierised surface	2
Fox Glacier <i>Te Moeka o Tuawe</i> rockfall	3
Fox River Cave/Armageddon Cave	3
Fox River mouth Hawks Crag Breccia	3
Fox River springs	2
Fox River Tourist cave, Paparoa National Park*	2
Gentle Annie Point Oligocene structures	3
Glenroy granulites	3
Glenroy Road fault traces (Alpine Fault)	3
Guillotine/Hunters Cave	3
Hauptiri River springs	2
Hawks Crag breccia	3
Hawks Crag inselbergs	3
Hills Peak rock slide	3
Hochstetter Dam, Nelson Creek	3
Hollywood Cave*	1
Hokitika Gorge migmatite gneiss	2
Honeycomb Hill Arch	3
Howard Valley gabbro-norite	3
Ikamatua alluvial terraces	3
Imp Grotto Haast Schist antiform exposure	3

GEOLOGICAL SITE	VULNERABILITY SCORE
Inangahua Earthquake slip scar	3
Inangahua Junction 1968 fault scarp (Glasgow Fault)	2
Kaiata Creek Eocene fossil sequence	3
Kaniere River Pliocene fossils	4
Kawhaka Dam	2
Kelly Range ravine	2
Kini Creek kyanite	3
Knights Point marine terrace	3
Kohaihai Bluff Oligocene shallow water fossils	3
Kokatahi River springs	2
Lake Ahaura moraine dammed lake	3
Lake Ianthe moraine dammed lake	3
Lake Mahināpua moraine dammed lake	3
Larry River terraces	2
Little Wanganui River mouth Oligocene debris flows and fossils	3
Little Wanganui River Pliocene fossils	3
MacPherson Creek mylonites	3
Mahināpua dune field	2
Makaawhio River rock block slide	3
Matakitaki imbricate thrust sequence	3
Moonraker Antiform chevron folding	3
Moria Gate limestone arch, Ōpārara	2
Mount Ashmore alluvial fan	3
Mount Durward quartz vein	3
Mount Garibaldi karst	3
Mount Harry cataclasite	3
Mungo River springs	2
Murchison 1929 road displacement	2
New River section, Brunner Anticline	3
Ngakawau gorge	3
Nine and Twelve Mile Bluff coal measures	3
Ōkārīto Lagoon	3
O'Sullivan's granite	3
Otehake River springs	2
Otira River springs	2
Oweka rock block slide	3
Pāringa River mouth early Tertiary strata	3
Pāringa volcanic breccia	3
Paroa Lagoon ponding	3
Payne Creek granodiorite	3
Perpendicular Point vertical sea cliff	3
Pororari River uranium	3
Punakaiki River cordierite	3
Rewanui Incline	2
Rotomanu roche moutonnee	2
Sabot Creek, Bald Hill Range Thrust	3
Saddle Creek blastomylonite	3
Ship Creek <i>Tauparīkaka</i> basalt	3
Smith Gorge, Fraser Complex	3
Stockton structural detachment	2

GEOLOGICAL SITE	VULNERABILITY SCORE
Taipo River (Fraser) springs	2
Tansey Moraine section, Brunner Anticline	3
Tauranga Bay tombolo	3
Te Tahī Cave	2
Three Mile Hill roche moutonnée	3
Tiropahi alluvial terraces	3
Tiropahi gorge	2
Toaroha River (Cedar Flats) springs	2
Waiho River (Franz Josef <i>Waiāu</i> ) springs	2
Waitaha River hot spring	2
Waita River mouth lagoon and dune barrier	2
Wanganui River springs	2
Westport marine terraces	3
Whale Creek granite	3
Whataroa (Perth River) springs	2
Whitecliffs bluffs	3
Whitecliffs Oligocene hardground	3
Woodpecker Bay mid-Tertiary fossils	3

#### NOTES:

The information in Appendix 6 originated from: Kenny, J.A.; Hayward, B.W. (Editors) 1999. Inventory and maps of important geological sites and landforms in the West Coast Region. *Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication* 105. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt. Available online at <http://homepages.ihug.co.nz/~bw.hayward/NZGI/>

Appendix 6 also includes additional examples of caves and karst sites that, in the Department's opinion, are of high significance. These examples are highlighted with an asterisk. Cave and karst values and threats to these values are discussed in detail in Part 3, Section 3.3.2.3.

The inventory includes a number of historic places such as gold mine sites that have historical significance rather than significant geological features that need to be preserved. Those historic places have been omitted from this Appendix.

#### KEY:

1 = Highly vulnerable to complete destruction or major human modification

2 = Moderately vulnerable to human modification

3 = Unlikely to be damaged by humans

4 = Could be improved by human activity

5 = Site already destroyed





# Appendix 7

## CONCESSIONAIRE GUIDED GROUP SIZE LIMITS FOR TRACKS IN THE BACKCOUNTRY-REMOTE ZONE

Group sizes are assessed on a case by case basis, depending on the location, setting and activity. While group sizes of concessionaire-guided parties travelling on tracks in the backcountry-remote zone should generally not exceed eight people (see Section 3.6.1.4), some track and hut systems within this zone do have the capacity to accommodate larger group sizes.

(a) Group sizes of up to a maximum of 15 people, including guides, may be authorised for concessionaire-guided parties travelling on the following tracks:

- Inland Pack track
- St James Walkway
- Lake Daniells track
- Kirwans track
- Big River track [Waiuta to Inangahua River]
- Croesus track
- Taramakau Valley track to Harper Pass
- Lake Kaurapataka track
- Deception Valley track
- Kelly Creek tracks
- Taipo Valley track to Dillons Hut [lower reaches only]
- Styx Valley - Styx Saddle - Arahura Valley track
- Lower Toaroha Valley track to Cedar Flat Hut
- Lower Mikonui Flats track to Mikonui Flat hut
- Haast /Paringa Cattle track

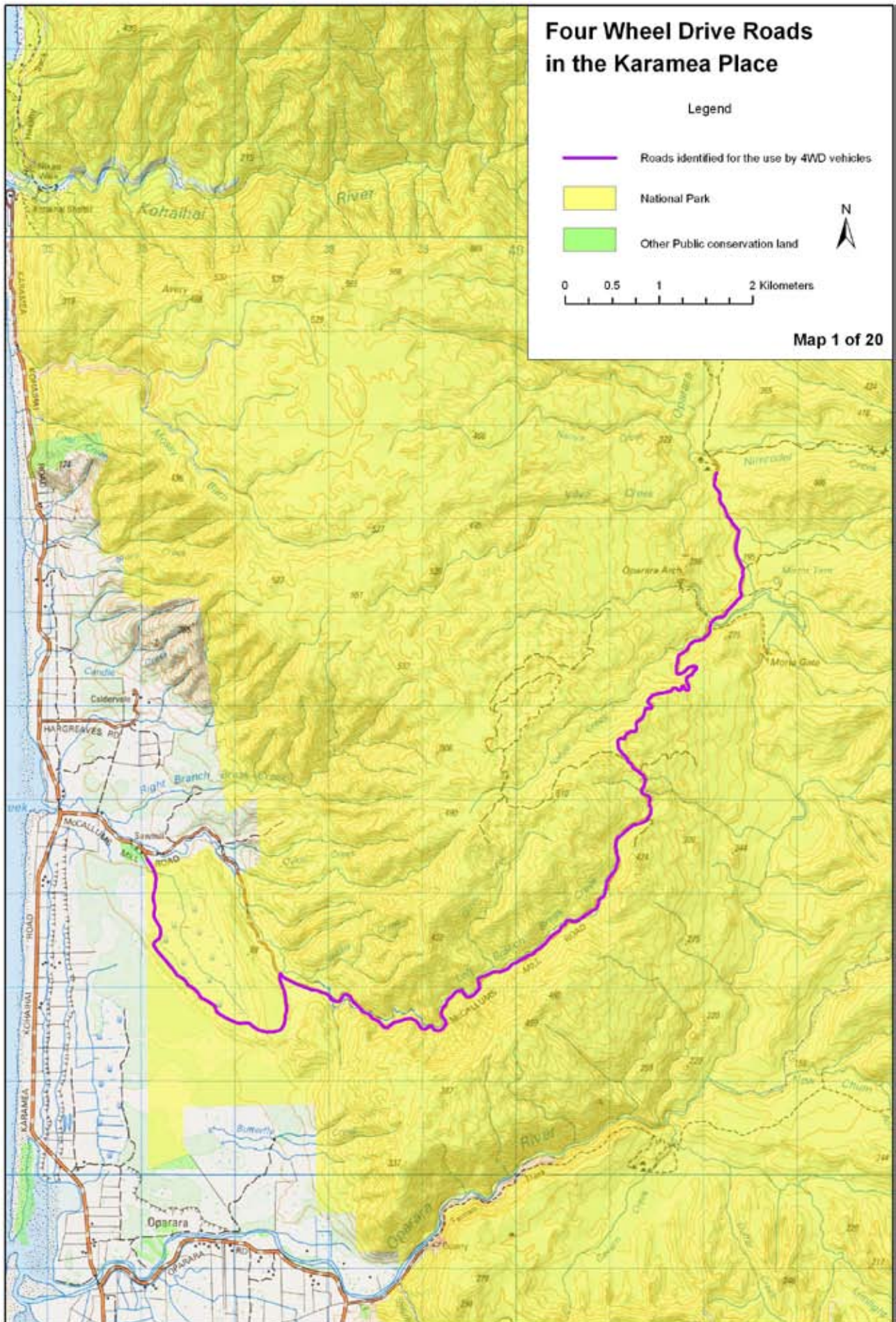
(b) Group sizes of up to a maximum of 12 people, including guides, may be authorised for concessionaire-guided parties travelling on the following tracks:

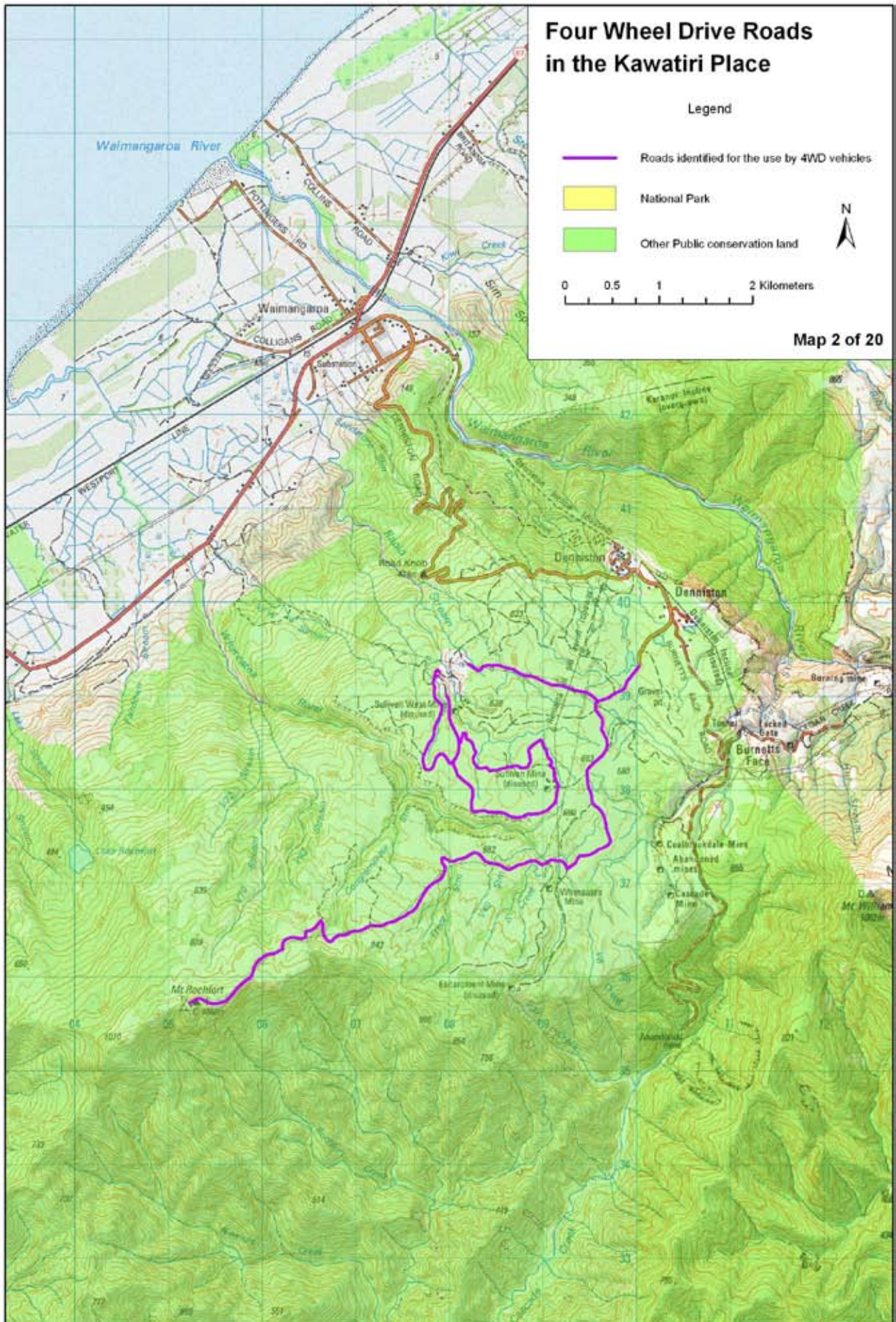
- Heaphy Great Walk
- Wangapeka track
- Copland Valley track to Welcome Flat

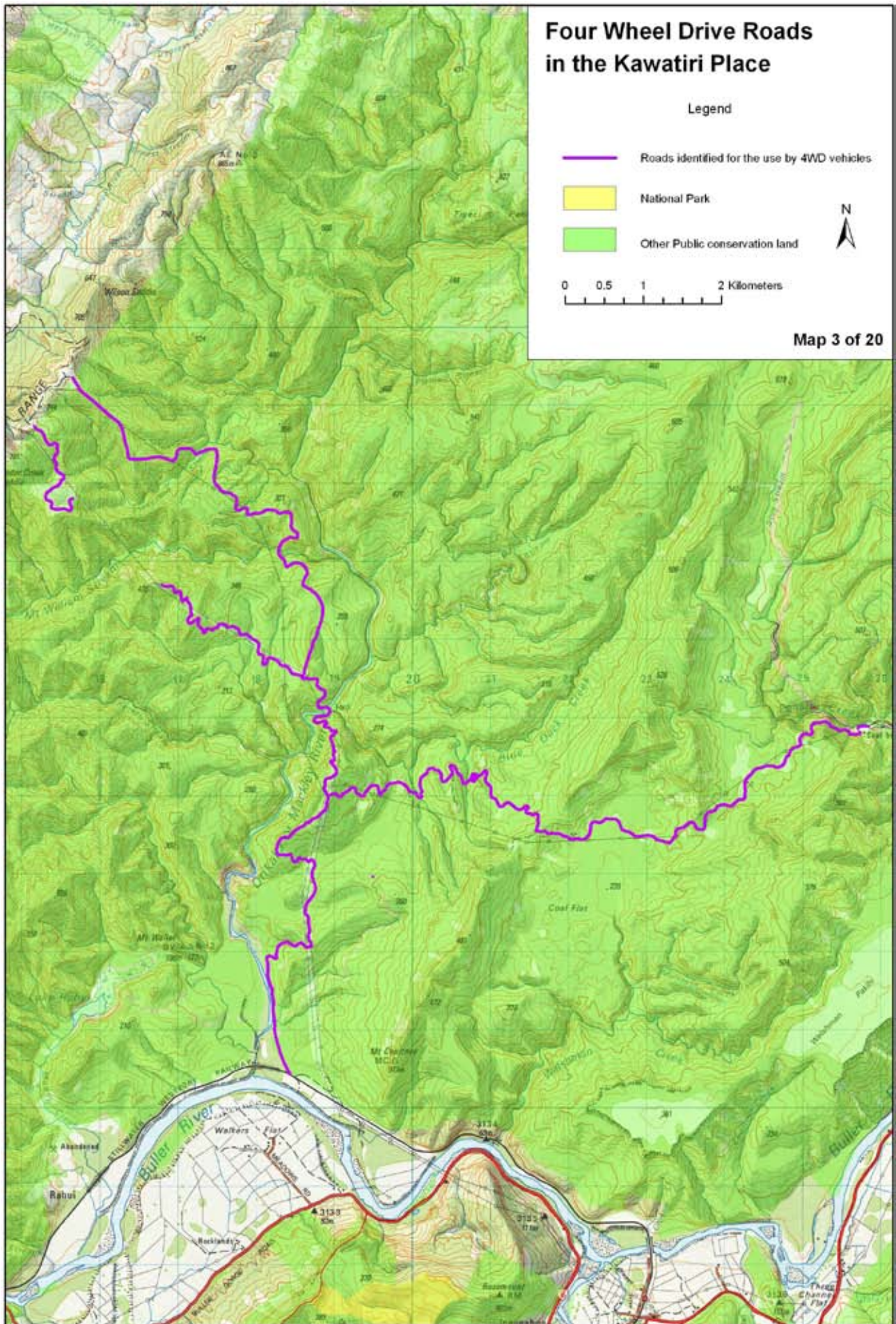
# Appendix 8

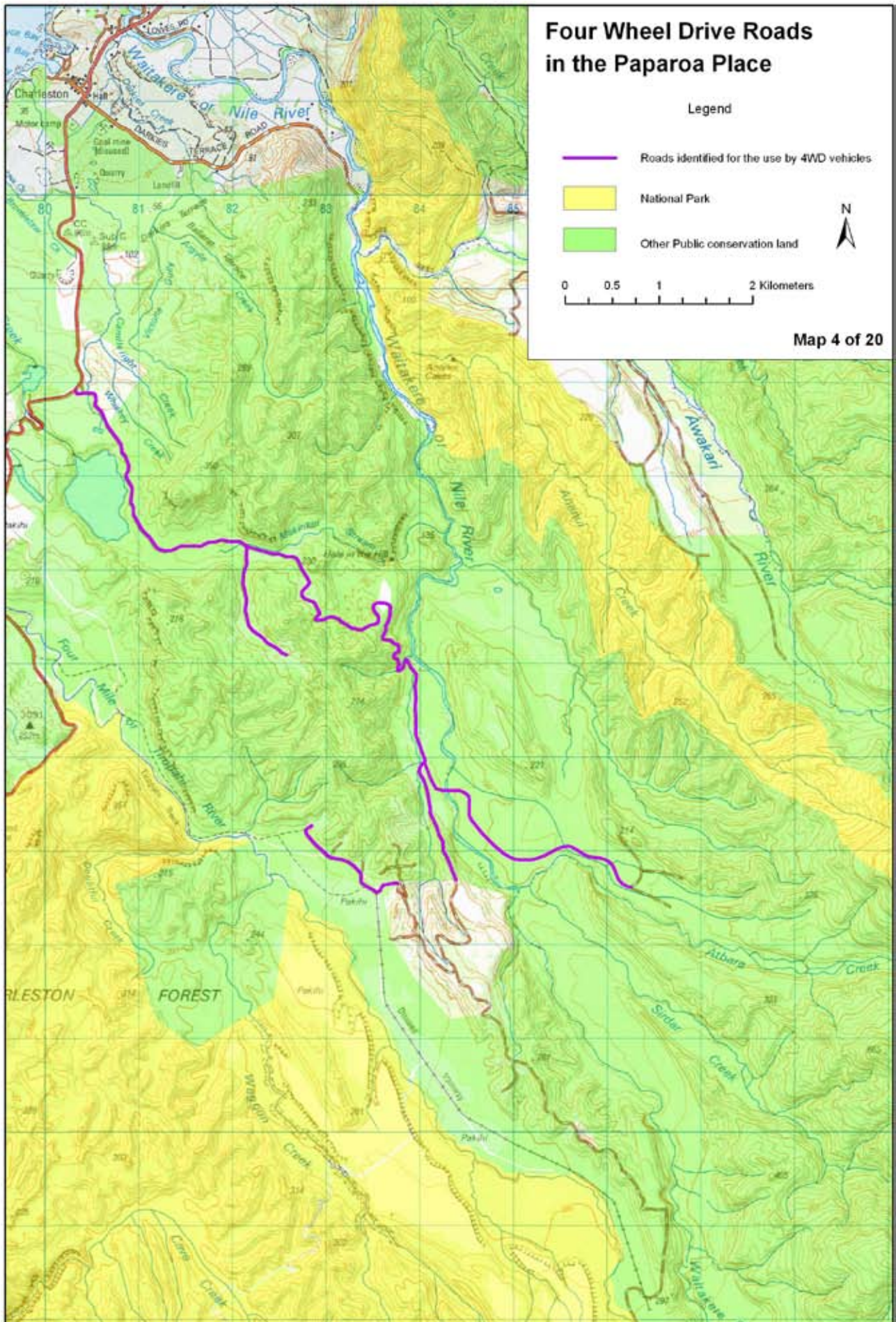
## MAPS SHOWING ROADS IDENTIFIED FOR FOUR WHEEL DRIVE VEHICLE USE

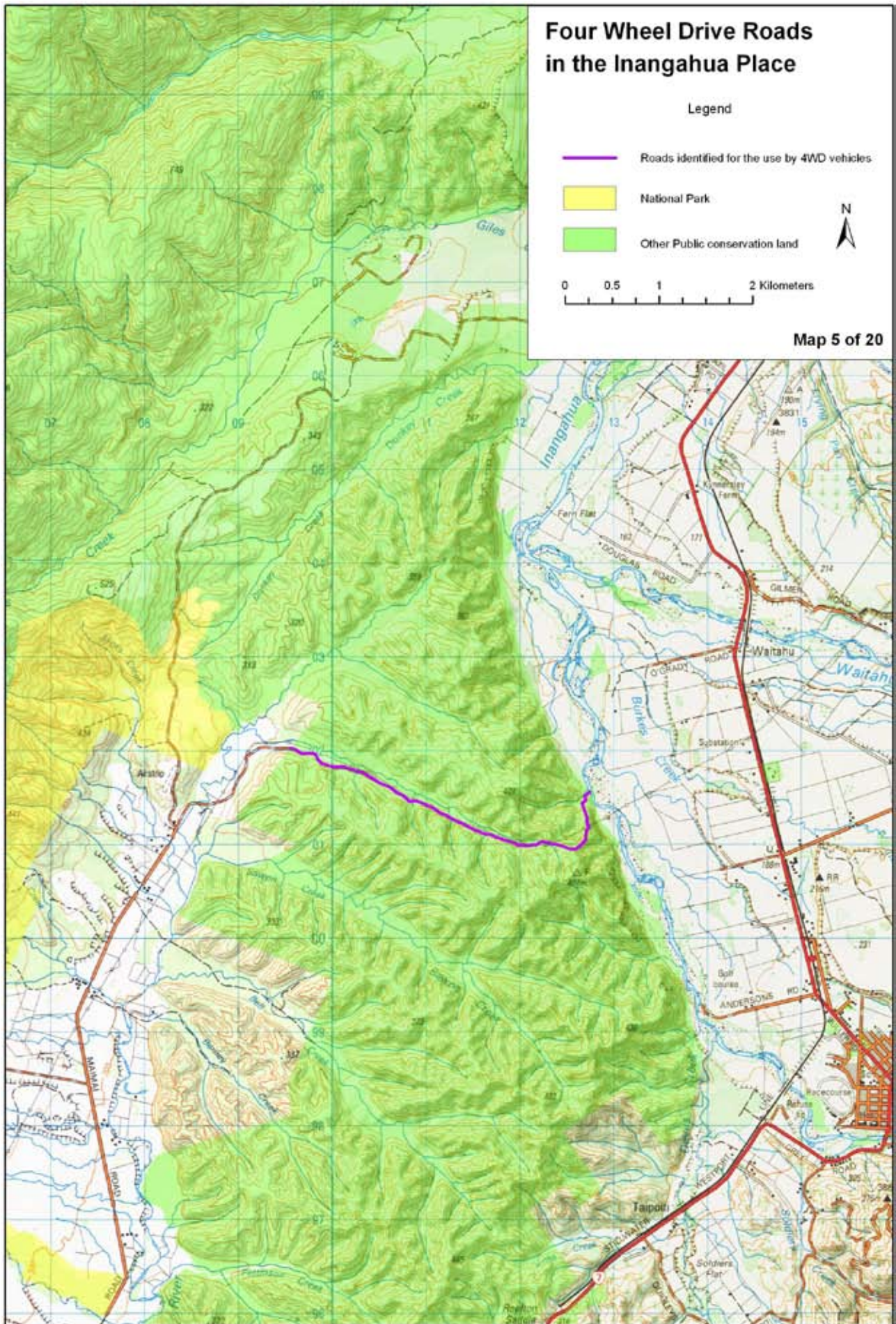
The maps in Appendix 8 have been prepared in consultation with some of the four wheel drive clubs who submitted on the draft CMS and are to be used in conjunction with the policies outlined in Section 3.6.4.17. They show roads on public conservation lands that are available for four wheel drive vehicle use (including all terrain vehicles, trail bikes and quad bikes). Permission from private landowners is required to access some of these roads. Note that roads maintained to two wheel drive standard, which are used by all types of vehicles, remain available for use but are deliberately not highlighted on these maps.

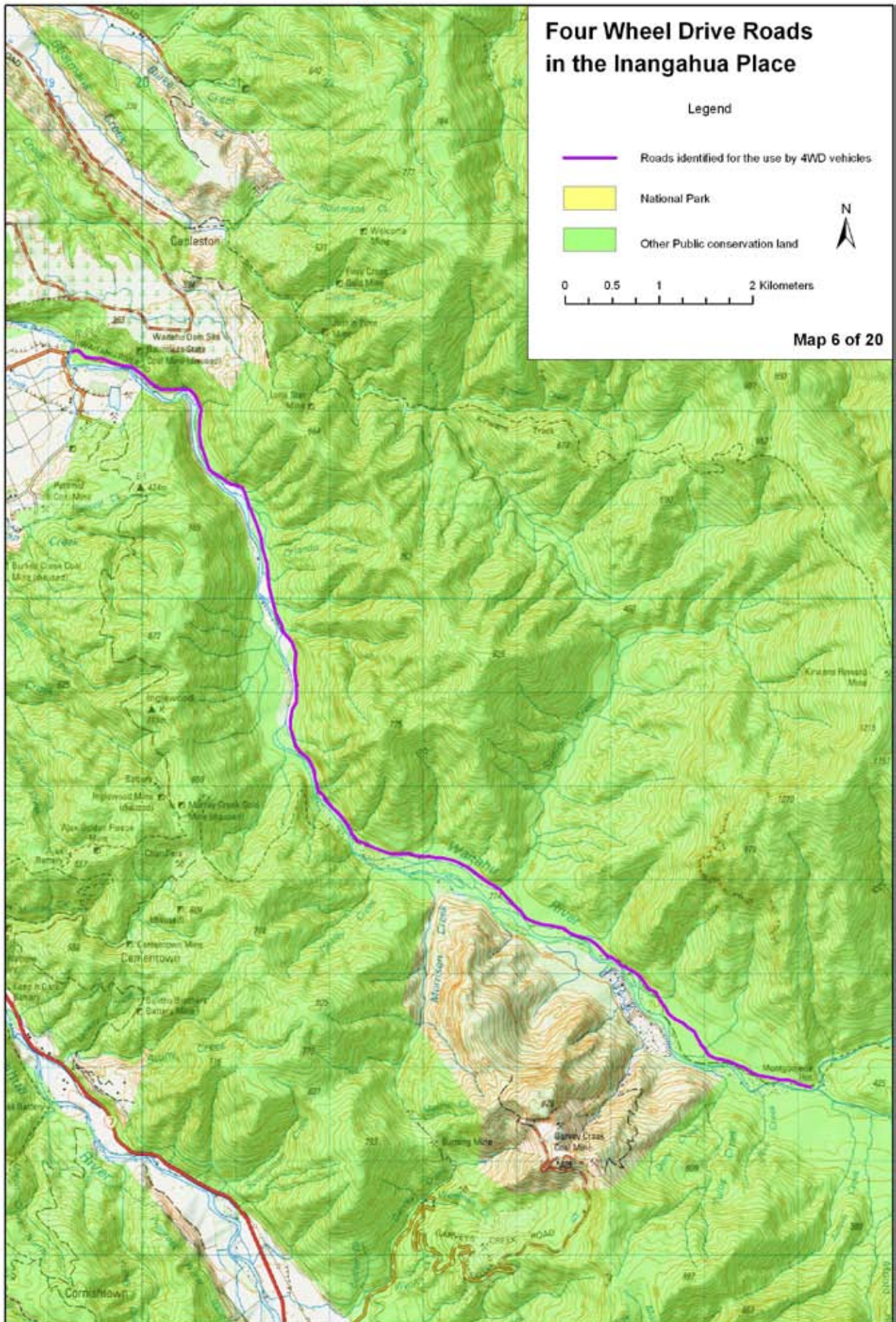




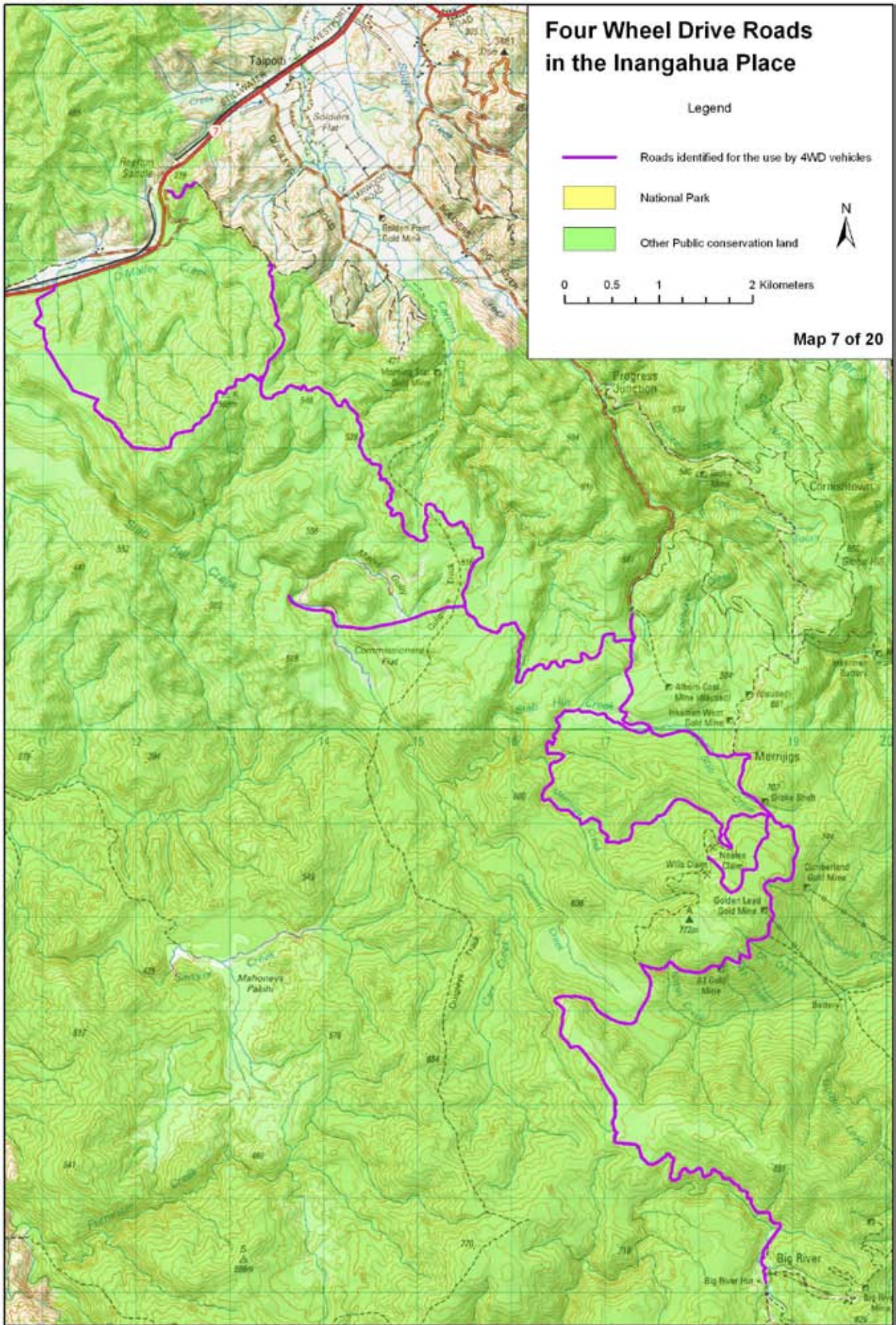


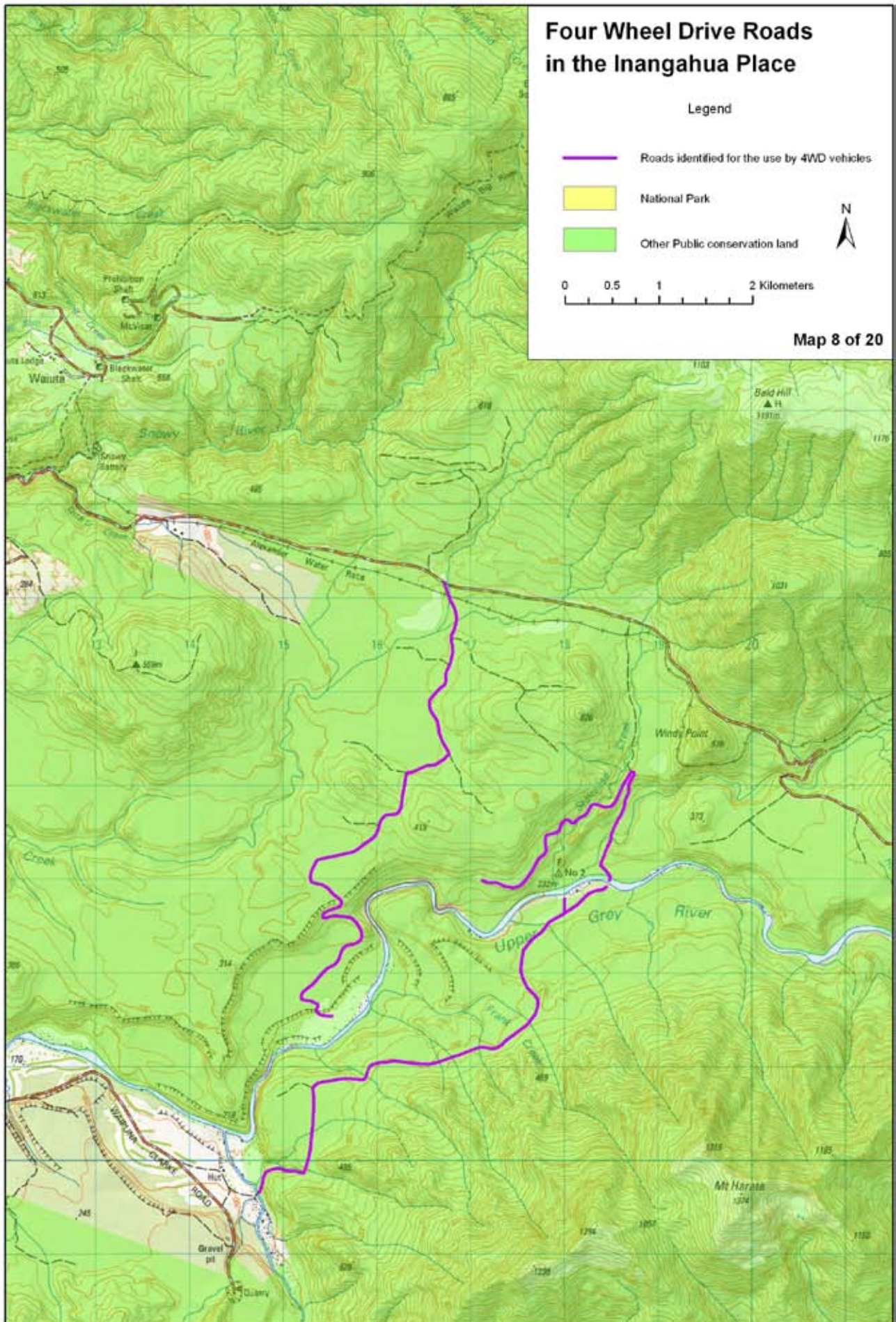


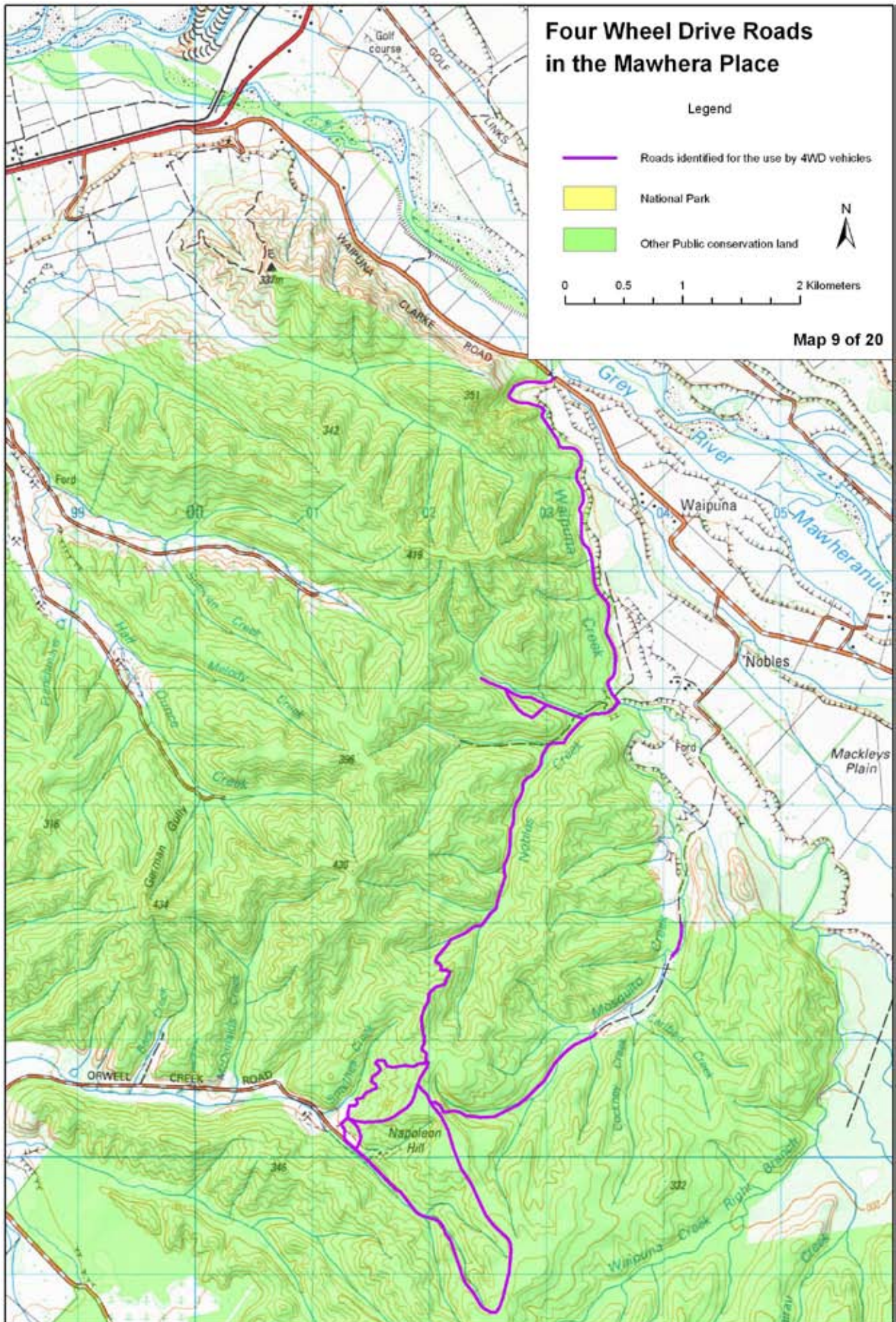


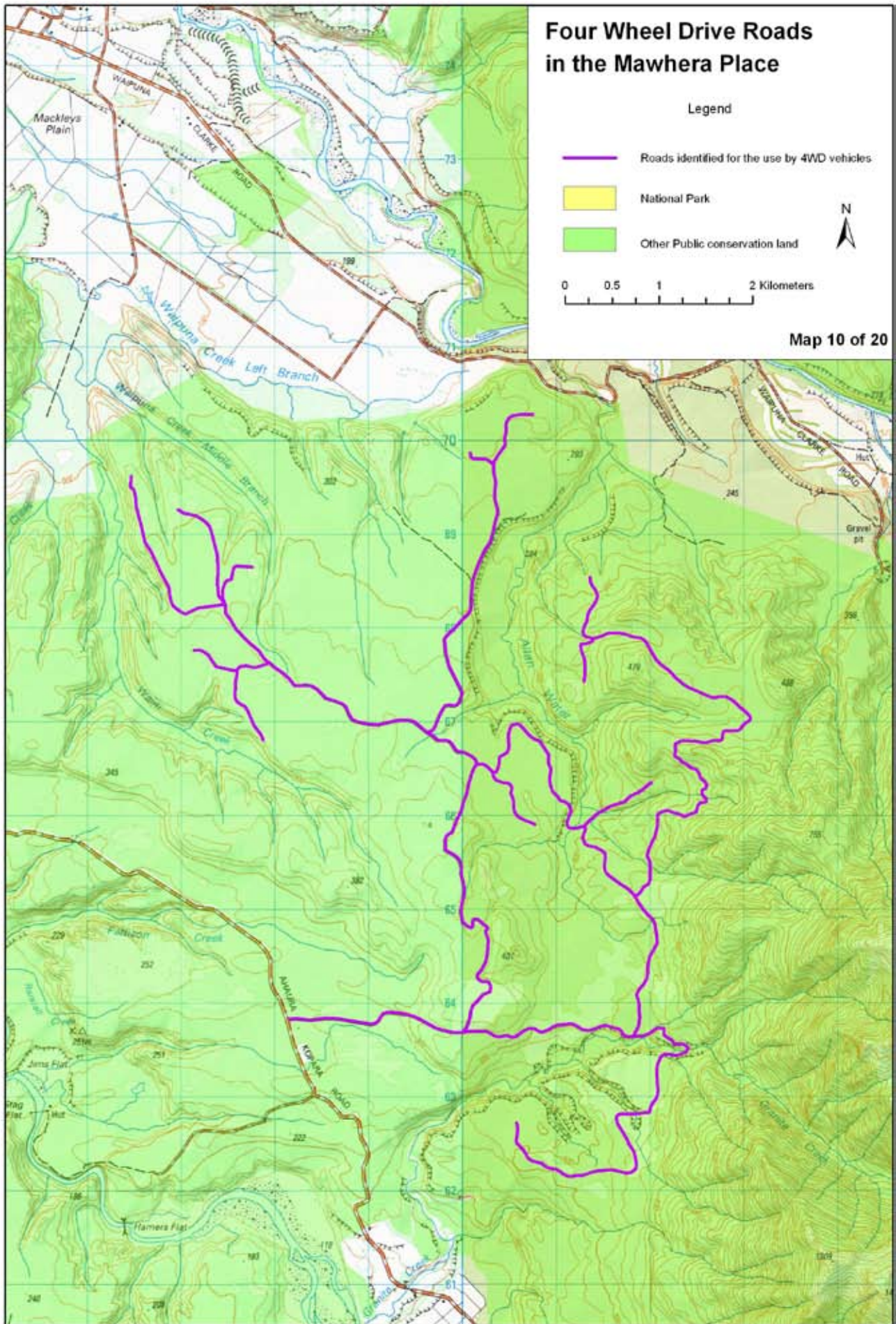


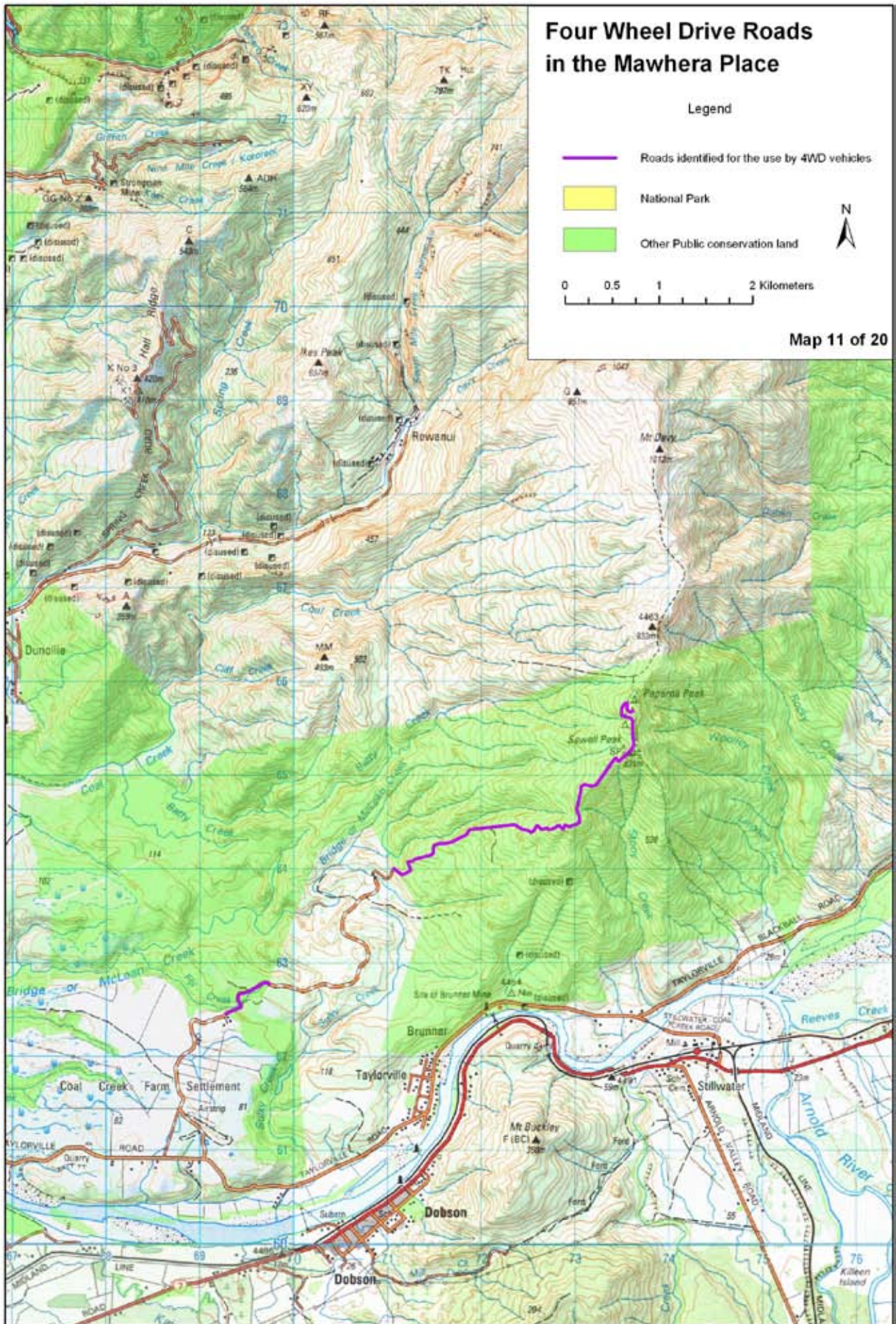


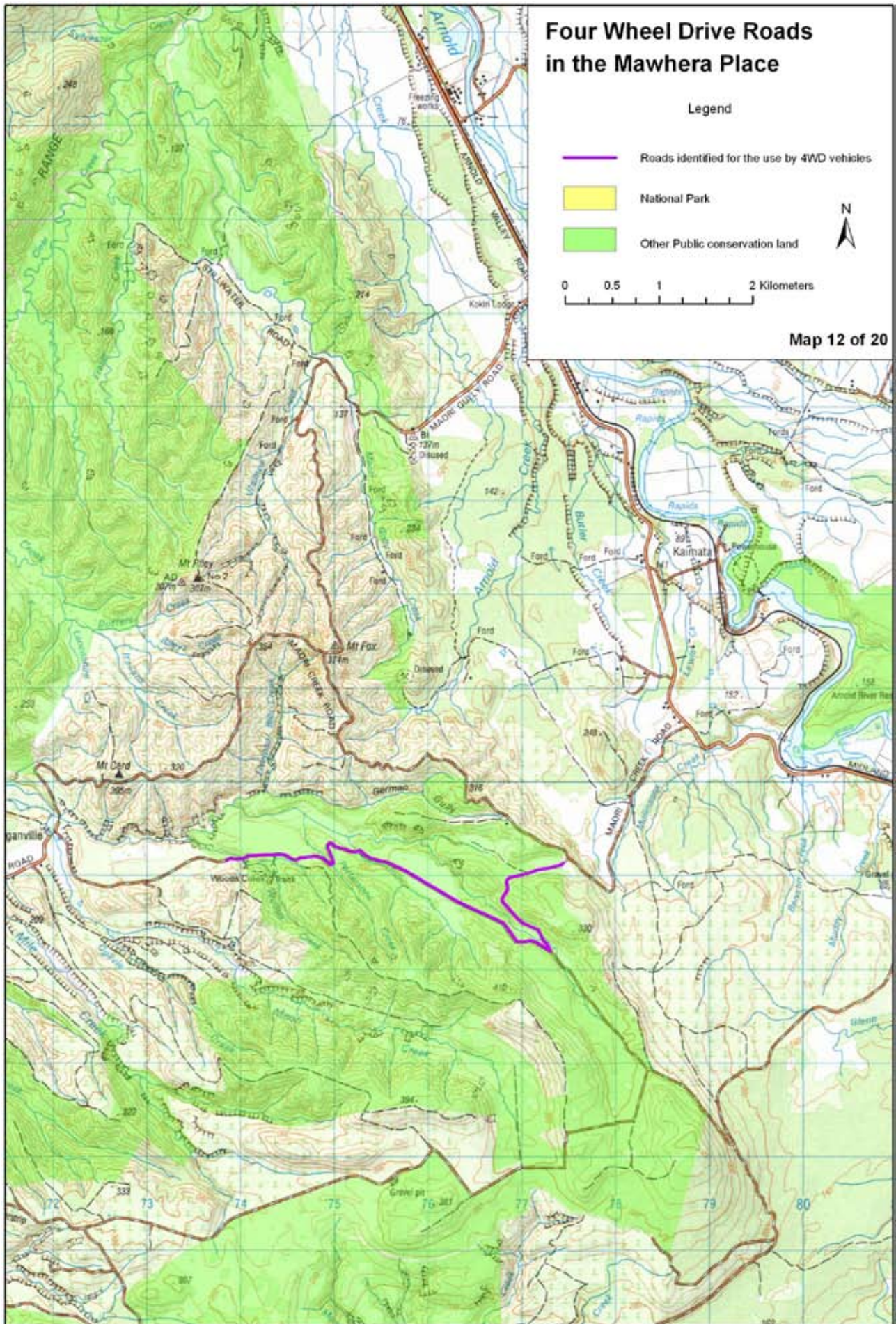


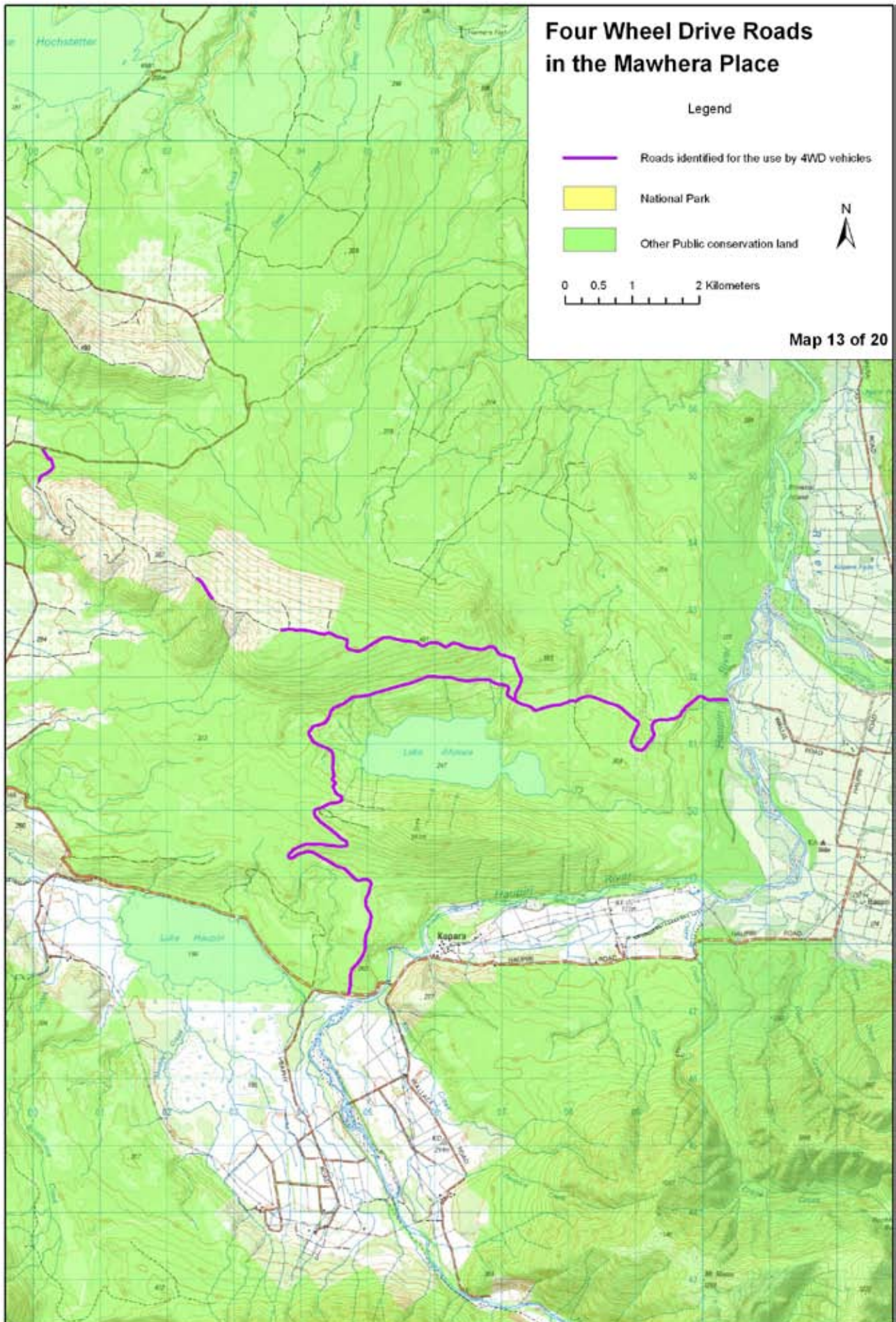


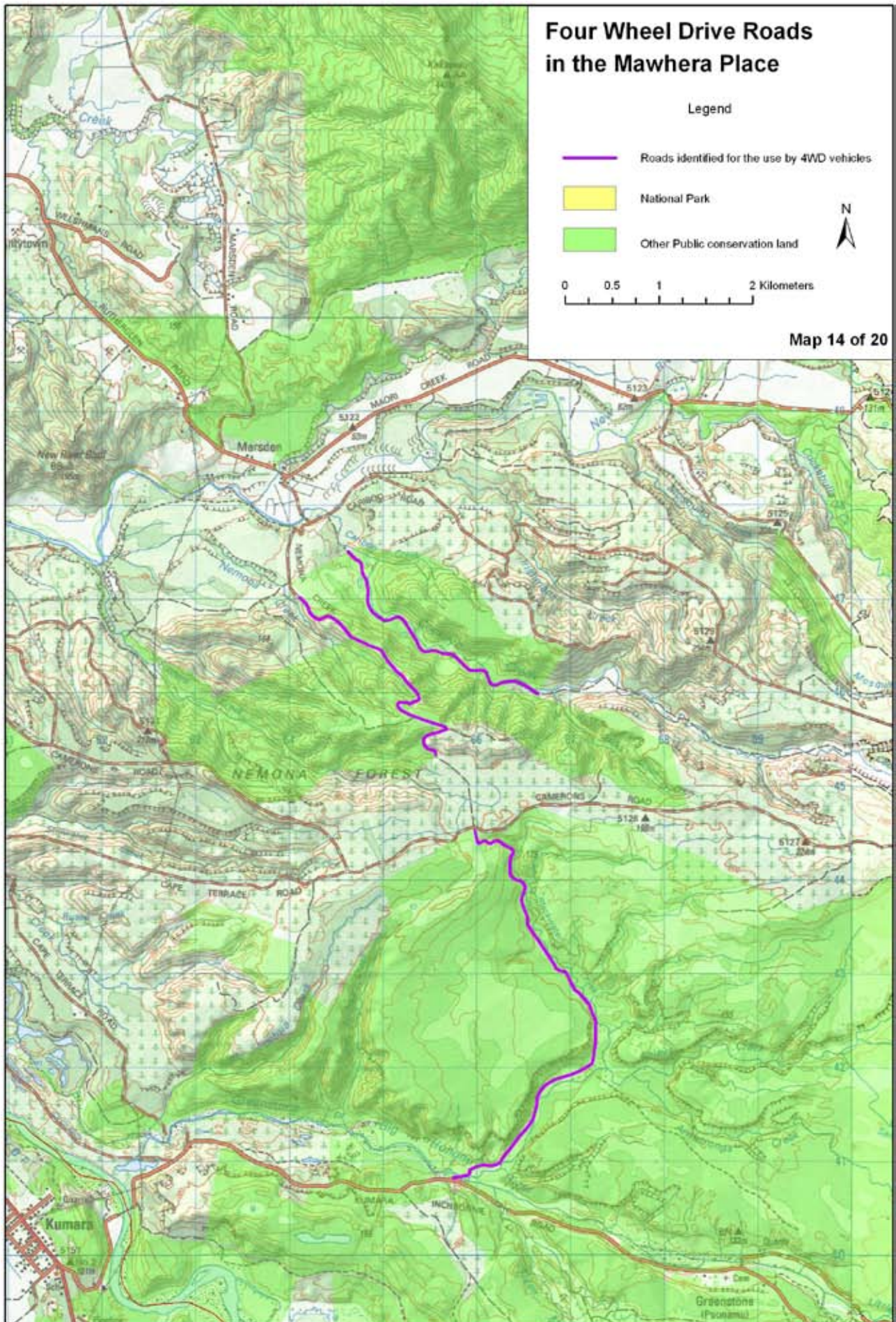




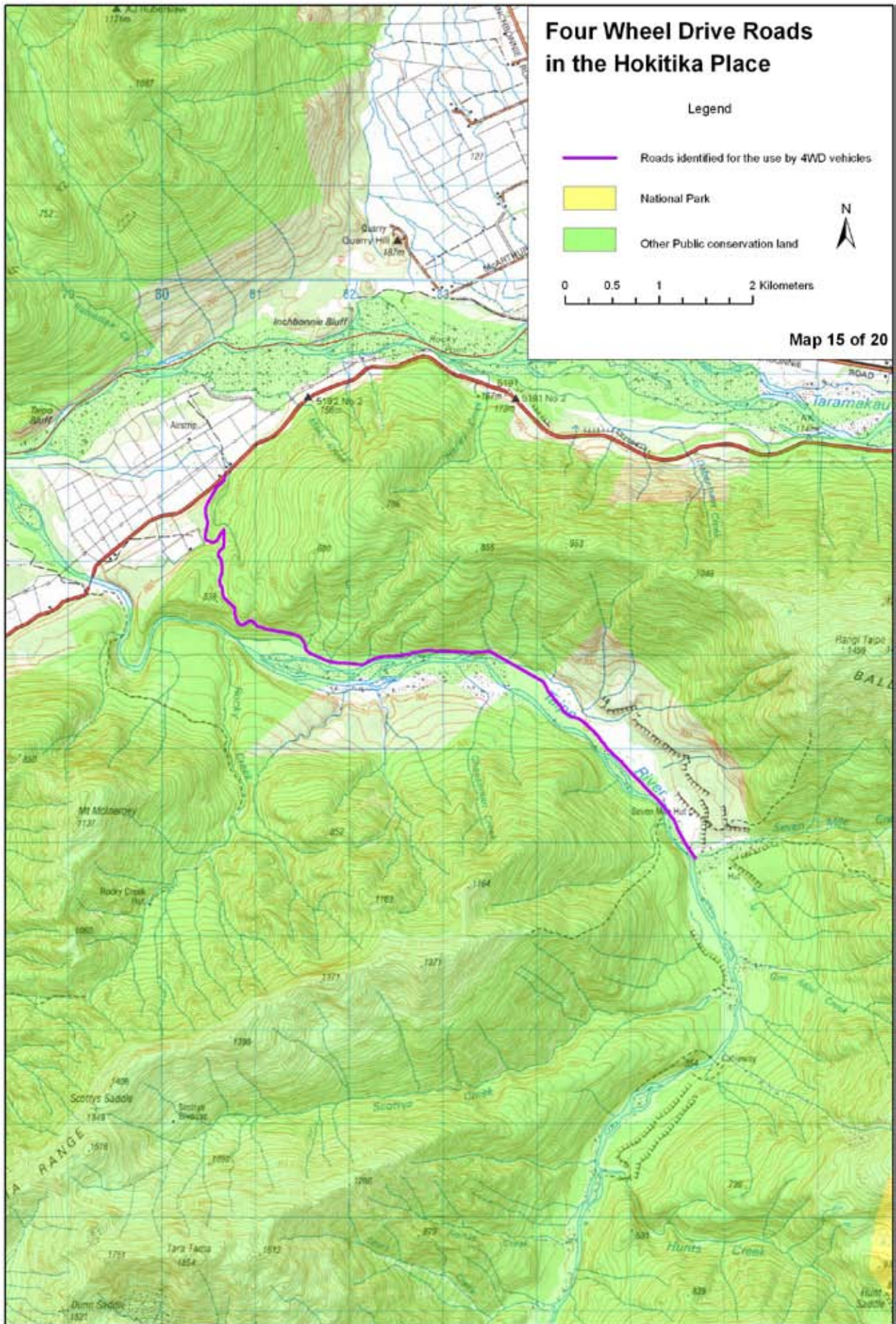


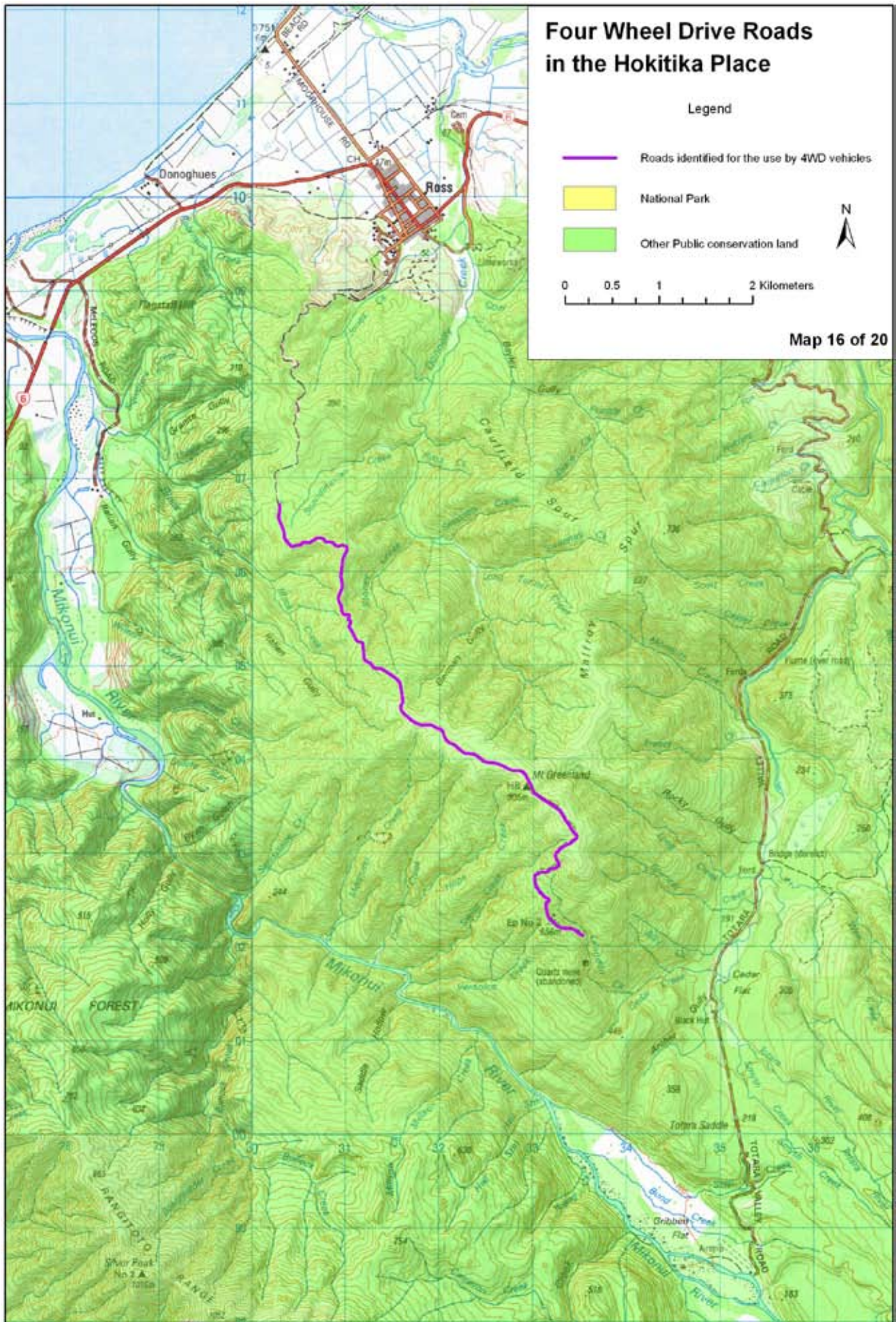


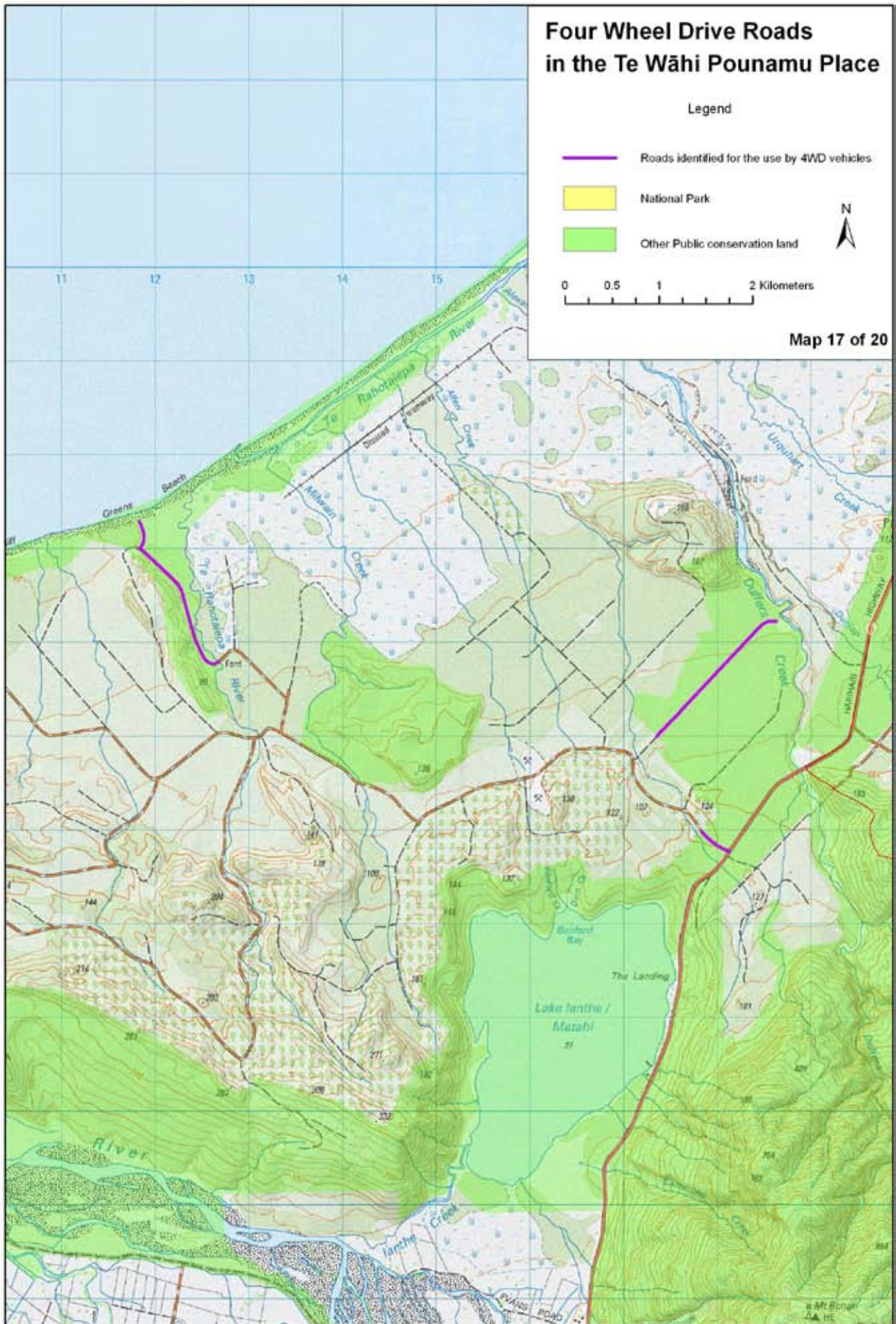


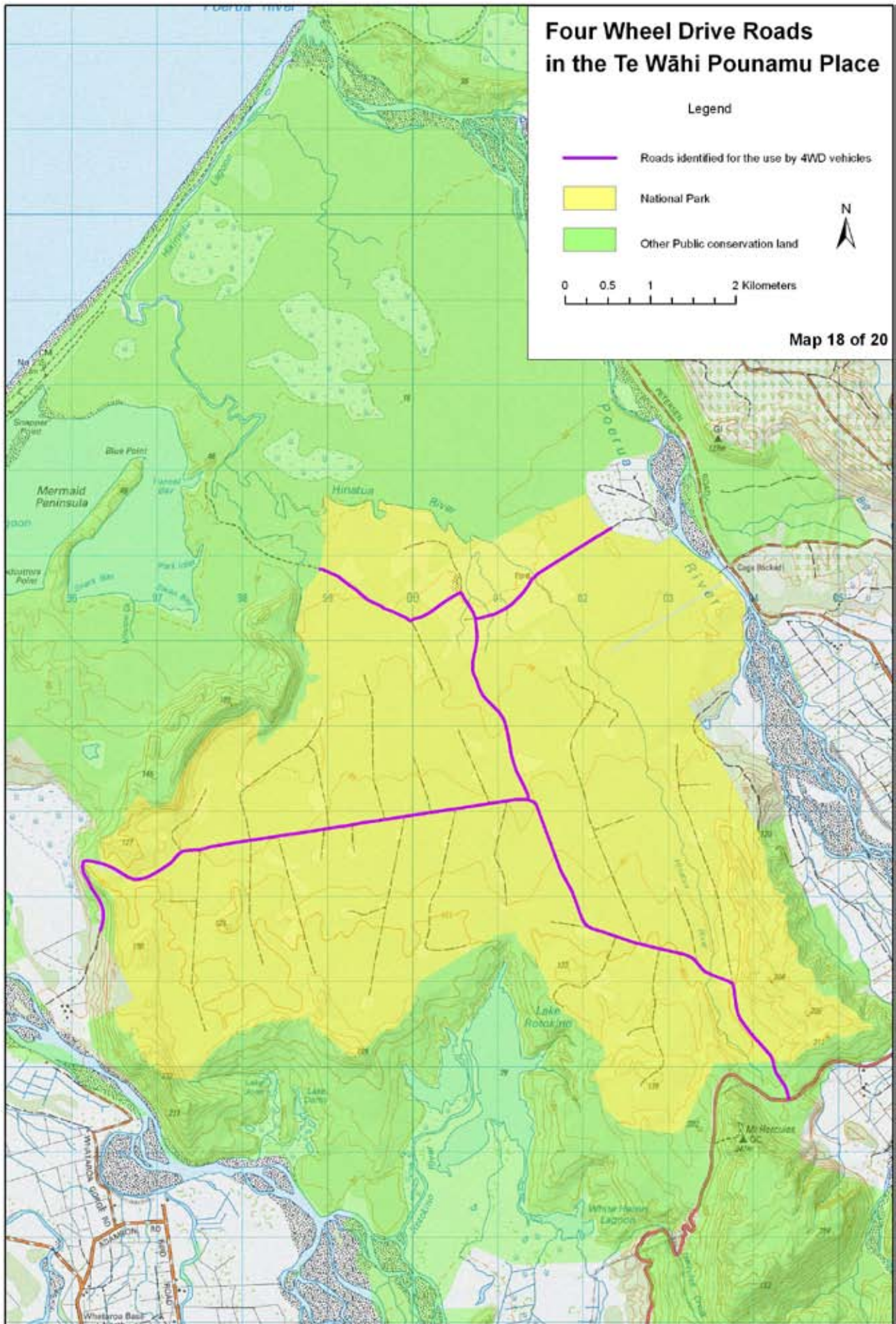


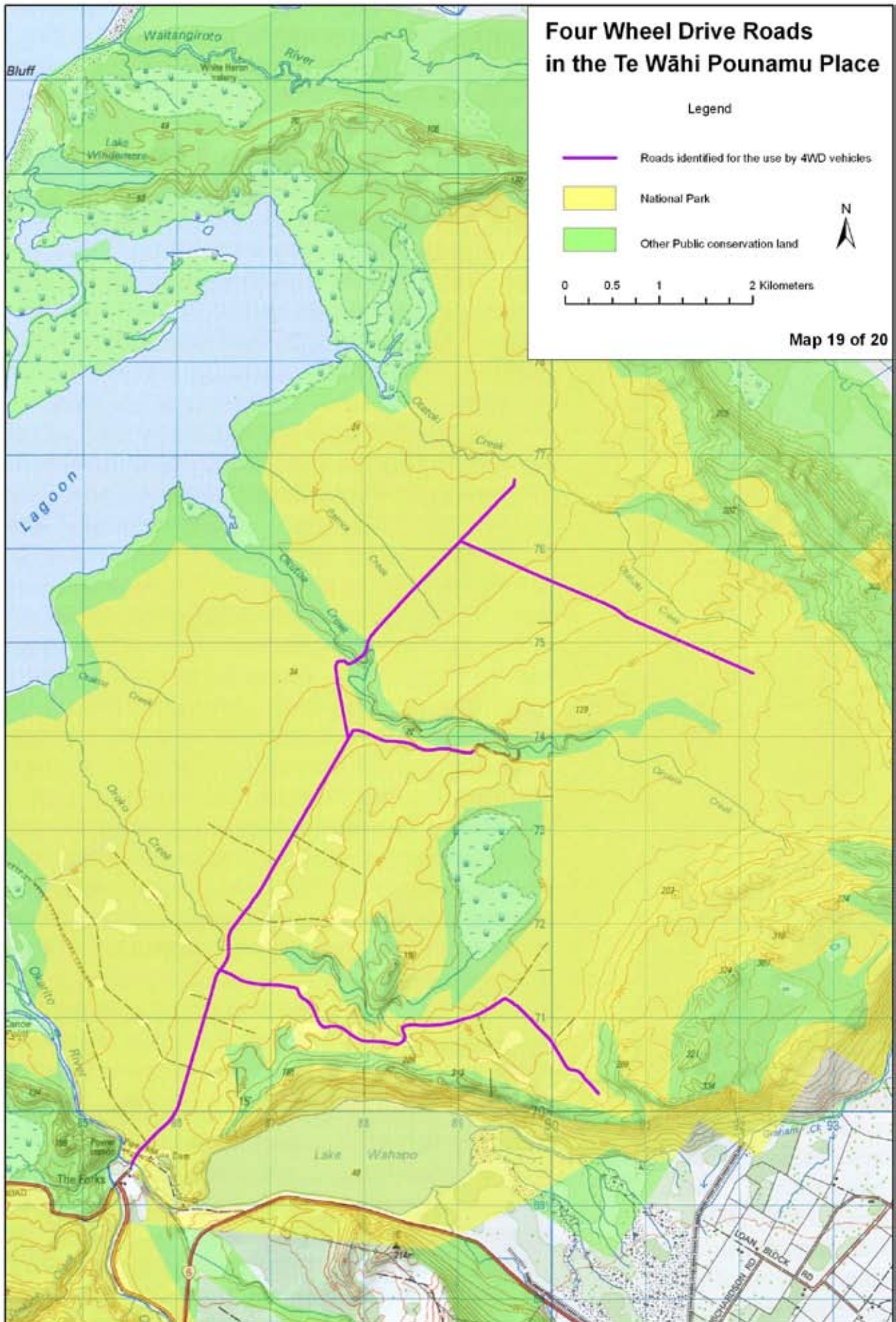


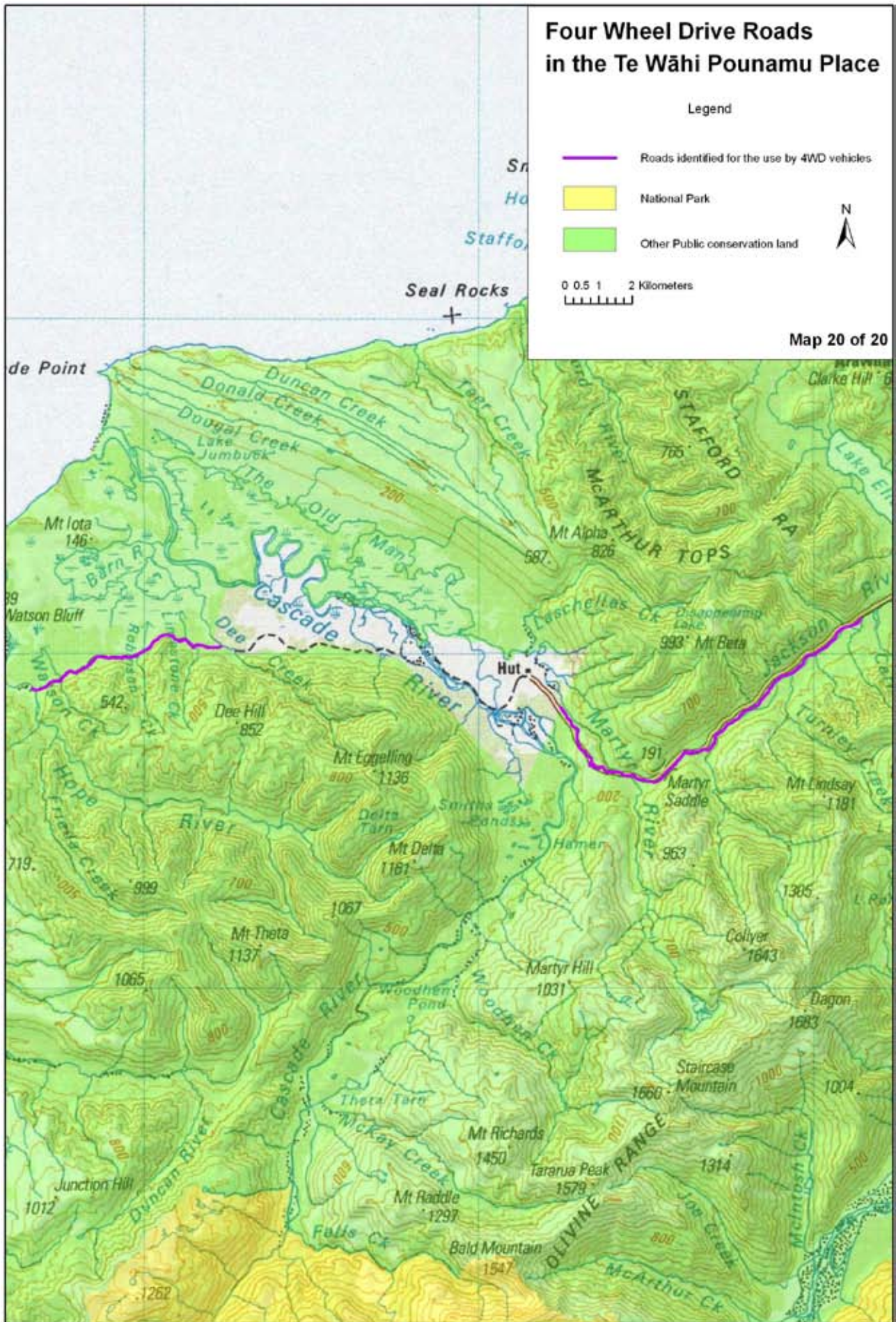












# Appendix 9

## RMA EXEMPTIONS (SEE CMS PART 3, SECTION 3.8.9)

Examples of work or activity of the Crown that meets the requirements of s4(3)(a) and (b) of the Resource Management Act 1991 requirement for land use consent:

- track construction and maintenance
- construction/maintenance/replacement of recreation or staff facilities/structures/huts
- installation of signage and interpretation
- radio installations (for management and safety purposes)
- vegetation management and control (biodiversity, recreation, or historic management programmes).

ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
<b>RECREATIONAL TRACKS, ROADS AND CAR PARKING AREAS</b>	<p>Upgrade of existing tracks and roads to meet current Departmental Service standards using current alignment.</p> <p>Service standard upgrades of existing tracks and roads by partially or completely realigning to take advantage of better grades, terrain features or to incorporate elements of natural or historic landscape.</p> <p>Construction of new tracks as agreed in consultation with the community.</p> <p>Improvements to any existing track considered necessary in order to mitigate any environmental impact, health and safety concern or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>Soil disturbance including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</p> <p>Surface water runoff including modification of existing natural watercourses and control and redirection of surface water using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>Alterations to land contours and slopes during track construction and upgrade.</p> <p>Removal of vegetation from track corridor and from immediately adjacent to asset corridor.</p>	<p><b>EXISTING:</b></p> <p>Larry Creek Track</p> <p>Kirwans Loop Track</p> <p>Kirwans Hill Route</p> <p>Golden Fleece Walk</p> <p>Murray Creek Track</p> <p>Waitahu Track</p> <p>Inglewood Branch Track</p> <p>Tram Track</p> <p>Lankey Creek Track</p> <p>Alborns Track</p> <p>Big River Track - Waituta to Big River</p> <p>Big River Dam Route</p> <p>Big River Track - Big River to Inangahua River/sawmill Track</p> <p>Progress Water Race Track/Inangahua swingbridge picnic area</p> <p>Tawhai picnic area/walk</p> <p>Waituta Town Walk</p> <p>Prohibition mine and Ball mill, Waituta</p> <p>Snowy Battery and Joker Level Incline tram Track, Waituta</p> <p>Duffy Creek Route</p> <p>Lake Stream Route</p> <p>Mt Haast Route</p>
	<p>Track and road construction using cut to fill excavation, cut to waste excavation and levelling using hand tools, motorised equipment and machinery.</p> <p>Excavation of batter slopes to a maximum height of 1.5 metres.</p> <p>Vegetation removal from the full width of track corridor and discretionary removal of any vegetation beyond the track and road corridor that is considered hazardous or may adversely impact upon track components such as batter slopes, drainage or track surface materials.</p> <p>Aggregate surfacing including placement and compaction of local and imported materials (from approved weed free sources).</p> <p>The use of local materials in the vicinity of the asset corridor where necessary for obtaining fill/surfacing materials.</p> <p>Ground works of in-ground timber steps including formation and levelling, drainage and timber construction.</p> <p>Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from track surface to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>Road re-formation and widening to provide safe 2WD or 4WD vehicle access and road stability to the required standards. Drainage improvement to prevent erosion and deterioration of the road surface and structure and provide safe vehicle access.</p>	<p><b>EXISTING:</b></p> <p>Kohaihai Zig-Zag Track</p> <p>Nikau Walk</p> <p>Heaphy Track - Kohaihai to Scotts Beach</p> <p>Heaphy Track - Scotts Beach to Heaphy hut</p> <p>Heaphy Track - Heaphy hut to West Coast boundary</p> <p>Oparara Arch Track</p> <p>Moira Gate Track</p> <p>Mirror Tarn Track</p> <p>Box Canyon Caves Track</p> <p>Honeycomb Hill Caves Track</p> <p>Lower Fenian Track</p> <p>Upper Fenian/Adams Flats/Fenian Goldfields</p> <p>Fenian Caves / Miners Cave Track</p> <p>Giant Rimu Tree Track</p> <p>Karamea Gorge Route</p> <p>Mt Stormy Route</p> <p>Wangapeka Track - crpk to Little Wanganui Saddle</p> <p>Lake Hanlon Track</p> <p>Mokihinui Route</p> <p>Chasm Creek Walkway</p>	



ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
			Klondyke Spur Route
			Klondyke Route
			Lake Daniels Track
			Waterfall tk, Maruia
			Maruia River Nature Walk
			St James Carpark and Alpine Nature Tarn Walk
			St James w/way - Lewis Pass to Ada Pass
			Lewis Pass Lookout
			Lewis Tops Route
			Lake Christabel Track
			Rough Creek Track
			Robinson River/Saddle Track
			Groesus Track
			Garden Gully Track
			Groesus Knob Route
			Moonlight Track
			Point Elizabeth Walkway
			Coal Creek Track
			Coll's Dam Walk
			Callaghans Walk
			Tairare/Tunnel Walks, Nelson Creek
			Lake Hochstetter Track
			Aorangi Nature Walk
			Brunner Mine Site Track
			Mt Glasgow Route
			Charming Creek Walkway
			Granity Dam Walk
			Millerton Bathhouse Track
			Denniston Incline/ Brakehead/Banbury Arch Walk
			Denniston Walkway
			Cape Foulwind Walkway
			Buckland Peaks Route
			Constant Bay Track
			Charleston Goldfields Historic site
			Tiropahi Track
			Myra's Track
			Denniston Town Walk
			Nile River Valley Walk
			Fox River Carpark and Sea Caves Track
			Truman Track
			Pororari River Walk
			The Cavern Track
			Dolomite Point Walk
			Fox River Caves Track
			Inland Pack Track - Fox River to Bullock Creek
			Ballroom Overhang Track
			Mt Bovis Route

ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
	Inland Pack tk - Bullock Creek to Pororari River		Mt French Route
	Cave Creek Track		Arnold River Dam Walk
	Inland Pack Track - Punakaki River to Pororari River		Velenski Walk
	Lyell Walkway		Rakaitane Track
	Rolleston River Route		Bain Bay Track
	Taramakau Valley Track		Carew Falls Track
	Orehake River Route		Mawhera Picnic Area
	Orehake to Big Tops Route		Wood's Creek Walk
	Taramakau Valley to Townsend Hut Route		Mount Te Kinga Track
	Shamrock Creek Walk		Roberts Point Track
	Goldsborough Track		Lake Wombat Track
	German Gully Pack Track		Alex Knob Track
	Goff's Track		Peters Pool Walk
	Londonderry Rock Walk		Douglas Walk
	Mahinapua Walkway		Sentinel Rock Walk
	Picnic Point Track		Franz Josef Glacier Access Track
	Mananui Bush Walk		Canavans Knob Track
	Jum Michel Walk		Lambert River Route
	Bellbird Walk		Waitangitona Wetland Walk
	Swimmers Beach Walk		Galway Beach Track
	Ross Goldfield Water Race Walkway		Gillespies Beach - Miners Tunnel Track
	Ross Goldfield Historic Reserve		Miners' Cemetery Walk, Gillespie's Beach
	Kaniere Water Race Walkway		Minnehaha Track
			River Walk - Fox Glacier Valley
			Fox Glacier Access Track



ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
			<b>PROPOSED FUTURE DEVELOPMENTS:</b>
			Butler River Track
			Perth River Track
			Scone Creek Track
			Bettison Route
			Pakihi Trig Walk
			Okarito Trig Track
			Ottos Corner /MacDonalds Creek Picnic Area
			Terrace Walk
			Tatare Tunnels Track
			Callery - Waiho Walk
			Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner.
			Franz, Josef Glacier Valley pedestrian cycleway (shared use path).
			Fox Glacier Valley pedestrian cycleway (shared use path).

ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
<b>Recreational structures and buildings</b>	Upgrade existing structures and buildings to meet Departmental Service standard to meet visitor group requirements such as minimum access width and safety barrier heights as specified within SNZ 8630:2004.	Soil disturbance including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.	EXISTING: All structures and buildings on existing and proposed tracks, roads, car parks and camp sites
Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar structures and buildings built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing structures and buildings as these reach the end of their projected / economic life.	Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of structures and buildings footprint, and excavation of piles and footings. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment / treatment.	Surface water runoff including modification of existing natural watercourses and control and redirection of surface water using various means such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps.	Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner.
Construction of new structures and buildings required to meet service standards for existing tracks, roads, amenity areas and campgrounds.	Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from structure and building footprint to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs. Construction of structures and buildings such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, viewing platforms, huts, shelters, toilets and ladders in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 for the relevant visitor group.	Alterations to land contours and slopes during structure and building construction. Removal of vegetation from structure and building footprint and from immediately around.	
Construction of new structures and buildings as a component of development work for new tracks, roads, amenity areas and campgrounds.		Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man made structures in natural areas.	
Improvements to any existing structure and building considered necessary in order to mitigate any environmental impact, health and safety concern or to provide improved access for any management purpose.			

ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
<b>Campsites and amenities</b>			
Upgrade existing campsites and amenities to meet Departmental Service standard to meet visitor group requirements for campgrounds and amenity areas as specified within SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard.	Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of campground and amenity footprint, and excavation of piles and footings. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment / treatment including effluent dispersal fields and in-ground waste tanks	Soil disturbance including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.	EXISTING FRONT-COUNTRY CAMPSITES: Kohaihai Lyell Slab Hut Creek Marble Hill
Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar campsites and amenities built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing campground and amenity assets as these reach the end of their projected / economic life.	Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from building and structural campground and amenity footprint to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs.	Surface water runoff including modification of existing natural watercourses and control and redirection of surface water using various means such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. Fill materials not normally found on the site may be imported (such as scoria).	Goldsborough Hans Bay, Lake Kaniere Lake Mahinapua Lake Ianthe Otto Gillespies Beach Lake Paringa
Construction of new campgrounds and amenities required to meet service standards for existing campgrounds and amenity areas.	Construction of campgrounds and amenities such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, shelters, toilets, showers and ladders in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard for the visitor group.	Alterations to land contours and slopes during campsite and amenity construction. Removal of vegetation from asset footprint and from immediately around campground and amenity.	EXISTING BACK-COUNTRY CAMPSITES: James Mackay Heaphy Katipo Scotts Beach Ballroom Overhang Lake Daniells Welcome Flat
Construction of new assets such as structures and buildings as a component of development work for new campgrounds and amenity areas.			
Improvements to any existing asset or establishment of new assets considered necessary in order to manage, meet regulatory requirements, and mitigate any environmental impact, health and safety concern or to provide improved access for any management purpose.			

ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
		Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man made structures in natural areas.	
		Noise from increased usage of campground and amenity sites.	
		Increased water take for operation of campground and campsite and amenities.	
<b>Signs</b>	Erect signage on or within close proximity to public conservation land for the purpose of providing information to the public.	Aesthetic impact from man made structures in natural areas.	All public conservation lands within West Coast <i>Taiti</i> Pouitini Conservancy or where permission has been given by the landowner.
	Works associated with the erection of signage.	Removal of vegetation from asset footprint and from immediately around asset.	
	Erect signage on public conservation land for the purpose of informing people of fire lighting restrictions.		
<b>Biodiversity tracks / roads / structures (including staff accommodation)</b>	Refer to Activity and Scope for Visitor Tracks/Roads/ Structures & Buildings/ Campsites & amenities above.	Refer to Environmental Impacts for Visitor Tracks/Roads/Structures & Buildings/ Campsites & amenities above.	All Conservation land where biodiversity programmes are being undertaken.
	Note: Not all Visitor standards as noted above will apply to Biodiversity Tracks/ Roads structures (including staff accommodation). In some cases a lesser standard may apply.		Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner.

ACTIVITY SCOPE	MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS	LOCATION
<b>Other biodiversity related activities</b>	Erection of fences on Conservation Land and its boundaries.	Vegetation removal required to provide clear lines for fences, animal pest control operations and general access required to undertake conservation related activities.	All Conservation land where biodiversity programmes are being undertaken.
	Habitat enhancement.	Earthworks and vegetation clearance associated with habitat enhancement i.e. pond creation/drain creation or re-alignment. Storage, transport and application of hazardous substances including but not limited to flammable liquids, pesticides and herbicides.	Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner.
<b>Hazardous goods</b>	Use, transportation, storage and disposal of hazardous substances	Soil disturbance including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Will comply with all relevant legislative requirements.	Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner.
			All Conservation land where biodiversity programmes are being undertaken.
			Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner.



# Index

Index references are to objectives, policies and outcomes only. **Bold** underlined references refer to whole sections.

- Access 51, 112, 115, 116, 119, 121, 123, 125, 127, 130, 136, 138, 139, 141, 145, 146, 147, 150, 152, 155, 163, 165, 168, 172, 179, 183, 191, 193, 194, 204, 205, 213, 214, 215, 216, 225, 226, 234, 236, 237, 238, 244, 247, 248, 250, 255, 256, 265, 268, 269, 271, 272, 273
- Accommodation 147, 148, 149, 205, 216, 250
- Adverse effects 112, 116, 129, 131, 132, 133, 138, 141, 145, 148, 151, 156, 158, 182, 191, 195, 203, 205, 213, 216, 224, 226, 233, 237, 245, 249, 258, 266, 268, 274
- Advocacy 33, 34, 36, 37, 38, 81, 82, 83, 85, 95, 120, **167**, 177, 181, 183, 200, 212, 223, 231, 243
- Aircraft 119, 120, 121, 124, 126, 127, **129**, 130, 131, 139, 154, 172, 194, 195, 205, 209, 210, 215, 216, 226, 237, 249, 250, 255, 269, 271, 272, 273, 274
- Animal pests **60**, 88, 89, 143, 168, 181, 184, 190, 201, 209, 212, 223, 232, 241, 244, 260, 263
- Animals 132, 144, 146
- Baches. *See Accommodation*
- Backcountry Recreational Zone 130, 131, 133, 236, 271, 377
- Backcountry-remote zone **122**, 123, 124, 194, 195, 205, 216, 226, 237, 248, 249, 273, 274
- Biodiversity 181, 183, 185, 186, 190, 192, 194, 196, 199, 200, 201, 209, 210, 211, 212, 220, 221, 222, 223, 230, 232, 241, 243, 257, 258, 259, 262, 263, 274, 275, 281
- Biosecurity 51, 158
- Buildings 148, 209, 256, 265
- Camping 123, 124, 125, **133**, 172, 205, 235, 247, 269, 270
- Cave 136, 137, 172, 185, 190, 192, 193, 201, 203, 206, 211, 213, 215, 232, 234, 257, 262, 267
- Caving **135**, 136, 137
- Chamois 229, 230, 238, 241, 258, 261, 263, 274
- Coastal environment 82, 186, 259, 274
- Commercial 123, 130, 133, 136, 139, 146, 151, 152, 157, 159, 160, 179, 183, 190, 201, 202, 212, 223, 232, 235, 236, 243, 260, 261, 263, 269
- Commercial eeling **150**
- Commercial filming **151**, 152
- Commercial hunting **159**, 190, 212, 223, 232, 243, 260, 261, 263
- Communication facilities. *See Utilities*
- Compliance **171**
- Concession 112, 113, 116, 121, 124, 126, 136, 140, 152, 159, 160, 193, 195, 204, 206, 214, 216, 225, 226, 234, 235, 237, 246, 247, 249, 274
- Concessionaire 119, 121, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 136, 139, 183, 193, 215, 216, 235, 238, 248, 249, 256, 268, 269, 270, 272
- Conservation Boards 112, 113, 169
- Conservation General Policy (Note that Part 3 contains references to Conservation General Policy at the end of each section, under subheading 'See also') 112, 165, 186, 199, 210, 220, 230, 241, 258
- Consultation 32, 111, 112, 132, 135, 154, 165, 168, 169, 170
- Cultural heritage 24, **37**, **96**, 100, 101, 102, 103, 110, 112, 115, 116, 124, 125, 127, 128, 138, 145, 150, 152, 165, 167, 168, 172, 177, 179, 180, 181, 182, 191, 193, 202, 205, 213, 224, 225, 233, 236, 245, 265, 266, 268, 281
- Cumulative effects 116, 121, 123, 125, 191, 203, 213, 224, 233, 245, 266
- Customary use 179
- Deer 186, 190, 195, 196, 201, 206, 209, 212, 216, 220, 223, 229, 230, 232, 238, 241, 243, 249, 256, 258, 260, 261, 263, 274

Desired outcomes 49, 55, 75, 89, 119, 121, 123, 124, 125, 127, 130, 140, 141, 154, 160, 165, **177**, 182, 183, 184, 209, 238, 250, 255, 279, 280, 281. *See also Outcomes at places*

Dogs 132, 143, 144. *See Animals*

Domestic animals. *See Animals*; *See Grazing*

Easement. *See Utilities*

Ecosystems 21, 62, 63, 150, 158, 166, 177, 181, 182, 189, 190, 196, 200, 201, 204, 210, 211, 212, 220, 223, 230, 231, 232, 243, 250, 259, 261, 262, 263, 274, 275

Ecosystem services 48, 80, **90**, 91

Education **47**, 48, 121, 123, 125, 136, 140, 172, 180, 225, 250

Eeling/Eel fishing 84, **141**, **150**, 151

Eradication 84, 88, 190

Facilities 115, 116, 120, 121, 123, 125, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 136, 146, 147, 148, 182, 183, 193, 194, 203, 204, 205, 214, 215, 216, 225, 226, 233, 236, 237, 245, 246, 247, 248, 256, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274

Farming **155**, 213, 219, 223, 224, 230, 233, 238, 241, 244, 265, 266

Fire risk management **172**

Fishery 83, 84, 113, 151

Fishing 84, **141**, 151, 194, 195, 206, 216, 223, 229, 235, 238, 247, 249, 255

Freshwater fish 83, 84, 181, 189, 199, 200, 212, 220, 222, 223, 230, 231, 242, 243, 262

Freshwater fisheries 34, 35, 36, 79, **82**, 83, 84, 183, 261

Frontcountry sites **125**

Game birds 143

Gazetted wilderness areas **117**, 119, 120, 133, 168, 193, 215, 248, 268, 269, 271

General Policy (Note that Part 3 contains references to Conservation General Policy at the end of each section, under subheading ‘*See also*’) 6, 36, 89, 112, 119, 151, 165, 179, 280

General Policy for National Parks 36, 112, 179

Geodiversity 77, 81, 91, 95, 182, 185, 196, 209, 219, 220, 229, 230, 241, 256, 257

Geological features 95, 183, 184, 206, 238

Geological Sites 222, 242, 258

Geothermal sites **133**

Grazing **155**, 211, 242, 262, 266

Guiding **134**

Habitat 36, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 81, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 146, 150, 151, 157, 165, 181, 189, 196, 199, 200, 211, 212, 220, 222, 223, 230, 231, 232, 238, 241, 242, 243, 255, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 270, 274, 275

Habitats and ecosystems 76, 77, 78, 79, 88, 150, 275

Hazards 48, 109, 269

Highway 113, 125, 126, 134, 135, 185, 201, 206, 214, 215, 219, 224, 225, 226, 248, 249, 250, 261, 265, 268, 269, 270, 271, 291

Historic 36, 37, 38, 39, 48, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 108, 109, 110, 170, 173, 177, 182, 183, 184, 191, 192, 194, 195, 202, 203, 204, 205, 213, 224, 225, 233, 234, 236, 238, 245, 246, 247, 248, 250, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 272, 273, 281

Historical and cultural heritage **37**, **96**, 100, 101, 102, 104, 110, 112, 115, 116, 124, 125, 127, 128, 150, 152, 167, 172, 177, 179, 180, 181, 182, 191, 202, 205, 213, 224, 225, 233, 236, 245, 265, 266, 268, 281

Horses. *See Animals*

Hunting 89, 143, 144, 149, 155, 190, 194, 195, 201, 205, 206, 212, 216, 223, 229, 232, 236, 237, 238, 243, 249, 255, 258, 260, 261, 263, 272, 274

Huts 119, 123, 194, 195, 205, 216, 226, 234, 236, 237, 245, 246, 248, 265, 266, 271, 272, 273

Indigenous species 36, 79, 81, 84, 86, 87, 88, 141, 143, 158, 181, 258

Intellectual property rights 157

Intense interest sites **126**, 127, 131, 133, 135, 183, 204, 214, 267, 269

International obligations **161**

Interpretation 37, 38, 39, 43, 48, 152, 163, 179, 180, 183, 193, 203, 204, 214, 225, 236, 247, 266, 268

Kaitiaki 33, 48, 263

Karst 80, 136, 137, 184, 185, 186, 190, 191, 192, 193, 201, 203, 206, 210, 211, 213, 214, 215, 216, 220, 232, 234, 257, 262, 267

Karst based activities **135**

Kayaking 121, 123, 139, 194, 205, 226, 237, 249, 255, 273, 274

Land acquisition **164**

Land disposal **164**

Land exchange **164**

Landforms 93, 95, 184, 185, 192, 196, 203, 206, 209, 213, 216, 219, 225, 229, 234, 241, 246, 250, 256, 258, 261, 267, 269

Landscape 75, 77, 81, **91**, 95, 96, 110, 125, 134, 163, 179, 182, 184, 185, 192, 194, 195, 196, 199, 201, 203, 204, 205, 206, 209, 210, 213, 216, 219, 220, 222, 225, 229, 230, 233, 234, 238, 241, 242, 246, 250, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 264, 267, 268, 269, 271

Land transfer **164**

Marine mammals 35, 81, 85, 146, 201, 274

Marine protected areas 78, 80, 81, 274

Monitoring 73, 80, 83, 96, 113, 116, 154, 181, 182, 231, 242, 279, 280, 281, **282**

Mountain biking 124, 126, 138, 183, 193, 205, 215, 229, 237, 247, 248, 270, 271, 289

Mountaineering 265, 266, 271

National parks 36, 89, 112, 131, 143, 146, 158, 168, **169**, 172, 179, 183, 206, 238, 274

Natural character **78**, 81, 95, 119, 120, 141, 150, 181, 186, 189, 193, 199, 201, 210, 211, 214, 221, 222, 226, 231, 232, 235, 236, 241, 242, 247, 258, 268, 270, 272

Natural heritage **55**, 73, 74, 75, 77, 80, 81, 88, 91, 133, 158, 173, 181, 186, 189, 199, 200, 202, 204, 210, 211, 214, 221, 230, 235, 241, 242, 258, 260

Natural quiet 115, 119, 120, 127, 168, 184, 194, 195, 205, 206, 215, 216, 226, 236, 238, 249, 269, 272

Natural resources 34, 37, 119, 120, 179, 264

Natural state 181, 200, 222, 223, 232, 263, 266

Non-powered water craft **139**

Outdoor education 121, 123, 125, 136, 140

Partnerships 54, 180

People and organisations **46**, 47, 49, 74, 78, 81, 112, 116, 138, 177, 180, 190, 201, 203, 212, 223, 232, 244, 263

Pest 83, 88, 89, 150, 168, 181, 184, 186, 190, 201, 209, 212, 223, 232, 241, 244, 258, 260, 263

Pest management **87**

Places 6, 89, 105, 108, 109, 110, 112, 116, 119, 120, 121, 124, 129, 130, **137**, 141, 160, 170, 177, 178, 180, 181, 182, **183**, 186, 190, 191, 192, 201, 202, 203, 206, 209, 210, 213, 216, 223, 224, 225, 229, 233, 234, 236, 241, 245, 246, 249, 261, 263, 264, 266, 267, 269, 270, 281

Powered water craft **140**

Preservation 84, 119, 120, 182

Preserve 36, 37, 95, 151, 222, 223, 270

Private accommodation **147**

Protect 34, 35, 36, 37, 76, 77, 79, 81, 82, 83, 85, 88, 91, 95, 104, 112, 120, 136, 137, 144, 151, 155, 157, 163, 168, 180, 181, 182, 183, 191, 192, 193, 202, 203, 205, 213, 215, 216, 219, 222, 223, 224, 226, 231, 233, 234, 235, 242, 245, 255, 256, 266, 267, 270, 271, 275

Protection 34, 35, **36**, 37, 38, 44, 46, **76**, 77, 81, 85, 87, 89, 95, 96, 102, **103**, **104**, 109, **110**, 143, 147, 156, 165, 166, 167, 168, 177, 180, 181, **182**, 183, 191, 192, 193, 195, 200, 202, 203, 210, 212, 213, 214, 221, 223, 224, 231, 233, 234, 235, 243, 245, 246, 247, 256, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 274, 275, **288**

Public access 100, 136, 150, 159, **168**

Public awareness and education **47**

Public conservation lands and waters 112, 132, 141, **143**, 148

Rafting 119, 121, 123, 139, 192, 194, 204, 205, 216, 226, 237, 249, 273, 274

Recreational fishing **141**

Recreational hunting of game birds **142**

Recreational hunting of wild animals and animal pests **143**

Recreational opportunities 48, 54, 112, **114**, 115, 116, 123, 125, 141, 154, 158, 167, 180, 182, 183, 192, 193, 203, 204, 214, 225, 234, 235, 246, 247, 250, 255, 267, 268, 271, 272, 273

Recreational zone 116, 130, 133, 140

Regulations 172, 255

Remote 120, 121, 131, 133, 159, 183, 192, 193, 194, 195, 203, 204, 205, 214, 215, 216, 225, 226, 234, 236, 237, 238, 246, 248, 249, 250, 255, 267, 271, 272, 273, 274

Remote zone **120**

Research 37, 48, 73, 77, 80, 84, 89, 91, 96, 101, 108, 116, 136, 146, 156, 157, 158, 168, 180, 181, 182, 191, 202, 211, 213, 224, 233, 245, 266, 274, 281

Reserves 36, 81, 84, 104, **110**, 131, 157, 168, 170, 172, 231, 242, **255**, 256, 263, 265

Restoration 49, **78**, 80, 81, 165, 177, 180, 182, 189, 200, 204, 211, 212, 223, 231, 243, 262

Roads 124, 125, 126, 134, 138, 145, 146, 183, 192, 193, 201, 203, 205, 214, 215, 220, 224, 225, 229, 233, 234, 237, 245, 246, 247, 248, 267, 268, 269, 270

Rohe 192

Sand **149**, 186, 242, 263

Services 48, 80, **90**, 91, 100, 116, 123, 125, 127, 128, 156, 179, 180, 182, 183, 194, 205, 214, 216, 226, 237, 247, 268, 270, 271

Shingle **149**

Structures 149, 184, 206, 209, 245, 256, 271

Tahr/Thar 89, 160, 241, 243, 249, 258, 261, 263, 272, 274

Tangata whenua **29**, 77, 95, 102, 168, **179**, 232, 264, **282**

Taonga **34**, **36**, 37, **44**, 75, 104, 112, 168, 179, 191, 192, 202, 203, 213, 224, 225, 233, 234, 245, 246, 264, 266, 267, 282

Threatened species 77, 81, **86**, 87, 147, 177, 181, 201, 211, 238, 260, 268

Tramping 193, 194, 204, 205, 215, 216, 226, 236, 237, 247, 248, 255, 271, 272, 274

Treaty of Waitangi **30**, **32**, 179, 180, 275

Utilities 95, 130, 131, **158**, 159

Vehicle 119, 121, 124, 125, 126, 133, 135, **137**, 138, 139, **144**, 145, 146, 172, 215, 229, 237, 248, 269, 271

Vehicle use 124, 126, 138, **144**, 215, 229, 237, 248, 271

Visitor 38, 39, 125, 127, 147, 156, 163, 180, 182, 191, 193, 204, 209, 213, 214, 225, 235, 266, 268, 270. *see also Recreational user*

Wāhi tapu **36**, 37, 101, 102, 104, 168, 179, 191, 192, 202, 203, 213, 224, 225, 233, 234, 245, 246, 266, 267

Wetland 79, 81, 158, 166, 181, 182, 186, 189, 199, 201, 210, 211, 212, 220, 221, 222, 229, 230, 231, 242, 243, 247, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 261, 262, 268

Whitebaiting 84, **141**, 195, 206, 216, 238, 249, 266, 268, 274

Wild animals 89, **143**, 144, **159**, 160, 190, 201, 212, 223, 232, 244, 256, 263

Wilderness **117**, 119, 120, 131, 133, 163, 168, 184, 192, 193, 194, 195, 205, 206, 214, 215, 216, 219, 226, 229, 237, 246, 248, 249, 250, 255, 267, 268, 269, 271, 272, 273, 274

Wildlife 131, 146, 147, 157, 158, 171, 182, 183, 204, 219, 222, 255, 256, 260, 263, 268, 273

Zoning 115, 235. *see also Recreational zone*